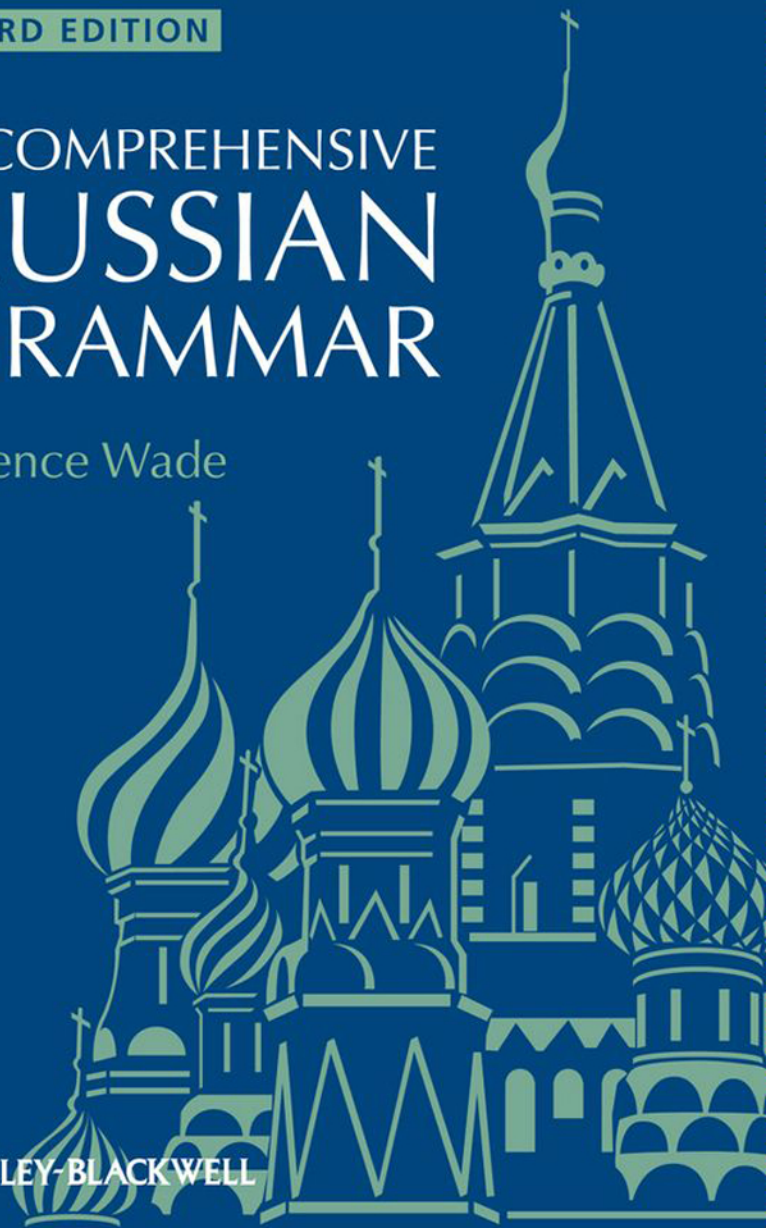


THIRD EDITION

# A COMPREHENSIVE RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

Terence Wade

 WILEY-BLACKWELL





## **A Comprehensive Russian Grammar**

---

## **Blackwell Reference Grammars**

General Editor: Glanville Price

---

The Blackwell Reference Grammars are essential companions for students of modern languages at senior secondary school and undergraduate level. The volumes provide a comprehensive survey of the grammar of each language and include plentiful examples. The series will cover the major European languages, including French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, and Russian.

### **Already published**

*A Comprehensive French Grammar*, Sixth Edition  
Glanville Price

*A Comprehensive Russian Grammar*, Third Edition  
Terence Wade  
Updated, with additional material, by David Gillespie  
Advisory Editor for previous editions: Michael J. de K. Holman

*A Comprehensive Spanish Grammar*  
Jacques de Bruyne  
Adapted, with additional material, by Christopher J. Pountain

*A Comprehensive Welsh Grammar*  
David A. Thorne

*Colloquial French Grammar: A Practical Guide*  
Rodney Ball

*An Introduction to French Pronunciation*, Revised Edition  
Glanville Price

### **Grammar Workbooks**

*A Russian Grammar Workbook*  
Terence Wade

*A French Grammar Workbook*  
Dulcie Engel, George Evans, and Valerie Howells

*A Spanish Grammar Workbook*  
Esther Santamaría Iglesias

---

# A Comprehensive Russian Grammar

---

*Third Edition*

*Terence Wade*

Revised and updated by David Gillespie



**WILEY-BLACKWELL**

A John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., Publication

This third edition first published 2011  
© 2011 Terence Wade

Edition history: Blackwell Publishers Ltd (1e, 1992 and 2e, 2000)

Blackwell Publishing was acquired by John Wiley & Sons in February 2007. Blackwell's publishing program has been merged with Wiley's global Scientific, Technical, and Medical business to form Wiley-Blackwell.

*Registered Office*

John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, United Kingdom

*Editorial Offices*

350 Main Street, Malden, MA 02148-5020, USA

9600 Garsington Road, Oxford, OX4 2DQ, UK

The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

For details of our global editorial offices, for customer services, and for information about how to apply for permission to reuse the copyright material in this book please see our website at [www.wiley.com/wiley-blackwell](http://www.wiley.com/wiley-blackwell).

The right of Terence Wade to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Designations used by companies to distinguish their products are often claimed as trademarks. All brand names and product names used in this book are trade names, service marks, trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The publisher is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book. This publication is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold on the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. If professional advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Wade, Terence Leslie Brian.

A comprehensive Russian grammar / Terence Wade ; edited by David Gillespie. – 3rd ed., rev. and expanded. p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-4051-3639-6 (pbk. : alk. paper)

1. Russian language—Grammar. I. Gillespie, David. II. Title.

PG2106.W33 2010

491.782'421—dc22

2010021924

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Set in 10.5/12pt Times by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong  
Printed in Singapore

---

# Contents

---

<b>Preface</b>	xxv
<b>Preface to the Second Edition</b>	xxvii
<b>Preface to the Third Edition</b>	xxix
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	xxxix
<b>Acknowledgements to the Second Edition</b>	xxxiii
<b>Abbreviations</b>	xxxiv

## **Introduction**

---

1 The Cyrillic alphabet	1
2 The international phonetic alphabet (IPA)	2

## *Pronunciation*

3 Stressed vowels	4
4 Unstressed vowels	5
5 Hard and soft consonants	7
6 Double palatalization	9
7 Non-palatalization of consonants in some loan words	9
8 Hard sign and soft sign	10
9 The reflexive suffix <b>-сь/-ся</b>	10
10 Effect of a soft consonant on a vowel in the preceding syllable	10
11 Voiced and unvoiced consonants	11
12 The pronunciation of <b>-чн-</b>	13
13 Consonants omitted in pronunciation	13

14 The pronunciation of double consonants	13
15 Stress	14

### *Orthography*

16 Spelling rules	15
17 Use of capital and small letters in titles and names	16

### *Division of Words*

18 Division into syllables	18
19 Splitting a word at the end of a line	19

### *Punctuation*

20 Introductory comments	20
21 The full stop, exclamation mark and question mark	20
22 The comma: introductory comments	21
23 Uses of the comma	21
24 The colon. The semicolon. The dash	25
25 The punctuation of direct speech	28
26 Suspension points (многоточие)	29

## **The Noun**

---

### *Word formation*

27 Word formation in the noun I: general	30
28 Word formation in the noun II: prefixation	32
29 Word formation in the noun III: suffixation	34

### *Gender*

30 Masculine, feminine and neuter gender	54
31 Masculine nouns	55
32 Feminine nouns	56
33 Soft-sign nouns	56
34 Neuter nouns	58
35 Common gender	58
36 Indeclinable nouns of foreign origin	58



37	Indeclinable place names	60
38	Titles of books etc.	60
39	Acronyms	60
40	Alphabetisms	61
41	Stump compounds	63
42	Compound hyphenated nouns	63
43	Differentiation of gender through suffixes	64
44	Professions	65
45	Animals	67

### *Declension*

46	Introduction	67
47	Animacy	68
48	Nouns which are used only in the singular	70
49	Nouns which have a plural form only	72
50	Declension chart	73
51	First declension: masculine nouns	74
52	The fleeting vowel	75
53	Partitive genitive in <b>-у/-ю</b>	76
54	Prepositional/locative singular in <b>-ѣ/-ю</b>	77
55	Special masculine plural forms	79
56	Nouns whose genitive plural is identical with the nominative singular	82
57	Stress patterns in first-declension masculine nouns	83
58	First declension: neuter nouns in <b>-о</b>	84
59	First declension: nouns in <b>-е, -ѣ, -ѧ, -ѧѧ</b>	86
60	Stress patterns in the plural of neuter nouns	87
61	Second declension: nouns in <b>-а/-я</b>	88
62	Stress patterns in second-declension nouns	90
63	Third declension: soft-sign feminine nouns	92
64	Declension of neuter nouns in <b>-мя</b>	94
65	Declension of nouns in <b>-ия/-ие</b>	94
66	The masculine noun <b>пуť</b>	94
67	The neuter noun <b>дитѧ</b>	95
68	<b>Дѧти</b> and <b>люди</b>	95

69 Declension of first names	95
70 Declension of surnames	96
71 Declension of place names	97
72 Apposition in the names of publications, towns etc.	97
73 Declension of alphabetisms	99
74 Declension of hyphenated noun co-ordinates	100
75 Agreement of <b>ряд, большинство</b> etc.	100
76 Constructions of the type <b>все повернули голову</b>	102

### *Case Usage*

77 The nominative	103
78 The vocative	104
79 The accusative	105
80 The genitive: possession and relationship	106
81 The genitive: quantity	106
82 The genitive with adjectives	107
83 The partitive genitive	107
84 The partitive genitive in <b>-у/-ю</b>	109
85 Genitive in <b>-у</b> in set phrases	110
86 Genitive and negative	111
87 The genitive and accusative after negated verbs	112
88 Verbs that take the genitive	115
89 The dative as indirect object of a verb	118
90 Verbs that take the dative	119
91 Adjectives that take the dative	120
92 Impersonal constructions using the dative	120
93 The dative as the logical subject of an infinitive	121
94 The instrumental of function	121
95 The instrumental in constructions denoting movements of the body	122
96 The instrumental in passive constructions	122
97 The instrumental in adverbial expressions	122
98 Use of the instrumental to denote similarity	124
99 Verbs that take the instrumental	124
100 Adjectives that take the instrumental	125

101	The instrumental of dimension	125
102	The instrumental as predicate	125
103	Nouns in apposition	127

### *Diminutive and Augmentative Nouns*

104	Meanings and functions of the diminutive	128
105	Masculine diminutives	128
106	Feminine diminutives	130
107	Neuter diminutives	131
108	Other diminutive suffixes	132
109	Augmentative suffixes	132

## **The Pronoun**

110	Personal pronouns	134
111	Use of personal instead of possessive pronouns	135
112	Use of the nominative pronoun with <b>это</b>	136
113	The pronoun <b>я</b>	136
114	The pronoun <b>мы</b>	137
115	The pronouns <b>ты</b> and <b>вы</b>	137
116	The third-person pronouns ( <b>он, она́, оно́, они́</b> )	138
117	The reflexive pronoun <b>себя́</b>	139
118	The possessive pronouns <b>мой, твой, наш, ваш</b>	141
119	The possessive pronouns <b>его́, её, их</b>	142
120	The reflexive possessive pronoun <b>свой, своя́, своё, свои́</b>	142
121	Declension of the interrogative/relative pronouns	144
122	<b>Кто, что, какой, кото́рый, чей</b> as interrogative pronouns	144
123	<b>Кото́рый, какой, чей, кто</b> and <b>что</b> as relative pronouns	146
124	Other functions of the interrogative/relative pronouns	149
125	Declension of the demonstrative pronouns <b>э́тот, то́т, тако́й, сей</b> and <b>э́кий</b>	150
126	The demonstrative pronouns <b>э́тот</b> and <b>то́т</b>	151
127	Constructions of the type <b>приме́р тому́</b>	153
128	The demonstrative pronoun <b>тако́й</b>	153
129	The pronouns <b>сей</b> and <b>э́кий</b>	154

130	Declension of the determinative pronouns <b>сам, самый, весь, всякий, каждый, всяческий</b>	154
131	<b>Сам</b> and <b>самый</b>	155
132	<b>Весь, целый, всякий, каждый, любой, всяческий</b>	156
133	The negative pronouns <b>никто́, ничто́, никакой, ничей</b> The negative particle <b>не</b>	157
134	<b>Никто́</b>	157
135	<b>Ничто́</b>	158
136	<b>Никакой</b> and <b>ничей</b>	159
137	The 'potential' negative pronouns <b>некого, нечего</b>	159
138	The indefinite pronouns <b>кто́-то, кто́-нибудь, кто́-либо; что́-то, что́-нибудь, что́-либо; какой-то, какой-нибудь, какой-либо; чей-то, чей-нибудь, чей-либо</b>	161
139	The indefinite pronouns <b>где-кто́, где-что́, где-какой</b>	165
140	<b>Некто, нечто</b>	165
141	<b>Некоторый</b>	165
142	<b>Некий</b>	166
143	Other parts of speech which can also function as pronouns	166

## The Adjective

---

144	Introduction	168
<i>The Long Form of the Adjective</i>		
145	The long adjective: hard endings	168
146	'Mixed' declension	169
147	Soft-ending adjectives	170
148	Formation of adjectives from nouns: the suffixes <b>-н-, -ск-</b> and <b>-ов-/ев-</b>	172
149	Adjectival endings with specific meanings	173
150	Nouns with more than one adjective	174
151	Possessive adjectives	174
152	Diminutive adjectives in <b>-енький/-онький</b>	176
153	Diminutive adjectives in <b>-оватый/-еватый</b>	177
154	Indeclinable adjectives	177
155	Attributive use of the long adjective	178

156 Use of the long adjective with predicative meaning	179
157 Some uses of singular and plural adjectives	180
158 Adjectival nouns	181

### *The Short Form of the Adjective*

159 Endings of the short form of the adjective	182
160 Adjectives which have long forms only	183
161 The buffer vowels <b>-е-</b> , <b>-о-</b> and <b>-ѣ-</b> in the masculine short form	184
162 Some special short forms	185
163 Masculine short forms of adjectives in <b>-енный</b>	186
164 Stress patterns	186
165 Divergence in stress between masculine, neuter and plural long and short forms	187
166 The short form: usage. Introductory comments	187
167 Use of the short form to denote temporary state	188
168 Short forms: pairs of opposites	188
169 Adjectives of dimension	189
170 Delimitation of meaning by the oblique case of a noun or pronoun	190
171 Delimitation by a prepositional phrase	191
172 Delimitation by a subordinate clause or an infinitive	192
173 The short form as predicate to infinitives, verbal nouns and nouns with certain qualifiers	192
174 The short form in generalized statements	193
175 Position of the short form of the adjective	193

### *The Comparative Degree of the Adjective*

176 The comparative degree. Introductory comments	193
177 The attributive comparative with <b>более</b>	194
178 One-word attributive comparatives	194
179 Predicative comparative forms in <b>-ее</b>	195
180 Comparative short forms in <b>-е</b>	196
181 The short-form comparative in predicative meaning	199
182 Constructions with the comparative	199
183 The short-form comparative in attributive meaning	201
184 Other functions of the short-form comparative	202

*The Superlative Degree of the Adjective*

185 The superlative degree with <b>самый</b>	202
186 <b>Высший</b> and <b>низший</b>	204
187 The superlative in <b>-ейший</b> and <b>-айший</b>	204
188 The superlative with <b>наиболее</b>	205
189 Other superlatives	205

---

**The Numeral**

---

*Cardinal, Collective and Indefinite Numerals*

190 The cardinal numeral	207
191 Declension of cardinal numerals	208
192 <b>Ноль/нуль</b> . Meanings and usage	211
193 The numeral <b>один, одна, одно, один</b>	212
194 <b>Полтора/полторы; два/две, три, четыре; оба/обе</b>	214
195 Numerals five and above	216
196 Agreement of oblique cases of numerals <b>полтора/полторы</b> to 999 with oblique plural forms of nouns	216
197 <b>Тысяча</b> 'thousand', <b>миллион</b> 'million', <b>миллиард</b> 'a thousand million', <b>биллион</b> 'billion', <b>триллион</b> 'trillion'	218
198 Declension of compound numerals	219
199 Cardinals as numerical 'labels'	220
200 Collective numerals	221
201 Indefinite numerals	224
202 Agreement of the predicate with a subject which contains a numeral	226

*Ordinal Numerals*

203 Formation of ordinal numerals	228
204 Ordinal numerals: usage	230

*Special Functions of Numerals*

205 Cardinals and ordinals in fractions and decimals	230
206 Telling the time	232
207 Giving the date	235

208	Age	236
209	Quantitative nouns	237
210	Numerals in arithmetic	238
211	Numerals in compound nouns and adjectives	238

## The Verb

---

### *Conjugation*

212	Infinitive-preterite stem and present-future stem	240
213	The conjugation of the verb	241
214	The first conjugation	241
215	First-conjugation verbs with stems ending in a vowel	242
216	First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems I	244
217	First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems II: verbs in <b>-ать</b> with consonant mutation throughout conjugation	246
218	First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems III: verbs in <b>-ти, -сть/-зть, -чь</b>	248
219	Mobile stress in the conjugation of first-conjugation verbs	250
220	Second conjugation: present-future stems	251
221	Present-future endings in the second conjugation	252
222	Consonant change in the conjugation of second-conjugation verbs	253
223	Stress change in the second conjugation	254
224	Irregular verbs	256
225	Deficiencies in the conjugation of certain verbs	256
226	The verb 'to be'	257
227	Formation of the imperative	259
228	Stress in the imperative	261
229	Verbs with no imperative or a little-used imperative	261
230	Formation of the past tense	261
231	Verbs with no <b>-л</b> in the masculine past tense	262
232	Mobile stress in the past tense of verbs	264
233	Formation of the future (imperfective and perfective)	266
234	The buffer vowel <b>-о-</b> in conjugation	267

*Aspect*

235	The aspect. Introductory comments	268
236	Verbs with one aspect only	269
237	Bi-aspectual verbs	270
238	Formation of the aspects	271
239	Formation of the perfective by prefixation	272
240	Functions of the perfective prefixes	273
241	Semantic differentiation of aspects	274
242	Submeanings of perfectives	274
243	Formation of verbal aspects by internal modification	275
244	The formation of imperfectives from prefixed first-conjugation verbs	276
245	Vowel mutation in secondary imperfective verbs	277
246	Secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs	277
247	Consonant mutation in secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs	278
248	Secondary imperfectives based on monosyllabic verbs	279
249	Submeanings of some prefixed imperfectives	280
250	The differentiation of aspect by conjugation	281
251	Aspectival pairs with different roots	282
252	Verbs which are reflexive in the imperfective aspect only	282
253	Compounds of <b>-ложить</b>	283
254	Meanings of verbal prefixes	283
255	The imperfective and perfective aspects	293
256	Aspect in the present tense	295
257	Aspect in the past tense	298
258	Use of the imperfective past to express a 'statement of fact'	300
259	Use of the imperfective past to denote an action and its reverse	302
260	Aspectival usage when emphasis is on the identity of the person performing the action	303
261	Use of the imperfective past to denote a forthcoming event	305
262	Negated verbs in the past	305
263	Aspect in the future	306
264	The 'logical' future	307
265	The future in reported speech	307



266	Use of the future to express repeated actions	308
267	The perfective future in warnings	309
268	Aspect in questions	309
269	Some uses of the imperfective imperative	310
270	Use of the imperative in the context of a single action	311
271	Use of the imperative to exhort and invite	311
272	A command arising naturally from context	312
273	Negative commands/warnings	313
274	Use of the perfective imperative with repeated actions	314
275	Use of the future and the infinitive to express peremptory commands	314
276	Aspect in the infinitive. Introductory comments	314
277	Use of the infinitive to denote habitual actions	315
278	Use of the imperfective infinitive after verbs of beginning, continuing and concluding	316
279	Inadvisable and advisable actions	317
280	A request to perform/not to perform an action	318
281	Use of the infinitive after <b>не хоч́у</b>	319
282	Use of the infinitive with <b>пора́</b>	319
283	Use of infinitives after verbs of motion	320

### *Reflexive Verbs*

284	Reflexive verbs: conjugation	320
285	The 'true' reflexive	321
286	Semi-reflexive verbs	321
287	Intransitive reflexives	322
288	Reflexive verbs with passive meaning	323
289	Reciprocal meanings	323
290	Reflexive verbs which express feelings and attitudes	325
291	Intense or purposeful action	325
292	Reflexive verbs that emphasize thoroughness	325
293	Reflexive verbs that denote potential to perform an action	326

### *Impersonal Constructions*

294	Use of impersonal constructions to denote natural processes	326
295	Impersonal constructions with an animate accusative or dative	327

296	Impersonal constructions involving an external force	327
297	Expression of other meanings (chance, sufficiency etc.)	328
298	Constructions with the second-person singular	329
299	Constructions with the third-person plural	329

*The Passive Voice*

300	The passive voice. Introductory comments	330
301	The passive expressed by imperfective reflexive verbs	331
302	Passive meaning expressed by third-person plural verbs	331
303	Perfective reflexives with passive meaning	332

*The Conditional and Subjunctive Moods*

304	The conditional mood. Introductory comments	333
305	Formation of the conditional	333
306	Use of (1) the imperative and (2) the preposition <b>без</b> to express conditional meanings	334
307	Use of the particle <b>бы</b> to express desire	335
308	Use of the subjunctive to express wish or desire	335
309	The subjunctive of purposeful endeavour	337
310	Purpose clauses	337
311	The expression of hypothesis	338
312	Concessive constructions	340

*Constructions Expressing Obligation, Necessity, Possibility or Potential*

313	The expression of obligation and necessity	341
314	The expression of possibility or potential	343

*Verbs of Motion*

315	Unidirectional and multidirectional verbs of motion	345
316	Conjugation of verbs of motion	346
317	Imperatives of verbs of motion	346
318	Past tense of verbs of motion	347
319	'To go': <b>идти/ходить</b> and <b>ехать/ездить</b>	347
320	Functions of unidirectional verbs of motion	348
321	Unidirectional verbs in frequentative contexts	349

322 Functions of multidirectional verbs of motion	350
323 Use of the past tense of a multidirectional verb to denote a single return journey	352
324 The verbs <b>нести́, носить́; вести́, водить́; везти́, возить́</b>	353
325 Translation of 'to drive'	354
326 Perfectives of unidirectional verbs	354
327 Special meanings of <b>пойти́</b>	355
328 <b>Не пошёл</b> and <b>не ходи́л</b>	356
329 Perfectives of multidirectional verbs	356
330 Figurative and idiomatic uses of verbs of motion	357
331 Compound verbs of motion	358
332 Stems of compound verbs of motion	359
333 Spelling rules in the formation of compound verbs of motion	360
334 Prefixed verbs of motion	360
335 Use of the imperfective past of a compound verb of motion to denote an action and its reverse	361
336 Figurative and idiomatic uses of compound verbs of motion	362
337 Perfectives in <b>с-</b> based on multidirectional verbs	363
338 Perfectives in <b>за-, из-</b> and <b>на-</b> based on multidirectional verbs	364

### *Participles*

339 Participles. Introductory comments	365
340 Present active participle. Formation	365
341 Stress in the present active participle	366
342 The past active participle. Formation	367
343 Stress in the past active participle	368
344 The imperfective passive participle. Formation	368
345 Stress in the imperfective passive participle	369
346 Verbs which have no imperfective passive participle	369
347 Formation of passive participles from secondary imperfectives whose primaries have no participle	370
348 The perfective passive participle. Introductory comments	370
349 Formation (infinitives in <b>-ать/-ять</b> )	370
350 Stress in the participles from <b>дать</b> and its compounds	371

351	Formation of the long-form (attributive) participle from verbs in <b>-ать/ять</b>	371
352	Formation of the short-form participle from second-conjugation verbs in <b>-ить/-еть</b>	372
353	Consonant mutation in participles from second-conjugation infinitives in <b>-ить/-еть</b>	373
354	Formation of the long-form (attributive) participle from second-conjugation verbs in <b>-ить/-еть</b>	374
355	Formation of perfective passive participles (short form) from verbs in <b>-ти, -чь, -зть, -сть</b>	374
356	Long-form participles from verbs in <b>-ти, -чь, -зть, -сть</b>	375
357	Perfective passive participles in <b>-т</b>	375
358	The long form of participles in <b>-т</b>	377
359	Functions of short-form participles	377
360	Functions of long-form participles	378
361	Agreement of long-form participle and noun	380
362	Participial synonymy	381
363	Participles as adjectives and nouns	382
364	Participial adjectives	383
365	Distinction between short-form adjectives and short-form participles	384
366	Impersonal function of short-form participles	385

### *Gerunds*

367	The gerund. Introductory comments	385
368	Formation of the imperfective gerund	386
369	Stress in the imperfective gerund	387
370	Verbs with no imperfective gerund	387
371	Compensation for the lack of an imperfective gerund	388
372	The perfective gerund: formation (verbs in <b>-ть, -сть</b> ( <b>д-</b> stems))	388
373	Reflexive perfective gerunds	389
374	Perfective gerunds with alternative forms in <b>-я/-а</b>	389
375	Gerunds from perfective verbs in <b>-ти</b> and <b>-сть</b>	389
376	Gerunds from perfective verbs in <b>-чь</b> and <b>-зть</b>	390
377	Functions of the gerunds	390

378	Special features of constructions with gerunds	392
379	Reversal of the sequence of actions expressed by main verb and gerund	393
380	Gerunds as other parts of speech	393

## The Adverb

---

381	Introductory comments	395
382	Adverbs derived from adjectives	395
383	Adverbs derived from nouns	398
384	Adverbs derived from verbs	399
385	Adverbs derived from numerals	400
386	Adverbs derived from pronouns	400
387	Primary spatial adverbs	401
388	Primary adverbs of time	402
389	<b>Ужé, ужé не</b>	403
390	<b>Ещё, ещё не</b>	404
391	The temporal adverbs <b>дóлго, давнó and недáвно</b>	405
392	Primary adverbs of manner and extent	406
393	Interrelating adverbs	407
394	<b>Тóже, тáкже</b>	407
395	Indefinite adverbs (adverbs in <b>-то, -нибóдь, -либó and кóе-</b> )	409
396	The negative adverbs <b>нигдé, никудá, ниоткúда, никогдá, никáк, нискóлько</b>	411
397	The negative adverbs <b>нéгде, нéкуда, нéкогда, нéоткуда, нéзачем</b>	412
398	Comparative adverbs	413
399	Variant forms of some comparative adverbs	414
400	The superlative adverb	415

## The Preposition

---

401	Introductory comments	416
402	Primary prepositions and cases	416
403	Repetition of prepositions	418

404	The buffer vowel <b>-o</b>	418
405	Stress in primary prepositions	419
406	Adverbial prepositions	421
407	Prepositions derived from nouns and verbs	422

*Spatial Prepositions*

408	<b>В</b> and <b>на</b> + prepositional/accusative, <b>из/с</b> + genitive	422
409	The use of <b>в</b> and <b>на</b> with geographical terminology and the names of organizations, buildings and parts of buildings	424
410	Nouns which may be used with <b>в</b> and <b>на</b> , but with different meanings	426
411	Special uses of <b>с</b> + genitive	432
412	Uses of <b>в</b> and <b>на</b> when the dependent noun denotes an activity, event	432
413	<b>В</b> and <b>на</b> : extension of the spatial meanings	433

*Prepositions that Denote the Position of an Object in Relation to Another Object (Behind, in Front of, Below, on Top of etc.), or Movement to or from that Position*

414	<b>За</b> + instrumental/accusative, <b>из-за</b> + genitive	434
415	<b>За</b> + instrumental/accusative: extension of the spatial meanings	436
416	<b>Перед</b> + instrumental, <b>впередí</b> + genitive	437
417	<b>Под</b> + instrumental/accusative, <b>из-под</b> + genitive	437
418	<b>Над</b> + instrumental, <b>повёрх</b> + genitive	439
419	<b>Между</b> + instrumental, <b>среди́</b> , <b>посреди́</b> , <b>напрóтив</b> , <b>прóтив</b> , <b>вдóль</b> , <b>внè</b> , <b>внутри́</b> , <b>вну́тръ</b> , <b>вокруг</b> , <b>мимо</b> + genitive	439

*Prepositions that Denote Spatial Closeness to an Object, Movement Towards or Away from an Object, or Distance from an Object*

420	<b>У</b> + genitive, <b>к</b> + dative, <b>от</b> + genitive	441
421	<b>Близ</b> , <b>близко от</b> , <b>вòзле</b> , <b>недалеко́ от</b> , <b>неподалёку от</b> , <b>о́коло</b> , <b>пóдле</b> + genitive; <b>близко к</b> , <b>бли́же к</b> + dative; <b>рядом с</b> + instrumental	443
422	<b>При</b> + prepositional	443
423	<b>Вдали́ от</b> , <b>далеко́ от</b> , <b>пода́льше от</b> + genitive	444

*Prepositions that Denote Along, Across, Through a Spatial Area*

424	<b>По</b> + dative; <b>через, сквозь</b> + accusative; <b>поперёк, вглубь, вдоль</b> + genitive	444
-----	---	-----

*Prepositions that Denote Spatial Limit*

425	<b>До</b> + genitive, <b>по</b> + accusative	447
-----	--	-----

*Temporal Prepositions*

426	Telling the time	447
427	Days	448
428	Parts of a day	449
429	Weeks, months, years and centuries	450
430	General time words	451
431	Nouns that denote stages in a process	453
432	The weather	453
433	Festivals	454

*The Use of Prepositions to Denote Action in Relation to Various Time Limits*

434	The use of <b>с</b> + genitive, <b>до</b> + genitive/ <b>по</b> + accusative to denote terminal points in time	454
435	Use of <b>к</b> + dative and <b>под</b> + accusative to denote temporal approach	455
436	Use of <b>в/за</b> + accusative to denote the time taken to complete an action	456
437	Use of <b>в</b> + accusative to denote the period during which an action occurs a stated number of times	457
438	Use of <b>на</b> + accusative to denote the time for which something has been arranged	457
439	Use of prepositions to denote sequence in time (before, after etc.)	457
440	Temporal prepositional phrases as attributes to nouns: <b>за</b> + accusative, <b>от</b> + genitive	460
441	Positioning an event within a time span: <b>среди</b> + genitive, <b>между</b> + instrumental	461
442	Coincidence in time: <b>при</b> + prepositional	461

*Other Meanings*

443	Prepositions with causal meaning	462
444	Prepositions that denote the object of feelings and attitudes	465
445	Prepositions that denote extent	467
446	Prepositions that denote purpose	470
447	Concessive meanings expressed by prepositions	472
448	Πο + dative/accusative in distributive meaning	473

*Other Important Meanings Expressed by Prepositions*

449	Prepositions that take the accusative	474
450	Prepositions that take the genitive	477
451	Prepositions that take the dative	479
452	Prepositions that take the instrumental	481
453	Prepositions that take the prepositional	482

---

**The Conjunction**

---

454	Introductory comments	484
-----	-----------------------	-----

*Co-ordinating Conjunctions*

455	Connective conjunctions	485
456	Adversative conjunctions	486
457	Disjunctive conjunctions	488

*Subordinating Conjunctions*

458	Explanatory conjunctions	489
459	Causal conjunctions	492
460	Conjunctions of purpose	494
461	Conjunctions of result	495
462	Conditional conjunctions	496
463	Concessive conjunctions	497
464	Comparative conjunctions	497
465	Temporal conjunctions. Introductory comments	498
466	Temporal conjunctions which render 'before', 'after', 'by the time that', 'until', 'since'	499
467	Other conjunctions of time	502



---

**The Particle**

---

468	The particle. Introductory comments	505
469	The position of the particle in the sentence	506
470	The use of particles to impart different nuances of meaning	506
471	Some of the principal meanings expressed by particles	507
472	Modal functions of particles	508
473	The meanings of individual particles	510
474	The aggregation of particles for increased emphasis	517

---

**Word Order**

---

475	Introductory comments	521
476	'New' and 'given' information	521
477	Relative position of subject and verb	524
478	Subject, verb, object	525
479	The position of the adjective	527
480	The position of the adverb	528
481	Sentences that contain more than one adverb or adverbial phrase	529
482	The position of the noun or pronoun in impersonal constructions	530
483	The position of particles in the sentence	531
484	Word order in expressive styles	531
	Glossary	533
	Bibliography	540
	Subject index	549
	Word index	566

To May

---

# Preface

---

The *Comprehensive Russian Grammar* is meant for English-speaking pupils and students of Russian at the post-introductory stage. It is also a reference aid for teachers, translators and interpreters and others who use the language in a professional capacity.

The first new reference grammar of Russian to have been published in the United Kingdom since the 1950s, it is based on personal research and observation, long experience of teaching Russian at all levels from beginners up to the Honours Degree and the Civil Service Interpretership, and on a close study of reference materials by Russian, British and American linguists.

The approach is descriptive throughout, and rules of usage are constantly measured against current practice as reflected in contemporary journalistic and literary sources. It is entirely practical in conception and design and has no pretensions to theoretical disquisition. Particular emphasis is laid on problems which are of especial difficulty for the English speaker.

The grammar provides comprehensive guidance to usage, with exhaustive tabulated material and succinct explanations. It is presented in 484 sections which are further subdivided to take account of finer points of usage. It provides mainstream rules for quick reference, as well as access to the subtleties of the language for those who need more detailed information.

The intention is to provide the essential facts of the language and to tackle perennial problems such as adverbs and pronouns in -to and -нибудь, agreement, animacy, conjugation, declension, gerunds, long and short adjectives, numerals, participles, the partitive genitive, verbs of motion, and so on, as well as problems which have often received less

attention: the gender of acronyms, alphabetisms, soft-sign nouns, the differences between *в/на* and other key prepositions, and between *то́же* and *та́кже*, the use of capital letters, particles, the principles of word order etc. Treatment of verbal aspect differentiates usage in the past, future, imperative and infinitive, thus throwing the rules into sharper relief. Special emphasis is given to stress patterns.

Ease of reference is assured by comprehensive indexing of subject headings and Russian words, and by general adherence to the alphabetic principle throughout.

---

# Preface to the Second Edition

---

*A Comprehensive Russian Grammar* was first published in 1992, since when the book has been reprinted eight times, on most occasions with minor amendments. The present, second, edition of the *Grammar* takes account of the very considerable changes, both social and linguistic, that have taken place in the post-Soviet period.

The transliteration system of the Library of Congress has been added to those enumerated in section 1, but that of the British Standards Institute continues to be used throughout the *Grammar*.

Amendments have been made to sections dealing with all parts of speech, with pronunciation, the noun, the adjective, the verb and the preposition most affected.

There are three entirely new, substantial sections on word formation in the Russian noun. These comprise sections 27 (general), 28 (prefixation) and 29 (suffixation), the sections that formerly bore these numbers having been conflated with earlier sections to make room for the new material. These sections have not been curtailed in any way.

Some sections on pronunciation have been amplified by additional examples, sometimes involving new lexis, e.g. принтер 'printer', Интернет 'Internet' and экстрасенс 'psychic' in section 7. Changes have also been made to sections 12, 13, and 15 (on the pronunciation of -чн-, consonants omitted in pronunciation, and stress, respectively).

Section 17 (on the use of capital and small letters in titles and names) has been completely rewritten in the light of changes that have occurred over the past few years. Many of the changes involve new names such as Российская Федерация 'Russian Federation' and Совет Федерации

‘Council of the Federation’, but historicisms such as *Сове́тский Сою́з* ‘Soviet Union’ will clearly remain current for some time to come and have been retained. Other changes result from new official attitudes, affecting, for example, the spelling of the names of deities.

Other amended sections on the noun take account of recent neologisms, e.g. *фло́ппи* ‘floppy disk’, *папара́цци* ‘paparazzi’ (section 36), *ВИЧ* ‘HIV’, *СКВ* ‘freely-convertible currency’ (section 40), *забастко́м* ‘strike committee’ (section 42), etc. Most amendments have grammatical implications, e.g. the genitive plurals *байт* ‘byte’ and *бит* ‘bit’ (section 56), the plurals *техноло́гии* ‘technologies’ and *эконо́мики* ‘economies’ (section 48), the use of the accusative case in *заказа́л вино́* ‘ordered some wine’ (section 83), and so on, others reflect name changes of the past decade (e.g. the replacement of the former place name *Ки́ров* ‘Kirov’, section 71).

Amendments to the sections on adjectives also reflect changes in nomenclature, e.g. *ду́мский* ‘Duma’ (adj.), or amplify extant categories, e.g. *ли́зинговый* ‘leasing’ (adj.) (both section 148).

Changes to the sections on the verb include an increase in the number of biaspectuals with alternative perfectives (e.g. *профинанси́ровать* ‘to finance’, section 237), and the amplification of other sections.

Section 404 on the buffer vowel -o in prepositions has been expanded, as has section 424 on *через* and *по* in the meaning ‘across’, and section 451 on *по* with nouns that denote means of communication (*по мобі́льному* ‘on a mobile’, *по фа́ксы* ‘by fax’), including variant usage in conjunction with *телеви́дение* ‘television’. The preposition *поря́дка* in the meaning ‘approximation’ has been added to section 445.

The bibliography has been expanded to include new dictionaries, grammars and other works of the mid- to late 1990s, especially those specifically describing the language at the end of the twentieth century (Comrie, Stone and Polinsky, Dulichenko, Karaulov, Kostomarov, Offord, Rakhmanova and Suzdal'tseva, Ryazanova-Clarke and Wade, Shaposhnikov and Zemskaya), as well as new journals, newspapers, magazines and prose works.

A glossary of grammatical terms has also been included in the new edition. The table of contents and indexes have been revised to take account of new material and revised pagination.

TW, Glasgow 2000

---

# Preface to the Third Edition

---

When Professor Terence Wade died in 2005, he was already well advanced in his plans to produce a third edition of *A Comprehensive Russian Grammar*. This would have included appendices on geographical terms, irregular verbs, irregular noun plurals, indeclinable nouns and abbreviations.

Since it remains unclear just what form these appendices would take I have chosen not to attempt to second-guess. Indeed, it remains my conviction that Professor Wade's grammar is the most comprehensive and illuminating of all Russian grammars currently available for student use. It would not be advisable to make it unwieldy or too detailed for its own good!

My purpose in preparing the third edition is not to seek to emulate Professor Wade's ambition, but rather to enhance the status and significance of the grammar throughout the scholarly world by consolidation and a few select additions. I have been guided by Professor Wade's own desire, in planning the third edition, to 'ensure that the essential balance of the book is maintained'. I have therefore chosen to expand the sources and reference materials used, including writers and texts from well-known modern Russian writers, as well as from the political and journalistic discourse of post-Soviet Russia. In only one or two cases have explanations been 'tweaked', but the grammar itself remains largely as Professor Wade presented it in the first edition in 1992.

I am indebted to colleagues from the Department of European Studies and Modern Languages of the University of Bath for their advice and support during my time spent working on this edition, and for their invaluable help with recent developments in the language, especially

vocabulary. My fellow teachers Natasha Zhuravkina and Elena Kidd have been particularly helpful. I would also like to thank staff and students of Moscow State University who have studied on short courses at the University of Bath in 2008 and 2009, especially Lidiia Polubichenko, Elena Aleksandrova and Maria Guzenko.

David Gillespie  
Bath, November 2009



---

# Acknowledgements

---

I wish to thank the following for advising on aspects of the book: Natalya Bogoslavskaya (University of Leeds), Sheelagh Graham (University of Strathclyde), Larissa Ryazanova (Edinburgh University), who also read the page proofs, Professor Dennis Ward (University of Edinburgh), Nijole White (University of Strathclyde); also Dr Marina Kozyreva (Moscow and Leeds Universities) for reading through a late draft and writing a helpful report. I am particularly grateful to my specialist readers, Dr R. Bivon (University of Essex, formerly of the University of East Anglia) and Dr Svetlana Miloslavskaya (Pushkin Institute, Moscow) for writing detailed reports at an early stage, thus enabling me to make substantial improvements. I also valued a lengthy consultation with Svetlana Miloslavskaya which allowed me to make amendments to the final draft. My editor, Professor Michael Holman (University of Leeds), supplied helpful and detailed critical analyses of each chapter during the writing of the grammar and I am most grateful to him for his support and encouragement and for the many insights that he provided. I should also like to thank Professor Glanville Price (University College of Wales), general editor of Blackwell's series of grammars of European languages, for his comments on some early chapters, particularly that on verbs. Any errors are, of course, entirely the responsibility of the author.

I wish to thank my late mother, who first encouraged me to learn Russian.

The book is dedicated to my wife, May, who bore with me throughout the thousands of hours and nine drafts that went into this grammar.

Finally, I would like to express my appreciation to the publishers of the books I was able to consult (see bibliography): Akademiya nauk, Birmingham University, Collets International, CUP, Dover Publications, Durham University, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Hutchinson, Kniga, MGU, Nauka, Oliver and Boyd, OUP, Pan Books, Pergamon, Progress Publishers, Prosveshchenie, Russkii yazyk, Sovetskaya entsiklopediya, University of East Anglia, University of London Press, Vysshaya shkola.

TW

---

# Acknowledgements to the Second Edition

---

I am grateful to Russian colleagues who have helped with the new edition, particularly Professor V. G. Kostomarov, Rector of the Pushkin Institute, Moscow, for allowing me to carry out research at the Institute on a number of occasions.

I wish to thank Professor G. Corbett (University of Surrey) and Professor B. Scherr (Dartmouth College) for their valuable comments on the first edition of the *Grammar* and suggestions for improving the second.

I also wish to express my thanks to Mrs Nijole White, my colleague at the University of Strathclyde, who read the sections on word formation in the Russian noun and gave valuable advice on presentation.

I should also like to thank editorial and production staff at Blackwell: Tessa Harvey, Louise Spencely, Lorna Berrett, Brian Johnson, Helen Rappaport, and proof reader Penny Dole for their work in producing this second edition of the book.

Above all I am again indebted to my editor, Professor Michael Holman, of the University of Leeds, who has supplied unstinting supportive and professional assistance throughout, especially in preparing the new sections on word formation in the Russian noun.

---

# Abbreviations

---

The following abbreviations are used:

acc.	accusative
adj.	adjective
cf.	compare
dat.	dative
f.	feminine
fig.	figurative
gen.	genitive
imper.	imperative
impf.	imperfective
infin.	infinitive
instr.	instrumental
lit.	literally
m.	masculine
n.	neuter
nom.	nominative
part.	participle
pf.	perfective
pl.	plural
prep.	prepositional
sing.	singular
theatr.	theatrical
trans.	transitive

---

# Introduction

---

## 1 The Cyrillic alphabet

---

(1) The Russian Cyrillic alphabet contains 33 letters, including 20 consonants, 10 vowels, a semi-consonant/semi-vowel (Ѣ), a hard sign (Ѣ) and a soft sign (ѣ).

(2) There are a number of different systems for transliterating the Cyrillic alphabet. Three of these, that of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO), that of the British Standards Institution (BSI) (whose system is used throughout this *Grammar*), and that of the Library of Congress (LC) are listed alongside the Cyrillic alphabet, as well as the Russian names of the individual letters:

Cyrillic letters	Letter name	ISO	BSI	LC
Аа	[a]	a	a	a
Бб	[бэ]	b	b	b
Вв	[вэ]	v	v	v
Гг	[гэ]	g	g	g
Дд	[дэ]	d	d	d
Ее	[е]	e	e	e
Ёё	[ё]	ë	ë	ë
Жж	[жэ]	ž	zh	zh
Зз	[зэ]	z	z	z
Ии	[и]	i	i	i
Йй	[и краткое]	j	ï	ï
Кк	[ка]	k	k	k
Лл	[эль]	l	l	l

Cyrillic letters	Letter name	ISO	BSI	LC
Мм	[эм]	m	m	m
Нн	[эн]	n	n	n
Оо	[о]	o	o	o
Пп	[пэ]	p	p	p
Рр	[эр]	r	r	r
Сс	[эс]	s	s	s
Тт	[тэ]	t	t	t
Уу	[у]	u	u	u
Фф	[эф]	f	f	f
Хх	[ха]	h/ch	kh	kh
Цц	[цэ]	c	ts	ts
Чч	[че]	č	ch	ch
Шш	[ша]	š	sh	sh
Щщ	[ща]	šč	shch	shch
Ъъ	[твёрдый знак]	”	”	”
Ыы	[ы]	y	ȳ	y
Ьь	[Мягкий знак]	,	,	,
Ээ	[э оборотное]	ě	é	è
Юю	[ю]	ju	yu	iü
Яя	[я]	ja	ya	ia

### Note

- Certain letters with diacritics and accents which appear in the standard BSI system (ě for э, ě for й, é for э, ȳ for ы) are used without diacritics and accents here.
- The ligatures used over certain combinations of letters in the standard LC system (ts, iü, ia) are often omitted by other users.
- An apostrophe (') for the soft sign (ь) is used only in the bibliography.
- The endings -ый/-ий are rendered as -y in names.

## 2 The international phonetic alphabet (IPA)

The following symbols from the IPA are used in the Introduction for the phonetic transcription of Russian words.

### Vowels

i	as in ил	[il]
ɪ	as in пыл	[pɪl]
ɪ	as the first vowel in игла	[ɪ'gla]
ɪ	as the first vowel in дыра	[dɪ'ra]

---

е	as in лес	[lɛs]
е	as in весь	[vɛʂ]
а	as in рад	[rat]
æ	as in пять	[pæt]
л	as the first vowel in один	[l'ɖin]
э	as the first vowel in хорошо	[xɛrl'ʃo]
о	as in моx	[mox]
ö	as in тётя	['töʈə]
u	as in бук	[buk]
ü	as in ключ	[k ütʃ]

### Semi-consonant/semi-vowel

j	as in бой	[boj]
---	-----------	-------

### Consonants

р	as in пол	[pol]
р	as in пёс	[pos]
б	as in бак	[bak]
б	as in бел	[bɛl]
т	as in том	[tom]
т	as in тем	[tɛm]
д	as in дом	[dom]
д	as in день	[dɛn]
к	as in как	[kak]
к	as in кем	[kɛm]
г	as in гол	[gol]
г	as in гид	[git]
ф	as in флора	['florə]
ф	as in фен	[fɛn]
в	as in вот	[vot]
v	as in вино	[vɪ'no]
с	as in сам	[sam]
с	as in сев	[sɛf]
з	as in зуб	[zup]
з	as in зёбра	['zɛbrə]
ш	as in шум	[ʃum]
ж	as in жук	[ʒuk]
х	as in хам	[xam]
х	as in химик	['ximɪk]
ц	as in щекá	[ʃɕɪ'ka]
ts	as in цех	[tsɛx]

tʃ	as in чин	[tʃin]
m	as in мол	[mol]
m̥	as in мел	[m̥el]
n	as in нос	[nos]
n̥	as in нет	[n̥et]
l	as in лак	[lak]
l̥	as in ляг	[l̥ak]
r	as in рак	[rak]
ʁ	as in река́	[ʁuˈka]
j	as in яма	[ˈjamə]

## Pronunciation

### 3 Stressed vowels

---

Russian has ten vowel letters:

<b>а</b>	<b>э</b>	<b>ы</b>	<b>о</b>	<b>у</b>
<b>я</b>	<b>е</b>	<b>и</b>	<b>ё</b>	<b>ю</b>

(1) **А** is pronounced with the mouth opened a little wider than in the pronunciation of ‘a’ in English ‘father’, e.g. зал [zal] ‘hall’.

(2) **Э** is pronounced like ‘e’ in ‘end’, but the mouth is opened a little wider and the tongue is further from the palate than in articulating English ‘e’ in ‘end’, e.g. это [ˈetə] ‘this is’.

(3) **У** is pronounced with the tongue drawn back and the lips rounded and protruding. The sound is similar to but shorter than the vowel in ‘school’, e.g. бук [buk] ‘beech’.

(4) **О** is also pronounced with rounded and protruding lips, but to a lesser extent than in the pronunciation of **у**. The sound is similar to the vowel in English ‘bought’, e.g. бок [bok] ‘side’.

(5) The vowel **Ы** is pronounced with the tongue drawn back as in the pronunciation of **у**, but with the lips spread, not rounded or protruding, e.g. сын [sɪn] ‘son’.

(6) The vowels **я** [ja], **е** [je], **ё** [jo] and **ю** [ju] are ‘iotated’ variants of а, э, о and у (i.e. they are pronounced like those vowels preceded by the sound [j]). The vowel **и** resembles ‘ea’ in English ‘cheap’, but is a ‘closer’ sound, that is, the centre of the tongue is nearer to the hard palate in articulation, e.g. мир [mɪr] ‘world, peace’. After a preposition



or other word ending in a hard consonant, however, stressed initial **н** is pronounced [ɪ]: от Иг<sup>т</sup>оря [ɪ'tɪgəɾə], cf. also 4 (4) note.

### Note

Vowels can be classified as:

- (a) **back** vowels (pronounced with the back part of the tongue raised towards the back of the palate): **у/ю, о/ё**;
- (b) **central** vowels (pronounced with the central part of the tongue raised towards the central part of the palate): **ы, а/я**;
- (c) **front** vowels (pronounced with the central part of the tongue raised towards the front of the palate): **и, э/е**.

## 4 Unstressed vowels

### (1) Unstressed у, ю, и and ы

The sound of unstressed **у/ю** is similar to that of English 'u' in 'put': дугá [du'ga] 'arc', юлá [ju'la] 'top'. Unstressed **и** and **ы** are shorter and pronounced in a more 'relaxed' fashion than their stressed equivalents: игрá [t'gra] 'game', былá [bɪ'la] 'was'. Ё does not appear in unstressed position. The other vowels are 'reduced' in unstressed position.

### (2) Reduction of о and а

(i) The vowels **о** and **а** are pronounced as [o] and [a] only when they appear in stressed position: дом [dom], зал [zal]. In unstressed position they are reduced, **о** being the vowel most affected by various forms of reduction resulting from its position in relation to the stress.

(ii) In pre-tonic position or as the unstressed initial letter in a word **о** and **а** are pronounced [ɐ]: потóm [pɐ'tom] 'afterwards', одѝн [ɐ'dɪn] 'one', парóm [pɐ'rom] 'ferry', акýла [ɐ'kulə] 'shark'. This also applies to pre-tonic prepositions: под мóрем [pɐ'd m oɾum] 'under the sea', над дóмом [nɐ'd doməm] 'above the house'. The combinations **аа, ао, оа, оо** are pronounced [ɐɐ], e.g. сообразѝть [sɐɐbrɐ'zɪtʲ] 'to comprehend'.

(iii) In pre-pre-tonic position (except as initial letters, see (ii)) or in post-tonic position both vowels are pronounced [ə]: thus парохóд [pəɾɐ'xot] 'steamer', молодóй [mɐɾɐ'doj] 'young', рáно [ɾə'nə] 'early', вѝлка [vɪlkə] 'fork'. This also applies to prepositions (под водóй [pɐd vɐ'doj] 'under water', над головóй [nɐd gɐɾɐ'voj] 'overhead') and to the initial letters of words governed by prepositions (в огорóде [v əgɐɾə'roɟɪ] 'in the market garden' (cf. огорóд [ɐgɐɾə'tot] 'market garden')).

*Note*

- (a) Unstressed **о** is pronounced [o] in a number of words of foreign origin (какáо ‘cocoa’, ráдио ‘radio’, хаóс ‘chaos’), with an optional [o] in véто ‘veto’, досьé ‘dossier’, шоссé ‘highway’ and some other words. In certain cases, pronunciation is differentiated stylistically. The pronunciation [ʌ] in words such as поэт ‘poet’ and шоссé ‘highway’, said to be the more colloquial variant, has gained ground in educated speech and is found even in the pronunciation of foreign names such as Шопén [ʃʌ'pɛn]/[ʃo'pɛn] ‘Chopin’, especially where these have gained common currency (e.g. Тольятти ‘Togliatti’). However, [o] is retained in words where it follows another vowel: трío ‘trio’.
- (b) The vowel **а** is pronounced [ɪ] in pre-tonic position after **ч** and **щ**: thus часы́ [tʃɪ'sɪ] ‘clock’, щадíть [ʃɪ'dɪtʲ] ‘to spare’. The pronunciation of unstressed **а** as [ɪ] after **ж**, **ш** is now limited for many speakers to жалéть [ʒɪ'ɫɛtʲ] ‘to regret’, к сожалéнию [kʲsəʒɪ'ɫɛnɪju] ‘unfortunately’ and end-stressed plural oblique cases of лóшадь ‘horse’, e.g. gen. pl. лошаде́й [ləʃɪ'dɛj]. **Ца** is pronounced [tsɪ] in the oblique cases of some numerals: двадцатí [dvətɪtʲɪ] ‘twenty’ (gen.).

(3) Reduction of **е** and **я**

- (i) In pre-tonic position both **е** and **я** are pronounced [(j)ɪ]: язы́к [jɪ'zɪk] ‘language’, перевóд [pɪvɪ'vot] ‘translation’. Thus, разре́дить ‘to thin out’ and разря́дить ‘to unload’ have the same pronunciation.
- (ii) In post-tonic position **е** is pronounced [ɪ] (пóле ['poɪ] ‘field’), while **я** is usually pronounced [ɐ] (ды́ня ['dɪɲɐ] ‘melon’). However, post-tonic **я** is pronounced [ɪ] before a soft consonant (па́мьятъ ['paɲɪtʲ] ‘memory’) and in non-final post-tonic position (вы́глянул ['vɪglɪnʊl] ‘looked out’).

(4) Reduction of **э**

Э is pronounced [ɪ] in unstressed position (э́тап [ɪ'tap] ‘stage’).

*Note*

Unstressed initial **и** and **э** and conjunction **и** are pronounced [ɪ] after a preposition or other word ending in a hard consonant (see 3 (6)): в Ита́лию [v ɪ'taɪɭju] ‘to Italy’, брат идёт к Ива́ну [brat ɪ'dot k ɪ'vanu] ‘my brother is on his way to see Ivan’, над эква́тором [nəd ɪ'kvatərəm] ‘above the equator’. **И** is also pronounced [ɪ] in certain stump compounds, e.g. Госизда́т [gostɪ'zdat] ‘State Publishing House’.

## 5 Hard and soft consonants

With the exception of **ж**, **ц** and **ш**, which are invariably hard, and **ч** and **щ**, which are invariably soft, all Russian consonants can be pronounced hard or soft.

### (1) Hard consonants

(i) A hard consonant is a consonant which appears at the end of a word (e.g. the **м** in **дом** [dom] 'house', the **т** in **вот** [vot] 'here is') or is followed by **а**, **ы**, **о** or **у** (**э** appears only as an *initial* letter, except in acronyms such as **нэп** 'NEP' (New Economic Policy) and rare words such as **сэр** 'sir'). Thus, the consonants in the words **голова́** [gəɫə'va] 'head', **мы́ло** ['mɪlə] 'soap' and **ду́ма** ['dumə] 'thought' are all hard.

(ii) Most hard consonants, e.g. **б**, **в**, **г**, **з**, **к**, **м**, **п**, **с**, **ф**, are pronounced in similar fashion to their English counterparts, i.e. 'b' in 'bone', 'v' in 'van', 'g' in 'gone', 'z' in 'zone', 'c' in 'come', 'm' in 'money', 'p' in 'pun', 's' in 'sun', 'f' in 'fun'. However, **к** and **п** (and **т**; see (iii)) lack the slight aspiration of 'k', 'p' and 't'.

(iii) In pronouncing the dentals **д** [d], **т** [t] and **н** [n], the tip of the tongue is pressed against the back of the upper teeth in the angle between teeth and gums.

(iv) **Р** is a moderately 'trilled' [r]. **Л** is pronounced with the tip of the tongue in the angle between the upper teeth and the gum, and the middle of the tongue curved downwards. The 'l' sound in English 'bubble' is a good starting-point for the pronunciation of this letter.

(v) **Х** sounds as 'ch' in 'loch' or German 'acht', but is formed a little further forward in the mouth.

(vi) Unlike other consonants, **ж**, **ц** and **ш** are always pronounced hard (see, however, note (b), below). This means in practice that the vowels **е** and **и** are pronounced as **э** and **ы** after **ж**, **ц** and **ш** (**жест** [ʒest] 'gesture', **жир** [ʒɪr] 'fat', **цех** [tsɐx] 'workshop', **цирк** [tsɪrk] 'circus', **шест** [ʃest] 'pole', **машина́** [mɪɫʲɪnə] 'car') while **ѐ** is pronounced as **о** after **ж** and **ш** (**жёлоб** ['ʒoləp] 'groove', **шёлк** [ʃolk] 'silk'). A soft sign (as in **рожь** [roj] 'rye') has no softening effect on the pronunciation of **ж** or **ш**.

### Note

(a) Neither a soft sign nor the vowel **ѐ** can be written after **ц**.

- (b) **Ш** is sounded hard in the loan words парашют [pəɾɐʎut] ‘parachute’ and брошюра [brɐʎʊɾə] ‘brochure’, while **ж** is pronounced soft in жюри [ʒüʎi] ‘jury’.

## (2) Soft consonants

(i) A soft consonant is a consonant (other than **ж**, **ц** or **ш**) followed by a soft sign, e.g. **ль** in сталь ‘steel’, or by **я**, **е**, **и**, **ё** or **ю**. Thus, the initial consonants in мята [ʎatə] ‘mint’, лес [lɛs] ‘forest’, пил [pil] ‘was drinking’, нёбо [ʎobə] ‘palate’ and дюна [ʎunə] ‘dune’ are all soft.

(ii) Soft consonants are pronounced with the centre of the tongue raised towards the hard palate, as in articulating **и**, for example. Correct rendering of the vowels **я** [ja], **е** [je], **и** [i], **ё** [jo] and **ю** [ju] will assist in the articulation of the preceding soft consonants. Soft [ʎ] as in только ‘only’ is similar to ‘ll’ in ‘million’, with the tip of the tongue against the teeth-ridge and the front of the tongue pressed against the hard palate.

(iii) Soft consonants may also appear at the end of words, e.g. **шь** and **ть** in топь [top] ‘swamp’ and мать [mat] ‘mother’; the final sounds in these words are similar to those of the initial consonants in ‘pure’ and ‘tune’ (standard British English ‘Received Pronunciation’).

(iv) Unlike other consonants, **ч** and **щ** are always pronounced soft. In practice this means that the vowels **а**, **о** and **у** are pronounced as [ja], [jo] and [ju] following these consonants (час ‘hour’, чопорный ‘grim’, чугу́н ‘cast iron’, поща́да ‘mercy’, щу́ка ‘pike’).

(v) The consonant **ш** is pronounced as a long soft **ш** [ʃʃ] (e.g. защи́щать [zəʃʃʎʎʎtɕʎ] ‘to defend’); the pronunciation [ʃtʃ] is falling into disuse.

(vi) The double consonants **жч** (мужчи́на ‘man’), **зч** (зака́зчик ‘client’), **сч** (подпи́счик ‘subscriber’) are pronounced like **ш** [ʃʃ]. The pronunciation [ʃtʃ], however, is preferred in prefixed forms such as бесчи́сленный ‘innumerable’, расчлени́ть ‘to dismember’.

(vii) **Жж** and **Зж** may be pronounced either as a double soft **ж** (with the front of the tongue raised towards the hard palate) in words such as во́жжи [ʎoʒʒɪ] ‘reins’, дро́жжи [ʎoʒʒɪ] ‘yeast’, жжёт ‘burns’, жужжа́ть ‘to buzz’, брызже́т ‘sprays’, визжа́ть ‘to scream’, е́зжу ‘I travel’, поезжа́й! ‘go!’, по́зже ‘later’, especially in the speech of the older generation, as well as in that of actors and professionally trained announcers, or alternatively as a double hard **ж** [ʎoʒʒɪtɕ], a pronunciation preferred by very many younger speakers. **Зж** is invariably pronounced as hard [ʒʒ] across the boundary between prefix and stem: изжы́ть ‘to

eradicate'. The cluster **жд** in **дождя** 'of rain' etc. is pronounced as soft **жж** by some speakers and as [ʒd] by others.

### (3) Use of hard and soft consonants to differentiate meaning

Hard and soft consonants may be used to differentiate meaning, cf. **лук** [luk] 'onions' and **люк** [lʉk] 'hatch', **мат** [mat] 'checkmate' and **мать** [matʲ] 'mother' etc.

## 6 Double palatalization

Some words contain two adjacent soft consonants, a phenomenon known as 'double palatalization' or 'regressive softening'. The following combinations of letters are involved:

(1) [dʲ], [tʲ] and [nʲ] followed by other soft dentals or by [ʃ], [ʒ], [tʃ], [ʃʃ] or [ʎ]: **оттепель** ['otʲtʲɪpʲɪ] 'thaw', **дни** [dʲnʲi] 'days', **кончик** ['kɒntʃʲɪk] 'tip', **гонщик** ['gɒnʃʲʃʲɪk] 'racer', **пятница** ['pʲætʲnʲɪtsə] 'Friday', **пенсия** ['pʲeɲsʲjə] 'pension'.

(2) [ʃ] or [ʒ] followed by a soft dental, [ʃ], [ʒ] or [ʎ]: **возник** [vɒ'zʲnʲɪk] 'arose', **раздел** [rɒ'zʲdʲɛl] 'partition', **здесь** [zʲdʲɛʃ] 'here', **снег** [ʃnʲɛk] 'snow', **стена** [ʃtʲɪ'na] 'wall', **вместе** ['vmʲɛʃtʲɪ] 'together'.

### *Note*

In some words, single or double palatalization is possible: **две** [dʲvʲɛ] or [dʲvʲɛ] 'two', **дверь** [dʲvʲɛʃ] or [dʲvʲɛʃ] 'door', **зверь** [zʲvʲɛʃ] or [zʲvʲɛʃ] 'wild animal', **петля** ['pʲetʲlʲə] or ['pʲetʲlʲə] 'loop', **свет** [sʲvʲɛt] or [sʲvʲɛt] 'light', **след** [sʲlʲɛt] or [sʲlʲɛt] 'trace', **четверть** ['tʃʲetʲvʲɪʃtʲ] or ['tʃʲetʲvʲɪʃtʲ] 'quarter'.

## 7 Non-palatalization of consonants in some loan words

(1) The consonants **т** and **д** are pronounced hard before **е** in certain loan words and foreign names (**термос** ['tɛrməs] 'thermos flask', **антенна** 'aerial', **апартейд** 'apartheid', **ателье** 'workshop', **бифштекс** 'beefsteak', **бутерброд** 'sandwich', **отель** 'hotel', **партёр** 'stalls', **принтер** 'printer', **стенд** 'stand'), in words with the prefix **интер-** (**Интернёт** 'Internet'), **кодекс** 'legal code', **модель** 'model' **стюардесса** 'stewardess' and in many words with the prefix **де-** (**деградация** 'degradation').

(2) Hard **з** has been retained in *безе* ‘meringue’; hard **м** in *консоме́* ‘consommé’, *резюме́* ‘résumé’; hard **н** in *кашне́* ‘scarf’, *бизнес* ‘business’, *киберне́тика* ‘cybernetics’, *тонне́ль* ‘tunnel’, *турне́* ‘tour’, *фоне́тика* ‘phonetics’, *эне́ргия* ‘power’; hard **п** in *купе́* ‘compartment’; hard **р** in *каба́ре* ‘cabaret’, *реле́* ‘relay’; hard **с** in *шоссе́* ‘highway’, *экстра́сенса́* ‘a psychic’; and hard **ф** in *кафе́* ‘cafe’.

#### *Note*

A hard consonant is more likely to be retained in foreign loan words immediately preceding the stressed vowel (e.g. *те́ннис* ‘tennis’). Dental consonants (**д, т, н**) are more likely to remain hard than labials (**б, п, м**).

---

## 8 Hard sign and soft sign

---

(1) The hard sign appears only between a hard consonant — usually at the end of a prefix — and a stem beginning **я, е, ё** or **ю**: *отъе́зд* [ɫ'tjɛst] ‘departure’, *объя́снить* ‘to explain’.

(2) A soft sign appearing between a consonant and **я, е, ё** or **ю** indicates that the consonant is soft and that the sound **й** [j] intervenes between consonant and vowel: *се́мья* [sɨ'mjja] ‘family’. See also 5 (2) (i) and (iii).

---

## 9 The reflexive suffix -сь/-ся

---

(1) The pronunciation of **сь** as [sɨ] is widespread: *бо́юсь* [bɫ'juɨ] ‘I fear’, *бо́ясь* [bɫ'jaɨ] ‘fearing’ etc.

(2) The suffix **-ся** is usually pronounced [sə] in the infinitive (*мы́ться* ‘to wash’) and the present tense (*мо́ется* ‘he washes’), though an alternative soft pronunciation [sɨ] is also found in the second-person singular and first-person plural.

(3) [sɨ] is preferred in participles (*сме́ющийся* [sɨ] ‘laughing’), the imperative (*не сме́йся* ‘don’t laugh’) and the past tense (*он сме́ялся* ‘he was laughing’) — except for forms in **-ссия** or **-зся** (*па́сся* [p'assɨ] ‘was grazing’).

---

## 10 Effect of a soft consonant on a vowel in the preceding syllable

---

(1) **Э** and **е** are pronounced [ɛ] and [je] in stressed position when followed by a hard consonant (e.g. *э́то* [ɛtə] ‘this is’, *ле́с* [lɛs] ‘forest’),

but as [e] and [je] (similar to French ‘e acute’ [é]) when followed by a soft consonant (e.g. эти [‘eʲtɨ] ‘these’, весь [vʲesʲ] ‘all’).

(2) **Я** is pronounced as [æ], **ѐ** as [ö] and **ю** as [ü] preceding a soft consonant: мяч [mʲætʃ] ‘ball’, тётя [‘tʲötʲə] ‘aunt’, ключ [kʲlʲütʃ] ‘key’.

(3) **А, о** and **ы** are also affected as the tongue is raised closer to the palate in anticipation of a following soft consonant (e.g. мать ‘mother’, ночь ‘night’, пыль ‘dust’, where **а, о** and **ы** are pronounced as if followed by a much-reduced **и** sound).

## 11 Voiced and unvoiced consonants

(1) Some consonants are pronounced with vibration of the vocal cords (‘voiced’ consonants), and others without such vibration (‘unvoiced’ consonants).

(2) There are six pairs of voiced and unvoiced equivalents:

Voiced	Unvoiced
б	п
г	к
з	с
д	т
в	ф
ж	ш

The eight other consonants include the unvoiced **ц, х, ч, щ** and the voiced sonants **л, р, м, н**.

(3) **Б, г, з, д, в, ж** are pronounced as their unvoiced counterparts when they appear in final position or before a final soft sign.

лоб ‘forehead’	is pronounced [lop]
луг ‘meadow’	is pronounced [luk]
раз ‘time’	is pronounced [ras]
сад ‘garden’	is pronounced [sat]
лев ‘lion’	is pronounced [lʲef]
муж ‘husband’	is pronounced [mʲuf]

(4) When a voiced and an unvoiced consonant appear side by side, the first assimilates to the second. Thus, voiced consonant + unvoiced

consonant are both pronounced unvoiced, while unvoiced consonant + voiced consonant are both pronounced voiced.

(i) **Voiced + unvoiced (both pronounced unvoiced)**

г <sup>у</sup> б <sup>к</sup> а	‘sponge’	is pronounced [ˈgʊpkə]
заг <sup>с</sup>	‘registry office’	is pronounced [zaks]
ре́зко	‘sharply’	is pronounced [ˈrʲeskə]
ло́дка	‘boat’	is pronounced [ˈlotkə]
вхо́дит	‘goes in’	is pronounced [ˈfxodʲɪt]
ло́жка	‘spoon’	is pronounced [ˈloʃkə]

*Note*

- Devoicing also takes place on the boundary between preposition and noun or adjective: в ко́мнате [ˈf komnətʲ] ‘in the room’, под сто́лом [pət stɐˈlom] ‘under the table’.
- The devoicing of a final consonant may in turn cause the devoicing of the consonant which precedes it: визг [visk] ‘scream’, дрозд [drost] ‘thrush’.
- Г is pronounced as [x] in лёгкий ‘light, easy’, легче ‘easier’, мягкий ‘soft’ and мягче ‘softer’, as well as in Бог ‘God’ (only in the singular nominative case, however). The initial consonant in Го́споди! ‘Lord!’ is now usually pronounced as [g], though [h] is still heard. The noun бухга́лтер ‘book-keeper’ is the only word in which хг is pronounced as [h].

(ii) **Unvoiced + voiced (both pronounced voiced)**

футбо́л	‘football’	is pronounced [fuˈdbol]
к до́му	‘towards the house’	is pronounced [ˈg domu]
про́сьба	‘request’	is pronounced [ˈprozʲbə]
та́кже	‘also’	is pronounced [ˈtagʲzʲ]
ма́шбюро́	‘typing pool’	is pronounced [mazʲbuˈro]

*Note*

- The voicing of consonants also occurs at the boundary between words, especially when the second word is a particle or other unstressed form: Я спас бы́ егó [ˈspaz bʲtʲ] ‘I would have saved him’. Ц is voiced as [dz] in such circumstances (Оте́ц бы́л до́ма [ɐˈtʲedz bʲɪl] ‘Father was in’) and ч as [dʒ] (до́чь бы́ла [dodʒ bʲtʲla] ‘the daughter was’).
- В has no voicing effect on a preceding unvoiced consonant, e.g. тво́й [tvoj] ‘your’.



## 12 The pronunciation of -чн-

(1) **-чн-** is pronounced [ʃn] in certain words (конечно [kl'ɲɛʃnə] 'of course', нарочно 'on purpose', очечник 'spectacle case', прачечная 'laundry', скучно 'boring', яичница 'fried eggs'), as well as in the patronymics Ильинична 'Ilinichna', Саввична 'Savvichna' and Никитична 'Nikitichna'.

(2) However, the pronunciation [ʧn] is used in more 'learned' words such as алчный ['altʃntʃ] 'greedy', античный 'ancient' добавочный 'additional', and конечный 'ultimate'.

(3) **-чн-** is pronounced either as [ʃn] or [ʧn] in булочная 'bakery' and молочная 'dairy'. Коричневый 'brown' is pronounced with [ʃn].

### Note

**Ч** is also pronounced [ʃ] in что 'that' and чтобы 'in order to'.

## 13 Consonants omitted in pronunciation

In some groups of three or more consonants one is omitted in pronunciation. Thus, the first **в** is not pronounced in здравствуйте! 'hallo!', чувство 'feeling' (however, it **is** pronounced in девственный 'virgin' and нравственный 'moral'), **д** is not pronounced in звёздный 'starry', ландшафт 'landscape' поздно 'late', праздник 'festival' or сердце 'heart' (however, it **is** pronounced in бездна 'abyss'), **л** is not pronounced in солнце 'sun' (however, it **is** pronounced in солнечный 'solar') and **т** is not pronounced in грустный 'sad', известный 'well-known', лестный 'flattering', местный 'local', окрестность 'vicinity', частный 'private' and счастливый 'happy' (however, the first **т** in постлать 'to spread' **is** pronounced).

## 14 The pronunciation of double consonants

Double consonants are pronounced as two letters across the boundary between prefix and stem, e.g. оттащить [tt] 'to drag away'. When a double consonant appears within a stem, practice varies, cf. грамматика [m] 'grammar', группа [pp or p] 'group'. A single consonant is pronounced in final position: грамм [m] 'gram', грипп [p] 'influenza'.

## 15 Stress

(1) Stress in Russian is ‘free’, that is, in some words it falls on the initial syllable (дóлго ‘for a long time’), in others on a medial syllable (до́рога ‘road’) and in others on the final syllable (каранда́ш ‘pencil’). The vowel *ě* is *always* stressed.

(2) A change in stress may indicate a change in meaning: о́рган ‘organ of the body’, оргáн ‘organ’ (musical instrument). A few words have alternative stress without a change in meaning: твoрoг (the commoner form)/твóрог ‘cottage cheese’.

(3) For stress patterns in individual parts of speech see nouns (57, 60, 62, 63 (4)), adjectives (164, 165), verbs (219, 223, 228, 232, 341, 343, 345, 350, 369) and prepositions (405).

(4) Secondary stress (a weaker stress marked here with a grave accent [ˊ]) is found in some compounds, e.g. маши́ностроéние ‘engineering’ (in fast speech, however, the word is pronounced with one full stress only: машиностроéние). Secondary stress is particularly common in words with foreign prefixes (а́нтикоммуни́зм ‘anti-communism’, ко́нтрмéры ‘counter-measures’, тра́нсатланти́ческий ‘transatlantic’, у́льтракoрóткий ‘ultra-short’ (also in words with the prefix свёрх-: свёрху́рoчные ‘overtime’), in technical terms (морoзoустoйчивый ‘frost-proof’), in compounds where there is a polysyllabic gap between the natural stresses in the components (врeмяпрепровождéние ‘pastime’) and in compounds consisting of a truncated word and a full word (гoсбюджéт (= гoсудáрственный бюджет) ‘state budget’). The use of secondary stresses is sometimes optional, varying with speaker and speech mode. Generally speaking, the newer a compound word is, the more likely a secondary stress (e.g. ки́носкeна́рий ‘film script’). Tertiary stresses are found in some compounds: а́втомoтoклýб ‘car and motor-cycle club’.

(5) Some primary-stressed adverbs take secondary stress when used as prepositions: внyтрí/внутрý ‘inside’, вoзлe/вoзлe ‘near’, вoкpyг/вoкpyг ‘around’, мýмo/мýмo ‘past’, oкoлo/oкoлo ‘close (to)’, пoслe/пoслe ‘after’.

### Note

Stresses are marked in a Russian text only:

- (a) to resolve ambiguity, cf. Я знаю, что он говорит ‘I know that he is speaking’ and Я знаю, чтó он говорит ‘I know what he is saying’, большáя часть ‘a large part’, бoльшáя часть ‘a larger part’;

- (b) to denote archaic pronunciations (e.g. библио́тека for contemporary библиотéка ‘library’);
- (c) in rendering certain professional words, non-Russian words, dialect and slang words;
- (d) in verse, where normal stress is sometimes distorted in the interests of rhythm.

## Orthography

### 16 Spelling rules

#### Spelling rule 1

**ы** is replaced by **и**, **я** by **а** and **ю** by **у** after **ж, ч, ш, щ** and **г, к, х**:

**нога́**, ‘leg’, gen. sing. **ноги́**

**молча́ть**, ‘to be silent’, first-person sing. **молчу́**, third-person pl.

**молча́т**

#### Note

Exceptions are found in some non-Russian words and names: брошю́ра ‘brochure’, Кызылкүм ‘Kyzylkum Desert’, Кяхта ‘Kyakhta’.

#### Spelling rule 2

**о** is replaced by **е** in unstressed position after **ж, ч, ш, щ, ц**:

**не́мец** ‘German’, instr. sing. **не́мцем**, gen. pl. **не́мцев**

#### Spelling rule 3

Initial **и** is replaced by **ы** following a prefix ending in a consonant:

impf. **игра́ть**/pf. **сыгра́ть** ‘to play’

**интерéсный** ‘interesting’, **небезынтерéсный** ‘not uninteresting’

(for exceptions see **28** (3)(c))

#### Spelling rule 4

The prefixes **без-/бес-**; **вз-, воз-/вс-, вос-**; **из-/ис-**; **раз-/рас-** are spelt with **з** before voiced consonants, voiced sonants or vowels and with **с** before unvoiced consonants: **беззúбый** ‘toothless’ but **бесконéчный** ‘infinite’; **взлетáть** ‘to take off’ but **всходíть** ‘to rise’; **избýить** ‘to beat up’ but **испíть** ‘to sup’; **разобрáть** ‘to dismantle’ but **расцепíть** ‘to uncouple’.

### Spelling rule 5

Prefixes ending in a consonant (e.g. **под-, от-, раз-, с-**) are spelt **подо-, ото-, разо-, со-**:

- (i) In compounds of **-йти (подойти** ‘to approach’, **подошёл** ‘I approached’ etc.) (see **333 (2)**).
- (ii) Before consonant + **ь (сошьё** ‘I shall sew’) (see **234 (5)**).
- (iii) Before certain consonant clusters (**разогнать** ‘to disperse’) (see **234 (1–4)**).

### Note

For spelling rules relating to prepositions see **404**.

---

## 17 Use of capital and small letters in titles and names

---

(1) In the names or titles of most posts, institutions, organizations, books, newspapers and journals, wars, festivals etc., *only the first word* is spelt with a capital letter: Всемирная федерация профсоюзов ‘World Federation of Trade Unions’, Европейский союз ‘European Union’, Министер́ство транспорта ‘Ministry of Transport’, Моско́вский госуда́рственный университе́т ‘Moscow State University’, Политехни́ческий музе́й ‘Polytechnical Museum’, Росси́йская акаде́мия нау́к ‘Russian Academy of Sciences’, Тве́рской муниципа́льный суд ‘Tver Municipal Court’, Худо́жественный теа́тр ‘Arts Theatre’, «*Война́ и мир*» ‘*War and Peace*’, *Нью-Йорк таймс* ‘*New York Times*’, Семиле́тняя война́ ‘Seven Years’ War’ (but Вели́кая Оте́чественная война́ ‘Great Patriotic War’), Но́вый год ‘New Year’, Пе́рвое ма́я ‘May Day’, Но́белевская пре́мия ‘Nobel Prize’.

### Note

Any word spelt with a capital letter in its own right retains the capital in extended titles: Госуда́рственный акаде́мический **Бо́льшой** теа́тр ‘The State Academic Bolshoi Theatre’.

(2) In geographical names, the names of administrative areas, local features and so on, the generic terms are spelt with a *small* letter and the descriptive words with a *capital*: о́зеро Байка́л ‘Lake Baikal’, Бе́лое мо́ре ‘the White Sea’, пу́стыня Го́би ‘the Gobi Desert’, мыс До́брой Наде́жды ‘the Cape of Good Hope’, тропи́к Ра́ка ‘the Tropic of Cancer’, Се́верный Ледови́тый океа́н ‘the Arctic Ocean’, полу́остров

Таймы́р ‘the Taimyr Peninsula’, Ю́жный по́люс ‘the South Pole’, Тверска́я у́лица ‘Tverskaya Street’, Зи́мний дво́рец ‘the Winter Palace’, Исаа́киевский собо́р ‘St Isaac’s Cathedral’, Кра́сная пло́щадь ‘Red Square’, Ми́нский автомоби́льный заво́д ‘Minsk Car Factory’.

#### Note

Generic terms are spelt with a *capital* letter, however, if used in a non-literal sense: Золото́й Ро́г ‘the Golden Horn’ (a bay), О́гненная Земля́ ‘Tierra del Fuego’ (an archipelago).

(3) Some titles consist of words, all of which have *capital* letters. These include the names of exalted governmental institutions and organizations, as well as a number of international bodies (and certain geographical names, e.g. Бе́лый Ни́л ‘the White Nile’, Да́льний Восто́к ‘the Far East’, Но́вая Земля́ ‘Novaya Zemlya’): Генера́льная Ассамбле́я ОО́Н ‘the General Assembly of the UNO’, Междунаро́дный Кра́сный Крест ‘the International Red Cross’, Сове́т Федера́ции ‘the Council of the Federation’, including, as a rule, the names of states: Объединённые Ара́бские Эмира́ты ‘the United Arab Emirates’, Респу́блика Тата́рста́н ‘the Republic of Tatarstan’, Росси́йская Федера́ция ‘the Russian Federation’, Сове́тский Сою́з ‘the Soviet Union’, Соеди́ненное Коро́левство ‘the United Kingdom’, Соеди́ненные Шта́ты Аме́рики ‘the United States of America’.

#### Note

- (a) Госуда́рственная ду́ма *or* Госуда́рственная Ду́ма ‘the State Duma’
- (b) Па́ртия ‘party’ is not usually spelt with a capital letter: Коммунисти́ческая па́ртия Росси́йской Федера́ции [КПРФ] ‘Communist Party of the Russian Federation’, Либе́ра́льно-демократи́ческая па́ртия Росси́и [ЛДПР] ‘the Russian Liberal Democratic Party’.

(4) Unofficial titles, the names of foreign parliaments and some other titles consist of words, all of which are spelt with a *small* letter: моско́вский аэропо́рт ‘Moscow Airport’ (cf. official titles, now also used colloquially, e.g. аэропо́рт Вну́ково ‘Vnukovo Airport’), па́ртия большеви́ков ‘the Bolshevik Party’ (cf. official Росси́йская социáл-демократи́ческая рабо́чая па́ртия (большеви́ков) ‘Russian Social Democratic Workers’ Party (of Bolsheviks)’), пала́та о́бщин ‘House of Commons’, бундеста́г ‘the Bundestag’, сейм ‘the Sejm’.

(5) Nouns denoting nationality, town of origin etc., are also spelt with a *small* letter (англича́нин ‘Englishman’, москв́ич ‘Muscovite’), as are

the corresponding adjectives (английский ‘English’, московский ‘Moscow’), except where they form part of a title (Английский банк ‘the Bank of England’, Московский цирк ‘Moscow Circus’). This principle is also applied to the names of months, thus март ‘March’, октябрь ‘October’, октябрьский ‘October’ (adj.), but 8 Марта ‘8 March’ (International Women’s Day), Октябрь/Октябрьская революция ‘the October Revolution’; and to days of the week, thus пятница ‘Friday’, but Страстная Пятница ‘Good Friday’.

(6) The words земля ‘land’, луна ‘moon’, солнце ‘sun’ are spelt with capitals when they denote heavenly bodies: Земля ‘the Earth’, Луна ‘the Moon’, Солнце ‘the Sun’.

(7) (i) Names of deities are spelt with capital letters: Аллах ‘Allah’, Бог ‘God’, Брахма ‘Brahma’, Шива ‘Shiva’.

#### *Note*

Of heathen gods, one of a number of gods, or figuratively, бог is spelt with a *small* letter: бог Аполлón ‘the god Apollo’, бо́же мой! ‘my God!’ In certain contexts, however, a capital is possible:

“Как хорошо – сказала жена, медленно натягивая на себя шелковое одеяло. – Слава **Бо́гу**, слава **Бо́гу** . . .” (Nabokov) ‘That is good’, said his wife, slowly drawing a silken blanket about her. ‘Thank God, thank God . . .’

(ii) Capitals are also used for religious festivals: Пáсха ‘Easter’, Рождество ‘Christmas’, holders of exalted ecclesiastical offices: Святейший Патриáрх Моско́вский и всея Руси ‘His Holiness the Patriarch of Moscow and all Russia’, Па́па Ри́мский ‘The Pope’, and sacred texts: Би́блия ‘the Bible’, Корáн ‘the Koran’, То́ра ‘the Torah’, Талму́д ‘the Talmud’, Ве́ды ‘the Vedas’.

## Division of Words

### 18 Division into syllables

---

(1) Each syllable in a Russian word contains a vowel and, in most cases, consonants peripheral to it, e.g. па́спорт.

(2) Russian distinguishes ‘open’ syllables, which end in a vowel (го-ло-ва́) from ‘closed’ syllables, which end in a consonant (но́с).

(3) The principles of syllabic division are different in English and Russian, cf. E doc-tor/R dó-ктор, E her-o/R ге-ро́й. Russian non-initial syllables are formed on the basis of an ascending level of ‘sonority’, vowels being the most sonorous letters, the voiced sonants (**р, л, м, н**) the next most sonorous and noise-consonants (the other sixteen consonants) the least sonorous.

(4) In practice, this means that the **syllable boundary** occurs either:

(i) **between a vowel and a following consonant:** со-ло́-ма, сте-пнóй, ка́-ска, ко-стóм, ста-ле-ва́р, стра-на́, о-тб́ро-сить, вра-жда́ etc.;

or:

(ii) **between a sonant and a following consonant** (including another sonant): сýм-ка, кон-ве́рт, боль-шо́й, ка́р-та, вол-на́, че́р-ный, кар-ма́н.

#### Note

Non-initial syllables cannot begin with the sequence sonant + noise-consonant (this sequence is possible, however, in an *initial* syllable, e.g. **мш́й-стýй**). Note, however, the sequences sonant + sonant (**во-ль-ный**), consonant + consonant (**ме-сто**) and noise-consonant + sonant (**ме-тла́**). The syllabic boundary may occur *before* or *between* two sonants (**ка-р-ма́н** or **кар-ма́н**, **во-л-на́** or **вол-на́**).

#### Syllabic division in a text

Я встал и на-де́л паль-то́. Же-на́ ре-ши́-ла, что я по-ше́л за си-га-ре́-та-ми, и ве-ле́-ла не су-ту́-ли-ться при хо-дьбе́. О-на́ ска-за́-ла, что ко-гда́ я хо-жу́, то ны-ря́-ю вниз го-ло-во́й, как при-стя-жна́-я ло́-шадь. Е-щё о-на́ ска-за́-ла, что я всё вре́-мя смо-т́рю вниз, бу́-дто хо-чу́ най-ти́ на а-сфа́ль-те мо-не́-тку (Tokareva).

## 19 Splitting a word at the end of a line

(1) Two basic criteria are observed in splitting a word at the end of a line:

(i) Syllabic division: **го-ловá** or **голо-ва́**.

(ii) Word structure: it is desirable, for example, not to disrupt monosyllabic prefixes etc. (**под-бежа́ть**, **со-гласе́н**) (cf. **пе-рево́д** and note that the rule does not apply when a prefix is no longer perceived as such: **ра́-зум**, **разо-ря́ть**).

(2) A word is normally split **after a vowel**: го́-род, го́-лоден or го́ло-ден, ребя́-та or ре-бя́та. Sometimes this involves splitting a two-vowel sequence: чита́-ете.

(3) A sequence of **two or more consonants** may also be split: ме́д-ленно, ро́д-ственники, проб-ле́ма, и́стин-ный etc.

(4) Other conventions include the following:

(i) A hard or soft sign must not be separated from the preceding consonant (подь-э́зд, боль-шо́й) and **й** must not be separated from the preceding vowel (вой-на́).

(ii) A single vowel should not appear at the end of a line or be carried over onto the next: агн-та́ция (*not* \*а-гита́ция or \*агита́ци-я).

(iii) Two identical consonants appearing between vowels should be split: жу́ж-жа́ть, ма́с-са, ко́н-ный.

(iv) A monosyllabic component of a stump compound should not be split (спе́цодéжда); nor should abbreviations (ОО́Н, и т.д.).

(5) Some words can be split in different ways, e.g. се-стра́, сес-тра́ or сест-ра́.

## Punctuation

### 20 Introductory comments

---

Rules of punctuation are, in general, more rigorously applied in Russian than in English. Differences of usage between the two languages relate in particular to the comma (especially in separating principal from subordinate clauses), the dash and the punctuation of direct speech.

### 21 The full stop, exclamation mark and question mark

---

Usage of the full stop, exclamation mark and question mark is comparable in the two languages:

Лю́ди и́щут сча́стья в любви́.  
Кака́я прекра́сная погóда!  
Куда́ вы идёте?

People seek happiness in love.  
What magnificent weather!  
Where are you going?



*Note*

- (a) There is a tendency to use exclamation marks more frequently in Russian than in English.
- (b) An exclamation mark may appear in the middle of a sentence: Так мне было плохо, **так горько и постыло!** — хуже всякой болезни (Rasputin) 'I felt so bad, so bitter and wretched! — it was worse than any illness'.
- (c) Exclamation marks are also used in commands expressed other than by a grammatical imperative: **Молчать!** 'Shut up!', **За мной!** 'Follow me!', **Вста́ли!** 'On your feet!'.
- (d) An exclamation mark enclosed in parentheses (!) may be used to indicate irony or indignation.
- (e) Exclamation and question marks may appear together for special emphasis: **Да что же это такое?!** 'Now what's all this?!'.

## 22 The comma: introductory comments

---

The comma is more frequently used in Russian than in English. In extreme examples a series of commas in a Russian sentence may have no English equivalents at all:

Мака́ренко пи́шет, что де́ти, кото́рые уме́ют труди́ться, уважа́ют труд дру́гих люде́й, стремя́тся прийт́и на по́мощь тем, кто в э́той по́мощи нужда́ется (Belyakova)

Makarenko writes that children who know how to work respect the labour of other people and strive to come to the assistance of those who need it

## 23 Uses of the comma

---

### *Correspondence with English usage*

Commas are used, in Russian *and* English, to perform the following functions:

- (1) To separate
  - (i) **two or more adjectives** which define one noun:
 

Он шёл по **тёмной, грязной, шумной** улице  
He was walking down the dark, dirty, noisy street
  - (ii) **two or more adverbs** qualifying one verb:

**Медленно, мучительно** он встал с постели  
Slowly, painfully he rose from the bed

(2) To separate **items in a list**:

Плата за **квартиру, электричество, газ** составляет около 20 рублей  
(Belyakova)  
The rent, electricity and gas bills amount to about 20 roubles

(3) To mark off words and phrases which stand **in apposition**:

**Валентина Терешкова, рабочая девчонка** из старинного текстильного городка, стала первой женщиной-космонавтом  
Valentina Tereshkova, a working girl from an ancient textile town, became the first woman in space

(4) To mark off words which serve to **define and specify**:

Здание детского сада двухэтажное, **с большими светлыми окнами, с верандами для дневного сна** (Belyakova)  
The building of the kindergarten is two-storey, with large light windows and verandas for a daytime nap

(5) After **да** 'yes' and **нет** 'no':

**Да**, я согласен с вами/**Нет**, я не согласен  
Yes, I agree with you/No, I don't agree

(6) In **addressing people**:

**Здравствуйте, Иван Иванович!**  
Hallo, Ivan Ivanovich!

(7) After **interjections**:

— **Ой**, как неудачно. Вчера упал или сегодня? (Rasputin)  
'Oh, what bad luck. Did you fall over yesterday or today?'

(8) Between **repeated words**:

**Ничего, ничего**, утешал он себя, самое трудное позади (Abramov)  
Never mind, never mind, he consoled himself, the worst is over

(9) To mark off **participial phrases**:

По равнине, **освещённой поздним солнцем**, скакал табун диких лошадей  
Over the plain, (which was) illuminated by the late sun, galloped a herd of wild horses

(10) To mark off **gerundial phrases**:

Я молчал, **не зная**, что делать (Rasputin)  
I was silent, not knowing what to do

*Note*

In English, 'and' is often used as an alternative to a comma before the final element in enumerations and when two or more adjectives qualify a single noun or two adverbs a single verb (cf. (1) and (2) above).

*Differences in usage between Russian and English*

Russian *requires* the use of a comma in the following contexts, where usage in English is optional or inconsistent:

- (1) Between clauses linked by **co-ordinating conjunctions** (see **454** (2) (i) and **455–457**):

Оля знает буквы, **но** я пока помогаю ей читать (Belyakova)  
Olya knows the letters, but for the time being I help her to read

*Note*

- (a) While a comma *always* appears before **но** (except when it is the first word in a sentence), the insertion of a comma before English 'but' depends largely on the length of the pause required by the context, cf. 'He is young but experienced' and 'He is young, but everyone trusts him'.
- (b) A comma is used between clauses linked by **и** if the clauses have different subjects (Но волк был мёртв, **и** его сейчас никто не боялся (Abramov) 'But the wolf was dead, and no one was afraid of him any more'), but not if they have the same subject (Разожгли костёр **и** сварили грибной суп (Belyakova) 'They lit a fire and made mushroom soup'). In such contexts **и** may be replaced by a comma: Два дня он **не пил, не ел** (= не пил **и** не ел) (Abramov) 'For two days he did not drink or eat'.
- (2) Between clauses linked by the conjunctions **и . . . и** 'both . . . and', **ни . . . ни** 'neither . . . nor', **или . . . или** 'either . . . or', **то . . . то** 'now . . . now':

На вёчере выступали **и** мальчики, **и** девочки  
Both boys and girls performed at the party

Нельзя **ни** спокойно почитать, **ни** сосредоточиться (Belyakova)  
You can neither do a little quiet reading, nor concentrate

Это **или** собака, **или** волк  
That is either a dog or a wolf

Она́ **то** смеётся, **то** пла́чет  
Now she laughs, now she weeps

(3) Between **a principal and a subordinate clause** (see 458–467):

Я знаю́, **что** ко́нec бу́дет не ско́ро  
I know the end is still some way off

Мы не отдава́ли дете́й в я́сли, **хотя́** та́кая возмо́жность бы́ла  
(Belyakova)  
We didn't put the children into a day-nursery, even though we had the opportunity to do so

Дени́с стал с нетерпе́нием жда́ть ле́та, **что́бы** пое́хать с ба́бушкой  
к Че́рному мо́рю  
Denis waited impatiently for the summer, in order to go with his grandmother to the Black Sea

Он рабо́тал бы, **если́ бы** мог  
He would work if he could

Она́ ухо́дит, **потому́ что** она́ опáздывает  
She is leaving because she is late

*Note*

The appearance of a comma between **потому́** and **что** in Мы победи́м потому́, что мы сильнее́ throws the element of cause into sharper relief: 'We shall win because we are stronger' (i.e. and for no other reason). This effect can be intensified by distancing **потому́** from **что** (**Потому́** мы победи́м, **что** мы сильнее́), or by the addition of **лишь**, **то́лько** or other intensifying words before **потому́**.

(4) To separate **main from relative clauses** (see 123):

Я посеща́л го́род, **в кото́ром (где)** провё́л де́тство  
I was visiting the town in which (where) I had spent my childhood

*Note*

English distinguishes *relative* clauses (which are marked off by commas) — 'Cats (i.e. *all* cats), who have excellent night vision, are nocturnal predators' — from *adjective* clauses (which are *not* marked off by commas): 'Cats (i.e. only *those* cats) who have no tails are called Manx cats'. In Russian, however, both types of clause are marked off with commas.

(5) To mark off **parenthetical words**:

во-пе́рвых/во-вто́рых in the first place/in the second place  
допу́стим let us assume на́пример for example

ка́жется	it seems	пожа́луйста	please
конечно́	of course	по-мо́ему	in my opinion
к сожа́лению	unfortunately	ска́жем	let us say
ме́жду про́чим	incidentally	с одно́й, друго́й	on the one, the
мо́жет быть	perhaps	сторон́ы	other hand
наве́рное	probably		

Он, **должно́ быть**, ушёл  
He must have left

Нам, **конечно́**, удо́бнее, что де́ти сидят ти́хо (Belyakova)  
Of course, it's more convenient for us if the children are sitting quietly

Не спорь, **пожа́луйста**, со мной, я зна́ю (Rasputin)  
Please don't argue with me, I know best

Он сказа́л, что, **к сожа́лению**, нам приде́тся иди́ти без него́  
He said that unfortunately we would have to go without him

#### (6) In **comparisons**:

Он ла́зит по дере́вьям, **как обезья́на**  
He scrambles about in the trees like a monkey

Кто́-то научи́л свое́го малы́ша пла́вать **ра́ньше, чем** тот стал  
ходи́ть (Belyakova)  
Someone taught his baby to swim before he could walk

Он спал беспробу́дным сном, **бу́дто** его́ ничто́ не трево́жило  
He was sound asleep, as though without a care in the world

## 24 The colon. The semicolon. The dash

### *The colon.*

The colon is used to perform the following functions:

(1) To **introduce a list**, in which case the colon is usually preceded by a generic term:

Моя́ семья́ состои́т из четырёх челове́к: **мой муж Ви́ктор, дво́е дете́й и я** (Belyakova)  
My family consists of four people: my husband Victor, the two children and myself

(2) To introduce a statement which **elaborates on, supplements or indicates the cause** of the statement which precedes the colon:

И тут их ожида́ла но́вая беда́: **оте́ц пропа́л** (Abramov)  
And now a new misfortune awaited them: father had disappeared

В нау́ке всегда́ должна́ быть то́чность: **ка́ждому нау́чному те́рмину  
должно́ соотве́тствовать о́дно поня́тие** (Vvedenskaya)  
There should always be accuracy in science: a single concept should  
correspond to each scientific term

У́тром я со стра́хом смотре́л на себя́ в зе́ркало: **нос вспух, под  
ле́вым гла́зом синя́к** (Rasputin)  
In the morning I gazed at myself in the mirror in horror: my nose had  
swollen up, there was a bruise under my left eye

(3) To **introduce direct speech, thought or other communication**:

В кинофи́льме «Дожи́вём до понеде́льника» подро́сток пи́шет:  
**«Сча́стье — э́то когда́ тебя́ пони́мают!»** (Kovaleva)  
In the film *We'll survive till Monday* a teenager writes, 'Happiness is  
when people understand you!'

(4) To introduce a **quotation**:

По́мните, в «Евге́нии Оне́гине»:  
Привы́чка свы́ше нам дана́:  
За́мена сча́стию она́  
Do you remember, in *Evgenii Onegin*:  
Habit is granted us from on high:  
It is a substitute for happiness

### *The semicolon*

The semicolon is used to **separate extensive clauses** which are **not linked by conjunctions**, especially if each clause is itself broken up by commas:

В Ленингра́де все хотя́т посмотре́ть на легендарную «Аврору»,  
побыва́ть в пу́шкинских места́х, в многочисленных дворца́х;  
в Улья́новске познако́миться с места́ми, где жил и учи́лся  
В. И. Ле́нин; в На́бережных Че́лнах прое́хать по о́гро́мному  
молодо́му го́роду, посмотре́ть Кама́З (Vvedenskaya)  
In Leningrad everyone wants to see the legendary 'Aurora', visit  
places associated with Pushkin, the numerous palaces; in Ulyanovsk  
to get to know the places where V. I. Lenin lived and worked; and in

Naberezhnye Chelny to drive through the enormous new town, see the Kamaz truck factory

*Note*

In 1991 Ленинград 'Leningrad' reverted to Санкт-Петербу́рг 'St Petersburg' and Улья́новск 'Ulyanovsk' to Симби́рск 'Simbirsk'.

*The dash*

The dash is extremely widespread in Russian. It not only has a number of specific uses of its own but in some contexts substitutes for other punctuation marks, in particular the comma, the colon and parentheses.

(1) Specific uses of the dash.

(i) It separates **subject noun** from **predicate noun**, replacing the verb 'to be':

Мой отец — преподава́тель ву́за, а ма́ма — врач (Belyakova)  
My father is a college lecturer, and my mother is a doctor

Са́мое глубо́кое о́зеро ми́ра — э́то пресново́дный краса́вец Байка́л (Vvedenskaya)  
The deepest lake in the world is the beautiful fresh-water Lake Baikal

*Note*

(a) The subject may sometimes be an **infinitive**:

Са́мое тяжёлое при проща́нии — **не огля́дываться** (*Ogonek*)  
The hardest thing on parting is not to look back

(b) The dash is not normally used to replace the verb 'to be' when the subject is a pronoun: Он водола́з 'He is a diver'.

(ii) In elliptical statements it replaces a word, usually a verb, which is 'understood':

Студе́нт смотре́л на профе́ссора, профе́ссор — на студе́нта (Shukshin)  
The student was looking at the professor, and the professor (was looking) at the student

(2) The dash is also used as a substitute for:

(i) The comma (when, for example, introducing an unexpected turn of events or sharp contrast):

Она сделала ещё попытку посадить меня за стол — **напрáсно**  
(=, **но напрáсно**) (Rasputin)  
She made another attempt to seat me at the table, but in vain

*Note*

Generally speaking, the dash indicates a *more pronounced pause* than the comma, for example, in expressing apposition: Со мной был грузинский чай — моё единственное удовольствие (=, моё единственное удовольствие) ‘I had with me some Georgian tea, my only pleasure’.

(ii) The colon:

(a) in introducing an **enumeration**, following a generic term:

Иногда клуб приглашает гостей — **учёных, педагогов, врачей**  
(Belyakova)  
Sometimes the club invites guests — scientists, teachers and doctors

(b) in **elucidating** a statement:

В Таджикистане гражданская война — бегут в Россию  
таджики. (Solzhenitsyn)  
There is a civil war in Tadzhikistan, (and so) Tadzhiks flee into Russia.

(iii) Parentheses:

На территории Российской Федерации — **не забывайте о том, что она занимает одну седьмую часть всей суши Земли!** — тысячи рек и речушек  
On the territory of the Russian Federation (do not forget that it occupies one-seventh of the Earth’s surface!) there are thousands of rivers and streams

---

## 25 The punctuation of direct speech

---

(1) If the introductory verb *precedes* the direct speech, the verb is followed by a *colon*, and the direct speech *either*

(i) appears on a new line, preceded by a *dash*:

Я промямлил:  
— **Правда** (Rasputin)  
‘It is true’, I mumbled

(ii) *or* runs on after the colon and is enclosed in *guillemets* (« »):



Сам хозяин ра́за два крича́л с крыльца́ «Эй, кто там?»  
 The master himself shouted a couple of times from the porch,  
 ‘Hey, who’s there?’

(2) If, however, the verb *follows* the direct speech, the latter is flanked by *dashes*:

— Усну́л, — услужливо отве́тила Сима (Rasputin)  
 ‘He’s fallen asleep’, answered Sima obligingly

(3) A **conversation** may be rendered as follows:

— Я зна́ю, поче́му ты все ещё живёшь со мно́й. Сказа́ть?  
 — Ну, поче́му?  
 — Да про́сто лень тебе́ купи́ть раскладу́шку. (S. Dovlatov)  
 ‘I know why you still live with me. Shall I tell you?’  
 ‘Well, why?’  
 ‘You’re just too lazy to buy a camp bed.’

#### Note

- (a) A full stop, comma, semicolon or dash *follow* inverted commas.
- (b) Quotes within quotes may be distinguished as follows:  
 «Кре́йсер “Аврора́” стоя́л на я́коре» ‘The cruiser “Aurora” lay at anchor’.
- (c) In cursive script, inverted commas are rendered as follows: «Приве́т!»  
 ‘Greetings!’

## 26 Suspension points (многоточие)

Suspension points (. . .) indicate one of the following.

(1) **Hesitation:**

— Прои́грываешь, наве́рное?  
 — Нет, **вы . . . выи́грываю** (Rasputin)  
 ‘I suppose you lose?’  
 ‘No, I – I win’

(2) An **unfinished statement:**

Зна́ть бы нам, чем э́то всё ко́нчится . . . (Rasputin)  
 Had we but known how it would all end . . .

---

# The Noun

---

## Word Formation

### 27 Word formation in the noun I: general

---

(1) Nouns in Russian may be basic irreducible stems (e.g. **лес** 'forest') or form the basis of compound nouns (e.g. **лесору́б** 'wood cutter'). Compounding takes a number of different forms, involving *initial* components which may be the stems of:

- (i) nouns: **ледоко́л** 'ice-breaker' (**ле́д** 'ice', **коло́ть** 'to split')
- (ii) adjectives: **чернозём** 'black earth' (**чёрный** 'black', **земля́** 'earth')
- (iii) numerals: **двуо́кись** 'dioxide' (**дву-** 'two', **о́кись** 'oxide')
- (iv) adverbs: **гро́мкоговори́тель** 'loud speaker' (**гро́мко** 'loudly', **говори́ть** 'to speak');

and *second* components which may be:

- (i) nouns: **тяжелове́с** 'heavy weight' (**тяжё́лый** 'heavy', **вес** 'weight')
- (ii) of verbal origin: **сенокóс** 'haymaking' (**сéно** 'hay', **кóсить** 'to mow').

#### Note

- (a) Compounds may also be based on phrases: **иноплане́тjнин** 'extra-terrestrial' (cf. **и́ная пла́не́та** 'another planet'), **однофа́милец** 'namesake' (cf. **о́дна фа́милjя** 'the same name');

(b) The components of a compound are usually linked by the infixes **-о-**: **снегопад** 'snow fall', **машинопись** 'typing', **самолёт** 'aeroplane', or (where the stem of the first component ends in a soft consonant or in **ж, ч, ш, щ** or **ц**) **-е-**: **общежитие** 'hostel', **овцевод** 'sheep-breeder', **пулемёт** 'machinegun' (cf. **пуля** 'bullet'), **сталевар** 'steel founder' (cf. **сталь** 'steel'), **пешеход** 'pedestrian'. However, **-о-** sometimes appears as an 'illogical' link-vowel when the stem of the first component of a compound ends in soft **в** (e.g. **кровообращение** 'circulation of the blood', cf. **кровь** 'blood'), soft **н** (e.g. **баснописец** 'fabulist', cf. **басня** 'fable'), soft **р** (**зверолов** 'trapper', cf. **зверь** 'animal'), or soft **т** (**честолюбие** 'ambition', cf. **честь** 'honour').

(2) A group of compounds with second components that denote persons or places is particularly common. Some of the elements are indigenous: **-вед**, as in **литературовед** 'literature specialist', **-вод**, as in **скотовод** 'stock-breeder', others international: **-граф**, as in **географ** 'geographer', **-дром**, as in **дельтадром** 'hang-glider launch site', **-лог**, as in **биолог** 'biologist', **-ман**, as in **балетоман** 'balletomane', **-тека**, as in **фонотека** 'sound library', **-фил**, as in **славянофил** 'Slavophile', **-фоб**, as in **англофоб** 'Anglophobe'.

(3) While most second components in compounds tend to be truncated forms: **водопад** 'waterfall', **паровоз** 'steam engine', **пчеловод** 'apiarist', etc., some are suffixed: **монеторазмёник** 'change machine', **пивоварня** 'brewery', **работоспособность** 'efficiency', **судостроение** 'ship-building'.

(4) The relationships between initial and second components may be as follows:

(i) the first component may denote the object of the second: **бензовоз** 'petrol tanker' (cf. **возить бензін** 'to transport petrol'), **книголюб** 'book lover', **нефтепровод** 'oil pipeline', **пылесос** 'vacuum cleaner';

(ii) the second component may denote an object designed for the first: **бензобак** 'petrol tank' (cf. **бак для бензіна** 'tank for petrol'), **дѣсад** 'kindergarten';

(iii) the action denoted by the second component may be performed in or over the area designated by the first: **вездеход** 'cross country vehicle' (cf. **ходить везде** 'to go everywhere'), **домосѣд** 'stay-at-home', **мореплаватель** 'seafarer';

(iv) the first component may qualify the second: **новостройка** ‘new building’ (cf. **новая** **стройка** ‘new building’), **общежитие** ‘hostel’, **пятиборье** ‘pentathlon’;

(v) the first component may denote the means by which the second is accomplished: **вертолёт** ‘helicopter’ (cf. вертѣть(ся) ‘to rotate’, лёт ‘flight’), **газосварщик** ‘gas welder’, **пароход** ‘steamer’.

### Note

For the formation of compound *abbreviations*, see **39** (acronyms), **40** (alphabetisms), **41** (stump compounds), **42** (compound hyphenated nouns).

## 28 Word formation in the noun II: prefixation

(1) Prefixes, while fewer in number than suffixes, effect more radical change than suffixes are capable of. Thus, in the word **бесконфликтность** 'absence of conflict' the suffix **-ость** merely denotes the abstract nature of the noun, while the prefix **бес-** fulfils a semantic role in denoting the absence of the quality denoted by the root noun (**конфликт** 'conflict').

(2) The following prefixes used with nouns are also commonly used with verbs (for the full range of their meanings, see sections **254** and **331**; for spelling rules see **16**, rules 3–5):

<b>в-</b> ‘into’:	<b>вложение</b> ‘investment’
<b>вз-/вс-</b> ‘upwards’:	<b>взлёт</b> ‘take-off’
<b>воз-/вос-</b> (i) ‘upwards’:	<b>восход солнца</b> ‘sun-rise’
(ii) ‘re-’:	<b>воссоединение</b> ‘reunification’
<b>вы-</b> ‘outwards’:	<b>выпуск</b> ‘output’
<b>до-</b> ‘addition’:	<b>дополнение</b> ‘supplementation’
<b>за-</b> (i) ‘beyond’:	<b>зарубежье</b> ‘foreign countries’
(ii) ‘closing’:	<b>закрытие</b> ‘closure’
<b>из-/ис-</b> ‘ex-, out’:	<b>исключение</b> ‘expulsion’
<b>на-</b> (i) ‘on, onto’:	<b>наушник</b> ‘earphone’
(ii) ‘quantity’:	<b>надой</b> ‘milk yield’
<b>над-</b> ‘above’:	<b>надсмотрщик</b> ‘supervisor’
<b>недо-</b> ‘shortfall’:	<b>недооценка</b> ‘underestimate’
<b>о-/об-</b> (i) ‘encompassing’:	<b>охват</b> ‘scope, range’
(ii) ‘avoidance’:	<b>объезд</b> ‘detour’
<b>от-</b> ‘away from’:	<b>отъезд</b> ‘departure’
<b>пере-</b> (i) ‘across’:	<b>переход</b> ‘crossing’

(ii) 'repeat':	<b>переигрѳвка</b> 'replay'
<b>под-</b> (i) 'support':	<b>подсвѳчник</b> 'candle-stick'
(ii) 'sham':	<b>поддѳлка</b> 'forgery'
<b>пре-</b> (i) 'trans-':	<b>преобразѳвание</b> 'transformation'
(ii) 'excess':	<b>преувеличѳние</b> 'exaggeration'
<b>пред-</b> 'pre-':	<b>предыстѳрия</b> 'pre-history'
<b>при-</b> (i) 'arrival, joining':	<b>приземлѳние</b> 'landing'
(ii) 'attachment':	<b>приложѳние</b> 'magazine supplement'
<b>про-</b> 'through, past':	<b>прѳпуск</b> 'pass'
<b>раз-/рас-</b> (i) 'spread':	<b>распространѳние</b> 'dissemination'
(ii) 'reversal':	<b>разрядка</b> 'dѳtente'
<b>с-</b> (i) 'together':	<b>съезд</b> 'congress'
(ii) 'down':	<b>спуск</b> 'descent'
<b>у-</b> 'away':	<b>увольнѳние</b> 'dismissal'.

(3) A further set of prefixes are used mainly with nouns, in some cases adjectives, and a few also with verbs (e.g. **без-/бес-**, **де-**, **дис-**, **ре-**). Many are loan prefixes and combine mostly with foreign roots, while some (**без-**, **между-**, **не-**, **по-**, **под-**, **пра-**, **пред-**, **само-**, **свѳрх-**, **после-**, **противо-**, **чрез-/чрес-**) are indigenous.

<b>а-</b> 'devoid of':	<b>алогичность</b> 'illogicality'
<b>анти-</b> 'opposed to':	<b>антирыночник</b> 'opponent of a market economy'
<b>архи-</b> 'extreme':	<b>архиплѳт</b> 'arch villain'
<b>без-/бес-</b> 'deprived of':	<b>бессѳница</b> 'insomnia'
<b>вице-</b> 'deputizing for':	<b>вицепредседатель</b> 'vice-chairman'
<b>гипер-</b> 'extreme':	<b>гиперинфляция</b> 'hyper-inflation'
<b>де-</b> 'reversal':	<b>децентрализация</b> 'decentralization'
<b>дез-</b> 'removal':	<b>дезодорант</b> 'deodorant'
<b>дис-</b> 'deprived of':	<b>дисквалификация</b> 'disqualification'
<b>интер-</b> 'international':	<b>интердѳвочка</b> 'hard-currency prostitute'
<b>квѳзи-</b> 'quasi-':	<b>квѳзидемократия</b> 'quasi-democracy'
<b>кѳнтр-</b> 'counter to':	<b>кѳнтрразвѳдка</b> 'counter-espionage'
<b>между-</b> 'intermediate':	<b>междущарствие</b> 'interregnum'
<b>микро-</b> 'small':	<b>микроорганизм</b> 'micro-organism'
<b>не-</b> 'negation of':	<b>нераспространѳние</b> 'non-proliferation'
<b>неѳ-</b> 'revived':	<b>неѳокапитализм</b> 'neo-capitalism'
<b>по-</b> 'along':	<b>пограничник</b> 'frontier guard'
<b>под</b> (i) 'subordinate to':	<b>подвид</b> 'sub-species'
(ii) 'proximity':	<b>Подмоскѳвье</b> 'Moscow region'
<b>после-</b> 'following':	<b>послеслѳвие</b> 'epilogue'
<b>пѳст-</b> 'subsequent':	<b>пѳстмодернизм</b> 'post-Modernism'

<b>пра-</b> ‘great’ (in relationships)	<b>прабабушка:</b> ‘great-grandmother’
<b>преди-</b> ‘preceding’:	<b>предислoвие</b> ‘foreword’
<b>про-</b> (i) ‘supportive of’:	<b>проамерикáнец</b> ‘pro-American’
(ii) ‘deputizing for’:	<b>прорéктор</b> ‘vice-principal’
<b>противо-</b> ‘opposed to’:	<b>противорéчие</b> ‘contradiction’
<b>псèвдо-</b> ‘sham’:	<b>псèвдoдемократия</b> ‘pseudo-democracy’
<b>ре-</b> ‘re-’:	<b>рèинтеграция</b> ‘reintegration’
<b>само-</b> ‘self’:	<b>самообслóживание</b> ‘self-service’
<b>свèрх-</b> ‘extreme’:	<b>свèрхдержа́ва</b> ‘super-power’
<b>суб-</b> ‘subordinate’:	<b>субпо́дряд</b> ‘subcontract’
<b>супер-</b> ‘extreme’:	<b>суперзвезда́</b> ‘super-star’
<b>у́льтра-</b> ‘extreme’:	<b>у́льтрареакционёр</b> ‘ultrareactionary’
<b>чрез-/чрес-</b> ‘excessive’:	<b>чрезме́рность</b> ‘excessiveness’
<b>экс-</b> ‘former’:	<b>экс-премье́р</b> ‘the former premier’
	<b>экс-ви́це-президéнт</b> ‘the former vice-president’
<b>экстра-</b> ‘beyond’:	<b>экстрасéнс</b> ‘psychic’.

### Note

(a) A number of prefixes fall into definable categories:

- (i) excess (**архи-, гипе́р-, свèрх-, супе́р-, чрез-**);
- (ii) negation (**а-, без-, де-, дез-, дис-, не-**);
- (iii) time (**нèо-, после-, по́ст-, преди-, ре-, экс-**);
- (iv) opposition/support (**анти-, ко́нтр-, про-, противо-**);
- (v) sham (**ква́зи-, псèвдо-**).

(b) in some cases a prefixed word has been borrowed virtually in its entirety (e.g. **ане́мия** ‘anaemia’) and should thus be regarded as a non-derivative stem in Russian.

(c) spelling rule **16** (3), in accordance with which initial **и** is replaced by **ы** following a prefix ending in a consonant, does not apply to the loan prefixes **гипе́р-, дез-, по́ст-, суб-, супе́р-** (thus **дезинформация** ‘misinformation’, etc.).

## 29 Word formation in the noun III: suffixation.

### Introductory remarks

(i) Noun suffixes number over one hundred and play a fundamental role in the creation of nouns. Suffixed nouns may derive from verbs:

**стрельба́** ‘shooting’ from **стреля́ть** ‘to shoot’; adjectives: **ма́лыш** ‘child, small boy’ from **ма́лый** ‘small’; other nouns: **рыба́к** ‘fisherman’ from **рыба́** ‘fish’; prepositions: **преди́к** ‘ancestor’ from **перед/пред** ‘before’; numerals: **тро́йка** ‘troika’ from **трё́е** ‘three’; adverbs: **почему́чка** ‘inquisitive child’ from **почему́?** ‘why?’.

(ii) While little or no guidance can be offered on the selection of suffixes to convey particular meanings, familiarity with the range of suffixes available within each field of meaning can be beneficial.

(iii) Many loan suffixes are components of nouns that have been borrowed virtually in their entirety:

- аж** as in **тонна́ж** ‘tonnage’
- ант** as in **дилетта́нт** ‘dilettante’
- арий** as in **планета́рий** ‘planetarium’
- ат** as in **электора́т** ‘electorate’
- ент** as in **аге́нт** ‘agent’,
- ер** as in **тре́нер** ‘trainer’
- есса** as in **поэте́сса** ‘poetess’
- иада** as in **олимпи́ада** ‘Olympiad’
- изм** as in **социа́лизм** ‘socialism’
- ик** as in **диабети́к** ‘diabetic’
- ир** as in **банка́ир** ‘banker’
- иса** as in **актри́са** ‘actress’
- ист** as in **коммуни́ст** ‘communist’
- ит** as in **артри́т** ‘arthritis’
- итет** as in **приорите́т** ‘priority’
- ор** as in **агрессо́р** ‘aggressor’.
- тор** as in **авиато́р** ‘aviator’

#### *Note*

Some of the compounds are based on Russian stems: **ельцини́ст** ‘Yeltsin supporter’, **трудого́лизм** ‘workaholism’, in which case the suffixes (here, **-ист**, **-изм**) can be identified as separate formants.

(iv) Other suffixes cover broad categories of meaning (the most characteristic suffixes are listed here for each category; a full list appears under (vi), below, which enumerates fifty-two suffixes with their meanings):

(a) Abstract meanings (attitudes, feelings, qualities):

- ба**, **-ие/-ье**, **-изм**, **-ость/-есть**, **-ота**, **-ствие**, **-ство**, **-сть**.

(b) Actions (verbal nouns):

**-ация/-изация, -ка, -ние, -ок, -ство, -тие.**

(c) Animate beings (agents of actions, nationals, inhabitants, members of organizations, etc.):

**-ак/-як, -анин/-янин, -арь, -ач, -ец, -ик, -ист, -ник, -ок, -тель, -ун, -щик/-чик.**

(d) Collectives:

**-ство, -ура.**

(e) Objects/implements:

**-ик, -ка, -ло, -ник, -ок, -тель, -щик/-чик.**

(f) Places:

**-ище, -ня, -ье.**

(g) Quantity, dimension:

**-ина, -ство.**

#### *Note*

(a) Some suffixes have certain very specific meanings: **-ёнок/-онок** (young of animals), **-ика** (berries), **-ина** (types of meat), **-ки** (remnants), **-ница** (containers), **-ович/-(ь)евич/-ич** (patronymics), **-от** (sounds), **-ота** and **-уха** (medical conditions);

(b) The commonest feminine suffixes (in addition to **-есса, -иса**, which are listed under (iii)) are: **-иня/-ыня, -иха, -ица, -ка, -ница, -ша, -щица/-чица, -ья.**

(v) Most consonant changes in suffixed nouns affect the velar consonants. The following changes occur: **г: ж, к: ч** and **х: ш** before the suffixes: **-ество** (e.g. мона́х 'monk': мона́шество 'monks'), **-ие** (вели́кий 'great': вели́чие 'greatness'), **-ина** (горо́х 'peas': горо́шина 'pea'), **-инка** (снег 'snow': снежи́нка 'snow-flake'), **-ист** (шпа́га 'sword': шпажи́ст 'fencer' [but танк 'tank': танки́ст 'tank-driver']), **-иха** (ме́льник 'miller': ме́льничиха 'miller's wife'), **-ица** (во́лк 'wolf': волчи́ца 'she-wolf'), **-ник** (молоко́ 'milk': молочник 'milk-jug'), **-ница** (спичка́ 'match': спиче́чница 'matchbox stand'), **-ня** ([in names of places] ко́нюх 'groom': коню́шня 'stable'), **-ок** (прыга́ть 'to jump': прыжо́к 'jump'), **-онок** (во́лк 'wolf': волчо́нок 'wolf-cub'), **-ье** (бе́рег 'shore': побере́жье 'coastline').

#### *Note*

Nouns in **-онок** also undergo the mutations **д: ж** (медве́дь 'bear': медвежо́нок 'bear-cub') and **ц: ч** (за́яц 'hare': зайчо́нок 'leveret'), those in **-ество** — **т: ч** (студе́нт 'student': студе́нчество 'student body'), those in **-ина** — **ск: щ** (тре́ска́ться 'to crack': тре́щина



‘crack’) and **ст: щ** (то́лстый ‘thick’: толщи́на ‘thickness’), those in **-иха** and **-ница** – **ц: ч** (плове́ц ‘swimmer’: пловчи́ха ‘female swimmer’, пёре́ц ‘pepper’: пёре́чница ‘pepper-pot’). For consonant change in the verbal noun, see section on **-(е)ние** (28) (ii), below and for consonant change in nouns in **-анин**, see (2), below.

(vi) *Noun suffixes*

(1) **-ак/-як** (-чак after -ль)

Persons

(a) with particular physical characteristics or personality traits (based on adjs.):

**бедня́к** ‘poor person’, **весельча́к** ‘jolly person’, **пошла́к** ‘vulgar person’, **смелы́чак** ‘daredevil’, **толстя́к** ‘fat person’.

(b) practitioners (from nouns):

**горня́к** ‘miner’, **моря́к** ‘sailor’, **рыба́к** ‘fisherman’.

(c) nationalities, inhabitants of certain ancient towns and cities:

**пермя́к** ‘inhabitant of Perm’, **поля́к** ‘Pole’, **слова́к** ‘Slovak’, **тверя́к** ‘inhabitant of Tver’.

*Note*

**сибиря́к** ‘Siberian’.

(2) **-анин/-чанин/-янин**

(i) nationals, inhabitants, members of social, religious and other groups:

**армя́нин** ‘Armenian’, **гражда́нин** ‘citizen’ (from град ‘town’), **крестья́нин** ‘peasant’, **мусульма́нин** ‘Moslem’, **парижа́нин** ‘Parisian’, **рижа́нин** ‘inhabitant of Riga’ (from Рига ‘Riga’), **северя́нин** ‘northerner’, **славя́нин** ‘Slav’, **христиа́нин** ‘Christian’, **южа́нин** ‘southerner’ (from юг ‘south’).

*Note*

Derivative **-чанин** (with infix **-ч-**) appears after **и** in **англича́нин** (but **россия́нин** ‘inhabitant of Russia’), **в** in **ростовча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Rostov’, **харьковча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Kharkov’ (but **варшавя́нин** ‘inhabitant of Warsaw’, **киевля́нин** ‘Kievan’), **ль** in **сельча́нин** ‘villager’, **м** in **сумча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Sumy’ (but **ры́млянин** ‘Roman’), **н** in **клинча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Klin’, **т** in **датча́нин** ‘Dane’ (but **египтя́нин** ‘Egyptian’, **израи́льтя́нин** ‘Israeli’), and replaces **ск** in **братча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Bratsk’, **минча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Minsk’, **норильча́нин** ‘inhabitant of Norilsk’.

(3) **-анка/-янка/-енка**

Female nationals (from zero-suffixed m. forms and some in -ец):

**гречáнка** ‘Greek woman’ (cf. грек ‘Greek’), **индиáнка** ‘Indian woman’ (cf. индiец ‘Indian’, индéец ‘North American Indian’), **китайáнка** ‘Chinese woman’ (cf. кита́ец ‘Chinese’), **турчáнка** ‘Turkish woman’ (cf. ту́рок ‘Turk’), **францу́женка** ‘Frenchwoman’ (cf. францу́з ‘Frenchman’).

(4) -арь

(i) Practitioners:

(a) from nouns:

**аптека́рь** ‘chemist’, **библиотека́рь** ‘librarian’, **вратáрь** ‘goalkeeper’.

(b) from verbs:

**звона́рь** ‘bell-ringer’, **пека́рь** ‘baker’, **то́карь** ‘turner’.

(ii) Objects (from nouns or adjs.):

**буква́рь** ‘primer’, **слова́рь** ‘dictionary’, **суха́рь** ‘rusk’.

(5) -ация/-изация/-фикация

Verbal nouns (from verbs in **-овать/-(-из)ировать/-фицировать**):

**демонстра́ция** ‘demonstration’, **классифика́ция** ‘classification’,

**приватиза́ция** ‘privatization’, **рекоменда́ция** ‘recommendation’

**роботиза́ция** ‘robotization’.

*Note*

(a) **-яция** after л: **вентиля́ция** ‘ventilation’.

(b) some nouns in **-фикация** denote provision of facilities:  
**кинофика́ция** ‘supplying with cinemas’ **электрифика́ция** ‘electrification’.

(6) -ач

Persons:

(i) with particular characteristics:

(a) from adjs.:

**бога́ч** ‘rich man’, **лиха́ч** ‘reckless driver’, **ловка́ч** ‘dodger’.

(b) from nouns:

**борода́ч** ‘bearded man’, **сила́ч** ‘strong man’, **уса́ч** ‘man with large moustache’.

(ii) practitioners (from verbs or nouns):

**врач** ‘doctor’, **скрипа́ч** ‘violinist’, **труба́ч** ‘trumpeter’, **ткач** ‘weaver’.

## (7) -ба

Verbal nouns (from impf. verbs):

**борьба** 'struggle', **жёнитьба** 'marriage', **просьба** 'request', **служба** 'service', **стрельба** 'shooting', **ходьба** 'walking'.

## (8) -ёж

Verbal nouns in -ёж derive from verbs in -ить:

**грабёж** 'robbery', **кутёж** 'carousing', **латёж** 'payment'.

*Note*

**галдёж** 'din', from **галдѣть** 'to make a din'.

## (9) -ёнок/-онок

The young of animals and birds:

**медвежонок** 'bear-cub', **львёнок** 'lion-cub', **орлёнок** 'young eagle', **тигрёнок** 'tiger-cub', **утёнок** 'duckling'.

## (10) -ец

Persons:

(i) with personality traits (from adjs.):

**гордец** 'arrogant man', **мудрец** 'wise man', **счастливец** 'happy person', **хитрец** 'cunning devil'.

(ii) agents of actions (from verbs):

**борец** 'wrestler', **гребец** 'oarsman', **певец** 'singer', **продавец** 'salesman'.

*Note*

In -лец: **владѣлец** 'owner', **кормилец** 'bread-winner' and from verbal nouns in -ение: **переселенец** 'settler', **снабженец** 'supplier'.

(iii) many nationals:

**америкáнец** 'American', **испáнец** 'Spaniard', **италья́нец** 'Italian', **кана́дец** 'Canadian', **не́мец** 'German', **норве́жец** 'Norwegian', **украи́нец** 'Ukrainian'.

(iv) most inhabitants:

**европéец** 'European', **кавказец** 'Caucasian', **лóндонец** 'Londoner', **новгóрoдец** 'inhabitant of Novgorod', **петербóржец** 'inhabitant of St Petersburg'.

*Note*

Infix -ов- in **донбáссовец** 'inhabitant of Donbass', etc.

(v) members of organizations, including acronyms and indeclinable nouns (often with infix -ов-):

**вузовец** ‘higher education student’ (from вуз ‘institution of higher education’), **динамовец** ‘member of Dynamo’, **недэлец** ‘employee of *Nedelya*’, **омоновец** ‘member of OMON’ (special police force), **ооновец** ‘UNO official’.

(11) -знь

States (based on verbs):

**болéзнь** ‘illness’, **бóязнь** ‘fear’, **жизнь** ‘life’, **неприя́знь** ‘hostility’.

(12) -ие/-ье

Qualities (based on adjs.):

**вели́чие** ‘greatness’, **весéлье** ‘gaiety’, **здоровье́** ‘health’.

*Note*

Usage in compound words: **долголéтие** ‘longevity’, **остроу́мие** ‘wit’, **равноду́шие** ‘indifference’.

(13) -изм

Policies, attitudes:

**брежневизм** ‘Brezhnevism’, **вещи́зм** ‘acquisitiveness’, **наплеви́зм** ‘couldn’t-care-less attitude’, **плюрали́зм** ‘pluralism’.

(14) -изна

Qualities (based on adjs.):

**белизна́** ‘whiteness’, **дешеви́зна** ‘cheapness’, **крутизна́** ‘steepness’, **новизна́** ‘newness’.

*Note*

Infix **-ов-** in **дорогови́зна** ‘expensiveness’.

(15) -ик

(i) Persons:

(a) (based on adjs. in -н-):

**вечéрник** ‘evening-class student’ (cf. **вечéрный** ‘evening’), **винóбник** ‘culprit’, **шкóльник** ‘schoolboy’.

*Note*

Some forms are based on adjs. in **-нный**: **тамо́женник** ‘customs officer’, adjs. in **-ственный**: **общéственник** ‘public figure’, or verbs in **-ствовать**: **путешéственник** ‘traveller’.

(b) practitioners, based on adjs. in:

-в-: **биржеви́к** ‘stockbroker’ (cf. биржево́й ‘stock-exchange’ [adj.]), **кроссови́к** ‘cross-country runner’, **оптови́к** ‘wholesaler’, **плани́к** ‘planner’.

-н-: **глазни́к** ‘oculist’ (cf. глазно́й ‘eye’ [adj.]), **железнодоро́жник** ‘railway worker’, **пожа́рник** ‘firefighter’, **сезо́нник** ‘seasonal worker’.

(ii) Objects based on adjs. in:

-в-: **белови́к** ‘fair copy’ (cf. белово́й ‘fair’ [adj.]), **броневи́к** ‘armoured car’, **грузови́к** ‘lorry’, **чернови́к** ‘rough copy’.

-н-: **купа́льник** ‘bathing costume’ (cf. купа́льный ‘bathing’ [adj.]), **па́мятник** ‘monument’.

(16) -ика

Berries:

**брусни́ка** ‘red whortleberry’, **голуби́ка** ‘bilberry’, **земляни́ка** ‘wild strawberries’.

(17) -ин

Nationals:

**болга́рин** ‘Bulgarian’, **грузи́н** ‘Georgian’, **осети́н** ‘Ossetian’, **тата́рин** ‘Tatar’.

(18) -ина

(i) dimensions:

**глуби́на** ‘depth’, **дли́на** ‘length’, **толщи́на** ‘thickness’, **шири́на** ‘width’.

(ii) the results of actions or processes (based on verbs):

**впа́дина** ‘hollow’, **морщи́на** ‘wrinkle’, **ржа́вчина** ‘rust’, **тре́щина** ‘crack’, **цара́пина** ‘scratch’.

(iii) types of meat:

**бара́нина** ‘mutton’, **говя́дина** ‘beef’, **осетри́на** ‘sturgeon’, **свини́на** ‘pork’.

*Note*

Derivative **-яти́на/-яти́на**, based on the plural of young animals: **медвежа́тина** ‘bear meat’, **теля́тина** ‘veal’.

(iv) Singulatives:

**бу́сина** (from бу́сы ‘beads’) ‘bead’, **виногра́дина** ‘grape’, **горо́шина** ‘pea’, **солóмина** ‘straw’.

*Note*

Forms in **-инка**: **снежи́нка** ‘snowflake’, **чаи́нка** ‘tea-leaf’.

## (19) -иня/-ыня

Feminine counterparts of zero-suffixed and some other nouns:

**ба́рыня** ‘lady’ (from ба́рин ‘lord’), **ге́роїня** ‘heroine’, **мона́хinya** ‘nun’.

## (20) -ист

Persons (based on nouns):

## (a) musicians:

**арфі́ст** ‘harpist’, **виолончелі́ст** ‘cellist’, **гіта́ріст** ‘guitarist’, **піані́ст** ‘pianist’.

## (b) sportsmen:

**волейбо́ліст** ‘volleyball player’, **теннісї́ст** ‘tennis-player’, **футбо́ліст** ‘footballer’, **хоккеї́ст** ‘ice-hockey player’, **шахматї́ст** ‘chess-player’.

## (c) drivers:

**таксі́ст** taxi driver, **танкі́ст** ‘tank driver’, **тракторї́ст** ‘tractor driver’.

## (21) -иха

Feminine ending (based on m. counterparts):

## (a) women with particular characteristics:

**трусі́ха** ‘cowardly woman’, **щеголі́ха** ‘showy dresser’.

## (b) practitioners:

**плювчі́ха** ‘female swimmer’, **поварі́ха** ‘cook’, **портні́ха** ‘dressmaker’, **ткачі́ха** ‘weaver’.

## (c) wives:

**купчі́ха** ‘merchant’s wife’, **ме́льничиха** ‘miller’s wife’, **полко́вничиха** ‘colonel’s wife’.

## (d) animals:

**зайчі́ха** ‘doe’, **лосі́ха** ‘female elk’, **ослі́ха** ‘female ass’, **слоні́ха** ‘cow elephant’.

## (22) -ица

Feminine ending:

## (a) counterparts of zero-suffixed m. nouns:

**фельдшері́ца** ‘female surgeon’s assistant’, **царі́ца** ‘tsarina’.

(b) counterparts of nouns in -ец:

**ревни́вица** 'jealous woman', **сослужив́ица** 'female colleague', **счастли́вица** 'happy woman'.

(c) animals and birds:

**волчи́ца** 'she-wolf', **льви́ца** 'lioness', **медве́дица** 'she-bear', **орли́ца** 'female eagle'.

(23) -ич

Inhabitants of certain ancient towns and cities:

**вѣтич** 'inhabitant of Vyatka', **костромѣч** 'inhabitant of Kostroma', **москвѣч** 'Muscovite', **омѣч** 'inhabitant of Omsk', **псковѣч** 'inhabitant of Pskov'.

(24) -ище

(i) places (from nouns or – particularly those in -лище – verbs):

**вместѣ́ище** 'receptacle', **жи́лище** 'dwelling', **кладби́ще** 'cemetery', **стрѣльби́ще** 'firing range', **убѣжи́ще** 'refuge'.

(ii) handles:

**ножеви́ще** 'knife-handle', **кнутови́ще** 'whip-handle', **топори́ще** 'axe-handle'.

(25) -ка

(i) verbal noun:

The suffix appears after vowel + consonant combinations, and derives from:

(a) some 2nd-conjugation verbs in -ить: **запра́вка** 'refuelling' (from запра́вить(ся) 'to refuel'), **перевóзка** 'transportation', **чи́стка** 'cleaning'.

*Note*

**Гла́жка** 'ironing' from гла́дить 'to iron', **сле́жка** 'tracking' from сле́дить 'to track', and derivative **-ѣжка/-овка** after vowel + two consonants: **бомбе́жка** 'bombing' (from бомбѣ́ть 'to bomb'), **сверло́вка** 'drilling'.

(b) from some verbs in -ать: **заде́ржка** 'delay' (from задержа́ть 'to delay'), **обрабо́тка** 'processing'.

*Note*

**-овка** after vowel + two consonants: **переигро́вка** 'replay' from переигра́ть 'to replay'.

- (c) from many verbs in **-овать:стыкóвка** ‘docking’ from стыкóваться ‘to dock’; and **-ировать: меблирóвка** ‘furnishing’ from меблирóвать ‘to furnish’.

*Note*

Some verbs in **-ировать** have alternative verbal nouns in **-ка** and **-ние**, e.g., **регулирóвка/регули́рование** ‘regulation’ from регули́ровать ‘to regulate’.

- (d) from some verbs in **-оть**, e.g. **ко́лка** ‘chopping’ (from колóть ‘to chop’).  
 (e) from a number of other verbs: **мо́йка** ‘washing’ (from мыть ‘to wash’), **поймка** ‘capture’ (from поймáть ‘to catch’), **стри́жка** ‘hair-cutting’ (from стричь ‘to cut’).

(ii) feminine suffix (from many zero-suffixed m. nouns and many m. nouns in **-ент: -ец, -ин, -ист, -ич**):

**грузи́нка** ‘Georgian woman’, **ко́нькобе́жка** ‘skater’, **москв́ичка** ‘Muscovite’, **студе́нка** ‘student’, **трактори́стка** ‘female tractor driver’.

(iii) contracted forms (from adj. + noun phrases):

**вече́рка** ‘evening paper’, **Ле́нинка** ‘Lenin Library’, **откры́тка** ‘postcard’, **со́тка** ‘mobile phone’, **электри́чка** ‘suburban commuter train’.

*Note*

Some nouns in **-лка** denote rooms, e.g. **раздева́лка** ‘changing room’.

(iv) objects (in **-лка**, from impf. verbs):

**ве́шалка** ‘stand’, **гре́лка** ‘hot-water bottle’, **зажигáлка** ‘lighter’, **открывáлка** ‘bottle-opener’, **точи́лка** ‘pencil sharpener’.

(26) **-ки**

Remnants:

**обье́дки** ‘scraps’, **опи́лки** ‘sawdust’, **очи́стки** ‘peelings’, **подо́нки** ‘dregs’.

(27) **-ло**

Implements, agents of action (from impf. verbs):

**крыло́** ‘wing’, **мы́ло** ‘soap’, **сверло́** ‘drill’, **точи́ло** ‘grind-stone’, **ши́ло** ‘awl’.

*Note*

N. pl. counterparts **черни́ла** ‘ink’, **уди́ла** ‘bit’.

(28) **-ние (-ание/-ение)**



Verbal nouns:

(i) in -ание/-яние (from many verbs in -ать/-ять):

**вяза́ние** ‘knitting’ (from вяза́ть ‘to knit’), **пая́ние** ‘soldering’ (from пая́ть ‘to solder’), including verbs in:

**-овать/-евать** (**рисова́ние** ‘drawing’, **завоева́ние** ‘conquering’);  
**-ствовать** (**бо́дрствование** ‘keeping awake’);  
**-ировать** (**кло́нирование** ‘cloning’).

(ii) in -ение, from:

(a) many 2nd-conjugation verbs in **-ить**: **куре́ние** ‘smoking’ (from кури́ть ‘to smoke’), **сохране́ние** ‘preservation’;

(b) verbs in **-еть**, of either conjugation:

**ста́рение** ‘ageing’ (from ста́реть ‘to age’), **горе́ние** ‘burning’ (from горе́ть ‘to burn’)

### Note

Consonant change applies to the following stem consonants:

**б:** **бл** **употре́бление** ‘use’ (from употре́бить ‘to use’);

**в:** **вл** **выздоровле́ние** ‘convalescence’ (from выздо́роветь ‘to convalesce’);

**д:** **ж** **бро́жение** ‘fermentation’ (from бро́дить ‘to ferment’);

**д:** **жд** **освобо́ждение** ‘liberation’ (from освободи́ть ‘to liberate’);

**з:** **ж** **отра́жение** ‘reflection’ (from отрази́ть ‘to reflect’);

**м:** **мл** **оформле́ние** ‘lay-out’ (from афо́рмить ‘to lay out’);

**п:** **пл** **подкре́пление** ‘reinforcement’ (from подкре́пить ‘to reinforce’);

**с:** **ш** **пригла́шение** ‘invitation’ (from пригласи́ть ‘to invite’);

**ст:** **щ** **упро́щение** ‘simplification’ (from упрости́ть ‘to simplify’);

**т:** **ч** **кипя́чение** ‘boiling’ (from кипя́тить ‘to boil’);

**т:** **щ** **посе́щение** ‘visit’ (from посети́ть ‘to visit’);

**ф:** **фл** **графле́ние** ‘ruling of lines’ (from графи́ть ‘to rule lines’).

(c) Verbs in **-сть**, **-чь** and **-ти** (with present-future stem consonant in verbal noun):

**нападе́ние** ‘attack’, from напа́сть ‘to attack’ (cf. 3rd person sing. нападе́т)

**проче́ние** ‘reading’, from проче́сть ‘to read’ (cf. 3rd person sing. прочте́т)

**извле́чение** ‘extraction’, from извле́чь ‘to extract’ (cf. 3rd person sing. извлече́т)

**пренебре́жение** ‘disdain’, from пренебре́чь ‘to scorn’ (cf. 3rd person sing. пренебреже́т)

**введéние** ‘introduction’, from ввести ‘to introduce’ (cf. 3rd person sing. введёт)

**спасéние** ‘salvation’, from спасти ‘to save’ (cf. 3rd person sing. спасёт)

**погребéние** ‘burial’, from погрести ‘to bury’ (cf. 3rd person sing. погребёт).

#### Note

Derivative **-ование** (mainly from pf. verbs in **-нуть(ся)**: **возникновéние** ‘rise’, **исчезновéние** ‘disappearance’, **столкновéние** ‘collision’.

#### (29) -ник

(i) Animate nouns:

(a) agent nouns (many based on verbs):

**защítник** ‘defender’, **измéнник** ‘traitor’, **охóтник** ‘hunter’, **рабо́тник** ‘worker’.

(b) practitioners (based on nouns):

**дво́рник** ‘yardman’, **мясн́ик** ‘butcher’, **плóтник** ‘carpenter’.

#### Note

Some nouns in **-ник** denote animate beings *and* inanimate objects:

**проводн́ик** (a) ‘guard on train’ (b) ‘electrical conductor’.

(c) nouns based on passive parts, (with retention of passive meaning):

**воспítанник** ‘pupil’, **избрáнный** ‘chosen one’, **ста́вленный** ‘protégé’.

#### Note

Some forms in **-еник** are active, others passive: **мýченик** ‘martyr’,

**тру́женик** ‘worker’, **учeníк** ‘pupil’.

(ii) Inanimate nouns (based on nouns):

(a) groups of plants and trees:

**éльник** ‘fir plantation’, **крапíвник** ‘clump of nettles’, **мали́нник** ‘raspberry bushes’, **осíнный** ‘aspen copse’.

(b) printed materials:

**зада́чник** ‘book of problems’, **разговóрник** ‘conversation manual’, **сбо́рник** ‘collection’, **сло́вник** ‘glossary’.

(c) other objects:

**бага́жник** 'boot', **гра́дусник** 'thermometer', **моло́чник** 'milk-jug', **спу́тник** 'satellite', **ча́йник** 'teapot'.

*Note*

Objects in **-льник** take penultimate stress and derive from verbs:

**буды́льник** 'alarm clock', **холоди́льник** 'refrigerator'.

(d) animal housing:

**коро́вник** 'cow shed', **куря́тник** 'hen coop', **пчѐльник** 'apiary'.

*Note*

Forms in **-атник/-ятник** are based on the names of young animals:

**гуся́тник** 'goose-run', **крольча́тник** 'rabbit-hutch', **теля́тник** 'calf shed'.

(30) **-ница**

(i) Feminine suffix:

**шко́льница** 'school-girl', **уча́стница** 'participant', **учи́тельница** 'female teacher'.

(ii) Names of receptacles:

**мы́льница** 'soap-dish', **пѐпельница** 'ash-tray', **пе́речница** 'pepper pot', **са́харница** 'sugar-bowl'.

(31) **-ня**

(i) verbal nouns (denoting energetic, protracted, sometimes irritating, activity):

**бего́тня** 'rushing around', **болто́вня** 'chatter', **возня́** 'romping around', **суе́тня** 'fuss, bustle'.

(ii) animate groups:

**ребя́тня** 'kids', **родня́** 'relatives', **солдату́ня** 'soldiery'.

(iii) places (based on nouns):

**колоко́бля** 'belfry', **пека́рня** 'bakery', **тамо́жня** 'customs house'.

*Note*

(a) Some nouns denote housing for birds: **голубя́тня** 'dovecote', etc.

(b) Forms in **-льня** derive from verbs: **купа́льня** 'bathing-place' (from **купа́ться** 'to bathe'), **спа́льня** 'bedroom', **чита́льня** 'reading room'.

*Note*

Also **ба́ня** 'bath-house', **бо́йня** 'slaughter-house', **ку́хня** 'kitchen'.

## (32) -ович/-(-ь)евич

The suffixes **-ович/-(-ь)евич** are used to form masculine patronymics, **-ович** for first names ending in a consonant: **Алекса́ндрович** 'Aleksandrovich', **-евич** for names in **-ай/-ей**: **Андре́евич** 'Andre-evich', **Никола́евич** 'Nikolaevich', **-ьевич** for names in **-ий**: **Васи́льевич** 'Vasilevich', (but **Дми́триевич** 'Dmitrievich' from **Дми́трий** 'Dmitrii').

*Note*

- (a) f. equivalents: **Алекса́ндровна** 'Aleksandrovna', **Андре́евна** 'Andreevna', **Васи́льевна** 'Vasilevna'.
- (b) m. patronymics in **-ич** from first names in **-а/-я**: **Ильи́ч** 'Ilich' (from **Илья́** 'Ilya'), **Кузьми́ч** 'Kuzmich' (from **Кузьма́** 'Kuzma'), with f. in **-инична**: **Ильи́нича** 'Ilinichna', **Кузьми́нича** 'Kuzminichna'.

## (33) -ок

- (i) Agents of actions (based on verbs):

**ездо́к** 'rider', **знато́к** 'expert', **игно́к** 'player', **стрело́к** 'marksman'.

- (ii) Verbal nouns (individual physical actions, based on unprefixed verbs):

**бро́сок** 'a throw', **глото́к** 'a swallow', **зево́к** 'a yawn', **звоно́к** 'a phone call', **прыжо́к** 'a jump', **свисто́к** 'a whistle', **скачо́к** 'a leap'.

- (iii) Objects (mostly based on prefixed verbs):

**набро́сок** 'sketch', **обло́мок** 'fragment', **оку́рок** 'cigarette end', **оско́лок** 'splinter', **пода́рок** 'gift'.

*Note:* Unprefixed **кипято́к** 'boiling water, boiled water'.

## (34) -ость/-есть

- (i) Qualities (based on adjs. **-ый/-ий**):

**ве́жливость** 'politeness', **го́рдость** 'pride', **гру́бость** 'coarseness', **све́жесть** 'freshness', **хра́брость** 'bravery'.

*Note*

Some are based on passive parts: **сде́ржанность** 'restraint', **терпи́мость** 'tolerance'.

- (ii) Feelings:

**жа́лость** 'pity', **не́жность** 'tenderness', **ра́дость** 'joy', **ре́вность** 'jealousy'.

(iii) States, based on passive parts.:

(a) in -мость:

**невесóмость** 'weightlessness', **незави́симость** 'independence',  
 **совме́стимость** 'compatibility'.

(b) in -нность:

**ангажи́рованность** 'partisanship', **влюблённость** 'infatuation',  
**вседозво́ленность** 'permissiveness'.

(iv) ratio or rate (based on passive parts.):

**разводи́мость** 'divorce rate', **рожда́емость** 'birth rate', **успева́емость**  
'academic progress'.

*Note*

**Сме́ртность** 'death rate'.

(35) -от

Sounds (based on verbs):

**гро́хот** 'din', **ро́пот** 'murmur', **то́пот** 'clatter', **ше́пот** 'whisper'.

(36) -ота

(i) Qualities (based on adjs. in -ый/-ой):

**добро́та** 'kindness', **красо́та** 'beauty', **просто́та** 'simplicity', **чисто́та**  
'cleanliness'.

(ii) States (based on adjs.):

(a) general:

**бедно́та** 'poverty', **тесно́та** 'cramped conditions', **пусто́та** 'emptiness',  
**тепло́та** 'warmth'.

(b) disabilities and ailments (based on adjs. in -ой):

**глухо́та** 'deafness', **немо́та** 'dumbness', **слепо́та** 'blindness', **хромо́та**  
'lameness'.

*Note*

Based on *verbs*, in -ота: **дремо́та** 'drowsiness' (from дрема́ть 'to doze'),  
**зево́та** 'fit of yawning', **икото́та** 'hiccuping'.

(37) -ствие

(i) Abstract states:

**бе́дствие** 'disaster', **споко́йствие** 'tranquillity', **сумасше́ствие** 'madness'.

(ii) Verbal nouns (from verbs in -ствовать):

**пу́тешество́ние** 'journey', **соде́йствие** 'cooperation', **соотве́тствие**  
'accordance'.

## (38) -ство

(i) Qualities (mostly from adjs. in **-ый**):

**безу́мство** 'foolhardiness', **досто́инство** 'dignity', **лука́вство** 'craftiness', **постоя́нство** 'constancy', **упо́рство** 'stubbornness'.

*Note*

Some nouns in **-ничество** correlate with verbs in **-ничать**: **ло́дырни́чество** 'skiving' (cf. ло́дырни́чать 'to skive'), **скря́жничество** 'miserliness'.

## (ii) States (based on nouns or adjs.):

**а́вторство** 'authorship', **бога́тство** 'wealth', **матери́нство** 'motherhood', **оди́ночество** 'solitude', **пья́нство** 'drunkenness'.

*Note*

Some nouns in **-ничество** correlate with verbs in **-ничать**:

**бро́дяжни́чество** 'vagrancy' (cf. бро́дяжни́чать 'to be a tramp').

## (iii) Verbal nouns:

**бе́гство** 'escape', **воровст́во** 'thieving', **дежу́рство** 'being on duty', **уби́йство** 'murder'.

*Note*

(a) Infix **-ов-** in **мотовст́во** 'extravagance' (from мотáть 'to squander'), **сва́товст́во** 'match-making', **хва́стовст́во** 'boasting'.

## (iv) Collectives (national, social, administrative or other groups):

**госуда́рство** 'state', **мини́стерство** 'ministry', **о́бщество** 'society', **прати́тельство** 'government', **студе́нчество** 'student body', **чело́вечество** 'mankind'.

## (v) Quantity (based on adverbs):

**больши́нство** 'majority', **ко́личество** 'quantity', **меньши́нство** 'minority', **мно́жество** 'multitude'.

## (39) -сть

## Feelings

**за́висть** 'envy', **не́нависть** 'hatred', **страсть** 'passion'.

## (40) -тель

## (i) Agents of actions (mainly based on verbs):

## (a) -атель (stress as in infinitive):

**избира́тель** 'voter', **покупа́тель** 'customer', **пользо́ватель** 'user', **слу́шатель** 'listener', **чита́тель** 'reader'.

(b) -итель (stress on -и-):

**грабитель** 'robber', **житель** 'inhabitant', **зритель** 'viewer', **мыслитель** 'thinker'.

(ii) Practitioners:

**водитель** 'driver', **писатель** 'writer', **строитель** 'builder', **учитель** 'teacher'.

(iii) Objects (many from transitive verbs):

**выключатель** 'switch', **двигатель** 'engine', **загрязнитель** 'pollutant', **истребитель** 'fighter plane'.

(41) -тие

Verbal nouns, from verbs, mainly transitive and prefixed, based on:

-**бить** (e.g. **разбитие** 'smashing')

-**быть** (e.g. **прибытие** 'arrival', but **добыча** 'extraction')

-**вить** (e.g. **развитие** 'development')

-**дуть** (e.g. **раздутие** 'inflating')

-**жать** (e.g. **сжатие** 'compression')

-**клясть** (e.g. **проклятие** 'damnation')

-**крыть** (e.g. **закрытие** 'closure')

-**лить** (e.g. **кровапролитие** 'bloodshed')

-**плыть** (e.g. **отплытие** 'departure')

-**пять** (e.g. **распятие** 'crucifixion')

-**чать** (e.g. **зачатие** 'conception')

-(н)**ять** (e.g. **принятие** 'taking').

Also **взятие** 'capture' (from **взять** 'to take').

#### Note

Correlation with perfective passive participles in -т- (e.g. **взятый** 'taken', **взятие** 'taking', etc. See 357–358).

(42) -ун

Agents of actions (from unprefixated impf. verbs):

**бегун** 'runner', **лгун** 'liar', **несун** 'pilferer', **опекун** 'guardian, carer', **плясун** 'dancer'.

#### Note

-ун in the names of some animals: **грызун** 'rodent', **скакун** 'racer'.

(43) -ура

Collectives:

**адвока́тура** 'the Bar', **клие́нтура** 'clientele', **номенклату́ра** '*nomenklatura*' (Soviet élite), **прокурату́ра** 'staff of prosecutor's office'.

## (44) -уха

(i) Medical conditions (based on colour adjs.):

**желту́ха** 'jaundice', **золоту́ха** 'scrofula', **красну́ха** 'German measles'.

(ii) Contracted forms (usually with pejorative meaning):

**группову́ха** 'gang crime', **показу́ха** 'sham, façade', **порну́ха** 'pornography', **черну́ха** 'denigration'.

## (45) -ча

Verbal nouns (from compounds of -дать and some others, e.g. **по́рча** 'spoiling', from **по́ртить** 'to spoil'):**вы́дача** 'issue', **переда́ча** 'transmission', **разда́ча** 'distribution', **сда́ча** 'handing over'.*Note*(a) Some verbs in -дать have verbal nouns in -дание (e.g. **изда́ние** 'publishing'), **продáть** 'to sell' has **продáжа** 'sale'.(b) **Добы́ча** 'mining' from **добы́ть** 'to mine' (some verbs in -быть have verbal nouns in -тие, e.g. **прибы́тие** 'arrival').

## (46) -ша

Feminine suffix (especially from nouns in -р/-рь, colloquial):

(a) practitioners:

**ба́рменша** 'barmaid', **библиотéкарша** 'librarian', **касси́рша** 'cashier'.

(b) wives:

**генерáльша** 'general's wife', **министéрша** 'minister's wife', **профéссорша** 'professor's wife'.

## (47) -щик (-чик after д, ж, з, с, т):

(i) Persons:

(a) general (from nouns or transitive verbs, often with a pejorative meaning):

**обма́нщик** 'deceiver', **отмы́вщик де́нег** 'money-launderer', **попу́тчик** 'fellow-traveller', **уго́нщик** 'vehicle thief'.

(b) practitioners:

**áтомщик** 'atomic scientist', **дальнобóйщик** 'long-distance lorry-driver', **лётчик** 'pilot', **перевóдчик** 'interpreter', **часовщи́к** 'watch-maker'.



*Note*

Some denote persons *and* implements: **счётчик** ‘census-taker’, ‘meter’.

Forms in derivative **-льщик** (with penultimate stress) derive from impf. verbs: **болельщик** ‘fan’, **чистильщик** ‘cleaner’.

(ii) objects:

**автоответчик** ‘answerphone’, **бомбардировщик** ‘bomber’, **передатчик** ‘transmitter’, **погрузчик** ‘loader’, **тральщик** ‘trawler’.

(48) **-щина** (**-чина** after **д** and **т**),

Attitudes and trends (from adjs. and nouns, especially surnames, usually pejorative):

**военщина** ‘military attitude’, **обломовщина** ‘Obломovism’, **сталинщина** ‘Stalinism’.

Also specific historical periods:

**ежовщина** ‘the Yezhov terror’ (i.e. 1937–38), **жdanовщина** ‘the Zhdanov repression’ (i.e. the years 1946–48 associated with Andrei Zhdanov’s cultural policies).

*Note*

**-ов-** infix in **дедовщина** ‘army brutality, hazing’ (from **дед** ‘senior soldier’), **митинговщина** ‘megaphone diplomacy’.

(49) **-щица**

Feminine counterparts to nouns in **-щик/-чик**:

**буфетчица** ‘bar-maid’, **крановщица** ‘crane-driver’.

(50) **-ыш**

Non-adults and some others (sometimes expressing sympathy or condescension, from adjs.):

**коротыш** ‘short person’, **крепьш** ‘sturdy child’, **мальш** ‘child, little boy’.

(51) **-ье**

Districts, areas, surroundings:

**верховье** ‘upper reaches’, **низовье** ‘lower reaches’, **поберёжье** ‘coastline’, **предгорье** ‘foothills’, **Подмосковье** ‘Moscow region’.

(52) **-ья**

Feminine counterparts to nouns in **-ун**:

**бегунья** ‘runner’, **лгунья** ‘liar’, **плясунья** ‘dancer’.

*Note*

For diminutive suffixes, see **105** 1–4 and **106** 1–2, for augmentative suffixes, **109** 1–2, for gender differentiation through suffixes, **43**.

## Gender

### 30      Masculine, feminine and neuter gender

---

(1) Adjectives, pronouns and the past-tense forms of verbs have the same gender as the noun they qualify or stand for:

<b>хоро́ший</b> муж	a good husband
<b>хоро́шая</b> жена́	a good wife
<b>хоро́шее</b> де́ло	a good cause

Оте́ц дово́лен	Father is pleased
Ма́ть дово́льна	Mother is pleased

Где <b>сто́л</b> ? Вот <b>он</b>	Where is the table? There it is
Где <b>ка́рта</b> ? Вот <b>она́</b>	Where is the map? There it is
Где <b>окно́</b> ? Вот <b>оно́</b>	Where is the window? There it is

**Дом** **стоя́л** в це́нтре го́рода  
The house stood in the city centre

**Ёлка** **стоя́ла** в це́нтре го́рода  
The Christmas tree stood in the city centre

**Зда́ние** **стоя́ло** в це́нтре го́рода  
The building stood in the city centre

#### Note

- (a) There is no equivalent in Russian of the articles ‘a’ and ‘the’. Thus, for example, **дом** means ‘a house’ and ‘the house’, the difference being resolved by context or word order (see **476** (1) note (b), as well as **126** (2) (i), **128** (2) note, **138** (1) (iii) (b), **143** (2) (i), **193** (4) (iii)). Note that such forms as **э́тот** ‘this’, **то́т са́мый** ‘the very’, **вы́ше упомя́нутый** ‘the above-mentioned’, **оди́н** ‘one’ etc. are sometimes used where an article would be used in English.
- (b) When the predicate precedes the subject and the subject consists of a number of nouns, agreement may be with the first noun only: **Нужно́** терпе́ние, понима́ние, взаи́мная откры́тость и доброже́лательность (*Komsomolskaya pravda*) ‘Patience, understanding, mutual openness and benevolence are necessary’ (pl. **нужны́** would also be possible, however).

(2) Grammatical gender (the assignment of gender to a noun in accordance with its ending) is distinguished from **natural** gender (the

assignment of gender in accordance with the sex of the being denoted by the noun, e.g. **мать** ‘mother’ (feminine), **дядя** ‘uncle’ (masculine)). Some nouns which can denote persons of either sex have **common** gender, that is, their gender varies in accordance with the sex of the person concerned (e.g. **сирота́** ‘orphan’ (masculine or feminine) see **35**).

(3) Gender affects only the **singular** of nouns; **plural** forms do not exhibit gender characteristics. The same adjectival endings, for example, are used for the plurals of nouns of *all* genders, cf.:

Singular	Plural
<b>хоро́ший</b> муж a good husband	<b>хоро́шие</b> мужья́ good husbands
<b>хоро́шая</b> жена́ a good wife	<b>хоро́шие</b> жёны good wives
<b>хоро́шее</b> де́ло a good cause	<b>хоро́шие</b> дела́ good causes

### Note

Gender may, however, be revealed in, for example, a subordinate clause: хоро́шие мужья́, **ка́ждый** (masculine singular relative pronoun) из кото́рых помога́л по до́му ‘good husbands, each of whom helped around the house’.

## 31 Masculine nouns

The following categories of noun are masculine:

- (1) All nouns ending in a hard consonant, e.g. **заво́д** ‘factory’
- (2) All nouns ending in **-й**, e.g. **музе́й** ‘museum’
- (3) ‘Natural’ masculines in **-а/-я**. These include:
  - (i) Nouns which by definition denote males:

<b>де́душка</b>	grandfather
<b>дядя́</b>	uncle
<b>мужчи́на</b>	man
<b>па́па</b>	Dad
<b>слуга́</b>	male servant
<b>юноша́</b>	youth, young man

including a few obsolescent nouns, e.g. **воево́да** ‘commander’.

- (ii) Some masculine first names:

<b>Ильѣ́</b>	И́ля
<b>Никѣ́та</b>	Nikita
<b>Фомѣ́</b>	Foma

(iii) The familiar forms of many masculine first names:

<b>Ва́ня</b>	Vanya (short for Ива́н)
<b>Воло́дя</b>	Volodya (short for Влади́мир)
<b>Са́ша</b>	Sasha (short for Алекса́ндр ( <i>or</i> for feminine Алекса́ндра)) etc.

(4) Diminutives and augmentatives based on masculine nouns:

<b>доми́шко</b> (from дом ‘house’)	little house
<b>доми́на, доми́ще</b> (also from дом)	enormous house

(5) **Подмасте́рье** ‘apprentice’.

(6) Many nouns ending in a soft sign (see **33**).

---

## 32      Feminine nouns

---

Categories of feminine noun include the following.

- (1) Most nouns in **-а/-я** (see, however, **31** (3) and **34** (4)).
- (2) Many nouns which end in a soft sign (see **33**).

---

## 33      Soft-sign nouns

---

Some soft-sign nouns are feminine (approximately three-quarters of the total); the rest are masculine. It is possible to give guidelines for determining the gender of many soft-sign nouns.

(1) Feminine soft-sign nouns

(i) ‘Natural’ feminines: **дочь** ‘daughter’ (see also (ii)), **лань** ‘doe’, **мать** ‘mother’, **не́тель** ‘heifer’, **свекро́вь** ‘mother-in-law’ (husband’s mother).

(ii) All nouns in **-жь, -чь, -шь, -щъ, -знь, -мъ, -пъ, -фъ**.

(iii) All nouns in **-сть**, except for masculine **гос́ть** ‘guest’, **не́христь** ‘infidel, rogue’ and **тес́ть** ‘father-in-law’ (wife’s father).

(iv) All nouns in

**-бъ** except for masculine **го́лубъ** ‘dove’

- вь** except for masculine **червь** 'worm'
- дь** except for masculine **вождь** 'leader', **гвоздь** 'nail', **Господь** 'Lord', **груздь** 'milk-agaric', **дождь** 'rain', **жёлудь** 'acorn', **лёбедь** 'swan', **медведь** 'bear' and a few historicisms
- зь** except for masculine **князь** 'prince', **ферзь** 'queen' (chess), **язь** 'ide' (fish of the carp family) and a few archaisms such as **вѣтязь** 'knight'
- сь** except for masculine **гусь** 'goose', **кара́сь** 'Crucian carp', **ло́сось/лосо́сь** 'salmon', **лось** 'elk'
- ть** except for natural masculines (see (2) (i) below) and masculine **дѣготь** 'tar', **ко́готь** 'claw', **ла́поть** 'bast shoe', **ло́коть** 'elbow', **ломо́ть** 'slice', **но́готь** 'finger-nail', **пу́ть** 'way', **та́ть** 'thief', **я́ть** 'the letter yat'

(v) Nouns derived through deaffixation from adjectives: **высь** 'heights' (cf. **высо́кий** 'high'), **гладь** 'smooth surface', **глубь** 'depth', **глушь** 'backwoods', **даль** 'distance', **зе́лень** 'greenery', **лень** 'laziness', **мель** 'shallows', **новь** 'virgin soil', **тишь** 'quiet', **уда́ль** 'daring', **ширь** 'expanse', **явь** 'reality'.

(vi) Nouns derived through deaffixation from verbs: **гарь** 'burning' (cf. **горѣ́ть** 'to burn'), **мазь** 'ointment', **насы́пь** 'embankment', **по́дпись** 'signature', **связь** 'connection', **смесь** 'mixture', **тварь** 'creature'.

(vii) Deverbal nouns in **-ель**, e.g. **ги́бель** 'ruin' (cf. **ги́бнуть** 'to perish'), **колыбе́ль** 'cradle', **мете́ль** 'snow storm'.

## (2) Masculine soft-sign nouns

(i) 'Natural' masculines: **гость** 'guest', **де́верь** 'brother-in-law' (husband's brother), **зять** 'son-in-law/brother-in-law', **князь** 'prince', **кобе́ль** 'male dog', **коро́ль** 'king', **па́рень** 'lad', **се́лезень** 'drake', **тесть** 'father-in-law' (wife's father), **царь** 'tsar'.

(ii) Deverbal agent nouns (animate and inanimate) in **-тель** (**созда́тель** 'creator', **выключáтель** 'light-switch') or **-итель** (**учи́тель** 'teacher', **краси́тель** 'dye').

(iii) Nouns in **-арь** derived from verbs (**пе́карь** 'baker'), nouns (**вратáрь** 'goal-keeper') or adjectives (**дика́рь** 'savage').

(iv) The names of **months** ending in a soft sign.

(v) All names of birds ending in a soft sign except for feminine **выпь** 'bittern' and **неясыть** 'tawny owl'; all names of insects ending in a soft sign except for feminine **моль** 'moth'.

The gender of other soft-sign nouns has to be learnt individually.

### 34 Neuter nouns

Categories of neuter noun include the following.

- (1) Nouns in **-о** (see, however, **31** (4)).
- (2) Nouns in **-е**. However, **кофе** ‘coffee’ is masculine (neuter in substandard registers only; see **36** (1) note (a)). See also **31** (4).
- (3) Nouns in **-ё**.
- (4) Nouns in **-мя**: **время** ‘time’, **имя** ‘first name etc. See **64**.
- (5) Other parts of speech functioning as nouns: **громкое** «урá» ‘a loud “hurrah”’.

### 35 Common gender

A number of nouns in **-а** and **-я** have common gender. They can denote males or females, adjectival, pronominal and verb agreement varying with the sex of the person denoted by the noun, e.g. **горький** пьяница ‘confirmed drunkard’ (male), **горькая** пьяница ‘confirmed drunkard’ (female). Among the commonest of the nouns are бродяга ‘tramp’, глава ‘head, chief’, калёка ‘cripple’, коллега ‘colleague’, левша ‘left-handed person’, малютка ‘baby’, невежда ‘ignoramus’, неряха ‘litter-bug’, обжора ‘glutton’, одиночка ‘lone person’, пьяница ‘drunkard’, сирота ‘orphan’ (крýглый/крýглая сиротá ‘person who has lost both parents’), убийца ‘murderer’, умница ‘clever person’:

Говорите со мной, как с **крýглым** невеждой (Grekova)  
 Speak to me as to a complete ignoramus

See also мать-одиночка ‘single-mother’ (*Note*: отец-одиночка, ‘single father’, is masculine)

### 36 Indeclinable nouns of foreign origin

(1) Most indeclinable loan-words in **-ао**, **-ау**, **-е**, **-и**, **-о**, **-оа**, **-оу**, **-у**, **-уа**, **-ю**, **-э** are neuter: какáо ‘cocoa’; нóу-хáу ‘know how’; ательé ‘workshop’, желé ‘jelly’, кабаре́ ‘cabaret’, кафе́ ‘café’, кашне́ ‘scarf’, коммюнике́ ‘communiqué’, купé ‘compartment’, портмонé ‘purse’, резюмé ‘résumé’, тирé ‘dash’, фойé ‘foyer’, шоссé ‘highway’; вíски ‘whisky’, жюри́ ‘jury’, пари́ ‘bet’, пенáльти ‘penalty’ (also masculine), рáлли ‘rally’, таксí ‘taxi’, шассí ‘undercarriage’; бистрó ‘bistro’, бюрó ‘office’, депó ‘depot’, кинó ‘cinema’, метрó ‘underground railway’, пальтó ‘overcoat’, пиани́но ‘piano’, рáдио ‘radio’; боá ‘boa’

(but боа́ ‘boa-constrictor’ is masculine); шоу́ ‘show’; рагу́ ‘ragout’; амплу́а ‘role’; интервью́ ‘interview’, меню́ ‘menu’, ревью́ ‘review’; каратэ́ ‘karate’, евро́ ‘the Euro’, вето́ ‘veto’, лобби́ ‘lobby’.

#### Note

- (a) **Ко́фе** ‘coffee’ is masculine: Ля́ля спроси́ла, не сде́лать ли **кре́пкий** ко́фе (Trifonov) ‘Lyalya asked if she should not make some strong coffee’, and масс-ме́диа, ‘mass media’ is feminine.
- (b) Only context can show the number (singular or plural) of an indeclinable noun: thus В шкафу́ **висят но́вое** пальто́/**висят но́вые** пальто́ ‘A new coat is hanging/new coats are hanging in the cupboard’; **о́дно** пальто́ ‘one coat’, **де́сять** пальто́ ‘ten coats’.

(2) Some indeclinables assume the gender of the central or ‘generic’ noun. Thus, **торна́до** ‘tornado’ is masculine (cf. ве́тер ‘wind’), likewise **пушту́** ‘Pushtu’, **урду́** ‘Urdu’, **хи́нди** ‘Hindi’ (cf. язы́к ‘language’) and **фло́ппи** (cf. фло́ппи-диск) ‘floppy disk’. **Аве́ню** ‘avenue’ is feminine (cf. у́лица ‘street’), as are **сала́ми** ‘salami’ (cf. колбаса́ ‘sausage’), **цеце́** ‘tsetse fly’ (cf. му́ха ‘fly’) and **цуна́ми** ‘tsunami’ (alternatively neuter) (cf. волна́ ‘wave’):

Цуна́ми **унесла́** его́ в океа́н (Gagarin)  
The giant wave carried him out to sea

(3) The gender of many indeclinable nouns which denote human beings follows the principle of natural gender. Thus, буржуа́ ‘bourgeois’, крупье́ ‘croupier’, мафи́озо/мафи́ози ‘mafioso’, маэ́стро ‘maestro’ and рефе́ри/рефе́ри ‘referee’ are masculine, while ле́ди ‘lady’ and мада́м ‘madam’ are feminine. Some nouns have common gender (виза́ви ‘counterpart’, *vis-à-vis*, проте́же ‘protégé(e)’, хи́ппи ‘hippy’), whereas атташе́ ‘attaché’, инко́гнито ‘person who is incognito’ and конфе́рансье ‘comprère’ are masculine and папара́цци ‘paparazzi’ is plural only.

(4) Indeclinable names of animals also have common gender: гну́ ‘gnu’, кенгу́ру ‘kangaroo’, шимпанзе́ ‘chimpanzee’ etc. Nouns are treated as masculine when the sex of the animal is irrelevant (**ра́ненный** гну́ ‘a wounded gnu’), but feminine gender is assigned in ‘female’ contexts:

Шимпанзе́ **корми́ла** дете́ныша  
The chimpanzee was feeding her baby

(5) The names of some birds are masculine (какаду́ ‘cockatoo’, марабу́ ‘marabou’, флами́нго ‘flamingo’) while коли́бри ‘humming-bird’ is masculine or feminine.

### 37      Indeclinable place names

---

Indeclinable place names take the gender of the central ('generic') noun. Names of towns and islands are masculine (cf. го́род 'town' and о́стров 'island'): Баку́ 'Baku', Гла́зго 'Glasgow', Кале́ 'Calais', О́сло 'Oslo', Ско́пье/Ско́пле 'Skopje', Со́чи 'Sochi' (also plural: ста́рые Со́чи 'old Sochi'), Тбили́си 'Tbilisi', То́кио 'Tokyo'; Ка́при 'Capri', Таи́ти 'Tahiti'. Similarly, the names of rivers are feminine (cf. река́ 'river'): споко́йная Мисси́сипи 'the calm Mississippi'. Ю́нгфрау 'the Jungfrau' is feminine (cf. го́ра 'mountain'). Э́ри 'Lake Erie' is neuter (cf. о́зеро 'lake'). Ма́ли 'Mali' has alternative feminine and neuter gender (cf. страна́ 'country' and госуда́рство 'state'). Despite exceptions to the rule, the 'generic' principle is the norm.

### 38      Titles of books etc.

---

The generic principle is usually applied in assigning gender to titles which are indeclinable: турге́невская «Муму́» 'Turgenev's *Mumu*' (cf. пове́сть (f.) 'tale'), ло́ндонская «Та́ймс» 'the London *Times*' (cf. газе́та 'newspaper'). A title based on an oblique case may observe the generic principle (го́рьковская «На дне» 'Gorky's *Lower Depths*' (cf. пье́са 'play')) or take a neuter adjective (го́рьковское «На дне»). Otherwise, gender is determined by the gender and number of the title: пу́шкинский «Евге́ний Оне́гин» 'Pushkin's *Eugene Onegin*', турге́невское «Дворя́нское гнездо́» 'Turgenev's *Nest of Noblemen*', савра́совские «Гра́чи прилете́ли» 'Savrasov's (painting) *The Rooks Have Arrived*'.

#### *Note*

In order to avoid possible incongruence, a genre word may be introduced: рома́н Толсто́го «А́нна Каре́нина» 'Tolstoy's novel *Anna Karenina*'.

### 39      Acronyms

---

The gender of acronyms is usually determined by their ending. Thus, **бомж** (from без определённого ме́ста жи́тельства 'without a definite place of residence') 'homeless person', **вуз** (from вы́сшее учё́бное заведе́ние 'higher teaching establishment'), **загс** (from отде́л за́писи а́ктов гражда́нского состоя́ния 'registry office') are masculine. However, the gender of the central noun may sometimes prove decisive.



Thus, **роно́** (from райо́нный отде́л наро́дного образова́ния ‘local education authority’) was originally neuter but is now usually treated as masculine.

#### Note

Loan acronyms such as ла́зер, from English ‘laser’ (light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation).

## 40 Alphabetisms

Alphabetisms consist of initial *capital* letters, many being pronounced as letters rather than words, and most are indeclinable, though there are exceptions among those assigned masculine gender (see 73). In terms of gender assignment, alphabetisms subdivide as follows:

(1) Those which retain the gender of the central noun:

(i) Masculine: **ВИЧ** [вич] (ви́рус имму́нодефи́цита челове́ка) ‘human immunodeficiency virus’, **НИВ**, **МГУ** [эм-гэ-у] (Мо́сковский госуда́рственный универси́тет) ‘Moscow State University’, **МХАТ** [мхат] (Мо́сковский худо́жественный акаде́мический теа́тр) ‘Moscow Art Theatre’, **НИИ** [ний] (Нау́чно-иссле́довательский институ́т) ‘Scientific Research Institute’, **ОВИР** [ови́р] (Отде́л виз и регистра́ция иностран́ных гра́ждан) ‘Visa Department and Registration of Foreign Nationals’, **СКА** [эс-ка́ or ска] (спорти́вный клуб а́рмии) ‘Army Sports Club’.

(ii) Feminine: **АТС** [а-тэ-эс] (автомати́ческая телефо́нная ста́нция) ‘automatic telephone exchange’, **ГАИ** [гай] (Госуда́рственная автомоби́льная инспе́кция) ‘State Vehicle Inspectorate’ (see page 596), **ГЭС** [гэс] (гидроэ́лектрическая ста́нция/гидроэ́лектроста́нция) ‘hydroelectric power station’, **ООН** [оон] (Организа́ция Объединённых На́ций) ‘United Nations Organization’, **СКВ** [эс-ка-вэ́] (свободо́но конверти́руемая валю́та) ‘freely-convertible currency’, **ТЭЦ** [тэц] (теплова́я э́лектроцентра́ль) ‘thermal power station’. **КПРФ** [кэ-пэ-эр-эф] (Коммуни́стическая па́ртия Росси́йской Федера́ции) ‘Communist Party of the Russian Federation’, **ЛДПР** [эл-дэ-пэ-эр] (Либе́рально-демократи́ческая па́ртия Росси́и) ‘Liberal Democratic Party of Russia’.

Здесь **рабо́тала** мо́щная ГЭС (*Sputnik*)

A mighty power station was in operation here

(iii) Neuter: **СНГ** [эс-эн-гэ́] (Содру́жество незави́симых госуда́рств) ‘Commonwealth of Independent States’, ‘CIS’, **СП** [эс-пэ́] (совме́стное предпри́ятие) ‘joint venture’, **ТЯО** [тяо́] (такти́ческое я́дерное ору́жие) ‘tactical nuclear weapons’.

(iv) Plural: **ЯКВ** [я-ка-вэ́] (я́дерные косми́ческие воору́жения) ‘nuclear space armaments’.

(2) Some much-used alphabetisms acquire the gender implied by the ending. Thus, **Минздрав** (from Министёрство здравоохранения ‘Ministry of Health’) is masculine, **Минобразовáние** (from Министёрство образовáния ‘Ministry of Education’) is neuter. **МИД** [мид] (Министёрство инострáнных дел ‘Ministry of Foreign Affairs’), which was once neuter, is now masculine, **НЭП** [нэп] (но́вая эконо́мическая поли́тика ‘New Economic Policy’), which was once feminine, is now masculine and **ТАСС** [тасс] (Телегра́фное аге́нтство Сове́тского Сою́за ‘Telegraphic Agency of the Soviet Union’), (now replaced by **ИТАР-ТАСС**: Информа́ционное телегра́фное аге́нтство Росси́и – Телегра́фное аге́нтство сувере́нных стран ‘Information and Telegraphic Agency of Russia – Telegraphic Agency of the Sovereign Countries’), once neuter, also acquired masculine gender.

(3) Some alphabetisms differentiate gender stylistically. Thus, **ЖЭК** [жэк] (жи́лищно-эксплуата́ционная конто́ра ‘housing office’), initially feminine in written styles (cf. конто́ра), is commonly assigned masculine gender in everyday speech.

(4) Those based on the initials of *foreign* words tend to acquire gender in accordance with the ending. Thus, **ФИАТ** [фиáт] (Fabbrica Italiana Automobili Torino) is masculine, **ФИФА** [фифá] (Fédération Internationale de Football Association) is feminine and **НАТО** [на́то] (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) is neuter. **США** [сша/сэ-ше-á] (Соединённые Шта́ты Аме́рики ‘United States of America’) is plural.

#### Note

Alphabetisms may be rendered phonetically, particularly in dialogue:

Вáшу эн-тэ-э́р (НТР – нау́чно-техн́ическая револю́ция) я ви́дел (Grekova)

I have seen your scientific-technical revolution

Е́сли не в реме́сленное, то в фе-зе-ó (ФЗО – фаб́рично-заво́дское́ обуча́ние), мо́жет быть, возьму́т, сказа́л он. (Panova)

‘If I don’t get into trade school’, he said, ‘I might get accepted for factory apprentice training’.

## 41 Stump compounds

‘Stump compounds’ incorporate the truncated forms of one or more words: **забастко́м** (from забастовочный комите́т) ‘strike committee’, **колхо́з** (from коллективное хозяйство) ‘collective farm’, **ликбе́з** (from ликвидация безграмотности) ‘elimination of illiteracy’, **собе́с** (from социальное обеспечение) ‘social security’ (all masculine). Most nouns in this productive category take their gender from the ending of the stump compound. Those which denote people may have common gender, e.g. **управдо́м** (from управляющий/-ая до́мом) ‘house manager’ (управдо́м сказа́л, что дово́лен ‘the house manager said he was pleased’, управдо́м сказа́ла, что дово́льна ‘the house manager said she was pleased’) and similarly **завка́федрой** (from заведующий/-ая ка́федрой) ‘head of university department’. **Са́мбо** (from самооборо́на без ору́жия) ‘unarmed combat’ is neuter, **сте́нгазе́та** (from стенна́я газе́та) ‘wall newspaper’ is feminine, **тера́кт** (from террористический акт) ‘terrorist outrage’ is masculine.

### Note

The full title заведующий ка́федрой ‘head of department’ is preferred to завка́федрой in official contexts, referring to persons of either sex, and in contexts where the sex of the person is irrelevant, заведующая being confined to colloquial registers or references to a particular person, cf.:

Собеседник называёт Евгению Ива́новну Ду́рову, **заведующую** группой биохимических исследований (*Pravda*)

The person I am speaking to mentions Evgeniya Ivanovna Durova, head of the biochemical research group

## 42 Compound hyphenated nouns

The gender of compound hyphenated nouns is determined by the gender of the central noun, which often precedes the qualifier: **автомобиль-иномарка** (m.) ‘foreign car’, **галстук-бабочка** (m.) ‘bow-tie’, **диван-кровать** (m.) ‘divan-bed’, **кресло-качалка** (n.) ‘rocking chair’, **ракета-носитель** (f.) ‘carrier-rocket’, **школа-интернат** (f.) ‘boarding school’. However, in some compounds the qualifier precedes the central noun: **автомат-закусочная** (f.) ‘vending machine’, **штаб-квартира** (f.) ‘headquarters’ **веб-страница** (f.) ‘web-page’, **пресс-конференция** (f.) ‘press conference’, **смарт-карта** (f.) ‘smart card’:

Автомат-закусочная **отремонтирована**

The vending machine has been repaired

13 ию́ля на ста́ртовом по́ле **появи́лась** дубли́рующая раке́та-носите́ль (*Russia Today*)

A reserve carrier-rocket appeared on the launch pad on 13 July

### 43 Differentiation of gender through suffixes

(1) Suffixes are used to distinguish male and female representatives of various occupations, professions, organizations, functions, nationalities etc. See also 29.

Male	Female	
армя́нин	армя́нка	Armenian
бе́гун	бе́гунья	runner
большеви́к	большеви́чка	Bolshevik
корми́лец	корми́лица	breadwinner
крановщи́к	крановщи́ца	crane operator
ле́тчик	ле́тчица	pilot
неме́ц	не́мка	German
поэ́т	поэте́сса	poet
сто́рож	сторожи́ха	guard
супру́г	супру́га	spouse
уче́ник	уче́ница	pupil
учи́тель	учи́тельница	teacher

Note also стары́к ‘old man’, стару́ха ‘old woman’.

(2) The masculine form may, however, be used for persons of either sex:

(i) Where gender differentiation is of no significance in a particular occupation. Thus, библиотéкарь ‘librarian’, води́тель ‘driver’, касси́р ‘cashier’, кондúктор ‘(bus-) conductor’ etc. can be used of men *and* women. The feminine suffix **-ша** (as in библиотéкариша, касси́риша, кондúкторша) has in any case been devalued by its earlier use in designating a woman in terms of her husband’s occupation: генерáльша ‘general’s wife’ (cf. купчи́ха ‘merchant’s wife’). In modern Russian **-ша** is reserved for some occupations practised predominantly by women (e.g. маникю́риша ‘manicurist’ (маникю́р means ‘manicure’)) or denotes a lower-prestige occupation (cf. секретáриша ‘shorthand typist’ and секретáрь ‘secretary’ (of, for example, a party committee)). See also 29 (46).

#### Note

**Учи́тель** tends to sound more prestigious than учи́тельница and may refer to a female as well as to a male teacher, especially where the subject is specified: Она́ учи́тель математи́ки ‘She is a mathematics

teacher’. Compare Она наилу́чший **учи́тель** в шко́ле ‘She is the best teacher in the school’ (i.e. of all the teachers, male and female) and Она наилу́чая **учи́тельница** в шко́ле ‘She is the best woman-teacher in the school’.

(ii) In cases where a plural covers male and female practitioners: профсою́з **рабо́тников** трáнспорта ‘transport workers’ union’.

(3) Gender differentiation is retained, however, when male and female practitioners fulfil different functions: thus **актёр**, **актри́са** ‘actor, actress’ (playing, respectively, male and female roles). This also applies in most sports (where men and women compete against others of their own sex, not against each other): thus **конькобе́жец/конькобе́жка** ‘skater’, **плыве́ц/плывчи́ха** ‘swimmer’, **чемпио́н/чемпио́нка** ‘champion’ (note, however, that only the more prestigious-sounding **чемпио́н** is used in official titles).

(4) In cases where men take up a ‘female’ occupation, a male equivalent of the name of the profession may be created, e.g. **до́яр**, cf. до́ярка ‘milkmaid’ (however, both have been superseded in mechanized dairies by **опе́ратор** or **ма́стер маши́нного до́ения** ‘milking-machine operator’), **пере́писчик на маши́нке**, cf. **маши́нистка** ‘typist’ (маши́нист ‘engine-driver’). Note also **медици́нский брат** (or **сани́та́р**) ‘male nurse’ (cf. медици́нская сестра́ ‘nurse’). The male equivalent of балери́на ‘ballerina’ is **арти́ст бале́та**. However, there are seemingly no masculine equivalents for **моди́стка** ‘milliner’ and **швей-мотори́стка** ‘sewing-machine operator’.

#### 44 Professions

(1) Where professions which were almost exclusively male dominated before the Revolution are now also practised by women, the same designation is used for either sex. This applies to all professions in **-вед**, **-граф**, **-лог** (языкове́д ‘linguist’, биоло́г ‘biologist’, топо́граф ‘topographer’ etc.) and to а́втор ‘author’, архите́ктор ‘architect’, ветерина́р ‘veterinary surgeon’, врач ‘doctor’ (же́нщина-врач ‘woman doctor’ is no longer appropriate in a society where most doctors *are* women; cf., however, **же́нщина-космона́вт** ‘space-woman’ and **же́нщина-офице́р** ‘woman officer’), ди́ктор ‘announcer’, дире́ктор ‘director’, до́ктор ‘doctor’, инже́не́р ‘engineer’, компо́зитор ‘composer’, мини́стр ‘minister’, парикма́хер ‘hairdresser’, по́вар ‘cook’, почта́льо́н ‘postman’, председа́тель ‘chairman’, продаве́ц ‘sales assistant’, профе́ссор ‘professor’, строите́ль ‘builder’, судья́ ‘judge’.

счетовод 'accountant', тренер 'trainer', шеф 'boss, head', экскурсовод 'guide' etc.

### Note

- (a) Though some of the above have feminine equivalents which are also in use (e.g. **продавщица** 'sales-girl'), all *can* be used to designate either men or women. Masculine and feminine forms may, however, be distinguished stylistically, with masculine (**продавец** 'sales assistant', **секретарь** 'secretary' etc.) preferred in official contexts and feminine in conversation (Она работает **продавщицей** 'She works as a shop assistant').
  - (b) The sex of an individual may be indicated by context: В клубе с родителями не раз **встречалась** профессор А. А. Люблинская, специалист по детской психологии (*Rabotnitsa*) 'Professor A. A. Lyublinskaya, a specialist in child psychology, met parents in the club on more than one occasion'.
  - (c) In colloquial Russian, **историчка** refers to a female history teacher (cf. историк 'historian, history teacher'). **Электричка** (cf. электрик 'electrician') and **техничка** (cf. техник 'technician') mean respectively 'suburban commuter train' and 'cleaning lady'.
  - (d) Male and female also share ranks in the services: **Рядовой** Вера Захаренко награждена орденом Отечественной войны (*Rabotnitsa*) 'Private Vera Zakharenko has been awarded the Patriotic War Medal'.
- (2) The nouns are qualified by *masculine* attributive adjectives irrespective of sex:

<b>Он</b> хоро́ший врач	He is a good doctor
<b>Она́</b> хоро́ший врач	She is a good doctor

### Note

The use of feminine adjectives in such cases (e.g. **молодая** экскурсовод 'a young guide') is characteristic of 'relaxed' speech. **Молодой** экскурсовод is preferred for persons of either sex. In oblique cases masculine agreement is mandatory: Он подошёл к нашему экскурсоводу Ивановой 'He approached Ivanova, our guide'. Since there are some professions with which feminine adjectives may not combine (**агроном** 'agronomist', **учитель** 'teacher', **хирург** 'surgeon'), feminine agreement is best avoided altogether.

- (3) The gender of **predicative** adjectives and past verb forms depends on the sex of the individual:

Врач <b>боле́н</b>	The doctor (male) is sick
--------------------	---------------------------

Врач **больна́** The doctor (female) is sick

Касси́р о́чень ве́жливо и о́чень прόсто всё **объясни́ла**  
(*Izvestiya*)

The cashier explained everything very politely and very simply

Библиотéкарь **добáвила**: У нас 12 000 томóв (Nosov)

The librarian added 'We have 12,000 volumes'

## 45 Animals

(1) Most nouns denoting animals, birds, insects etc. refer to the species in general: **ёж** 'hedgehog', **жура́вь** (m.) 'crane', **кит** 'whale', **кры́са** 'rat', **мышь** (f.) 'mouse' and so on. Thus, there is no indication of the sex of the animal or bird in Ёж скры́лся в лесу́ 'The hedgehog disappeared into the forest', Лáсточка ви́ла гнездó 'The swallow was building a nest'. Male and female can be differentiated where necessary by using the words **самéц** 'male' and **самка́** 'female' followed by the genitive case of the name of the animal: самéц/самка́ ежа́ 'male/female (of the) hedgehog' etc.

(2) Some animal names, however, do distinguish male and female: волк/волчи́ца 'wolf', заяц/зайчи́ха 'hare', лев/льви́ца 'lion/lioness', слон/слони́ха 'elephant', тигр/тигри́ца 'tiger/tigress'. The male form also denotes the species in general (except for **кот/ко́шка** 'cat', where the female form **ко́шка** denotes the species in general).

(3) Male and female are differentiated in the names of farm animals: барáн/овца́ 'ram/sheep', бо́ров/свинья́ 'boar/sow', бык/коро́ва 'bull/cow', козе́л/коза́ 'billy-/nanny-goat', пету́х/ку́рица 'cockerel/hen', селе́зень/у́тка 'drake/duck'.

(4) A few species have three names denoting (a) the species in general, (b) male and (c) female: гусь (m.) 'goose', гуса́к 'gander', гусы́ня 'goose'; ло́шадь (f.) 'horse', жеребе́ц 'stallion', кобы́ла 'mare'; соба́ка 'dog', кобе́ль (m.) 'male dog', су́ка 'bitch'.

## Declension

### 46 Introduction

(1) Nouns decline according to one of three declension patterns. Most

masculine and neuter nouns belong to the first declension and most feminine nouns to the second, except for feminine soft-sign nouns, which belong to the third declension (see **63**).

(2) The first and second declensions contain both hard-ending nouns (e.g. first-declension **дом** ‘house’, **окно́** ‘window’, second-declension **ка́рта** ‘map’) and soft-ending nouns (e.g. first-declension **музе́й** ‘museum’, **гос́ть** ‘guest’, **мо́ре** ‘sea’, second-declension **ку́хня** ‘kitchen’). All nouns in the third declension are feminine and end in a soft sign.

(3) Some declension endings are affected by the rules of spelling (see **16** (1) and (2)).

(4) For *stress* changes in all three declensions, see **57, 60, 62, 63** (4).

---

## 47 Animacy

---

(1) The accusative case of an animate **masculine** singular noun is identical with the genitive, (see **(51)**) cf.

дом **бра́та** (genitive) ‘my brother’s house’  
ви́жу **бра́та** (accusative) ‘I see my brother’

### Note

The differentiation of animate subject and animate object is important in a language where either may precede the other with virtually no change in meaning, cf. Оте́ц лю́бит сы́на ‘The father loves the son’ and Сы́на лю́бит оте́ц ‘The father loves the son’ (or ‘It is the father who loves the son’, see **475** (2)). The need to avoid ambiguity determines the accusative/genitive rule in animate masculine nouns.

(2) The following types of masculine singular noun are affected:

(i) Human beings: Оте́ц лю́бит сы́на ‘The father loves the son’.

(ii) Animals: Я ви́жу бы́ка ‘I see the bull’.

(iii) Common nouns used figuratively to denote human beings: болва́н ‘blockhead’, дуб ‘dunce’, куми́р ‘idol’, тип ‘type’ etc.:

Я ре́дко встре́чал тако́го болва́на/тако́го забавно́го ти́па  
I have seldom met such a blockhead/such a funny character

### Note

(a) Я ве́л «Москвича́» ‘I was driving a “Moskvich”’ (car) is more colloquial than Я ве́л «Москв́ич».



- (b) Usage with **рóбот**: cf. Инженёр конструирует **рóбот** ‘The engineer is designing a robot’ (i.e. an automaton), and figurative usage in превращать челове́ка в **рóбота** ‘to turn a man into a robot’. However, the animate accusative/genitive is now normal in non-figurative contexts also:

Компа́ния «Ма́нуси́ма» уже́ испытáла рóбота (*Nedelya*)  
The ‘Matsushima’ company has already tested a robot

- (iv) Some folk dances, e.g. плясáть **трепакá**, **гопакá** ‘to dance the trepak, the gopak’; animate beings in book titles, e.g. Держáл в ру́ках «*Чапáева*» ‘In his hands he held *Chapaev*’ (a novel); playing cards, e.g. сброси́ть **валéта**, сня́ть **туза́**, ‘to discard a knave, cut an ace’; billiards and snooker balls, e.g. положи́ть **зелёного** (шара́) в лу́зу ‘to pocket the green’; chess pieces, e.g. взять **слонá**, **короля́**, **ферзя́** ‘to take a bishop, the king, the queen’; the words **зме́й** ‘kite’ and **разведчик** ‘reconnaissance aircraft’ (cf. animate connotations (‘serpent’ and ‘reconnaissance agent’ respectively)), e.g. пуска́ть **змéя** ‘to fly a kite’, сбítiь **разведчика́** ‘to shoot down a reconnaissance aircraft’. Analogous usage such as сбítiь **истребите́ля** ‘to shoot down a fighter’ and поста́вить **дворни́ка** ‘to fit a windscreen wiper’ characterizes professional colloquial speech but is otherwise regarded as substandard for usage with standard inanimate accusatives **истребите́ль** and **дворни́к**.

#### Note

- (a) Collective nouns (e.g. наро́д ‘people’, полк ‘regiment’, скот ‘cattle’) are *not* treated as animate:

Внача́ле тигр напада́ет на **скот** (*Russia Today*)  
First a tiger attacks the cattle

- (b) The nouns мертве́ц ‘dead person’ and поко́йник ‘deceased’ are treated as animate, while труп ‘corpse’ is not, cf.

Он взял **мертвеца́** за плечо́ и поверну́л на́ спину (*Nagibin*)  
He took the dead person by the shoulder and turned him on his back  
and

Он рассказа́л, как он обнару́жил **труп** (*Nagibin*)  
He told how he had discovered the corpse

- (3) The following types of **plural** noun are affected by the rule.

- (i) Human beings and animals of *all* genders: (see **51**, **61**, **158** (6) (iv))

Она́ ко́рмит **ма́льчиков** и **де́вочек**  
She is feeding the boys and girls

Он ко́рмит **осло́в** и **ове́ц**

He is feeding the donkeys and the sheep

Он ви́дит **живо́тных**

He sees the animals

*Note*

Лови́ть **ома́ров** ‘to catch (live, i.e. animate) lobsters’, but есть, покупа́ть **ома́ры** ‘to eat, buy (dead, i.e. inanimate) lobsters’. The distinction applies mainly to crustaceans, but is not consistently observed.

(ii) Toys fashioned in human form:

Там де́лают **матрёшек**

Nesting dolls are made there

Де́вочка одева́ет **ку́кол**

The little girl is dressing the dolls

*Note*

**Марионе́тка** ‘puppet’ also belongs in this category.

(iii) Plural equivalents of the singular categories listed above: чита́ть «**Бра́тьев Карама́зовых**» ‘to read *The Brothers Karamazov*’ (see (2) (iii) and (iv) above).

*Note*

- (a) Бакте́рия ‘bacterium’, бацилла́ ‘bacillus’, ви́рус ‘virus’, зарóдыш ‘foetus’, микро́б ‘microbe’ are treated as inanimate: Чело́век убива́ет **бациллы** и **бакте́рии** ‘Man kills bacilli and bacteria’. Use of the accusative/genitive in such cases is regarded as somewhat old-fashioned but may be encountered in books on biology and medicine: Изуча́ть **бакте́рий, ви́русов, микро́бов** ‘To study bacteria, viruses, microbes’.
- (b) **Войска́** (pl.) ‘troops’ is treated as inanimate and has accusative войска́.
- (c) The animate accusative genitive rule also applies to adjectives, pronouns and certain numerals (see **193** (1 note (c)), **196** (2) and **200**).

---

## **48      Nouns which are used only in the singular**

---

Some nouns have singular form only. They include nouns which denote:

- (1) **Qualities, sensations:** хра́брость ‘bravery’, грусть ‘sadness’.

(2) **Collectives:** бельё ‘linen’, листьв́а ‘foliage’ etc.

(3) **Substances, foods, cereals:** дéрево ‘wood’, овёс ‘oats’ and so on. Note, however, that the plurals of some nouns in these categories are encountered in the meaning ‘brands’, ‘large quantities’: жиры́ ‘fats’. This also applies to certain **natural phenomena** normally found in the singular only: дожди́ ‘persistent rain’, морóзы ‘persistent heavy frost’, снегá ‘heavy snow’. The names of some **vegetables and fruits** are also used in the singular only (виногра́д ‘grapes’, горо́х ‘peas’, изю́м ‘raisins’, капу́ста ‘cabbage’, карто́фель ‘potatoes’, лук ‘onions’, морко́вь ‘carrots’), a different word being used to denote ‘one onion’ (лу́ковица/голо́вка лу́ка or лу́ку): cf. виногра́дина ‘a grape’, горо́шина ‘a pea’, изю́мина ‘a raisin’, карто́фелина/клу́бень карто́феля ‘a potato’, коча́н капу́сты ‘a cabbage’, морко́вка ‘a carrot’. Compare also соло́ма ‘straw’, соло́мина ‘a straw’; шокола́д ‘chocolate’, шоколо́дка ‘a chocolate’.

(4) ‘Singulatives’ are also used to create plural forms from abstracts and collectives which have no plural of their own: долг ‘duty’ (**обязанности** ‘duties’ (note that долг in the meaning ‘debt’ has a plural: дол́ги)), ложь ‘lie’ (**выдумки** ‘fabrications, lies’), ору́жие ‘weapons’ (pl. **ви́ды ору́жия**), поли́тика ‘policy, politics’ (полити́ческие **направле́ния** ‘policies’), промышле́нность ‘industry’ (**б́трасли** промышле́нности ‘industries’), спорт ‘sport’ (**ви́ды спо́рта** ‘sports, events’). Note also that разли́чия can be used as the plural of ра́зница (which has no plural of its own).

(5) The names of animals, trees etc. may denote a whole species:

В на́шем лесу́ растёт то́лько **сосна́**  
Only pine trees grow in our forest

Здесь ло́вят то́лько **лещá**  
Only bream is caught here

(6) Names of professions and some other words can also be used collectively: День **шахтёра** ‘Miners’ Day’, Дом **кни́ги** ‘book shop’, Дом **учи́теля** ‘Teachers’ Club’.

#### Note

A number of nouns, once used only in the singular, have acquired plurals: риск ‘risk’, pl. ри́ски, техноло́гия ‘technology’, pl. техноло́гии, эконóмика ‘economy’, pl. эконóмики, etc.

## 49      Nouns which have a plural form only

(1) Many plural-only nouns denote objects comprising two or more essential components: **брюки** 'trousers', **ножницы** 'scissors'. Others denote complex processes (**роды** 'childbirth'), games (**прятки** 'hide and seek') etc.

(2) Morphologically, the nouns subdivide as follows.

(i) Plurals in **-ы/-и/-я**, genitive **-ов**:

**аплодисменты** 'applause'      gen. **аплодисментов**

Similarly **бегá** 'trotting races', **весы** 'scales', **вы́боры** 'election', **дебáты** 'debate', **джинсы** 'jeans', **духи́** 'perfume', **за́морозки** 'light frosts', **консервы́** 'preserves', **мемуа́ры** 'memoirs', **оста́нки** 'human remains', **очки́** 'spectacles', **переговóры** 'negotiations', **подóнки** 'dregs', **припа́сы** 'stores', **ро́ды** 'childbirth', **счёты** 'abacus', **тро́пики** 'tropics', **тру́сики/трусý** 'shorts', **штаны́** 'trousers', **щипцы́** 'pincers, tongs', **тали́бы**, 'the Taliban'.

### Note

Nouns ending in two vowels or unstressed **-цы** have gen. **-ев**: **обо́и**, **обо́ев** 'wallpaper' (likewise **побо́и** 'beating', **помо́и** 'slops'), **плоскогу́бцы**, **плоскогу́бцев** 'pliers'.

(ii) Plurals in **-ы/-и** with zero genitive ending:

**ви́лы** 'pitchfork'      gen. **вил**

Similarly **Афи́ны** 'Athens', **брю́ки** 'trousers', **де́ньги** (gen. **де́нег**) 'money', **имени́ны** 'name-day', **кальсо́ны** 'pants', **кани́кулы** 'holidays', **носи́лки** (gen. **носи́лок**) 'stretcher', **но́жницы** 'scissors', **но́жны** (gen. **но́жен**) 'sheath', **опи́лки** (gen. **опи́лок**) 'sawdust', **пантало́ны** 'knickers', **пла́вки** (gen. **пла́вок**) 'swimming trunks', **по́хороны** (gen. **похоро́н**) 'funeral', **сала́зки** (gen. **сала́зок**) 'toboggan', **са́нки** (gen. **са́нок**) 'sledge', **сли́вки** (gen. **сли́вок**) 'cream', **су́мерки** (gen. **су́мерек**) 'dusk', **су́тки** (gen. **су́ток**) '24-hour period', **у́зы** 'bonds', **хло́поты** (gen. **хлопо́т**) 'trouble', **ша́хматы** 'chess', **шо́ры** 'blinkers'.

(iii) Plurals in **-а** with zero genitive ending:

**воро́та** 'gate'      gen. **воро́т**

Similarly **дрова́** 'firewood', **кружева́** 'lace' (also sing. **кру́жево**), **не́дра** 'bowels of the earth', **перы́ла** 'railing', **черны́ла** 'ink'.

(iv) Nouns in **-и**, genitive **-ей**:

**качѐли** ‘swing’ gen. **качѐлей**

Similarly бѹдни ‘weekdays’ (gen. also бѹден), вѹжжи (gen. вожжѐй) ‘reins’, грабѐли ‘rake’ (gen. also грабѐль), джѹнгѐли ‘jungle’, дрѹжжи (gen. дрожжѐй) ‘yeast’, клѐщи (gen. клещѐй) ‘pincers’, кѹдри (gen. кудрѐй) ‘curls’, помѹчи (gen. помочѐй) ‘braces’, сѹни (gen. санѐй) ‘sledge’, щи ‘cabbage soup’.

#### Note

- (a) Прѐния, gen. прѐний ‘debate’, свѐдения, gen. свѐдений ‘information’.
- (b) Countable nouns in the series, e.g. сѹни ‘sledge’, can denote one object (‘sledge’) or a number of objects (‘sledges’). Meaning is determined by context: Из санѐй вѹскочил солдѹт ‘A soldier jumped from the **sledge**’; Из санѐй вѹскочил цѐлый взвод солдѹт ‘A whole platoon of soldiers jumped from the **sledges**’.

## 50 Declension chart

The following chart shows, in simplified form, the declension pattern in all three declensions.

		Singular				Plural		
		m	n	f		m	n	f
N		cons. -й -ѣ	-о -е -ѐ	-а/-я	-ѣ	-ы/-и	-а/-я	-ы/-и
A	INAN	= N	= N	-у/ю	-ѣ	= N		
	ANIM	= G				= G		
G		-а/-я		-ы/-и	-и	-ов/-ев/-ей	zero/ей	
D		-у/-ю		-е	-и	-ам/-ям		
I		unstr. ем -ом/ str. ём	-ей -ой/ -ёй	-ью	-ами/-ями			
P		-е			-и	-ах/-ях		

## 51 First declension: masculine nouns

### (1) Hard-ending nouns

Declension of **заво́д** ‘factory’ (inanimate) and **студе́нт** ‘student’ (animate):

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	заво́д	студе́нт	заво́д- <b>ы</b>	студе́нт- <b>ы</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	заво́д (=nom.)	студе́нт- <b>а</b> (=gen.)	заво́д- <b>ы</b>	студе́нт- <b>ов</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	заво́д- <b>а</b>	студе́нт- <b>а</b>	заво́д- <b>ов</b>	студе́нт- <b>ов</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	заво́д- <b>у</b>	студе́нт- <b>у</b>	заво́д- <b>ам</b>	студе́нт- <b>ам</b>
<i>Instr.</i>	заво́д- <b>ом</b>	студе́нт- <b>ом</b>	заво́д- <b>ами</b>	студе́нт- <b>ами</b>
<i>Prep.</i>	о заво́д- <b>е</b>	о студе́нт- <b>е</b>	о заво́д- <b>ах</b>	о студе́нт- <b>ах</b>

### Note

- Nouns in **г, к, х/ж, ч, ш, щ** have nominative and inanimate accusative plural **-и**: уро́к ‘lesson’, уро́ки; нож ‘knife’, но́жи (see 16 (1)).
- Nouns ending in **ж, ч, ш, щ, ц** and with stem stress in declension have instrumental singular **-ем**: душ ‘shower’, ду́шем; ме́сяц ‘month’, ме́сяцем (see 16 (2)).
- Nouns ending in **ж, ч, ш, щ** have genitive plural **-ей**: нож ‘knife’, gen. pl. но́жéй.
- Nouns ending in **-ц** with stem stress in declension have genitive plural **-ев**: шпри́ц ‘syringe’, gen. pl. шпри́цев (see 16 (2)).
- The genitive plural of some nouns is identical with the nominative singular (see 56).
- Год** ‘year’ has genitive plural **лет** (**годо́в** in denoting decades: мо́ды **50-х** **годо́в** ‘the fashions of the fifties’); cf. dative, instrumental, prepositional plural **года́м, годáми, о годáх**.

### (2) Soft-ending nouns

#### (i) Nouns in **-й**

Declension of **музе́й** ‘museum’ and **геро́й** ‘hero’:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	музе́й	геро́й	музе́- <b>и</b>	геро́- <b>и</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	музе́й (=nom.)	геро́- <b>я</b> (=gen.)	музе́- <b>и</b>	геро́- <b>ев</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	музе́- <b>я</b>	геро́- <b>я</b>	музе́- <b>ев</b>	геро́- <b>ев</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	музе́- <b>ю</b>	геро́- <b>ю</b>	музе́- <b>ям</b>	геро́- <b>ям</b>

<i>Instr.</i>	музѐ- <b>ем</b>	герó- <b>ем</b>	музѐ- <b>ями</b>	герó- <b>ями</b>
<i>Prep.</i>	о музѐ- <b>е</b>	о герó- <b>е</b>	о музѐ- <b>ях</b>	о герó- <b>ях</b>

*Note*

- (a) Nouns in **-ий** have prepositional singular **-ии**: гѐний ‘genius’, о гѐнии.
- (b) **Воробѣй** ‘sparrow’ is declined as follows: acc./gen. воробѣя, dat. воробѣю, instr. воробѣём, prep. о воробѣе; nom. pl. воробѣй, acc./gen. воробѣёв, dat. воробѣям, instr. воробѣями, prep. о воробѣях. Similarly, муравѣй ‘ant’, соловѣй ‘nightingale’ and inanimate (acc. = nom.) репѣй ‘burdock’, ручѣй ‘stream’ and stem-stressed ўлей ‘bee-hive’.

## (ii) Soft-sign nouns

Declension of **портфѣль** ‘briefcase’ and **тѣсть** ‘father-in-law’:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	портфѣль	тѣсть	портфѣл- <b>и</b>	тѣст- <b>и</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	портфѣль (=nom.)	тѣст- <b>я</b> (=gen.)	портфѣл- <b>и</b>	тѣст- <b>ей</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	портфѣл- <b>я</b>	тѣст- <b>я</b>	портфѣл- <b>ей</b>	тѣст- <b>ей</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	портфѣл- <b>ю</b>	тѣст- <b>ю</b>	портфѣл- <b>ям</b>	тѣст- <b>ям</b>
<i>Instr.</i>	портфѣл- <b>ем</b>	тѣст- <b>ем</b>	портфѣл- <b>ями</b>	тѣст- <b>ями</b>
<i>Prep.</i>	о портфѣл- <b>е</b>	о тѣст- <b>е</b>	о портфѣл- <b>ях</b>	о тѣст- <b>ях</b>

## 52 The fleeting vowel

The vowel in the final syllable of many nouns which end in a hard consonant or soft sign does *not* appear in oblique cases. Vowels affected include the following:

## (1) ‘о’: ры́нок ‘market’

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	ры́нок	ры́нка	ры́нку	ры́нком	о ры́нке
Plural	ры́нки	ры́нков	ры́нкам	ры́нками	о ры́нках

Most nouns in **-ок** are similarly declined. Exceptions include **знато́к** ‘connoisseur’ (gen. **знатока́**), **игро́к** ‘player’, **уро́к** ‘lesson’.

*Note*

Some other nouns also contain a fleeting **-о-**:

- (a) Hard-ending nouns: лоб ‘forehead’, gen. **лоба**; мох ‘moss’; посóл ‘ambassador’; рот ‘mouth’; сон ‘sleep’; ўгол ‘corner’; шов ‘seam’.

- (b) Soft-sign nouns: дѣготь, gen. дѣгтя ‘tar’; коготь ‘claw’; ломоть ‘slice’; ноготь ‘nail’; огонь ‘fire’; уголь ‘coal’, gen. угля/угля.

- (2) ‘е’: конѣц ‘end’

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	конѣц	концá	концú	концóm	о концé
Plural	концý	концов	концáм	концáми	о концáх

Most nouns in **-ец** are similarly declined. However, stressed **-ѣ-** is retained when preceded by a double consonant: близнѣц ‘twin’, gen. близнецá; кузнѣц ‘blacksmith’, gen. кузнецá.

#### Note

- (a) See 51 (1) notes (b) and (d) for the instrumental singular and genitive plural of stem-stressed nouns in **-ц**.  
 (b) **-ле-** becomes **-ль-** in oblique cases: палец ‘finger’, gen. пáльца.  
 (c) A fleeting vowel preceded by another vowel is replaced by **-й-** in oblique cases: бельгíец ‘Belgian’, gen. бельгíйца; китáец ‘Chinese’, gen. китáйца. Cf. заём ‘loan’, gen. зáйма; зáяц ‘hare’, gen. зáйца.

Other hard and soft nouns with a fleeting **-е-** include вѣтер ‘wind’ (gen. вѣтра), замысел ‘project’, узел ‘knot’ (gen. узлá), хребѣт ‘range of hills’; день ‘day’ (gen. дня), камень ‘stone’, кашель ‘cough’, корень ‘root’, ливень ‘downpour’, парень ‘fellow’, пень ‘stump’, ремень ‘strap’, стѣбель ‘stalk’.

- (3) ‘ѣ’: ковѣр ‘carpet’

Nouns with a fleeting **ѣ** include ковѣр ‘carpet’ (gen. коврá), козѣл ‘goat’, костѣр ‘bonfire’, котѣл ‘boiler’. Note that in some words **ѣ** is replaced by a soft sign following **л**, **н** or **р**: лёд ‘ice’ (gen. льда), конѣк ‘skate’ (gen. конькá), хорѣк ‘ferret’ (gen. хорькá).

## 53 Partitive genitive in **-у/-ю**

Some hard-ending masculine nouns and a few nouns in **-й** have an alternative genitive singular in **-у/-ю**. The nouns all denote measurable quantities, e.g. виногрáд ‘grapes’ (gen. виногрáда/виногрáду), чай ‘tea’ (gen. чáя/чáю). Other nouns with a partitive genitive in **-у/-ю** include:

жир	fat	сáхар	sugar
-----	-----	-------	-------



<b>квас</b>	kvass	<b>снег</b>	snow
<b>клей</b>	glue	<b>суп</b>	soup
<b>лук</b>	onions	<b>сыр</b>	cheese
<b>мёд</b>	honey	<b>таба́к</b>	tobacco
<b>мел</b>	chalk	<b>творо́г</b>	cottage cheese
<b>мех</b>	fur	<b>чесно́к</b>	garlic
<b>наро́д</b>	people	<b>шёлк</b>	silk
<b>песчо́к</b>	sand, castor sugar	<b>шокола́д</b>	chocolate
<b>рис</b>	rice		

Most genitives in **-y/-ю** appear only in quantitative expressions: кусо́к **сы́ру** ‘piece of cheese’, ча́шка **ча́ю** ‘cup of tea’. See also 84.

Owing to the colloquial nature of the genitives in **-y**, they are not found with nouns denoting rarer substances such as, for example, **молибде́н** ‘molybdenum’.

## 54 Prepositional/locative singular in **-ý/-ю**

### (1) Locative in **-ý**

Some nouns have an alternative prepositional singular in stressed **-ý**; it is used with the prepositions **в** and **на** to denote location, but not with other prepositions that take the prepositional case (о, по, при); cf. в порту́ ‘in the port’ and о **порту́** ‘about the port’:

<b>аэропо́рт</b>	airport
<b>бал</b>	ball, dance
<b>бе́рег</b>	shore, bank
<b>бок</b>	side
<b>бор</b>	coniferous forest
<b>бо́рт</b>	side (of a ship, etc.)
	<b>на борту́</b> ‘on board’
<b>верх</b>	top, summit
<b>глаз</b>	eye
<b>Дон</b>	the Don
<b>Клин</b>	Klin
<b>Крым</b>	the Crimea
<b>ле́д</b>	ice
	( <b>на льду́</b> ‘on the ice’)
<b>лес</b>	forest
<b>лоб</b>	forehead
	( <b>на лбу́</b> ‘on the forehead’)

<b>луг</b>	meadow
<b>мост</b>	bridge
<b>мох</b>	moss ( <b>во мху</b> 'in the moss')
<b>нос</b>	nose, prow
<b>плот</b>	raft
<b>пол</b>	floor
<b>полк</b>	regiment
<b>порт</b>	port
<b>пост</b>	post ( <b>на посту́</b> 'at one's post')
<b>пруд</b>	pond
<b>рот</b>	mouth ( <b>во рту</b> 'in the mouth')
<b>сад</b>	garden, orchard
<b>снег</b>	snow
<b>тыл</b>	the rear
<b>угол</b>	corner ( <b>в/на углу́</b> 'in/at the corner')
<b>шкаф</b>	cupboard

### Note

- Some phrases denote state: **в бреду́** 'in a delirium', **в быту́** 'in everyday life', **в жару́** 'in a fever', **в плену́** 'in captivity'.
- Where **в** or **на** have non-locational meanings, the noun takes the ending **-е**: знать толк **в ле́се** 'to understand the forest'.
- The ending **-е** is also used in the names of books: **в «Вишнёвом са́де» Чехова** 'in Chekhov's *Cherry Orchard*'.
- Sometimes both **-е** and **-у́** are possible, the form in **-у́** being the more colloquial variant: **в о́тпуске/отпуску́** 'on holiday', **в це́хе/цеху́** 'in the workshop'.
- The endings **-е** and **-у́** may be differentiated semantically and phraseologically, cf. в XX **ве́ке** 'in the twentieth century' and Много ви́дел я люде́й на своём ве́ку 'I have seen a lot of people in my time'; в ви́де исклю́чения 'by way of an exception' and имéть в ви́ду 'to bear in mind'; в до́ме 'in the house' and на до́му 'on the premises'; в спаса́тельном **кру́ге** 'in a lifebelt' and в семе́йном **кру́гу** 'in the family circle'; труди́ться в **по́те** лица́ 'to labour by the sweat of one's brow' and весь в **поту́** 'bathed in sweat'; в **ря́де** слу́чаев 'in a number of cases' and в **пе́рвом ря́ду** 'in the front row'; умерéть во **цве́те** лет 'to die in one's prime'

and деревья в полном **цвету́** ‘the trees are in full bloom’; в **ча́се** лёта от Москвы́ ‘an hour’s flight from Moscow’ and во второ́м **часу́** ‘between one and two o’clock’.

- (f) Note also жить в **ладу́** ‘to live in harmony’, куртка **на меху́** ‘furlined jacket’, **на каждом шагу́** ‘at every step’.

## (2) Locative in -ю

A few nouns in **-й** and **-ь** have a locative singular in **-ю**: **бой** ‘battle’, в **бою́** ‘in battle’ (but о **бо́е** ‘about the battle’). Similarly рай ‘paradise’, строй (стоя́ть в **строю́** ‘to stand in line’). Cf. на **краю́** ‘on the edge’, в родно́м **краю́** ‘on one’s native soil’, but в Краснода́рском **кра́е** ‘in Krasnodar Territory’, на передне́м **кра́е** оборо́ны ‘in the front line of defence’, from край ‘edge, territory, front line’. Хмель (a) ‘hops’ (b) ‘inebriation’ has a locative in **-ю** in meaning (b): во хмелю́ ‘in his cups’, cf. о хмеле́ ‘about hops’.

## 55 Special masculine plural forms

Some first-declension masculine nouns have special plural forms.

### (1) Nominative plural in -а́/я́

- (i) Some hard-ending nouns have a nominative plural in stressed **-а́**: адре́с ‘address’, pl. **адреса́**. Similarly:

<b>бе́рег</b>	shore	<b>но́мер</b>	number, issue
<b>бок</b>	side	<b>обшлáг</b>	cuff
<b>бо́рт</b>	side of ship	<b>о́круг</b>	district
<b>бу́фер</b>	buffer	<b>о́рдер</b>	warrant
<b>ве́ер</b>	fan	<b>о́стров</b>	island
<b>век</b>	age, century	<b>па́рус</b>	sail
<b>ве́чер</b>	evening	<b>па́спорт</b>	passport
<b>глаз</b>	eye	<b>пе́репел</b>	quail
<b>го́лос</b>	voice, vote	<b>по́езд</b>	train
<b>го́род</b>	town	<b>по́яс</b>	belt
<b>ди́ректор</b>	director	<b>профе́ссор</b>	professor
<b>до́ктор</b>	doctor	<b>ро́г</b>	horn
<b>дом</b>	house	<b>рука́в</b>	sleeve
<b>ко́локол</b>	bell	<b>со́рт</b>	brand
<b>лес</b>	forest	<b>сто́рож</b>	watchman
<b>луг</b>	meadow	<b>то́м</b>	volume
<b>ма́стер</b>	craftsman	<b>че́реп</b>	skull

*Note*

- (a) Some plurals in **-а** and **-ы/-и** are differentiated semantically: кондуктор<sup>а</sup> ‘bus-conductors’, кондукторы ‘electrical conductors’; корпус<sup>а</sup> ‘corps, buildings’, корпуса ‘torsos’; мех<sup>а</sup> ‘furs’, мехи ‘bellows’; образ<sup>а</sup> ‘icons’, образы ‘forms’; орден<sup>а</sup> ‘orders, decorations’, ордены ‘monastic orders’; провод<sup>а</sup> ‘electric wires’, провода ‘send-off’ (no sing.); счет<sup>а</sup> ‘accounts’, счёты ‘abacus’ (no sing.); тон<sup>а</sup> ‘colour shades’, тоны (musical) ‘tones’; тормоз<sup>а</sup> ‘brakes’, тормозы ‘hindrances’; хлеб<sup>а</sup> ‘cereals’, хлебы ‘loaves’; цвет<sup>а</sup> ‘colours’, цветы ‘flowers’ (sing. цветóк).
- (b) Some plurals in **-ы/-и** are used in written styles, and their counterparts in **-а** in colloquial or technical contexts: год ‘year’, инспектор ‘inspector’, инструктор ‘instructor’, корректор ‘proofreader’, крейсер ‘cruiser’, редактор ‘editor’, цех ‘workshop’.
- (ii) A few nouns ending in **-й** or **-ь** have nominative plural **-я́**: край ‘edge’, pl. **края́** (gen. pl. **краёв**); вексель ‘bill of exchange’, pl. **векселя́**. Likewise лагерь ‘camp’ (but лагери ‘political camps’), тополь ‘poplar’, учитель ‘teacher’ (but pl. учителя in the meaning ‘teachers of a doctrine’, e.g. учителя коммунизма ‘the teachers of communism’), штабель ‘stack’, штампель ‘stamp’, якорь ‘anchor’.

*Note*

Пéкарь ‘baker’, слéсарь ‘metal worker’ and то́карь ‘turner’ have standard plurals in **-и** and alternative, colloquial plurals in **-я́** (also used in professional parlance).

(2) Nominative plural in **-ья**

- (i) Stem-stressed: стул ‘chair’ (inanimate), брат ‘brother’ (animate).

Plural	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>сту́лья</b>	<b>сту́лья</b>	<b>сту́льев</b>	<b>сту́льям</b>	<b>сту́льями</b>	<b>о сту́льях</b>
	<b>бра́тья</b>	<b>бра́тьев</b>	<b>бра́тьев</b>	<b>бра́тьям</b>	<b>бра́тьями</b>	<b>о бра́тьях</b>

Similarly (all inanimate): брус ‘beam’, зуб ‘cog’ (cf. зуб ‘tooth’, pl. зу́бы, зубóв), клин ‘wedge’, клóк ‘shred’ (pl. **клóчья**, **клóчьев** ‘tatters’), кол ‘stake’, ко́лос ‘ear of corn’ (pl. **ко́лосья**), ком ‘lump’, лист ‘leaf’ (cf. лист ‘sheet of paper’, pl. **ли́сты**, **ли́стов**), лоску́т ‘scrap’ (pl. **лоску́тья** ‘rags’, cf. **лоскуты́** ‘scraps of paper’), обо́д ‘rim’ (pl. **обо́дья**), по́вод ‘rein’ (pl. **пово́дья**, cf. **пово́ды** ‘causes’), по́лоз ‘runner’ (pl. **поло́зья**, cf. **по́лозы** ‘grass-snakes’), прут ‘twig’, стру́п ‘scab’, сук ‘bough’ (pl. **су́чья**, **су́чьев** or **суки́**, **суко́в**). Note also the plural-only form **хло́пья** ‘flakes’.

- (ii) End-stressed in plural.

(a) **Дёверь** ‘brother-in-law’, **друг** ‘friend’, **муж** ‘husband’, **сын** ‘son’:

Plural	Nom.	Acc./Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>деверья</b>	<b>деверей</b>	<b>деверьям</b>	<b>деверьями</b>	<b>о деверьях</b>
	<b>друзья</b>	<b>друзей</b>	<b>друзьям</b>	<b>друзьями</b>	<b>о друзьях</b>
	<b>мужья</b>	<b>мужей</b>	<b>мужьям</b>	<b>мужьями</b>	<b>о мужьях</b>
	<b>сыновья</b>	<b>сыновей</b>	<b>сыновьям</b>	<b>сыновьями</b>	<b>о сыновьях</b>

(*But* мужи́ нау́ки ‘men of science’, сыны́ ро́дины ‘sons of the fatherland’.)

(b) **зять** ‘son-in-law, brother-in-law’, **кум** ‘godfather’:

Plural	Nom.	Acc./Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>зятья</b>	<b>зятьёв</b>	<b>зятьям</b>	<b>зятьями</b>	<b>о зятьях</b>
	<b>кумовья</b>	<b>кумовьёв</b>	<b>кумовьям</b>	<b>кумовьями</b>	<b>о кумовьях</b>

(3) Plural of nouns in -анин/-янин, e.g. англича́нин ‘Englishman’

Plural	Nom.	Acc./Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>англича́не</b>	<b>англича́н</b>	<b>англича́нам</b>	<b>англича́нами</b>	<b>об англича́нах</b>

Note the stress change in гражда́нин ‘citizen’, pl. гра́ждане, гра́ждан.

(4) Plural of ба́рин, болга́рин, тата́рин, цыга́н

The plural of **болга́рин** ‘Bulgarian’ is: nom. болга́ры, acc./gen. болга́р, dat. болга́рам, instr. болга́рами, prep. о болга́рах. Similarly ба́рин ‘landowner’ (nom. pl. (demotic) ба́ры/ба́ре), тата́рин ‘Tatar’, цыга́н ‘gipsy’ (nom. pl. цыга́не).

(5) Plural of nouns in -ёнок/-онок

Nouns in -ёнок/-онок have plurals in -ята/-ата: котёнок ‘kitten’.

Plural	Nom.	Acc./Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>котя́та</b>	<b>котя́т</b>	<b>котя́там</b>	<b>котя́тами</b>	<b>о котя́тах</b>

Similarly волчо́нок ‘wolf-cub’, pl. волча́та, волча́т etc.

#### Note

(a) Щенóк ‘puppy’ has alternative plurals щеня́та, щеня́т/щенки́, щенко́в.

(b) Ребе́нок ‘child’ has plural де́ти ‘children’, acc./gen. дете́й, dat. де́тям, instr. детьми́, prep. о де́тях. Colloquially, ребя́та is also used as a plural of ребёнок. Ребя́та can also mean ‘the lads’, cf. девча́та ‘the girls’ (also де́вушки и ребята́ ‘young men and girls’).

(6) Plural of *сосёд* and *чёрт*

*Сосёд* ‘neighbour’ and *чёрт* ‘devil’ have hard endings in the singular, soft endings in the plural: **сосёди, сосёдей, сосёдым; чёрти, чертёй, чертя́м.**

(7) Plural of *господи́н* and *хозяи́н*

*Господи́н* ‘master’ and *хозяи́н* ‘owner, host’ have nominative plural **-а**:

Plural	Nom.	Acc./Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>господá</b>	<b>госпо́д</b>	<b>господа́м</b>	<b>господа́ми</b>	<b>о господа́х</b>
	<b>хозя́ева</b>	<b>хозя́ев</b>	<b>хозя́евам</b>	<b>хозя́евами</b>	<b>о хозя́евах</b>

## 56 Nouns whose genitive plural is identical with the nominative singular

The genitive plural of some masculine nouns is the same as the nominative singular: *глаз* ‘eye’, *пого́н* ‘epaulette’, *раз* ‘time’, *челове́к* ‘person’ (after numerals: *пять челове́к* ‘five people’, cf. *нет люде́й* ‘there are no people’). Note the stress difference in *во́лос* ‘a hair’, gen. pl. **волóс**. Categories also include:

(1) Footwear: *боти́нок* ‘shoe’, *ва́ленок* ‘felt boot’, *носо́к* ‘sock’ (gen. pl. also **носко́в**), *сапо́г* ‘boot’, *чуло́к* ‘stocking’.

(2) Nationalities (including some minorities in the former USSR): *башки́р* ‘Bashkir’, *буря́т* ‘Buryat’, *грузи́н* ‘Georgian’, *мадя́р* ‘Magyar’, *осети́н* ‘Ossetian’, *румы́н* ‘Romanian’, *ту́рок* ‘Turk’.

(3) The military: *партиза́н* ‘partisan’, *солда́т* ‘soldier’ and others.

(4) Measurements: *ампе́р* ‘ampere’, *байт* ‘byte’, *бит* ‘bit’, *ватт* ‘watt’, *вольт* ‘volt’, *герц* ‘cycle’, *грамм* ‘gram’, *децибе́л* ‘decibel’ (10 **ампе́р** ‘10 amperes’, 100 **ватт** ‘100 watts’, 5 **вольт** ‘5 volts’). The zero genitive plural is used in technical and scientific contexts, especially after numerals, and in colloquial speech, while **-ов** is normal in literary styles with some measurements, especially **грамм** ‘gram’ (*Выпи́ли сто гра́ммов* *тёплой во́дки* (Vanshenkin) ‘They drank 100 grams of warm vodka’), though here too the zero ending is making headway.

(5) Fruits (colloquial speech only): *абрико́с* ‘apricot’, *апельси́н* ‘orange’, *баклажа́н* ‘aubergine’, *помидо́р* ‘tomato’. In written Russian, however, the genitive plural **-ов** is preferred for these nouns.

## 57 Stress patterns in first-declension masculine nouns

There are three basic types of stress pattern in declension.

### (1) Fixed stem stress

**Стул** 'chair', **геро́й** 'hero', **автомобиль** 'car' etc.

#### Note

- (a) With few exceptions (e.g. **дире́ктор** 'manager', pl. **директорá**), nouns with medial stress have fixed stem stress in declension.
- (b) Most nouns of three or more syllables have fixed stem stress throughout declension (**парохо́д** 'steamer' etc.).
- (c) All masculine nouns with unstressed prefixes or suffixes have fixed stem stress throughout declension (**разговóр** 'conversation', **ма́льчик** 'boy' etc.).
- (d) Only a limited number of monosyllabic masculine nouns have fixed stem stress throughout declension (e.g. **звук** 'sound').

### (2) Fixed end-stress

#### (i) Hard ending:

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	сто́л	сто́л-а́	сто́л-у́	сто́л-о́м	о сто́л-е́
Plural	сто́л-ы́	сто́л-о́в	сто́л-а́м	сто́л-а́ми	о сто́л-а́х

#### (ii) Soft ending:

Singular	рублѣ́	рублѣ́-я́	рублѣ́-ю́	рублѣ́-ѣ́м	о рублѣ́-е́
Plural	рублѣ́-и́	рублѣ́-ѣ́й	рублѣ́-я́м	рублѣ́-я́ми	о рублѣ́-я́х

#### Note

- (a) This category includes many hard-ending nouns, including almost all those with the stressed suffixes: **-а́к/-я́к, -а́ч, -е́ж, -ѣ́ж, -и́к, -и́ч, -у́н, -у́х**: бе́гу́н 'runner', мо́ряк 'sailor', пла́теж 'payment', ру́беж 'boundary', скрипа́ч 'violinist', ста́ри́к 'old man' etc.
- (b) Soft-ending nouns include бо́гатырь 'hero', во́ждь 'leader', вратáрь 'goalkeeper', до́ждь 'rain', жу́равль 'crane' (bird), кале́ндáрь 'calendar', ко́рабль 'ship', кре́мль 'kremlin', ломо́ть 'slice', но́ль/ну́ль 'nought', реме́нь 'strap', секрета́рь 'secretary', сло́ва́рь 'dictionary' etc.

### (3) Mobile stress

- (i) Stem stress in the **singular**, end stress in the **plural**: ду́б 'oak', бо́й 'battle'.

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	дуб	дуб-а	дуб-у	дуб-ом	о дуб-е
Plural	дуб-ы	дуб-ов	дуб-ам	дуб-ами	о дуб-ах
Singular	бой	бо-я	бо-ю	бо-ем	о бо-е
Plural	бо-и	бо-ев	бо-ям	бо-ями	о бо-ях

*Note*

- (a) Many nouns in the category have a prepositional-locative in **-ý/-jó**: **бой** ‘battle’, **круг** ‘circle’, **мост** ‘bridge’, **ряд** ‘row’, **сад** ‘garden’ etc. (see 54).  
 (b) Other nouns in the category include many with plurals in **-ья** (see 55 (2) (ii)) and in **-á/-я** (see 55 (1)).

(ii) End stress in **oblique** cases of the **plural**: **порт** ‘port’, **жёлудь** ‘acorn’.

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	порт	порт-а	порт-у	порт-ом	о порт-е
Plural	порт-ы	порт-ов	порт-ам	порт-ами	о порт-ах
Singular	жёлудь	жёлуд-я	жёлуд-ю	жёлуд-ем	о жёлуд-е
Plural	жёлуд-и	жёлуд-ей	жёлуд-ям	жёлуд-ями	о жёлуд-ях

*Note*

This group comprises mainly soft-sign nouns: **голубь** ‘dove’, **гость** ‘guest’, **гусь** ‘goose’, **зверь** ‘wild animal’, **камень** ‘stone’, **коготь** ‘claw’, **корень** ‘root’, **локоть** ‘elbow’, **ноготь** ‘fingernail’, **парень** ‘lad’, **стебель** ‘stalk’ (gen. pl. also **стеблей**). Hard-ending nouns include **волк** ‘wolf’ and **зуб** ‘tooth’.

(iii) End stress in **oblique** cases of **singular and plural**: **гвоздь** ‘nail’.

	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	гвоздь	гвозд-я	гвозд-ю	гвозд-ём	о гвозд-е
Plural	гвозд-и	гвозд-ей	гвозд-ям	гвозд-ями	о гвозд-ях

Likewise **конь** ‘steed’, **уголь** ‘coal’ (gen. sing. **угля/ўгля**), **червь** ‘worm’.

*Note*

For all animate nouns acc. = gen. See 47.

## 58 First declension: neuter nouns in -o

(1) Declension of **болото** ‘swamp’.



	Singular	Plural
Nom.	болот- <b>о</b>	болот- <b>а</b>
Acc.	болот- <b>о</b>	болот- <b>а</b>
Gen.	болот- <b>а</b>	болот
Dat.	болот- <b>у</b>	болот- <b>ам</b>
Instr.	болот- <b>ом</b>	болот- <b>ами</b>
Prep.	о болот- <b>е</b>	о болот- <b>ах</b>

*Note*

- (a) Нёбо 'sky', pl. **небеса́**, gen. pl. **небёс**, dat. pl. **небеса́м**. Likewise **чу́до** 'miracle'.
- (b) Су́дно 'ship', pl. **суда́**, **судов** (cf. су́дно 'chamber-pot', pl. **су́дна**, **су́ден**).

(2) Buffer vowel in the genitive plural.

(i) In the 'zero' genitive plural of many nouns in **-о**, a 'buffer' vowel appears between two final consonants. This may be **-о-** (following **к**):

**волокно́** 'fibre'      **волоко́н**

Similarly **окно́** 'window', gen. pl. **око́н**; **сте́кло** 'pane of glass', gen. pl. **сте́кол**.

(ii) Otherwise the buffer vowel is **-е-**:

**бедро́** 'hip'      **беде́р**

Others of this type include **бревно́** 'log', **ведро́** 'bucket', **весло́** 'oar', **зерно́** 'grain', **кольцо́** 'ring' (gen. pl. **коле́н**), **крёсло** 'armchair' (gen. pl. **крёсел**), **крыльцо́** 'porch' (gen. pl. **крыле́н**), **письмо́** 'letter' (gen. pl. **писе́м**), **полотно́** 'canvas', **пятно́** 'stain', **ребро́** 'rib', **ремесло́** 'trade' (gen. pl. **ремёсел**), **число́** 'number', **ядро́** 'nucleus'.

*Note*

- (a) Vowel change from **е** to **ѣ** under stress.
- (b) Нёдра, недр (pl. only) 'bowels of the earth'.
- (c) Яйцо́ 'egg', pl. **яйца**, **яйц**.
- (d) Зло́ 'evil' has only one plural form, genitive plural **зол**: **ме́ньшее** из **двух зол** 'the lesser of two evils'.
- (e) Nouns in **-ство** have no buffer vowel in the genitive plural: **чу́ство** 'feeling', gen. pl. **чу́ств**.

(3) The following nouns have nominative plural **-и**: **ве́ко** 'eyelid', pl. **ве́ки**, **век**; **коле́но** 'knee', pl. **коле́ни**, **коле́ней** (**коле́н** in combination with prepositions and comparatives, e.g. **вы́ше**, **ни́же** **коле́н** 'above, below the knees', **до** **коле́н** 'to the knees', **вста́ть с** **коле́н**

‘to rise from one’s knees’, **зажать** *между колён* ‘to grip between the knees’); **о́ко** ‘eye’ (archaic), pl. **о́чи, очёй**; **плечо́** ‘shoulder’, pl. **плéчи, плеч**; **у́хо** ‘ear’, pl. **у́ши, ушёй**.

#### Note

Except for **о́блако** ‘cloud’, pl. **облака́, облако́в**, all nouns in **-ко** have nominative plural **-и**: **блю́дечко** ‘saucer’, pl. **блю́дечки, блю́дечек**; **дре́вко** ‘shaft’, pl. **дре́вки, дре́вков**; **зе́рнышко** ‘small grain’, pl. **зе́рнышки, зе́рнышек** (likewise **пе́рышко** ‘small feather’); **колéсико** ‘small wheel’, pl. **колéсики, колéсиков** (likewise **ли́чи́ко** ‘small face’, **плéчи́ко** ‘small shoulder’ – pl. **плéчи́ки** also means ‘coat-hanger’); **озерко́** ‘small lake’, pl. **озерки́, озерко́в**; **очко́** ‘point’ (in a game), pl. **очки́, очко́в** (also ‘spectacles’); **окóшко** ‘small window’, pl. **окóшки, окóшек**; **у́шко** ‘small ear’, pl. **у́шки, у́шек** (cf. **ушкó** ‘eye of a needle’, pl. **ушкí, ушкóв**); **я́блоко** ‘apple’, pl. **я́блоки, я́блок**.

(4) Some nouns in **-о** have plural **-ья**: **звенó** ‘link’.

Plural	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	звén- <b>ья</b>	звén- <b>ьев</b>	звén- <b>ьям</b>	звén- <b>ьями</b>	о звén- <b>ьях</b>

The following nouns behave similarly:

(i) With initial stress in the plural: **крыло́** ‘wing’, pl. **кры́лья, кры́льев**; **перó** ‘feather’; **пи́ло** ‘awl’.

(ii) With medial stress in the plural: **де́рево** ‘tree’, pl. **дерéвья, дерéвьев**; **колéно** ‘joint in a pipe’ (cf. **колéно** ‘knee’, see (3) above and note that in the meaning ‘bend in a river’, ‘generation’ (in a genealogical table), ‘part of a dance or song’, **колéно** has the plural **колéна, колéн**).

(iii) **Дно́** ‘bottom’ (of a barrel), pl. **до́нья, до́ньев**.

## 59 First declension: nouns in **-е, -ье, -ё, -ёё**

(1) Declension of **мо́ре** ‘sea’ (likewise **по́ле** ‘field’):

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	мо́р- <b>е</b>	мор- <b>я́</b>
Acc.	мо́р- <b>е</b>	мор- <b>я́</b>
Gen.	мо́р- <b>я</b>	мор- <b>е́й</b>
Dat.	мо́р- <b>ю</b>	мор- <b>я́м</b>
Instr.	мо́р- <b>ем</b>	мор- <b>я́ми</b>
Prep.	о мо́р- <b>е</b>	о мор- <b>я́х</b>

*Note*

- (a) Nouns in **-це, -ще** replace **я** by **а**: thus блюдце ‘saucer’, gen. sing./nom. and acc. pl. **блю́дца**. Similarly кладбище ‘cemetery’ etc.
- (b) Nouns in **-ье** (e.g. бельё ‘linen’) have instrumental singular **-ьем** and prepositional singular **-ье**.
- (c) Masculine augmentatives in **-ище** have nominative plural **-и**: доми́ще ‘large house’, pl. **доми́щи, доми́щ** (see 109 (2)).

(2) Nouns in **-е/-ье** and **-ё/-ье** take a variety of endings in the genitive plural:

- (i) **-ев**: болóтце ‘little swamp’, **болóтцев**. Likewise окóнце ‘small window’.

*Note*

Some nouns in **-це** have alternative genitive plurals in **-ев** and zero ending: коры́тце ‘small trough’ (gen. pl. **коры́тцев/коры́тец**). Likewise одея́льце ‘small blanket’, щу́пальце ‘tentacle’.

- (ii) **-ей**: мо́ре ‘sea’, gen. pl. **морéй** (likewise по́ле ‘field’); ружьё ‘gun’, gen. pl. **ру́жей**.

(iii) **-ий**: побере́жье ‘coast’, gen. pl. **побере́жий**. Likewise варéнье ‘jam’, копьё ‘spear’ (gen. pl. **ко́пий**), ущéлье ‘ravine’.

(iv) **-ьев**: верхóвые ‘upper reaches’, gen. pl. **верхóвьев**. Likewise низóвые ‘lower reaches’, пла́тье ‘dress’, подмасте́рье (m.) ‘apprentice’, у́стье ‘river mouth’.

*Note*

Alternative genitive plurals **верхóвий** and **низóвий**.

(v) **Zero ending**: блюдце ‘saucer’, gen. pl. **блю́дец**. Likewise зéркальце ‘small mirror’, полотéнце ‘towel’, сéрдце ‘heart’, gen. pl. **сердéц**, as well as nouns in **-ище/-бище** (кладбище ‘cemetery’, gen. pl. **кладби́щ**).

*Note*

Дéревце/дере́вцо ‘small tree’ has genitive plural **дере́вцов** or **дере́вéc**; **остриё** ‘point’, gen. pl. **остриё́в**.

## 60 Stress patterns in the plural of neuter nouns

Stress in the plural of many neuter nouns moves as follows:

- (1) From the ending on to the stem (**е** changes to **ё**): thus, **окно́** ‘window’.

Plural	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>о́кна</b>	<b>о́кон</b>	<b>о́кнам</b>	<b>о́кнами</b>	<b>о́б о́кнах</b>

Similarly ведро́ ‘bucket’, pl. **ве́дра, ве́дер**; весло́ ‘oar’, pl. **ве́сла, ве́сел**; вино́ ‘wine’, pl. **ви́на, вин**; гнездо́ ‘nest’, pl. **гне́зда, гне́зд**; зерно́ ‘grain’, pl. **зе́рна, зе́рен**; колесо́ ‘wheel’, pl. **колёса, колёс**; кольцо́ ‘ring’, pl. **ко́льца, коле́ц**; копьё́ ‘spear’, pl. **ко́пья, ко́пий**; крыльцо́ ‘porch’, pl. **кры́льца, крыле́ц**; лицо́ ‘face’, pl. **ли́ца, лиц**; письмо́ ‘letter’, pl. **пи́сьма, пи́сем**; пятно́ ‘stain’, pl. **пя́тна, пя́тен**; ружьё́ ‘gun’, pl. **ру́жья, ру́жей**; стекло́ ‘pane’, pl. **сте́кла, сте́кол**; число́ ‘number’, pl. **чи́сла, чи́сел**; яйцо́ ‘egg’, pl. **яй́ца, яйц**.

(2) From the stem on to the ending: де́ло ‘matter’.

Plural	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>делá</b>	<b>дел</b>	<b>дела́м</b>	<b>дела́ми</b>	<b>о дела́х</b>

Similarly зе́ркало ‘mirror’, pl. **зеркала́**; ме́сто ‘place’, pl. **местá**; мо́ре ‘sea’, pl. **моря́, морей**; по́ле ‘field’, pl. **поля́, полей**; пра́во ‘right’, pl. **права́**; се́рдце ‘heart’, pl. **сердца́, серде́ц**; сло́во ‘word’, pl. **слова́**; ста́до ‘herd’, pl. **стада́**; те́ло ‘body’, pl. **тела́**.

## 61 Second declension: nouns in -а/-я

(1) Most second-declension nouns are feminine; some are masculine, e.g. де́душка ‘grandfather’, дядя́ ‘uncle’; others are of common gender, e.g. пья́ница ‘drunkard’, ра́зinya ‘gawper’ (see 35).

(2) Declension of **ка́рта** ‘map’, **же́нщина** ‘woman’:

	Singular		Plural
Nom.	ка́рт-а	же́нщин-а	ка́рт-ы      же́нщин-ы
Acc.	ка́рт-у	же́нщин-у	ка́рт-ы      же́нщин (= gen.)
Gen.	ка́рт-ы	же́нщин-ы	ка́рт      же́нщин
Dat.	ка́рт-е	же́нщин-е	ка́рт-ам      же́нщин-ам
Instr.	ка́рт-ой/-ою	же́нщин-ой/-ою	ка́рт-ами      же́нщин-ами
Prep.	о ка́рт-е	о же́нщин-е	о ка́рт-ах      о же́нщин-ах

### Note

- (a) **ы** is replaced by **и** after **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш** or **щ**; ви́лка ‘fork’, да́ча ‘villa’, gen. sing./nom. and acc. pl. ви́лки, да́чи (see 16 (1)).
- (b) **о** is replaced by **е** in unstressed position after **ж, ч, ш, щ** or **ц**: у́лица ‘street’, instr. sing. у́лицей; кры́ша ‘roof’, instr. sing. кры́шей (see 16 (2)).

- (c) Some nouns in **-жа, -ча, -ша** have genitive plural **-ей**: свечá ‘candle’, gen. pl. свечéй (but игра́ не сто́ит свеч ‘the game is not worth the candle’). Likewise бахчá ‘water melon plantation’, левшá ‘left-handed person’, ханжá ‘hypocrite’, чў́кча ‘Chukchi’, ю́ноша ‘youth’.
- (d) The genitive plural of мечтá ‘dream’ (and of мечтáние ‘reverie’) is мечтáний.
- (e) The instrumental singular in **-ою** (and **-ею**, see (3)) is the more ‘literary’ form and is commonly found in poetry.
- (3) Declension of дýня ‘melon’ and нýня ‘nurse’:

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	дýн-я	нýн-я	дýн-и	нýн-и
Acc.	дýн-ю	нýн-ю	дýн-и	нýн-ь (= gen.)
Gen.	дýн-и	нýн-и	дýн-ь	нýн-ь
Dat.	дýн-е	нýн-е	дýн-ям	нýн-ям
Instr.	дýн-ей/-ею	нýн-ей/-ею	дýн-ями	нýн-ями
Prep.	о дýн-е	о нýн-е	о дýн-ях	о нýн-ях

#### Note

- (a) End-stressed nouns have **-ей** in the instrumental singular: земл́я ‘ground’, instr. земл́ей; стат́ья ‘article’, instr. стат́ьей.
- (b) Stem-stressed nouns in **-ья** have genitive plural **-ий**: гóстья ‘female guest’, gen. pl. гóстий.
- (c) End-stressed nouns in **-ья** have genitive plural **-ей**: сем́ья ‘family’, gen. pl. семéй; суд́ья ‘judge’, gen. pl. судéй/сúдей. Similarly до́ля ‘share’, gen. pl. долéй; дýдя ‘uncle’, gen. pl. дýдей (nom. pl. дýдья́, gen. pl. дýдья́в are also found); клешн́я ‘claw’ (of crustacean), gen. pl. клешн́ей; ноздр́я ‘nostril’, gen. pl. ноздрéй; прýгоршн́я ‘handful’, gen. pl. прýгоршней/прýгоршен; просты́ня ‘sheet’, gen. pl. просты́нь/просты́ней; ступн́я ‘foot’, gen. pl. ступн́ей; тёт́я ‘aunt’, gen. pl. тётéй/тётъ.
- (b) Nouns in **-ая/-ея** have genitive plural **-ай/-ей**: ста́я ‘pack’, gen. pl. стай; шéя ‘neck’, gen. pl. шей.
- (4) Buffer vowel in the genitive plural.
- (i) **-о-** appears between a consonant (see, however, (4) (ii) (a)) and **-к-** (or **-к-** + consonant):

бéлка ‘squirrel’

бéлок

Similarly бýлка ‘roll’, gen. pl. бýлок; доскá ‘board, plank’, gen. pl. досóк; кýкла ‘doll’, gen. pl. кýкол. Note also кúхня ‘kitchen’, gen. pl. кúхонь.

(ii) **-e-** appears:

(a) Between **ж, ч, ш** and **-к-**: ба́бочка ‘butterfly’, gen. pl. ба́бочек; ко́шка ‘cat’, gen. pl. ко́шек; ло́жка ‘spoon’, gen. pl. ло́жек etc. (but кишкá ‘intestine’, gen. pl. кишко́к).

(b) Between pairs of consonants which do not include **к**:

со́сна ‘pine tree’      со́сен

Likewise двéрца ‘car door’, gen. pl. двéрец; десна́ ‘gum’, gen. pl. де́сен.

(c) In place of a soft sign: де́ньги (pl. only) ‘money’, gen. pl. де́нег; сва́дьба ‘wedding’, gen. pl. сва́деб; тю́рьма ‘prison’, gen. pl. тю́рем (but ве́дьма ‘witch’, gen. pl. ве́дьм, про́сьба ‘request’, gen. pl. про́сьб).

(d) In place of **-й-** in diphthongs followed by **-к-**: ча́йка ‘seagull’, gen. pl. ча́ек etc. (cf. война́ ‘war’, gen. pl. во́йн).

(e) Between two final consonants in the genitive plural of many nouns in **-я**: земл́я ‘land’, gen. pl. земéль; ка́пля ‘drop’, gen. pl. ка́пель; кро́вля ‘roof’, gen. pl. кро́вель; পে́тля ‘loop’, gen. pl. পে́тель; ца́пля ‘heron’, gen. pl. ца́пель.

### Note

Most nouns in consonant + **-ня** have *no* soft sign in the genitive plural: ба́шня ‘tower’, gen. pl. ба́шен. Similarly ви́шня ‘cherry’, жаро́вня ‘brazier’, колоко́льня ‘belfry’, пе́сня ‘song’, со́тня ‘hundred’, спа́льня ‘bedroom’, чере́шня ‘cherry tree’, чита́льня ‘reading room’. Note, however, ба́рышня ‘young lady’, gen. pl. ба́рышень; дере́вня ‘village’, gen. pl. деревéнь.

(iii) **-ё-** appears in the genitive plural of a few nouns: кочерга́ ‘poker’, gen. pl. кочерёг; серьга́ ‘ear-ring’, gen. pl. серёг; сестра́ ‘sister’, gen. pl. сестёр.

(iv) Some clusters, many ending in **б, в, л, м, н, п, р**, have *no* buffer vowel in the genitive plural: бо́мба ‘bomb’, gen. pl. бомб. Likewise буква́ ‘letter’, волна́ ‘wave’, вы́дра ‘otter’, зе́бра ‘zebra’, игла́ ‘needle’, игра́ ‘game’, избá ‘peasant hut’, йскра́ ‘spark’, но́рма ‘norm’, служба́ ‘service’, ты́ква ‘pumpkin’, у́рна ‘urn’, фо́рма ‘uniform’, ци́фра ‘figure’.

## 62 Stress patterns in second-declension nouns

Most nouns in stressed **-á/-ý** undergo stress change in declension (nouns in *unstressed* **-a/-ya** are immune from stress change).

(1) Stem stress in the plural, e.g. **война́** ‘war’.

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	война́	войну́	войны́	войне́	войно́й	о войне́
Plural	<b>во́йны</b>	<b>во́йны</b>	<b>воин</b>	<b>во́йнам</b>	<b>во́йнами</b>	<b>о во́йнах</b>

Similarly волна́ ‘wave’ (alternative dat., instr., prep. pl. **волна́м, волна́ми, о волна́х**), глава́ ‘chapter’, заря́ ‘dawn’ (pl. **зо́ри, зорь**), змея́ ‘snake’ (pl. **зме́и, змей**), игра́ ‘game’, красота́ ‘beauty’ (pl. **красо́ты** ‘beauty spots’), овца́ ‘sheep’ (gen. pl. **ове́ц**), река́ ‘river’ (acc. sing. **рекú/рэку**), сосна́ ‘pine’, страна́ ‘country’, струна́ ‘string’ (of instrument, racket) etc.

#### Note

**e-ë mutation:** десна́ ‘gum’, pl. **де́сны, де́сен**; жена́ ‘wife’, pl. **жёны, жён**; звезда́ ‘star’, pl. **звёзды, звёзд**; пчела́ ‘bee’, pl. **пчёлы, пчёл**; сестра́ ‘sister’, pl. **сёстры, сестёр**.

(2) Stem stress in accusative singular and nominative/accusative plural, e.g. **рука́** ‘hand, arm’:

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	рука́	<b>ру́ку</b>	руки́	руке́	руко́й	о руке́
Plural	<b>ру́ки</b>	<b>ру́ки</b>	рук	рука́м	рука́ми	о рука́х

Similarly гора́ ‘mountain’, доска́ ‘board’ (gen. pl. **досо́к**), нога́ ‘foot, leg’, щека́ ‘cheek’ (acc. sing. **щёку/щекú**, pl. **щёки, щёк, щекáм**), борода́ ‘beard’ (acc. sing. **боро́ду**, pl. **боро́ды, боро́д, борода́м**), голова́ ‘head’, полоса́ ‘strip’ (acc. sing. **пóлосу/полосú**), сторона́ ‘side’).

(3) Stem stress in nominative/accusative plural, e.g. **губа́** ‘lip’:

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	губа́	губу́	губы́	губе́	губо́й	о губе́
Plural	<b>гу́бы</b>	<b>гу́бы</b>	губ	губáм	губáми	о губáх

Similarly волна́ ‘wave’ (see also (1) above) and железа́ ‘gland’ (pl. **же́лезы, желёз, железа́м**).

(4) Stem stress in accusative singular and all plural forms, e.g. **вода́** ‘water’:

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	вода́	<b>во́ду</b>	воды́	воде́	водо́й	о воде́
Plural	<b>во́ды</b>	<b>во́ды</b>	<b>вод</b>	<b>во́дам</b>	<b>во́дами</b>	<b>о во́дах</b>

Similarly *спинá* ‘back’, *стенá* ‘wall’, *ценá* ‘price’.

(5) Stem stress in nominative/inanimate accusative, dative, instrumental and prepositional plural, e.g. **семья́** ‘family’:

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	семья́	семью́	семьи́	семье́	семье́й	о семье́
Plural	<b>се́мьи</b>	<b>се́мьи</b>	семей	<b>се́мьям</b>	<b>се́мьями</b>	<b>о се́мьях</b>

Likewise *свинья́* ‘pig’, *скамья́* ‘bench’ (pl. **скамы́й/ска́мьи**), *судья́* ‘judge’ (gen. pl. **суде́й/сúдей**).

(6) Stem stress in accusative singular and nominative, accusative, dative, instrumental and prepositional plural, e.g. **земля́** ‘land’:

	Nom.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
Singular	земля́	<b>зе́млю</b>	земли́	земле́	земле́й	о земле́
Plural	<b>зе́мли</b>	<b>зе́мли</b>	земель	<b>зе́млям</b>	<b>зе́млями</b>	<b>о зе́млях</b>

### 63 Third declension: soft-sign feminine nouns

(1) Declension of **тетрадь** ‘exercise book’ and **свекровь** ‘mother-in-law’ (husband’s mother):

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	тетрадь	свекровь	тетрад-и	свекров-и
Acc.	тетрадь	свекровь	тетрад-и	свекров-ей (= gen.)
Gen.	тетрад-и	свекров-и	тетрад-ей	свекров-ей
Dat.	тетрад-и	свекров-и	тетрад-ям	свекров-ям
Instr.	тетрадь-ю	свекровь-ю	тетрад-ями	свекров-ями
Prep.	о тетрад-и	о свекров-и	о тетрад-ях	о свекров-ях

#### Note

**я** is replaced by **а** after **ж, ч, ш, щ**: thus *ночь* ‘night’, dat., instr., prep. pl. **ноча́м, ноча́ми, о ноча́х**; likewise *вещь* ‘thing’, *мышь* ‘mouse’ etc.

(2) Declension of **мать** and **дочь**: *мать* ‘mother’ declines in the singular nom./acc. **мать** ‘mother’, gen./dat. **ма́тери**, instr. **ма́терью**, prep. **о ма́тери**, and in the plural nom. **ма́тери**, acc./gen. **матере́й**, dat. **матеря́м**, instr. **матеря́ми**, prep. **о матеря́х**. Similarly *дочь* ‘daughter’ (instr. pl. **дочерьми́**).

(3) The fleeting vowel **-о-**. Genitive, dative and prepositional singular and all plural forms are affected, e.g. *вошь* ‘louse’, gen., dat. sing. **вши**,



instr. **во́шью**, prep. **о** **вши**; pl. **вши**, acc./gen. **вшей**, dat. **вшам**, instr. **вша́ми**, prep. **о** **вшах**.

#### Note

- (a) Ложь 'lie' is found only in the singular (gen./dat. **лжи**, instr. **ло́жью**, prep. **о** **лжи**); likewise любовь 'love', ро́жь 'rye'.
- (b) As a first name Любо́вь 'Lyubov' has gen./dat. **Любо́ви**, prep. **о** **Любо́ви**.
- (c) Це́рковь 'church' has soft endings in the singular (gen./dat. **це́ркви**, instr. **це́рковью**, prep. **о** **це́ркви**) and nominative/accusative and genitive plural (**це́ркви**, **церквёй**), but hard endings in the other oblique cases of the plural (**церкв́ам**, **церкв́ами**, **о** **церкв́ах**).

(4) Stress changes in declension:

- (i) Some nouns have prepositional singular **-и́** when governed by the prepositions **в** and **на**:

**дверь** 'door'      **на** **дверí** 'on the door'

Likewise **глубь** 'depths', **горсть** 'handful', **грязь** 'mud' (**в** **грязи́** 'covered in mud'), **кровь** 'blood' (**в** **крови́** 'covered in blood'), **мель** 'shallows' (**на** **мели́** 'aground'), **печь** 'stove', **пыль** 'dust' (**в** **пыли́** 'covered in dust'), **Русь** 'Rus' (**на** **Руси́** 'in Rus'), **связь** 'connection' (**в** **связи́ с** 'in connection with'), **сеть** 'net', **степь** 'steppe', **Тверь** 'Tver' (**в** **Твери́** 'in Tver'), **тень** 'shadow', **цепь** 'chain'.

#### Note

- (a) *Stem* stress is used when these nouns combine with other prepositions (**о** **дверí** 'about the door'), or when **в** and **на** do *not* denote location (**Ему́** **отказа́ли** **в** **но́вой** **дверí** 'He was refused a new door').
- (b) Глушь 'backwoods' and грудь 'chest, breast' have end stress in genitive, dative (**глуши́**, **грудí**) and prepositional singular (**в** **глуши́**, **в** **грудí**).

- (ii) Many nouns have end stress in plural oblique cases, e.g. **сеть** 'net':

Plural	Nom./Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
	<b>сети́</b>	<b>сетей</b>	<b>сетя́м</b>	<b>сетя́ми</b>	<b>о</b> <b>сетя́х</b>

Likewise вещь 'thing', кость 'bone', мышь 'mouse' (acc./gen. pl. **мышёй**), но́вость 'piece of news', но́чь 'night', о́бласть 'oblast, province', о́чередь 'queue', печь 'stove', плóщадь 'square', скáтерть 'tablecloth', скóрость 'speed', сме́рть 'death', соль 'salt', степь 'steppe', те́нь 'shade', тре́ть 'third', це́пь 'chain', ча́сть 'part', че́тверть 'quarter'.

*Note*

- (a) Plural власти ‘the authorities’, gen. **властѣй**, dat. **властѣм**.  
 (b) Дверь ‘door’ and лошадь ‘horse’ have alternative instrumental plural **дверьми/дверьми́** (colloquial), **лошадьми́** or **лошадьями**.

**64 Declension of neuter nouns in -мя**

Declension of **имя** ‘name’:

	Singular	Plural
Nom./Acc.	<b>им-я</b>	<b>имен-а́</b>
Gen.	<b>имен-и</b>	<b>имён</b>
Dat.	<b>имен-и</b>	<b>имен-а́м</b>
Instr.	<b>имен-ем</b>	<b>имен-а́ми</b>
Prep.	об <b>имен-и</b>	об <b>имен-а́х</b>

Similarly время ‘time’, знамя ‘banner’ (pl. **знамёна**, **знамён**), плёмя ‘tribe’, семя ‘seed’ (gen. pl. **семья́н**), стрёмя ‘stirrup’ and (sing. only) брёмя ‘burden’, вымя ‘udder’, пламя ‘flames’ (cf. **языки́ пла́мени** ‘flames, tongues of flame’), темя ‘temple’.

**65 Declension of nouns in -ия/-ие**

Declension of **ста́нция** ‘station’, **зда́ние** ‘building’:

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	<b>ста́нции-я</b>	<b>зда́ни-е</b>	<b>ста́нции-и</b>	<b>зда́ни-я</b>
Acc.	<b>ста́нции-ю</b>	<b>зда́ни-е</b>	<b>ста́нции-и</b>	<b>зда́ни-я</b>
Gen.	<b>ста́нции-и</b>	<b>зда́ни-я</b>	<b>ста́нций</b>	<b>зда́ний</b>
Dat.	<b>ста́нции-и</b>	<b>зда́ни-ю</b>	<b>ста́нции-ям</b>	<b>зда́ни-ям</b>
Instr.	<b>ста́нции-ей/-ею</b>	<b>зда́ни-ем</b>	<b>ста́нции-ями</b>	<b>зда́ни-ями</b>
Prep.	о <b>ста́нции-и</b>	о <b>зда́ни-и</b>	о <b>ста́нции-ях</b>	о <b>зда́ни-ях</b>

**66 The masculine noun путь**

**Путь** ‘way’ declines as follows:

	Singular	Plural
Nom./Acc.	<b>путь</b>	<b>пут-ѣ́</b>
Gen.	<b>пут-ѣ́</b>	<b>пут-ѣ́й</b>

Dat.	пут- <b>ѣ</b>	пут- <b>ѣм</b>
Instr.	пут- <b>ѣм</b>	пут- <b>ѣми</b>
Prep.	о пут- <b>ѣ</b>	о пут- <b>ѣх</b>

*Note*

Despite feminine endings in the genitive, dative and prepositional singular, путь is qualified by masculine adjectives: **Счастливого пути!** ‘Bon voyage!’.

## 67 The neuter noun дитя́

Дитя́ ‘child’ declines as follows:

Nom./Acc.	дит- <b>я́</b>
Gen./Dat.	дитя́т- <b>и</b>
Instr.	дитя́т- <b>ей/-ею</b>
Prep.	о дитя́т- <b>и</b>

*Note*

Дитя́ is now used only in some figurative expressions, e.g. **дитя́ ве́ка** ‘child of the age’, and, in some contexts, for emotional effect, e.g. Да он же ещё **дитя́!** ‘Why, he’s still just a child!’ For practical purposes it has been replaced by ребёнок ‘child’.

## 68 Де́ти and лю́ди

Де́ти ‘children’ (sing. ребёнок or дитя́) and лю́ди ‘people’ (sing. челове́к) decline in the same way:

Nom.	де́т- <b>и</b>	лю́д- <b>и</b>
Acc./Gen.	дет- <b>ей</b>	лю́д- <b>ей</b>
Dat.	де́т- <b>ям</b>	лю́д- <b>ям</b>
Instr.	деть- <b>ми́</b>	лю́дь- <b>ми́</b>
Prep.	о де́т- <b>ях</b>	о лю́д- <b>ях</b>

## 69 Declension of first names

First names ending in a consonant or **-ѣ** (e.g. Ива́н, Никола́й, Ю́рий) decline like first-declension nouns (see **51**), first names in **-а** and **-я** (e.g. О́льга ‘Olga’, Ната́лья ‘Natalya’) like second-declension nouns

(see **61**). Patronymics (e.g. Ива́нович, Ива́новна) also decline like first- and second-declension nouns respectively.

## 70 Declension of surnames

(1) Surnames in **-ев, -ёв, -ин, -ов, -ын** decline partly like nouns and partly like adjectives, e.g. Турге́нев ‘Turgenev’:

	Masculine	Feminine	Plural
Nom.	Турге́нев	Турге́нев-а	Турге́нев-ы
Acc.	Турге́нев-а	Турге́нев-у	Турге́нев-ых
Gen.	Турге́нев-а	Турге́нев-ой	Турге́нев-ых
Dat.	Турге́нев-у	Турге́нев-ой	Турге́нев-ым
Instr.	Турге́нев-ым	Турге́нев-ой	Турге́нев-ыми
Prep.	о Турге́нев-е	о Турге́нев-ой	о Турге́нев-ых

### Note

*Foreign* names in **-ин** have instrumental singular **-ом**: Ча́плин ‘Chaplin’, instr. Ча́плином; cf. Ге́рцен ‘Herzen’, instr. Ге́рценом.

(2) Surnames in **-ский, -ой** etc. decline like adjectives.

(3) Surnames in **-ко, -енко** (e.g. Громы́ко ‘Gromyko’, Шевче́нко ‘Shevchenko’) tend not to decline, though in speech they may decline like second-declension nouns in **-а** (Максими́енко, acc. Макси́мёнку, gen. Макси́мёнки, dat. Макси́мёнке, instr. Макси́мёнкой, prep. о Макси́мёнке) or (the less-preferred option) like first-declension nouns in **-о**.

(4) Surnames in **-аго, -яго** (e.g. Жива́го ‘Zhivago’), **-ово** (e.g. Ду́рновó ‘Durnovo’), **-их, -ых** (e.g. Чу́тких ‘Chutkikh’) and stressed **-ко́** (Франко́ ‘Franko’) do not decline:

Ники́тин шага́л ря́дом с Кня́жко́ (Bondarev)  
Nikitin strode along beside Knyazhko

(5) Masculine foreign surnames ending in a consonant (e.g. Шми́дт ‘Schmidt’) decline like nouns of the first declension, but they do *not* decline at all when they refer to a woman: Ка́тя пере́писывается с англича́нкой Дже́йн Сми́т ‘Katya corresponds with the Englishwoman Jane Smith’, cf.

Э́то нато́лкну́ло Мелáнью Цати́нья́н на мы́сль напи́сать пьесу́ (Sputnik)

This gave Melanya Tsatinyan the idea of writing a play

(6) Foreign surnames ending in **-е, -и, -о, -у** and in stressed **-а́** and **-я́** do not decline: Гариба́льди ‘Garibaldi’, Гё́те ‘Goethe’, Гюго́ ‘Hugo’, Дюма́ ‘Dumas’, Золя́ ‘Zola’, Шо́у ‘Shaw’. However, foreign names in

unstressed **-а** and **-я** *do* decline: картины **Гойи** ‘paintings by Goya’, песни **Окуджавы** ‘Okudzhava’s songs’. Вайда ‘Wajda’, Куросава ‘Kurosawa’ etc. also decline. Less-familiar Japanese names such as Танака ‘Tanaka’ do not normally decline.

## 71 Declension of place names

(1) Place names ending in a consonant or **-а** (Киев ‘Kiev’, Москва ‘Moscow’) decline like nouns of the first and second declensions respectively. Hyphenated Russian place names decline in both parts: в Петропавловске-Камчатском ‘in Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky’. Place names in **-ин**, **-ов**, **-ын** have instrumental **-ом** (Пушкин ‘Pushkin’, Пушкином; Ростов ‘Rostov’, Ростовом), cf.:

Держал у себя дома, под Саратовом, моторную лодку (Trifonov)  
He kept a motor boat at his home near Saratov

(2) Place names in **-ево**, **-ино**, **-ово**, **-ыно** tend *not* to decline (около Репино ‘near Repino’), especially where the names derive from a proper name (от Лермонтово ‘from Lermontovo’). The tendency not to decline such names was consolidated by practice in the 1941–45 War, designed to avoid ambiguity in place names such as Пушкин ‘Pushkin’ and Пушкино ‘Pushkino’, which would share declension endings. Despite instances of declension in written styles (e.g. в Пушчине ‘in Pushchino’ (*Russia Today*)), non-declension remains the recommended norm.

(3) Non-Russian place names in **-е**, **-н**, **-о**, **-у** do not decline, e.g. Скопье ‘Skopje’; Чили ‘Chile’; Брно ‘Brno’, Мехико ‘Mexico City’; Баку ‘Baku’. Бангладеш ‘Bangladesh’ does not decline either: из Бангладеш ‘from Bangladesh’. Татры ‘the Tatra’ declines like a plural noun (gen. Татр). Both nouns in a hyphenated compound decline where a river is involved: во Франкфурте-на-Майне ‘in Frankfurt-am-Main’. Compare, however, под Буэнос-Айресом ‘near Buenos-Aires’, в Алма-Ате ‘in Alma-Ata’ (now also Алматы), из Карл-Маркс-штадта ‘from Karl-Marx-Stadt’ (now Chemnitz).

## 72 Apposition in the names of publications, towns etc.

(1) Titles of books, newspapers etc. decline like nouns: в “Известиях” ‘in *Izvestiya*’; Он читал «Отцов и детей» ‘He has read *Fathers and*

*Sons*'. If, however, the genre of the work is mentioned, the title is not declined: в газете "**Извѣстия**" 'in the newspaper *Izvestiya*', Он читал роман «**Отцы и дети**» 'He has read the novel *Fathers and Sons*'.

(2) In referring to the names of Russian towns, both город 'town' and the name decline (в городе **Москвѣ** 'in the city of Moscow') except:

(i) When confusion may arise, e.g. in the case of towns in **-ин** and **-ино**, where only the former declines: в городе **Пушкине** 'in the town of Pushkin', cf. в городе **Пушкино** 'in the town of Pushkino'.

(ii) When a town has a plural name: в городе **Великіе Луки** 'in the town of Velikie Luki' (if город is omitted, however, the town name is declined: в **Великих Луках** 'in Velikie Luki').

(iii) When the place name consists of adjective + noun: в городе **Нижний Тагил** 'in the town of Nizhnii Tagil'.

(3) Similar criteria apply to river names: на **рекѣ Днепрѣ** 'on the river Dnieper', but на **рекѣ Сѣверный Донѣц** 'on the river Severny Donets'. 'On the Moscow river' may be rendered as на **Москвѣ-рекѣ/на рекѣ Москвѣ**, cf. **вниз по Волге-рекѣ/вниз по рекѣ Волге** 'down the river Volga'.

(4) The names of well-known non-Russian towns decline (except for those ending in **-е** etc., see 71 (3)), whether they stand in apposition to город or not: в **Париже** 'in Paris', в городе **Париже** 'in the city of Paris'. Compare, however, близ **города Мнѣстон** 'near the town of Manston' (which is unlikely to be known to Russians and is therefore left undeclined).

(5) With place names other than those of towns and rivers it is normal to decline only the generic term: у горъ **Казбѣк** 'by Mount Kazbek', в деревне **Бѣлкино** 'in the village of Belkino', на озере **Байкал** 'on Lake Baikal', рейсы между портами **Одѣсса и Новороссійск** 'trips between the ports of Odessa and Novorossiisk'.

(6) This also applies to foreign place names: над вулканом **Этна** 'above Mount Etna', в графствѣ **Сассекс** 'in the county of Sussex', на островѣ **Диѣго-Гарсія** 'on the island of Diego-Garcia', из порта **Гдыня** 'from the port of Gdynia', в штатѣ **Алабама** 'in the State of Alabama'. Where the generic term is omitted, however, the place name declines: на островѣ **Кипр** 'on the island of Cyprus', but на **Кипре** 'on Cyprus'. In a few cases, where the generic term and the place name are of the same gender, both may decline: в **пустынѣ Сахаре/Сахара** 'in the Sahara desert'.

### 73 Declension of alphabetisms

(1) Only those alphabetisms decline which are masculine and have the form of first-declension nouns ending in a consonant (see **40** (1) (i) (2) (3)):

Долг **ВАЗа** бюджету действительно велик (*Komsomolskaya pravda*)

The Volga Car Factory's debt to the budget is truly substantial

Риск заразиться **СПИДом** выше у наркоманов (*Sputnik*)

The risk of contracting AIDS is greater in drug addicts

(2) Other alphabetisms are not declined: **ГАИ** [гаи́] (Государственная автомобильная инспекция) 'State Vehicle Inspectorate' (see page 596), **ГЭС** [гэс] (гидроэлектростанция) 'hydroelectric power station', **НАТО** [на́то] 'NATO', **НИИ** [ни́й] (научно-исследовательский институт) 'scientific research institute', **ООН** [оо́н] (Организация Объединённых Наций) 'UNO', **ОТК** [о-тэ-ка́] (отдел технического контроля) 'technical control department', **ЦДА** [це-дэ-а́] (Центральный дом архитектора) 'Central Architects' Club':

– Где ты работаешь? — спрашиваю.

– В одном **НИИ**. (Dovlatov)

'Where do you work?', I ask.

'In a scientific research institute'.

Можно связаться с ближайшим постом **ГАИ** (*Izvestiya*)

You can contact the nearest traffic police control point

В **НАСА** пока не решили, стоит ли соглашаться с требованиями законодателей (*Komsomolskaya pravda*)

NASA has not yet decided if it is worthwhile complying with the requirements of the legislators

#### Note

- (a) Though **ГЭС** (power station) and **ООН** (UNO) end in a consonant they are of feminine gender and undeclined. Some new *masculine* forms such as **ВИЧ** 'HIV' are also at present undeclined.
- (b) **ЖЭК** [жэж] (жилищно-эксплуатационная контора) 'housing office', now masculine, is either left undeclined or (in colloquial styles) is declined: в **нашем ЖЭКе**. Similarly **МИД** [мид] (Министерство иностранных дел) 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs'.

## 74 Declension of hyphenated noun co-ordinates

(1) The *first* element in the compound does not decline if it is:

(i) Indeclinable, a recent loan, an abbreviation or a letter of the alphabet: **а́льфа**-во́лны ‘alpha-waves’, **кафе́**-заку́сочная ‘snackbar’, **конфе́ренц**-за́л ‘conference hall’.

(ii) Descriptive and qualifies the second element: **национа́л**-социа́листы ‘National Socialists’, **шта́б**-кварты́ра ‘headquarters’, **либе́ра́л**-демокра́ты ‘Liberal Democrats’.

(iii) The first component in a rank or occupation: **генера́л**-лейтена́нт ‘lieutenant-general’, **премье́р**-мини́стр ‘prime minister’.

(iv) The first component in a measurement: **килова́тт**-ча́с ‘kilowatt-hour’, **во́льт**-ампе́р ‘volt-ampere’.

(2) The *second* element in the compound does not decline if its function is to qualify the first: сло́ва́рь-ми́нимум ‘minimum vocabulary’.

(3) *Both* components decline, each being a full noun in its own right: автомо́биль-самосва́л ‘tip-up lorry’, ваго́н-ресто́ра́н ‘restaurant car’, дива́н-крово́ять ‘divan bed’, же́нщина-милицио́не́р ‘police-woman’, заку́сочная-автомáт ‘vending machine’, инже́не́р-стро́итель ‘construction engineer’, раке́та-носе́тель ‘carrier-rocket’. In speech, only the *second* noun may decline in commonly-used compounds: в ваго́не-ресто́ра́не/ваго́н-ресто́ра́не ‘in the restaurant car’, на дива́не-крово́ати/дива́н-крово́ати ‘on the divan bed’.

### Note

In the following, only the *second* element is declined: ма́тч-ту́рни́р ‘match tournament’, пла́щ-пала́тка ‘groundsheet’, я́хт-клуб ‘yacht-club’.

## 75 Agreement of ряд, большинство etc.

(1) **Ряд**

(i) Ряд traditionally combines with a singular predicate, especially in a passive construction:

**Допу́щен** ряд оши́бок

A number of mistakes have been made

(ii) Ряд may combine with a plural predicate when followed by a dependent **genitive plural**, particularly when the construction involves



an **animate** noun and an **active** verb:

Ряд штангистов занима́ли призовые места́

A number of the weight-lifters occupied medal positions

(2) Большинство́ also traditionally takes a singular predicate:

(i) In passive constructions: Большинство́ пи́сем доста́влено 'Most letters have been delivered'.

(ii) Where it has no post-positive dependent form: Большинство́ уча́ствует в общественно́й жи́зни 'Most participate in public life'.

(iii) Where the dependent form is in the genitive singular or is the genitive plural of an **inanimate** noun:

Большинство́ населе́ния постра́дало от наводне́ния

Most of the population suffered as a result of the flood

Большинство́ телефо́нов в го́роде безмо́лвствует (Tendryakov)

Most telephones in the town are silent

When, however, большинство́ has a dependent form in the genitive plural of an **animate** noun, a **plural** predicate is possible:

Большинство́ уча́щихся хорошо́ подгото́влены

Most of the pupils are well prepared

Большинство́ советских гра́ждан бы́ли уве́рены, что живу́т в са́мой счастливо́й и свобо́дной стране́ (V. Voinovich)

The majority of Soviet citizens were sure that they lived in the happiest and freest country

#### Note

Other collective nouns of this type behave in similar fashion. Compare

На площа́дке перед уса́дбой обы́чно оста́авливается мно́жество авто́бусов и автомоби́лей

A multitude of buses and cars usually stop on the area in front of the estate

and

Мно́жество люде́й пою́т э́ту пе́сню на ра́зных язы́ках

A great many people sing this song in different languages

Compare also

Часть пи́сем зате́рялась

A number of the letters went missing

Часть уча́щихся не яви́лись/не яви́лась

A number of the pupils did not turn up

## 76      Constructions of the type все повернули голову

(1) The singular of the object is regarded as the norm in constructions such as Все повернули **го́лову** 'Everyone turned their head(s)', where identical objects or parts of the body belong to or relate to each member of a group. A plural noun is recommended only when differentiation is essential: Все подняли **ру́ку** 'Everyone raised their hand', cf. Все подняли **ру́ки** 'Everyone raised their arms'. Otherwise the singular is the preferred form:

Соба́ки бежа́ли, поджа́в **хвост**

The dogs were running along with their **tails** between their legs

Все со связанными за **спиной** рука́ми (Rybakov)

All with their hands tied behind their **backs**

Мама́ша, ба́бушка и па́па в кра́сных носка́х и с та́ким же кра́сным **лицо́м** (Granin)

Mum, Gran and Dad in red socks and with similarly red **faces**

(2) However, there are signs of the alternative use of the *plural* in modern Russian:

Мужики́ слу́шали его́, одобри́тельно кива́я **голова́ми** (Dovlatov)

The peasants listened to him, nodding their heads in approval

Они́ стоя́ли с раскры́тыми **рта́ми** (Kunin)

They stood with their mouths wide open

Мы пожа́ли дру́г дру́гу **ру́ки** (Rybakov)

We shook hands

Хло́пали дру́г дру́га по **спина́м** (Aksenov)

They were slapping each other on the back

Соба́ки с поджа́тыми **хвоста́ми** лезли́ в подворо́тны (Rasputin)

Dogs were slinking into the gateways with their tails between their legs

Вскри́кивали, маха́ли **ша́пками** (Trifonov)

They were screaming, waving their caps

(3) The singular is preferred for words denoting uniform:

В сре́днем ка́тере стоя́ли четы́ре челове́ка в служеб́ной полице́йской и тамо́женной **унифо́рме** (Kunin)

In the central launch stood four men in regulation police and customs officer uniforms

(4) A similar alternative use of singular and plural is observed in the case of the noun **жизнь** ‘life’ (though the singular is more common in Russian, and the plural is used *far* more sparingly than in English). Compare

Я был капитаном «Кальмара» и отвечал за их **жизнь** (Gagarin)  
I was the captain of the ‘Kalmar’ and was responsible for their lives

and

Люба, Володя и их товарищи оперировали в полевых госпиталях,  
многим сохранили **жизни** (Rybakov)  
Lyuba, Volodya and their comrades operated in the field hospitals and  
saved many people’s lives

*Note*

With numerals above four, only the genitive plural is possible (see **195**):

Болезнь, которая уже унесла почти 15 тысяч **жизней** (Sputnik)  
A disease which has already claimed almost 15,000 lives

## Case Usage

See **401–453** for prepositional usage.

### 77 The nominative

The nominative is used as follows.

(1) It denotes the subject of an action or state:

**Мой брат** читает книгу  
My brother is reading a book

**Наши дети** довольны подарками  
Our children are pleased with the presents

(2) It may be introduced

(i) by **это** ‘this is, these are’:

**Это моя жена**      This is my wife  
**Это мои дети**      These are my children

- (ii) by **вот** ‘here is, here are, there is, there are’:

<b>Вот мой дом</b>	There is my house
<b>Вот книги</b>	Here are the books

- (3) It is used in possessive constructions:

<b>У меня [есть] книга</b>	I have a book
<b>У него был брат</b>	He had a brother

- (4) It is used in comparative constructions after **чем**:

**Я старше, чем моя сестра**  
I am older than my sister

- (5) It is used in generalizing constructions after **как**:

в таких странах, как **Нигерия**  
in countries such as Nigeria

*Note*

The meaning of the above example is ‘in countries such as Nigeria **is**’. **Нигерия** is therefore *not* in apposition to **странах**. Compare:

Наш завод специализируется по производству таких изделий,  
как **шины и колёса**  
Our factory specializes in the manufacture of products such as tyres and wheels

- (6) It is used in definitions:

**Москва — столица России** Moscow is the capital of Russia

- (7) It is used in apposition to various generic terms (see 72):

**Я читаю роман «Анна Каренина»**  
I am reading the novel *Anna Karenina*

---

## 78      The vocative

---

Vocative meanings are expressed by the nominative: **Иван Фёдорович!** ‘Ivan Fedorovich!’. Relics of the former vocative case survive only in certain ecclesiastical terms, now used as exclamations: **Бóже мой!** ‘My God!’, **Гóсподи!** ‘Good Lord!’. Some truncated familiar forms are used as vocatives in colloquial Russian: **мам!** ‘Mum!’, **Нин!** ‘Nina!’, **Вань!** ‘Vanya!’, **Коль!** ‘Kolya!’, **Петь!** ‘Pete!’ (also **дядь!** ‘Uncle!’ etc.).

## 79 The accusative

The accusative case is used as follows.

- (1) It denotes the object of a transitive verb:

Он любит <b>Мáшу</b>	He loves Masha
Она́ учится водить <b>мáшинну</b>	She is learning to drive a car

### Note

In colloquial Russian the verb may sometimes be ‘understood’: Бúдьте добры́ (, попросите к телефóну) Зóю ‘Can I speak to Zoya, please’.

- (2) It is used in certain impersonal constructions:

Дéвочку рвёт	The girl feels sick
Дом зажгло́ мóлнией	The house was struck by lightning
Мне жаль (жа́лко) <b>сестрú</b>	I feel sorry for my sister (for жаль + genitive, see <b>80</b> (8))
Мне бо́льно <b>ру́ку</b> (colloquial)	My hand is sore

For other impersonal constructions with the accusative, see **295** (1).

- (3) It denotes:

- (i) Duration in time:

<b>Всю зíму</b> было́ хо́лодно	It was cold all winter
--------------------------------	------------------------

- (ii) Duration in space:

<b>Всю доро́гу</b> о́ни шли мо́лча	They walked in silence all the way
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

- (iii) Repetition:

Он э́то говори́л <b>ты́сячу</b> раз	He has said that a thousand times
Он боле́ет <b>ка́ждую весну́</b>	He is ill every spring

- (iv) Cost, weight, measure etc.:

Кни́га сто́ит <b>до́ллар</b>	The book costs a dollar
Уго́ль ве́сит <b>то́нну</b>	The coal weighs a ton

### Note

- (a) For the use of the accusative after negated transitive verbs, see **87** (4).  
 (b) Some verbs which have traditionally governed the genitive may take the *accusative* of animate nouns in colloquial Russian: Он

слу́шается **сестру́** ‘He obeys his sister’, Де́ти бо́ялись **ма́ть** ‘The children were afraid of their mother’, Дожида́лись **А́нну** ‘They were waiting for Anna’. See also **88** (1) (ii) (a) and (2) (i).

---

## 80      The genitive: possession and relationship

---

The genitive case is used to denote the following:

(1) Possession:

дом **бра́та**                                  my brother’s house

(2) Relationships:

член **па́ртии**                                  a member of the party

(3) The whole in relation to the part:

кры́ша **до́ма**                                  the roof of the house

(4) The agent of an action or process:

высту́плéние **а́ртиста**                      the artiste’s performance

(5) The object of an action or process:

убо́рка **урожа́я**                                  the gathering in of the harvest

(6) Descriptive attributes:

час **обе́да**    lunch time  
бума́га **пе́рвого со́рта**                      first-grade paper

(7) The second item in a comparison:

Он мо́ложе **бра́та**                              He is younger than his brother (see also **182** (1) (ii))

(8) The object of regret (constructions with **жа́ль**):

Мне жа́ль **де́нег**                                  I grudge the money

---

## 81      The genitive: quantity

---

The genitive is used with:

(1) **Ма́ло** ‘few’, **мно́го** ‘much, many’, **нема́ло** ‘not a little’, **немно́го** ‘not much, many’, **не́сколько** ‘a few’, **ско́лько** ‘how much, many’, **сто́лько** ‘so much, many’:

много <b>дѐнег</b>	a lot of money
сколько <b>лет?</b>	how many years?
несколько <b>человѐк</b>	several people

(2) **Достаточно** ‘enough’, **недоставать** ‘to be insufficient’, **скопить** ‘to accumulate’, **хватать/хватить** ‘to be enough’: **Времени** хватает ‘There is enough time’, Ему недостаёт **рубля** ‘He is a rouble short’, достаточно **сил** ‘enough strength’:

Хватит ли им **бензина** для ночных блужданий? (Trifonov)  
Will they have enough petrol for their nocturnal escapades?

(3) Collective nouns:

стадо <b>овѐц</b>	a flock of sheep
-------------------	------------------

(4) Nouns denoting measure:

литр <b>молока́</b>	a litre of milk
---------------------	-----------------

(5) Nouns denoting containers:

чашка <b>молока́</b>	a cup of milk
----------------------	---------------

## 82 The genitive with adjectives

The following adjectives (and their short forms) govern the genitive: **достойный** ‘worthy’, **лишённый** ‘lacking in’, **полный** ‘full’, **чуждый** ‘devoid’:

корзина, полная <b>яблок</b>	a basket full of apples
Он достоин <b>награды</b>	He is worthy of an award
человек, чуждый <b>честолюбия</b>	a man devoid of ambition
Он лишён <b>остроумия</b>	He is lacking in wit

## 83 The partitive genitive

(1) The genitive is used to denote part of a substance or liquid (Он выпил **молока́** ‘He drank some milk’) or to denote a quantity of objects (Он поёл **ягод** ‘He ate some berries’). The accusative denotes *whole* rather than part: Он выпил **молоко́** ‘He drank **the** milk’.

(2) The partitive genitive appears only as the *object* of a verb, never as the subject, cf. Она налилa гостя́м **вина́** ‘She poured her guests some wine’ and На столе́ есть **вино́** ‘There is some wine on the table’.

(3) Except for constructions with verbs such as **хотѣть/захотѣть** 'to want' and **просить/попросить** 'to request', where either aspect may be used (**Хочу воды** 'I want some water', **Он просит мѣда** 'He asks for some honey'), most partitive constructions involve *perfective* verbs only (**Она принесла дров** 'She brought some firewood', **Он достал денег** 'He acquired some money', **Он отмерил сатина** 'He measured out some satin'). With many imperfectives the partitive genitive is never used: **Он выпил воды** 'He drank some water' but **Он пил воду** 'He was drinking some water'; **Он съел хлеба** 'He ate some bread' but **Он ел хлеб** 'He was eating some bread'.

(4) Some perfectives with the quantitative prefix **на-** also take the partitive genitive: **наѣсться ягод** 'to eat one's fill of berries', **накупить книг** 'to buy some books', **нарвать цветѡв** 'to pick some flowers', **нарубить дров** 'to chop some wood'.

(5) Containers and quantitative words also appear in partitive constructions: **ложка мѣда** 'a spoonful of honey'.

(6) Examples of partitive genitives:

Гриша привѣз по еѣ просьбе **овощей** (Trifonov)  
Grisha brought some vegetables at her request

Налила ребѣтам **молока** (Rasputin)  
She poured the kids some milk

**Денег** на дорогу вышлю (Shukshin)  
I'll send some money for the journey

Я тебѣ дам **успокоительных капель** (Rybakov)  
I'll give you some tranquillizers

#### Note

The following are examples of the parallel availability, after verbs, of a relatively new phenomenon, a partitive *accusative*:

Хочешь, я тебѣ **чай** принесу (Marinina)  
Would you like me to bring you some tea?

"Могу ли я воспользоваться вашим причалом и купить **прѣсную воду**?" (Kunin)  
'May I use your berth and buy some fresh water?'

Капитан сел у окна, заказал **вино** и шницель (Dovlatov)  
The captain sat down by the window, ordered some wine and a schnitzel



## 84 The partitive genitive in -y/-ю

(1) Some masculine nouns, mainly those which denote substances, have genitives in **-a/-я** and in **-y/-ю**, e.g. **сáхар** ‘sugar’, **сáхара/сáхару**; **чай** ‘tea’, **чáя/чáю**. See 53.

(2) Other nouns with two genitives include **бензín** ‘petrol’, **виногрáд** ‘grapes’, **горóх** ‘peas’, **керосín** ‘paraffin’, **кипятóк** ‘boiling water’, **конья́к** ‘brandy’, **лук** ‘onions’, **мёд** ‘honey’, **мел** ‘chalk’, **песóк** ‘sand’, **суп** ‘soup’, **сыр** ‘cheese’, **табáк** ‘tobacco’, **творóг** ‘cottage cheese’, **шёлк** ‘silk’.

(3) Genitive **-y/-ю** appears only in partitive constructions: **налить чáю** ‘to pour some tea’, **тарéлка сýпу** ‘a plate of soup’:

Ба́бушка посла́ла Во́вку пощипа́ть лу́ку (Belov)  
Grandma sent Vovka to pick some onions

У́тром она́ взяла́ у хозя́ев кипяткú (Rybakov)  
In the morning she fetched some boiling water from the proprietors

Доста́л буты́лку конья́кú  
He got out a bottle of brandy

(4) If quantity is *not* implied, **-a/-я** are used: **за́пах и цвет табакá** ‘the smell and colour of tobacco’, **произво́дство сы́ра** ‘the production of cheese’, **це́на чáя** ‘the price of tea’.

(5) Note that **-a/-я** are also used if the noun denoting the substance or liquid is qualified by an adjective: **стака́н крéпкого чáя** ‘a glass of strong tea’.

(6) The use of the partitive genitive in **-y/-ю** is decreasing, and **-a/-я** are now possible in all meanings and styles (**ча́шка чáю/чáя** ‘a cup of tea’), with the commonest nouns (e.g. **сáхар** ‘sugar’, **чай** ‘tea’) most likely to be found with a genitive in **-y/-ю**. However, even with such nouns the partitive in **-a/-я** is usually acceptable:

Стою́ в о́череди в ка́ссу и прики́дываю: килогра́мм сáхара,  
па́чка чáя . . . (Nedelya)  
I stand in the queue to the cash-desk and calculate: a kilogram of  
sugar, a packet of tea . . .

(7) Genitive **-y/-ю** is most consistently found in end-stressed diminutives: **сварить кофейкú** (from **кофеёк**) ‘to boil some coffee’, **Хóчешь чайкú?** (from **чаёк**) ‘Would you like some tea?’ (others

include **коньячку́** from конья́к/коньячо́к ‘brandy’, **лучку́** from лук/лучо́к ‘onions’, **сырку́** from сыр/сыро́к ‘cheese’, **табачку́** from таба́к/табачо́к ‘tobacco’).

(8) Partitive constructions involving perfective verbs and genitives in **-у/-ю** are also very common: доба́вить **са́хару** ‘to add some sugar’, зава́рить **ча́ю** ‘to make some tea’, пое́сть **су́пу** ‘to eat some soup’, положи́ть **чесноку́** ‘to put in some garlic’.

(9) **-у/-ю** are also found with **нет**, with indefinite numerals and with measures and containers: килогра́мм **виногра́ду** ‘a kilo of grapes’, **нет конья́ку** ‘there is no brandy’, мно́го **наро́ду** ‘many people’, па́чка **са́хару** ‘a packet of sugar’, кусо́к **сы́ру** ‘a piece of cheese’; **-а/-я** are also possible in such cases:

Оста́лось лишь полпа́чки **ча́я** (Povolyaev)

Only half a packet of tea remained

Only occasionally is the partitive governed by a frequentative *imperfective* verb:

И́зредка мать набива́ла **творогу́** в ба́ночку (Rasputin)

Now and again mother would cram some cottage cheese into a little jar

## 85 Genitive in -у in set phrases

(1) Genitives in **-у** appear in certain idioms and set phrases:

до <b>за́резу</b> ну́жно	very necessary
ни <b>ра́зу</b>	not once
ни <b>слу́ху</b> ни <b>ду́ху</b>	neither sight nor sound
ни <b>ша́гу</b> наза́д	not a step back
с <b>бо́ку</b> на́ бок	from side to side
с <b>гла́зу</b> на́ глаз	tête-à-tête
танцева́ть до <b>упа́ду</b>	to dance till one drops
упуска́ть из <b>виду́</b>	to lose sight of

(2) The genitive in **-а/-я** has had very little impact on such phrases, except for **без про́маху/-а** ‘unerringly’ and **без разбо́ру/-а** ‘indiscriminately’.

(3) In some causal expressions **от** combines with **-а/-я** (от **го́лода** ‘from hunger’, от **испу́га** ‘from fright’, от **сме́ха** ‘with laughter’) and **с** with **-у/-ю** (умере́ть **с го́лоду** ‘to starve to death’, кря́кнуть **с испу́гу**

‘to scream with fright’, пры́снуть со **сме́ху** ‘to burst out laughing’, умереть со **стра́ху** ‘to die of fright’). Some forms in **-y/-ю** appear in spatial expressions: уй́ти из **до́му** ‘to leave home’ (cf. уй́ти из **до́ма** ‘to leave the house’), вы́йти из **ле́су** ‘to emerge from the forest’.

## 86 Genitive and negative

(1) **Нет** ‘there is not’, **не́ было́** ‘there was not’ and **не бу́дет** ‘there will not be’ combine with the genitive to denote **non-existence** or **non-availability**:

Нет <b>де́нег</b>	There is no money
Не́ было́ <b>вре́мени</b>	There was no time
Не бу́дет <b>войны́</b>	There will be no war

### Note

- (a) Compare frequentative usage in **Всё ча́ще Ли́ли** не быва́ет до́ма (Kazakov) ‘Lilya is out more and more often’.
- (b) Compare constructions which involve identification, where the **nominative** is used: **Э́то не мо́я же́на** ‘That is not my wife’, **Э́то не́ были мо́и де́ти** ‘Those were not my children’.
- (c) Constructions of the type: **Роди́тели** (nominative) не до́ма ‘The parents are out’ (for the normal **Роди́телей** нет до́ма) may be used when actual whereabouts are indicated: **Они́** не до́ма, а **в гости́ях** ‘They are not in, but out visiting’.

(2) The genitive is also used in possessive phrases: **У меня́ нет** **компы́ютера** ‘I have no computer’, **У нас не́ было́ дете́й** ‘We had no children’, **У вас не бу́дет** **пробле́м** ‘You will not have any problems’.

(3) Other negated verbs denoting non-availability, non-occurrence or non-appearance may be used in this construction: **Ле́звий** не име́ется ‘There are no blades in stock’, **Де́нег** не оста́лось ‘There was no money left’, **Таки́х люде́й** не существу́ет ‘Such people do not exist’, **Встре́чных маши́н** не попада́лось ‘No oncoming vehicles were encountered’.

(4) In some negative constructions a nominative indicates the absence of *specific* objects, a genitive the absence of *all* objects of a particular type, cf. **Докуме́нтов** не сохра́нилось ‘No documents were preserved’ (at all) and **Докуме́нты**, о кото́рых шла речь, не сохра́нились ‘The documents in question were not preserved’.

(5) The genitive construction is also used after **не ви́дно** ‘cannot be seen’, **не заме́тно** ‘cannot be discerned’, **не слы́шно** ‘cannot be heard’:

Из-за дыма **дверей** не видно (Abramov)  
You can't see the doors for the smoke

Ни **собаки**, ни **голосов** не было слышно (Trifonov)  
Neither the dog nor people's voices could be heard

(6) It is also used with **не надо**, **не нужно** etc.:

Не надо ни **дров**, ни **угля** (*Rabotnitsa*)  
Neither firewood nor coal is necessary

#### *Note*

Compare the use of the *genitive* case in the general statement: **Помощи** не нужно 'No help is required' and the *nominative* in the specific **Ваша помощь** не нужна 'Your help is not required'.

(7) The *genitive* case is used in negative passive constructions: **Книг** не выпускается 'No books are issued', **Подтверждения** не получено 'No confirmation has been received'.

(8) It is also used in time expressions:

И **пяти минут** не прошло (Orlov)  
Not five minutes had passed

Мы поженились, когда мне ещё не исполнилось **восемнадцати** (*Russia Today*)  
We got married when I had not yet **turned 18**

---

## **87      The genitive and accusative after negated verbs**

---

(1) Both the *genitive* and the *accusative* can be used after a negated transitive verb:

Он не посещал **город/города**      He did not visit the town

(2) While in case of doubt it is advisable to use a *genitive*, there are situations where one case or the other is preferable.

(3) The **genitive** is preferred:

(i) In generalized statements:

Я не вижу **стола**  
I don't see a (i.e. *any*) table

(ii) With compound negatives:

Он никогда и никому не говорил **неправды** (Trifonov)  
He has never told lies to anyone

(iii) With the emphatic negative particle **ни**:

Он не читал **ни одной книги**  
He has not read a single book

(iv) With abstract nouns: Она не скрывает **своего раздражения** 'She does not conceal her irritation'. Many set expressions are involved: не играть **роли** 'to play no part', не иметь **понятия** 'to have no idea', не иметь **права** 'not to have the right', не иметь **смысла** 'not to have any point', не обращать **внимания** 'not to pay any attention', не придавать **значения** 'not to attach significance to', не принимать **участия** 'not to take part', не производить **впечатления** 'to make no impression', не терять **времени** 'not to waste time'.

(v) With a negative gerund: не скрывая своей **радости** 'without concealing his joy', не дослушав **спора** до конца 'without hearing out the argument'.

(vi) With **это**: **Этого** я не допущу 'I won't allow that', and after negated verbs of perception: Он не знал **урока** 'He did not know the lesson', Он не понял **вопроса** 'He did not understand the question', Он не чувствовал **боли** 'he did not feel any pain'.

(4) The **accusative** is preferred:

(i) When a specific object or objects are involved:

Я не вижу **стол**  
I do not see *the* table

Он не получил **письмо**  
He did not receive *the* letter (cf. Он не получил **письма** 'He did not receive *a* letter')

(ii) When the object denotes a person:

Он не встретил **мою сестру**  
He did not meet my sister

(iii) With 'false' negatives such as **едва не/чуть не**, 'almost', **не могу не** 'I can't help, cannot but':

Он чуть не пропустил **трамвай**  
He almost missed the tram

Не могу не простить его **поведение**  
I cannot but forgive his behaviour

- (iv) When the noun is qualified by an instrumental predicate:

Я не счита́ю **эту статью** интере́сной  
I do not consider this article interesting

- (v) When a part of the sentence other than the verb is negated:

Он не **вполне́** усво́ил уро́к  
He has not **completely** assimilated the lesson

Не **я** приду́мал но́вый поря́док  
It was not **I** who devised the new set up.

- (vi) In set phrases: **палец** о палец не уда́рить ‘not to do a stroke of work’.

- (5) If none of the above criteria apply, then **either case** is usually possible. Factors which influence choice include:

(i) Word order, the accusative being preferred when the noun precedes the verb (**Иде́ю** она́ не поняла́ ‘She did not understand *the* idea’) and the genitive when it follows (Она́ не поняла́ **иде́и** ‘She did not understand the idea’).

(ii) An accusative is often regarded as the more colloquial alternative: Я не чита́л **вчера́шнюю газе́ту** ‘I have not read yesterday’s newspaper’.

(iii) Nouns in **-а** and **-я** are more prone to appear in the accusative case after a negated transitive verb than are other nouns.

(iv) When an infinitive appears between the negated verb and the object, the latter usually appears in the accusative:

Он не хоте́л смотре́ть **эту пье́су**  
He did not want to see this play

Я не уме́ю писа́ть **стихи́**  
I can’t write verse

However, the genitive is also possible:

Вы же нико́му не даёте раскры́ть **рта** (Trifonov)  
Why, you don’t give anyone a chance to get a word in edgeways

#### *Note*

To avoid ambiguity, it is better to replace, say, Он не чита́ет **кни́ги** either by Он не чита́ет **кни́гу** ‘He is not reading the book’ or by Он не чита́ет **книг** ‘He does not read books’ (since it is otherwise not clear whether **кни́ги** is genitive singular or accusative plural).

(6) In cases of doubt it is advisable to use the *genitive* after a negated transitive verb:

Пригну́вшись, что́бы не заде́ть голо́вой **потолка́** (Zalygin)  
 Stooping, so as not to hit his head on the ceiling

*Note*

Verbs which take a case other than the accusative are not affected by the negative-genitive rule: Он *помога́ет* брата́ ‘He helps his brother’, Он *не помога́ет* брата́ ‘He does not help his brother’; Он *горди́тся* своим полко́м ‘He is proud of his regiment’, Он *не горди́тся* своим полко́м ‘He is not proud of his regiment’.

## 88 Verbs that take the genitive

Verbs which govern the genitive case belong to four principal categories:

(1) Verbs of asking, waiting, seeking, achieving etc.:

(i) Verbs that take only the genitive. These include **добива́ться** ‘to strive for’, **достига́ть** ‘to achieve’, **жа́ждать** ‘to crave for’, **жела́ть** ‘to desire’, **заслу́живать** ‘to deserve’:

добива́ться	<b>успе́ха</b>	to strive for success
достига́ть	<b>свое́й це́ли</b>	to achieve one’s aim
жа́ждать	<b>сла́вы</b>	to crave for glory
жела́ть	<b>сча́стья</b>	to desire happiness
заслу́живать	<b>похва́лы</b>	to deserve praise

*Note*

(a) The perfective **заслужи́ть** ‘to earn’ takes the accusative: заслужи́ть до́верие ‘to earn someone’s confidence’.

(b) **Жела́ть** ‘to wish’ is ‘understood’ in such phrases as **Счастли́вого пу́ти!** ‘Bon voyage!’ and **И вам то́го же!** ‘The same to you!’.

(ii) Verbs that take the genitive *and* the accusative. Generally speaking, such verbs take the genitive of nouns denoting general and abstract concepts, and the accusative of nouns denoting persons and specific inanimate objects. The verbs include:

(a) **Дожида́ться** ‘to wait until’.

Genitive	дожида́ться <b>побе́ды</b>	to wait till victory comes
Accusative	дожида́ться <b>сестру́</b>	to wait till one’s sister comes

(b) **Ждать** 'to wait for'.

Genitive	Жду <b>отвѣта</b>	I am awaiting an answer
	Жду <b>приказа</b>	I am awaiting an order
	Жду <b>решения</b>	I am awaiting a decision

Ждём **писем** о самых интересных клубов (*Russia Today*)  
We are expecting letters about the most interesting clubs

Она ждала от меня **комплимента** (Avdeenko)  
She was expecting a compliment from me

Accusative	Жду <b>сегодняшнюю</b> почту	I am waiting for today's mail
------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------

Сидел за столом, занимался, ждал **жену** (Grekova)  
He sat at the table, worked, waited for his wife

*Note*

Ждать **автобус** No. 5 'to wait for the number 5 bus' (a particular bus), but Жду **автобуса** 'I am waiting for a bus' (any bus; but Жду **автобус** is also possible, especially in spoken Russian).

(c) **Искать** 'to seek, look for'.

Genitive ('to try to achieve')

искать <b>возможности</b>	to seek an opportunity
искать <b>помощи</b>	to seek assistance

Accusative ('to try to find')

искать <b>упавшую иголку</b>	to look for a dropped needle
искать <b>свое место</b> в зале	to look for one's place in the hall
искать <b>правду</b>	to seek the truth
искать <b>дорогу</b>	to try to find the way

*Note*

Работа is found in either case (искать **работы/работу** 'to look for work'), with the accusative (the more usual form) referring to more specific work.

(d) **Ожидать** 'to wait for, expect'.

Genitive	ожидать <b>случая</b>	to wait for an opportunity
	ожидать <b>автобуса</b>	to wait for a bus (cf. <b>ждать</b> (b) note)

Втянул голову в плечи, будто ожидая **удара** со спины (Gagarin)  
He hunched his shoulders, as if expecting a blow from behind



Accusative	ожида́ть <b>ма́му</b>	to wait for, expect Mum
------------	-----------------------	-------------------------

(e) **Проси́ть** ‘to ask for’.

Genitive	Прошу́ <b>по́мощи</b>	I ask for assistance (also <i>прошу́ о по́мощи</i> )
	Прошу́ <b>проще́ния</b>	I ask forgiveness

See **83** (3) for usage with the partitive genitive.

Accusative	Прошу́ <b>де́ньги</b>	I ask for the money (cf. <i>Прошу́ де́нег</i> ‘I ask for <b>some</b> money’)
	Прошу́ <b>ма́му</b> откры́ть окно́	I ask Mum to open the window

(f) **Требо́вать** ‘to demand’.

Genitive	требо́вать <b>внима́ния</b>	to demand attention
	требо́вать <b>приба́вки</b>	to demand an increment
	требо́вать <b>кни́г</b>	to demand some books
Accusative	требо́вать <b>свою́ кни́гу</b>	to demand one’s book

(g) **Хоте́ть** ‘to want’.

Genitive	Хоти́м <b>ми́ра</b>	We want peace
----------	---------------------	---------------

See **83** (3) for usage with the partitive genitive.

Accusative	Хочу́ <b>бу́лку</b>	I want a roll
------------	---------------------	---------------

(2) Verbs of fearing, avoiding etc. Such verbs usually take the genitive of abstract, impersonal and inanimate nouns, but may now govern the accusative of animate nouns.

(i) **Бо́яться** ‘to fear’.

Genitive	бо́яться <b>те́мноты́</b>	to be afraid of the dark
	бо́яться <b>грозы́</b>	to be afraid of a thunderstorm

Он бо́ялся **го́рода**, не хоте́л в него́ (Rasputin)  
He was afraid of the town, did not want to go there

Accusative	бо́яться <b>ба́бушку</b>	to be afraid of grandmother
------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

(ii) Other verbs include *дичи́ться* ‘to be shy of’, *избега́ть* ‘to avoid’, *опаса́ться* ‘to fear’, *остерега́ться* ‘to beware of’, *пуга́ться* ‘to be scared of’, *стесня́ться* ‘to be shy of’, *сторони́ться* ‘to shun’, *стыди́ться* ‘to be ashamed of’, *чужда́ться* ‘to avoid’:

	избега́ть <b>неприя́тностей</b>	to avoid trouble
--	---------------------------------	------------------

избегать <b>тёщу</b>	to avoid one's mother-in-law
опасаться <b>осложнений</b>	to fear complications
остерегаться <b>заразы</b>	to beware of an infection
пугаться <b>гро́ма</b>	to be scared of thunder
стесняться <b>общества</b>	to shun society
сторониться <b>недобрых людей</b>	to shun wicked people
стыдиться <b>своего́ ви́да</b>	to be ashamed of one's appearance
чужда́ться <b>дурно́й компа́нии</b>	to avoid bad company

## (3) Verbs of depriving etc.

лиша́ть <b>ро́дительских прав</b>	to deprive of parental rights
лиша́ться <b>свободы</b>	to be deprived of one's freedom

(4) Verbs denoting conformity or non-conformity. These include *держаться* 'to adhere to', *ослушиваться* 'to disobey', *придёрживаться* 'to hold to', *слушаться* 'to obey':

держаться <b>мне́ния</b>	to stick to one's opinion
ослу́шиваться <b>прика́за</b>	to disobey an order
приде́рживаться <b>то́чки зре́ния</b>	to hold to a point of view
слу́шаться <b>совета́</b>	to heed advice

*Note*

In colloquial styles the accusative is possible with an animate object: *слушаться ма́тери* or *ма́ть* 'to obey one's mother'.

Other verbs that take the genitive include *касаться* 'to touch, touch on' and *сто́ить* 'to be worth':

касаться <b>стола́</b>	to touch the table
касаться <b>вопро́са</b>	to touch on a question
э́то сто́ит <b>награ́ды</b>	that is worth an award

**89      The dative as indirect object of a verb**

The dative case denotes the indirect object of a verb, i.e. the person for whom an action is performed, the recipient or beneficiary: *дава́ть де́ньги касси́ру* 'to give the money to the cashier', *звони́ть сестре́ на рабо́ту* 'to ring one's sister at work', *отвеча́ть сосе́ду* 'to answer a neighbour' (cf. *отвеча́ть на письмо́* 'to answer a letter'), *писа́ть*

письмó **брáту** ‘to write a letter to one’s brother’, плати́ть **дру́гу** ‘to pay one’s friend’, пожима́ть ру́ку **солда́ту** ‘to shake the soldier’s hand’, посла́ть де́ньги **сы́ну** ‘to send money to one’s son’ (note, however, use of the preposition **к** when the object sent is animate: отпра́вить дете́й **к ро́дственникам** ‘to send the children to stay with relatives’), сказа́ть **отцу́** пра́вду ‘to tell one’s father the truth’.

## 90 Verbs that take the dative

Verbs which take the dative denote:

(1) Conforming, rendering assistance or other service; conversely, causing a hindrance: **аккомпани́ровать** ‘to accompany’ (music), **аплоди́ровать** ‘to applaud’, **вреди́ть** ‘to harm’, **изменя́ть** ‘to betray’, **меша́ть** ‘to hinder’, **напомина́ть** ‘to remind’, **повиновáться** ‘to obey’, **позволя́ть** ‘to allow’, **покрови́тельствова́ть** ‘to patronize’, **помога́ть** ‘to help’, **препятствова́ть** ‘to hinder’, **противоре́чить** ‘to contradict’, **служи́ть** ‘to serve’, **сове́товать** ‘to advise’, **соде́йствова́ть** ‘to cooperate’, **способствова́ть** ‘to foster’, **угожда́ть** ‘to please’.

### Note

(a) **Запреща́ть** ‘to forbid’ and **разреша́ть** ‘to permit’ take the dative of the person (**запреща́ть/разреша́ть солда́там** **кури́ть** ‘to forbid/permit the soldiers to smoke’) and the accusative of an action or process (**запреща́ть/разреша́ть обго́н** ‘to forbid/permit overtaking’).

(b) **Учи́ть** ‘to teach’ takes the dative of the subject taught: **учи́ть дете́й му́зыке** ‘to teach the children music’. **Учи́ть** + accusative means ‘to learn’: **учи́ть ру́сский язы́к** ‘to learn Russian’. Росси́ю постоянно́ **уча́т** демократи́и (V. Putin) ‘Russia is constantly being taught democracy’.

(2) Attitude: **ве́рить** ‘to believe’, **грози́ть** ‘to threaten’, **дове́рять(ся)** ‘to trust’, **досажда́ть** ‘to annoy’, **зави́довать** ‘to envy’, **льсти́ть** ‘to flatter’, **мсти́ть** ‘to take vengeance on’ (cf. **мсти́ть за** + accusative ‘to avenge someone’), **надоеда́ть** ‘to bore’, **подража́ть** ‘to imitate’, **поража́ться** ‘to be amazed at’, **ра́доваться** ‘to rejoice at’, **сочу́вствова́ть** ‘to sympathize with’, **удивля́ться** ‘to be surprised at’. Note also **смея́ться**, **улыба́ться шу́тке** ‘to laugh, smile at a joke’ (but **смея́ться над** **ке́м-нибу́дь** ‘to laugh at someone’).

(3) Other meanings: **насле́дова́ть** ‘to succeed’ (someone), **предше́ствова́ть** ‘to precede’, **принадлежа́ть** ‘to belong to’ (in the meaning of possession; cf. **принадлежа́ть к** ‘to belong to’ (a group, society etc.)), **равня́ться** ‘to equal’, **сле́дова́ть** ‘to follow’ (advice etc.).

*Note*

Many verbal and other nouns cognate with the above verbs also take the dative: обучение **ру́сскому языку́** ‘the teaching of Russian’, подража́ние **ска́зке** ‘imitation of a folk tale’, по́мощь **же́ртвам** землетрясе́ния ‘help for the victims of the earthquake’, служе́ние **нау́ке** ‘service to science’, соде́йствие **флóту** ‘co-operation with the navy’, сочу́вствие **чужо́му го́рю** ‘sympathy for others’ grief’, угро́за **ми́ру** ‘a threat to peace’.

---

**91      Adjectives that take the dative**

---

Adjectives (long *and* short forms) which take the dative include:

благодарный	grateful to
ве́рный	loyal to
знако́мый	known to
изве́стный	well known to
подо́бный	similar to
послу́шный	obedient to
прису́щий	inherent in
рад (short form only)	glad (я рад <b>гостя́м</b> ‘I am glad to see the guests’)
сво́йственный	characteristic of, inherent in

Предусмотрите́льность **сво́йственна** э́тому челове́ку  
Prudence is inherent in this person

---

**92      Impersonal constructions using the dative**

---

(1) Most impersonal constructions involving the dative case denote a state of mind, feeling, inclination or attitude:

**Ученику́** ве́село, гру́стно, ду́шно, жа́рко, лу́чше, ску́чно,  
сты́дно, тепло́, удо́бно, хо́лодно, ху́же

The pupil feels cheerful, sad, stifled, hot, better, bored,  
ashamed, warm, comfortable, cold, worse

(2) Some constructions involve verbs: **Бра́ту** ка́жется, что тепло́  
‘My brother thinks it is warm’, **Бра́ту** надо́ело раба́тывать ‘My brother  
is bored with working’, **Бра́ту** нездо́ровится ‘My brother feels off  
colour’, **Бра́ту** нра́вится танцева́ть ‘My brother likes dancing’, **Бра́ту**  
прихо́дится мно́го раба́тывать ‘My brother is obliged to work hard’,

**Бра́ту** удало́сь доста́ть де́ньги ‘My brother managed to get the money’,  
**Бра́ту** хоте́лось уйти́ ‘My brother felt like leaving’.

(3) Note also:

(i) Constructions with reflexive verbs that denote disinclination:

**Сестре́** не поё́тся, не рабо́тается, не сиди́тся  
 My sister does not feel like singing, working, sitting still

(ii) The impersonal predicate **жа́ль** also combines with the dative:  
**Отцу́** жа́ль ‘My father feels sorry’ (for жа́ль with accusative see **79** (2)  
 and for жа́ль with genitive see **80** (8)).

(4) The dative is also used in denoting age: **Сы́ну** (испо́лнилось) 20 лет  
 ‘My son is (has turned) 20’.

### 93 The dative as the logical subject of an infinitive

(1) A noun or pronoun in the dative case may function as the logical subject of an infinitive: **Что де́тям** де́лать? ‘What are the children to do?’, **Не вам** решáть ‘It is not for you to decide’, **Бра́ту** не́куда идти́ ‘My brother has nowhere to go’.

(2) The dative can also be used to express a peremptory command:  
**Всем соотру́дникам** соб́раться в час! ‘All employees meet at one!’

### 94 The instrumental of function

A noun is placed in the instrumental case to denote that the object it represents is being used to perform a function: мы́ться **горя́чей водо́й** ‘to wash with hot water’, писа́ть **карандашо́м** ‘to write with a pencil’, ре́зать **ножо́м** ‘to cut with a knife’, руби́ть **топо́ро́м** ‘to chop with an axe’.

#### Note

- (a) Analogous use of the instrumental in броса́ть **камя́ми** ‘to throw stones’ (at a target), говори́ть **гро́мким го́лосом** ‘to speak in a loud voice’, дыша́ть **кислоро́дом** ‘to breathe oxygen’, плати́ть **англи́йскими де́ньга́ми** ‘to pay in English money’.
- (b) Use of the instrumental of function (e.g. ре́зать **ножо́м** ‘to cut with a knife’) must be distinguished from с + instrumental (‘with’ in the meaning ‘holding’): он сиде́л **с ножо́м** в руке́ ‘he sat with a knife in his hand’.

- (c) Кормить **рыбой** ‘to feed on (= with) fish’, награждать **премией** ‘to reward with a bonus’, наполнять **водой** ‘to fill with water’, снабжать **нефтью** ‘to supply with oil’ also belong in the category ‘instrumental of function’.

## 95 The instrumental in constructions denoting movements of the body

---

The instrumental is used in constructions denoting movements of the body:

(1) Двигать **рукой** ‘to move one’s arm’ (cf. двигать **стол** ‘to move a table’), качать/кивать **головой** ‘to shake/nod one’s head’, махать **рукой** ‘to wave one’s hand’, мигать **глазами** ‘to blink one’s eyes’, пожимать **плечами** ‘to shrug one’s shoulders’, топтать **ногами** ‘to stamp one’s feet’, щёлкать **языком** ‘to click one’s tongue’.

(2) The construction also applies to objects held with the hand (размахивать **палкой** ‘to brandish a stick’, хлопать **дверью** ‘to slam a door’, щёлкать **бичом** ‘to crack a whip’) and to the figurative expressions И **брóвью** не повёл ‘He did not turn a hair’, шевелить **мозгами** ‘to use one’s brains’.

## 96 The instrumental in passive constructions

---

The instrumental is used to denote the agent in a passive construction:

Дом стро́ится <b>рабóчими</b>	The house is being built by workers
Горá покрыта <b>снéгом</b>	The mountain is covered with snow
<b>Вéтром</b> сорва́ло крýшу	The roof was torn off by the wind

See also **359** and **360** (2) for the use of the instrumental with passive participles.

## 97 The instrumental in adverbial expressions

---

The instrumental is used to denote movement through time or space, or the manner in which an action is performed:

(1) Space: The type of route covered in a journey: **идти берегом** ‘to walk along the shore’, **ехать лесом** ‘to ride through the forest’, **морем** ‘by sea’, **ехать полем** ‘to ride through the fields’, **сухим путём** ‘overland’. Note also **идти своей дорогой** ‘to go one’s own way’ (fig.).

(2) Time:

(i) Parts of the day: **утром, днём, вечером, ночью** ‘in the morning, daytime, evening, at night’ (**глубокой ночью** ‘at dead of night’, **однажды утром** ‘one morning’, **вечерами** ‘in the evenings’, **ночами** ‘(at) nights’).

#### Note

**Днём** may also mean ‘in the afternoon’ (also rendered as во второй половине дня).

(ii) Seasons of the year: **весной, летом, осенью, зимой** ‘in the spring, summer, autumn, winter’ (**однажды зимой** ‘one winter’, **поздней осенью** ‘in late autumn’ etc.).

(iii) Others: **целыми часами/днями** ‘for hours/days on end’.

(3) The **manner** in which or the **means** by which an action is performed, in terms of:

(i) Position: **вверх дном** ‘upside down’, **вниз головой** ‘head first’, **стоять спиной к огню** ‘to stand with one’s back to the fire’.

(ii) Movement: **бегом** ‘at a run’, **шагом** ‘at walking pace’.

(iii) Group activity: **уехать семьёй** ‘to leave in a family group’, **пение хором** ‘singing in chorus’.

(iv) Utterance: **другими словами** ‘in other words’, **петь басом** ‘to sing bass’, **шёпотом** ‘in a whisper’.

(v) Means of transport: **ехать поездом, лететь самолётом** ‘to go by train, by air’.

(vi) Degree of effort: **любой ценой** ‘at any cost’.

(vii) Quantity: **Домá не строили тысячами, как сейчас** (Rybakov) ‘Houses were not built in thousands as they are now’.

(viii) Form, manner: **каким образом?** ‘in what way?’, **Снег падает на зёмлю большими хлопьями** (Rasputin) ‘The snow falls to earth in large flakes’.

## 98      Use of the instrumental to denote similarity

The instrumental is also used to express similarity: **выть вóлком** ‘to howl like a wolf’, **умереть герóем** ‘to die like a hero’, **шипéть змеёй** ‘to hiss like a snake’, **Снег лежи́т коврóм** ‘The snow lies like a carpet’, **летéть стрелóй** ‘to fly like an arrow’, **усы щёточкой** ‘toothbrush moustache’:

За ку́старником тёмной стено́й выраста́ло чернолэ́сье (Abramov)  
Deciduous forest grew up beyond the bushes like a dark wall

## 99      Verbs that take the instrumental

Verbs that take the instrumental case denote:

(1) **Use or control:** **владéть** ‘to own, have a command of’ (a language), **дирижи́ровать** ‘to conduct’ (an orchestra), **завéдовать** ‘to be in charge of’, **злоупотребля́ть** ‘to abuse, misuse’, **комáндовать** ‘to command’, **обладáть** ‘to possess’, **пóльзоваться** ‘to use’, **пра́вить** ‘to rule’, **располага́ть** ‘to have at one’s disposal’, **распо́ряжаться** ‘to manage’, **руководи́ть** ‘to run’, **управля́ть** ‘to control’.

(2) **Attitude:** **восхища́ться** ‘to be delighted with’, **горди́ться** ‘to be proud of’, **грози́ть** ‘to threaten with’, **довóльствоваться** ‘to be satisfied with’, **дорожи́ть** ‘to value’, **интересова́ться** ‘to be interested in’, **любовáться** ‘to admire’ (also на + acc.), **наслажда́ться** ‘to delight in’, **обходи́ться** ‘to make do with’, **пренебрега́ть** ‘to disregard’, **увлека́ться** ‘to be obsessed with’, **хва́статься** ‘to boast of’, **щеголя́ть** ‘to flaunt’.

(3) **Reciprocal action:** **деле́ться** ‘to share’, **обме́ниваться** ‘to exchange’.

(4) **Other meanings:** **боле́ть** ‘to be sick’, **же́ртвовать** ‘to sacrifice’ (cf. **же́ртвовать** + acc. ‘to donate’), **занима́ться** ‘to busy oneself with’, **изоби́ловать** ‘to abound in’, **ограни́чиваться** ‘to limit oneself to’, **отлича́ться** ‘to be distinguished by’, **па́хнуть** ‘to smell of’, **просла́вляться** ‘to be renowned for’, **рискова́ть** ‘to risk’, **страда́ть** ‘to suffer from’ (chronically) (cf. **страда́ть от** ‘to suffer from’ (a temporary ailment)), **торгова́ть** ‘to trade in’.

### Note

Participial, verbal and other nouns cognate with many of the above also take the instrumental: **владéние до́мом** ‘ownership of a house’ (but



владельца **дома** ‘house owner’), злоупотребление **властью** ‘abuse of power’, командование **армией** ‘command of the army’, командующий **армией** ‘army commander’ (but командир **дивизии** ‘divisional commander’), руководство **партией** ‘leadership of the party’ (as an action or process, cf. руководство **партии** ‘the leadership (i.e. ‘the leaders’) of the party’, руководитель **группы** ‘leader of the group’), торговля **наркотиками** ‘drugs trade’, увлечение **математикой** ‘obsession with mathematics’.

## 100 Adjectives that take the instrumental

These include long *and* (where available) short forms: беременная (**третьим ребёнком**) ‘pregnant’ (with her third child), богатый ‘rich in’, больной ‘sick with’, гордый ‘proud of’, довольный ‘pleased with’, известный ‘famous for’, обязанный ‘obliged’:

**Своими успехами** они были обязаны собственному трудолюбию (Rybakov)

They owed their success to their own industriousness

## 101 The instrumental of dimension

The instrumental is used to express dimension: гора **высотой** в 1 000 метров ‘a mountain 1,000 m high’, река **длиной** в сто километров ‘a river 100 km long’, человек **ростом** в метр восемьдесят ‘a man one metre eighty tall’.

### Note

- (a) The preposition **в** may be omitted, especially in technical styles.
- (b) Questions to which these are the notional answers appear in the *genitive*: **какой высоты** гора? ‘how high is the mountain?’, **какой длины** река? ‘how long is the river?’, **какого он роста**? ‘how tall is he?’

## 102 The instrumental as predicate

(1) The instrumental is used as predicate to the infinitive, future tense, imperative, conditional and gerund of the verb **быть** ‘to be’: Я хочу **быть врачом** ‘I want to be a doctor’, если бы я был **врачом** ‘if I were

a doctor', Когда-нибудь вы будете **стариком** 'One day you will be an old man', Не будь **трусом** 'Don't be a coward', Не будучи **знатоком**, не могу судить 'Not being a connoisseur I cannot judge'.

#### Note

The *nominative*, not the *instrumental*, is used when no part of **быть** is present: Она врач 'She is a doctor'.

(2) In the *past* tense:

(i) The *nominative* denotes **permanent** state, occupation, nationality etc.: По профессии он был **ботаник** 'By profession he was a botanist', Она была **испанка** (Granin) 'She was a Spaniard', Смолянов был **саратовец** (Trifonov) 'Smolyanov was a native of Saratov'.

(ii) The *instrumental* denotes **temporary** status: Во время войны я был **офицером** 'During the war I was an officer' (the verb **быть** is sometimes omitted: Я потерял родителей (когда я был/будучи) **ребёнком** 'I lost my parents as a child').

#### Note

Permanent status may *also* be denoted by the *instrumental*: Она была **сестрой** Полевого (Propp), 'She was Polevoi's sister', Пушкин был **величайшим русским поэтом/величайший русский поэт** 'Pushkin was the greatest Russian poet'.

(3) Of two nouns (or noun and pronoun) linked by the verb **быть** the more specific appears in the *nominative*, the more general in the *instrumental*:

**Ключом** к успеху была грамотность  
The key to success was literacy

В нашем доме немецкий был **третьим языком** (Rybakov)  
In our house German was the third language

**Одним** из наших главных проблем был транспорт  
One of our main problems was transport

#### Note

The subject may be an infinitive: **Учиться** будет его целью 'His aim will be to study', Первым её побуждением было **помочь** дочери 'Her first impulse was to help her daughter'.

(4) The rule described in (3) also applies to **являться** 'to be':

**Основной формой** работы в школе является урок (*Russia Today*)  
The lesson is the basic form of work in school

(5) An instrumental predicate also appears with verbs such as **записываться** ‘to enrol’, **работать** ‘to work’, **служить** ‘to serve’:

Записался **добровольцем**, дали ему коня (Rybakov)  
He signed up as a volunteer, and they gave him a horse

(6) A number of verbs which denote state, appearance or manner also take an instrumental: **выглядеть** ‘to look’, **казаться** ‘to seem’, **называться** ‘to be called’, **оказываться** ‘to turn out to be’, **оставаться** ‘to remain’, **расставаться** ‘to part’, **родиться** ‘to be born’, **состоять (членом)** ‘to be’ (a member), **становиться** ‘to become’, **считаться** ‘to be considered’, **чувствовать себя** ‘to feel’:

Ещё с войны она **вдовой** осталась (Shcherbakov)  
She had been left a war widow

Он кажется **опытным инженером**  
He seems to be an experienced engineer

В 2008-ом году **жертвами** насилия в России стали 126 тысяч детей (D. Medvedev)  
In 2008 126,000 children became victims of violence

(7) The instrumental may also be predicate to the object of transitive verbs which denote appointment, naming, considering: **Сестру зовут Танией** (alternatively, especially in colloquial Russian, **Сестру зовут Тания**) ‘My sister is called Tanya’, **назначать Иванова председателем** ‘to appoint Ivanov chairman’, **Мак считают снотворным средством** ‘Poppy is considered to be a soporific’:

Он называет Тольятти **«экспериментальной лабораторией»** советского градостроительства (*Sputnik*)  
He calls Togliatti ‘an experimental laboratory’ in Soviet town planning

#### Note

Тольятти ‘Togliatti’ was renamed Тольяттиград ‘Togliattigrad’ in 1991.

### 103 Nouns in apposition

When two or more nouns, pronouns or modifiers refer to the same object or person they appear in the same case:

Она жила в **Москве, столице** России  
She lived in **Moscow, the capital** of Russia

Он знал **моего отца**, известного хирурга  
He knew **my father**, a famous surgeon

Я читаю “*Аргументы и факты*”, одну из самых интересных  
еженедельных газет  
I am reading *Argumenty i fakty*, one of the most interesting weekly  
newspapers

## Diminutive and augmentative nouns

### 104 Meanings and functions of the diminutive

---

(1) Diminutive suffixes not only denote smallness (**сто́лик** ‘a small table’), but may also express emotional nuances such as affection (**дяденька** ‘dear uncle’), disparagement (**городíшко** ‘wretched little town’), irony (**иде́йка** ‘a paltry little idea’) etc. Depending on context the same diminutive phrase may convey a caring attitude (**Вот тебе горяченький супчик** ‘Here’s some nice hot soup for you’ (mother to child)) or be evidence of affectation.

(2) Diminutives are used mainly in colloquial speech. Many have acquired independent meanings, e.g. **ру́чка** ‘handle’, ‘pen’.

### 105 Masculine diminutives

---

The following diminutive suffixes may be affixed to the stems of masculine nouns.

(1) **-ец**.

**-ец** may express an affectionate or positive attitude (**бра́тец** from брат ‘brother’, **хле́бец** from хлеб ‘bread’), or alternatively disparagement (**анекдо́тец** from анекдот ‘anecdote’).

(2) **-ик**.

(i) **-ик** (*never stressed*) imparts the meaning of smallness to many masculine nouns: **до́мик** from дом ‘house’, **ко́врик** ‘mat’ from ковёр ‘carpet’.

(ii) Emotional nuances expressed by **-ик** include affection (**са́дик** from сад ‘garden’), and irony or scorn (**анекдо́тик** from анекдот ‘anecdote’).

(iii) Diminutives with independent meanings include **мóстик** ‘captain’s bridge’, **но́жик** ‘pen-knife’ and **сто́лик** ‘restaurant table’.

(3) **-ок/-ёк/-ек.**

(i) **-ок/-ёк** (*always stressed*) express affection, irony or disparagement, as well as smallness. Velar consonants undergo mutation:

**дружо́к** from друг ‘friend’, **старичо́к** from стары́к ‘old man’, **пастушо́к** from пасты́х ‘shepherd’.

(ii) Other diminutives in **-ок** include **городо́к** from го́род ‘town’, **лесо́к** from лес ‘forest’ etc. **Дурачо́к** from дура́к ‘fool’ and **женишо́к** from жени́х ‘fiancé, bridegroom’ express irony.

(iii) Nouns in **-ь** and **-й** take the suffix **-ёк**: **огонёк** from огóнь ‘fire, light’ (Нет ли у вас огонё́к? ‘Do you happen to have a light?’), **чаёк** from чай ‘tea’ (Хотите чайко́у? ‘Have some tea?’).

(iv) Nouns with independent meanings include **волосо́к** ‘filament’, **глазо́к** ‘peephole’, **значо́к** ‘badge’, **конёк** ‘skate’, **кружо́к** ‘circle, club’, **молото́к** ‘hammer’, **носо́к** ‘sock, toe of shoe or stocking’, **язычо́к** ‘tongue of shoe, clapper of bell’.

*Note*

(a) Second-stage diminutives can be formed: друг ‘friend’, **дружо́к**, **дружо́чек**.

(b) Diminutives in unstressed **-ек** include **челове́чек** from челове́к ‘person’.

(4) **-чик.**

(i) **-чик** (*never stressed*) is affixed mainly to nouns ending in:

(a) **-л/-ль** (**автомобильчик** from автомоби́ль ‘car’, **журна́льчик** from журна́л ‘journal’).

(b) **-н** (**карма́нчик** from карма́н ‘pocket’).

(c) **-р** (**забо́рчик** from забо́р ‘fence’).

(d) **-й** (**трамва́йчик** from трамва́й ‘tram’).

(e) **-ф** (**шка́фчик** from шка́ф ‘cupboard’).

(ii) The suffix may also express affection: **дива́нчик** from дива́н ‘couch’. Forms with independent meanings include **колоко́льчик** ‘bluebell’ from ко́локол ‘bell’.

(5) Examples of masculine diminutives expressing:

(i) Smallness:

На корме поблёскивал **моторчик** (Nagibin)  
In the stern glinted a small engine

(ii) Animosity:

Я придумывал нóвый **вопросец** похлётче (Gagarin)  
I was devising a more scathing question

(iii) Irony:

А муж считаёт, что ужé отвéтил на ётот вопро́с, наде́в ко́льцо  
на **па́льчик** своёй супру́ги  
Whereas the husband thinks he has already answered this question  
by placing a ring on his wife's dear little finger

(iv) Disparagement:

**Сыно́к** профе́ссора. Чи́стенький тако́й **пижо́нчик** (Yakhontov)  
A professor's pampered brat. A young fop, pure as the driven snow

---

## 106 Feminine diminutives

---

(1) **-ица**.

(i) The suffix **-ица** bears the stress in diminutives derived from nouns in stressed **-á**, **-я́** and in **-ь**: **вещи́ца** from вещь 'thing' (cf. **про́сьбица** from про́сьба 'request').

(ii) Second-stage diminutives in **-ичка** are also formed: вода́ 'water', води́ца, **води́чка** (both have the positive nuance typical of diminutives based on the names of food and drink); сестра́ 'sister', сестри́ца, **сестри́чка** (cf., from Russian folk-tale, **Лиси́чка-Сестри́чка** 'Sister Fox').

(2) **-ка**.

(i) The suffix may denote smallness (**кроватька** 'cot' from кровать 'bed') as well as affection (**до́чка** from дочь 'daughter') or irony (**иде́йка** from идея 'idea').

(ii) The stress in diminutives in **-ка** derived from end-stressed nouns falls on the syllable preceding **-ка**: **голо́вка** from голова́ 'head'. Some

diminutives are based on genitive plurals with the vowel **-е-**: **пéсня** ‘song’, gen. pl. **пéсен**, dim. **пéсенка**; **семья́** ‘family’, gen. pl. **семéй**, dim. **семéйка**.

(iii) Velar consonants and **ц** undergo mutation: **кни́жка** from **кни́га** ‘book’, **ре́чка** from **река́** ‘river’, **му́шка** from **му́ха** ‘fly’, **страи́чка** from **страи́ца** ‘page’.

(iv) The following have independent meanings: **голо́вка** ‘head of a nail’ (also **боеголо́вка** ‘war-head’), **доро́жка** ‘path’, **ёлка** ‘Christmas tree’, **кры́шка** ‘lid’, **машинка́** ‘typewriter’, **но́жка** ‘leg of chair, table’, **плитка́** ‘bar’ (of chocolate), **площа́дка** ‘stair landing, playground, launch pad’, **пти́чка** ‘tick’, **ру́чка** ‘arm of a chair’, **се́тка** ‘tennis net’, **спинка́** ‘back of a chair’, **стрéлка** ‘clock-hand’, **тру́бка** ‘telephone receiver, pipe’.

(v) Second-stage diminutives in **-очка** are formed as follows: **минúта** ‘minute’, **минúтка**, **минúточка** (**Подождите минúточку!** ‘Wait a sec!’).

(vi) Nouns with a double consonant + **-а** form **first-stage** diminutives in **-очка**: **звездá** ‘star’, **звёздочка́** ‘small star, asterisk’; **ка́рта** ‘card, map’, **ка́рточка́** ‘greetings card’ (but **игла́** ‘needle’, **игóлка**, **игóлочка**).

## 107 Neuter diminutives

### (1) **-ико**.

This suffix is used with very few nouns: **колёсико** from **колесó** ‘wheel’, **ли́чи́ко** from **лицó** ‘face’, **плéчи́ко** from **плечó** ‘shoulder’ (pl. **плéчи́ки** also ‘coat-hanger’).

### (2) **-ко**.

Stress is unpredictable in diminutives with this ending, cf. **ведёрко** from **ведро́** ‘bucket’, **озерко́** from **озеро́** ‘lake’. **К** and **ц** mutate to **ч**: **облачко** from **облако́** ‘cloud’, **яйчко** from **яйцо́** ‘egg’.

### (3) **-цо/це; -ецо**.

The suffixes **-цо/-це** appear after a single consonant, **-ецо** after a double consonant: **зе́ркальце** from **зе́ркало** ‘mirror’, **письме́цо** from **письмо́** ‘letter’. Stress is as in the source noun except for **сло́вцо** from **сло́во** ‘word’ and **де́ревце/деревцо́** from **де́рево** ‘tree’.

## 108 Other diminutive suffixes

(1) **-ашка** expresses slight disparagement or endearment, depending on context: **морда́шка** from *мо́рда* ‘mug’ (face), **стари́кашка** from *ста́рый* ‘old man’.

(2) **-ишко** (inanimate)/**-ишка** (animate) express disparagement or irony: **воры́шка** from *во́р* ‘thief’, **домы́шко** from *до́м* ‘house’:

У меня́ до́ма **конья́чишко** есть (Shukshin)

I’ve got a nice little bottle of brandy at home (nuance of affection)

(3) **-онка/-ёнка** express disparagement: **кни́жо́нка** from *кни́га* ‘book’, **лошаде́нка** from *ло́шадь* ‘horse’ (however, **сестре́нка** from *сестра́* ‘sister’ denotes affection).

(4) **-ушка/-юшка** and **-енька/-онька** express affection: **до́ченька** from *до́чь* ‘daughter’, **избу́шка** from *изба́* ‘hut’.

(5) **-ышек, -ышко**: **ко́лышек** ‘tent-peg’ from *ко́л* ‘stake’, **го́рлышко** ‘neck of bottle’ from *го́рло* ‘throat’, **зе́рнышко** from *зе́рно* ‘grain’.

## 109 Augmentative suffixes

The suffixes **-ина, -ище** and **-ища** are attached to the stems of nouns to denote largeness. Augmentatives may also express emotive nuances: **идио́тина** ‘a blithering idiot’.

(1) **-ина**.

(i) **-ина** is affixed to the stems of masculine and feminine nouns: **зве́рина** (from *зве́рь*) ‘an enormous beast’, **ла́пина** (from *ла́па*) ‘a massive paw’.

(ii) The suffix is stressed if attached to the stem of a noun which has mobile stress in declension (**домы́на** ‘a vast house’) and is unstressed if attached to the stem of a noun which has fixed stress in declension (**ры́бина** ‘a large fish’).

(iii) Velar consonants undergo mutation: **дура́чина** (from *дура́к*) ‘a great fool’, **оплеу́шина** (from *оплеу́ха*) ‘a hefty slap in the face’.

(2) **-ище/-ища**.

(i) These suffixes are far more productive than **-ина**. **-ище** is affixed to the stems of masculine and neuter nouns, **-ища** to those of feminine



nouns: **арбу́зице** (from арбу́з) ‘an enormous melon’, **боро́дища** (from борода́) ‘a massive beard’.

(ii) Stress position depends on the same principles as those described for -ина: **велика́нище** (from велика́н) (fixed stress in declension) ‘an enormous giant’, **голоси́ще** (from го́лос) (mobile stress in declension) ‘a mighty voice’.

(iii) Velar consonants undergo mutation: **волчи́ще** (from волк) ‘a large wolf’, **ручи́ща** (from рука́) ‘a mighty hand’.

---

# The Pronoun

---

## 110 Personal pronouns

---

(1) The personal pronouns **я** ‘I’, **ты** ‘you’ (informal), **он** ‘he, it’, **она́** ‘she, it’, **оно́** ‘it’, **мы** ‘we’, **вы** ‘you’ (formal and plural), **они́** ‘they’ decline as follows:

Nom.	<b>я</b>	<b>ты</b>	<b>он</b>	<b>он-а́</b>	<b>он-о́</b>
Acc./Gen.	<b>мен-я́</b>	<b>теб-я́</b>	<b>его́</b>	<b>её́</b>	<b>его́</b>
Dat.	<b>мн-е</b>	<b>теб-е́</b>	<b>ему́</b>	<b>ей</b>	<b>ему́</b>
Instr.	<b>мн-ой</b>	<b>тоб-ой</b>	<b>им</b>	<b>ей/ёю</b>	<b>им</b>
Prep.	<b>обо мн-е</b>	<b>о теб-е́</b>	<b>о нём</b>	<b>о ней</b>	<b>о нём</b>
Nom.	<b>м-ы</b>	<b>в-ы</b>	<b>он-и́</b>		
Acc./Gen.	<b>н-ас</b>	<b>в-ас</b>	<b>их</b>		
Dat.	<b>н-ам</b>	<b>в-ам</b>	<b>им</b>		
Instr.	<b>н-а́ми</b>	<b>в-а́ми</b>	<b>и́ми</b>		
Prep.	<b>о н-ас</b>	<b>о в-ас</b>	<b>о них</b>		

### *Note*

- (a) **Я** and **ты** have alternative instrumental forms: **мно́ю** and **тобо́ю**, used in verse and in some colloquial registers, are also found in passive constructions (**Э́то сде́лано мно́ю/мно́й** ‘That was done by me’).
- (b) **Его́́**, the accusative/genitive of **он/оно́**, is pronounced [jɪ'vo].

- (c) The alternative instrumental form of она́ (**ёю**) is preferred to **ей** in educated speech and is particularly important in passive constructions, avoiding possible confusion with the dative:

Револу́цией перестро́йку мо́жно назва́ть в си́лу радиа́льности поста́вленных **ёю** це́лей (*Izvestiya*)

Restructuring can be called a revolution by virtue of the radical nature of the goals set **by it**

(**Ей** would imply a dative meaning: ‘the goals set **for** it’.)

- (2) The oblique cases of **он**, **она́**, **оно́**, **они́** take initial **н-** when governed by a preposition: от **него́** ‘from him’, к **ней** ‘to her’, с **ними́** ‘with them’ etc. However, some *compound* prepositions take a third-person pronoun *without* initial **н-**. They include:

- (i) A number of derivative prepositions governing the dative: благода́ря **им** ‘thanks to them’, **ему́** навстре́чу ‘to meet him’, на зло **ей** ‘to spite her’. Others include **вопреки́** ‘contrary to’, **напереко́р** ‘counter to’, **подо́бно** ‘similar to’, **согласно́** ‘in accordance with’.

- (ii) Some which take the genitive: **вне́** ‘outside’, **в отноше́нии** ‘in relation to’. **Внутри́** ‘inside’ takes alternative forms with or without **н-**: **внутри́ их/них** ‘inside them’.

#### Note

When a declined form of the third-person plural pronoun combines with a declined form of **все** ‘all’, a pronoun with initial **н-** is the norm: смея́ться над все́ми **ними́** ‘to laugh at all of them’. **У/от неё́** ‘She has/from her’ has an alternative form **у/от ней**, used nowadays mainly in verse.

## 111 Use of personal instead of possessive pronouns

- (1) Personal pronouns are more usual than possessive pronouns in referring to parts of the body, articles of clothing, location etc.: Он пожа́л **мне** ру́ку ‘He shook **my** hand’, Он пришё́л **ко мне** в ко́мнату ‘He came to **my** room’, Пла́тье **у неё́** все́ испачка́но ‘**Her** dress is all stained’. The reflexive pronoun (see 117) is used similarly: Он ле́г **у себя́** в ко́мнате ‘He lay down in **his** room’ etc.

(2) Note also the idioms: **мне** пришлó в гóлову ‘it occurred to me’ (lit. ‘came into **my** head’), Красотá здáния брóсилась **ему́** в глаза́ ‘He was struck by the beauty of the building’.

---

## 112 Use of the nominative pronoun with **это**

---

In contrast to English, nominative pronouns are used in such phrases as **Это я** ‘It’s me’, **Это он** ‘It’s him’, **Это мы** ‘It’s us’ etc.

---

## 113 The pronoun **я**

---

(1) **Я** ‘I’ combines with first-person singular forms of the present and future of verbs: я **читаю́** ‘I read’, я **прочитаю́** ‘I shall read’, я **буду́ чита́ть** ‘I shall be reading’. The gender of predicative adjectives, of other pronouns and of past verbs depends on the sex of the speaker:

**Я дово́лен, я оди́н, я пришёл**

I am pleased, I am alone, I have arrived (of a **male** speaker)

**Я дово́льна, я одна́, я пришла́**

I am pleased, I am alone, I have arrived (of a **female** speaker)

(2) Compare also the oblique cases: Оста́вьте меня́ **одного́** ‘Leave me by myself’ (of a male), Оста́вьте меня́ **одну́** ‘Leave me by myself’ (of a female).

### *Note*

- (a) ‘You and I’ is rendered as **мы с ва́ми**, ‘he and I’ as **мы с ним** etc. (also, in relevant contexts, though less usually, ‘you and ourselves’, ‘he and ourselves’).
- (b) **Я** as a noun may be qualified by neuter modifiers: **моё второ́е я** ‘my alter ego’.
- (c) **Я** is often omitted in everyday speech (**Начну́** сейча́с! ‘I’ll begin at once!’) and in official applications and announcements (**Прошу́** предоста́вить мне о́тпуск ‘I apply to be granted leave’). In spoken Russian, pronouns in general are often omitted, since present and future verb forms alone are sufficient to express person and number (i.e. **пишу́** is first-person singular, **пи́шешь** second-person

singular and so on), while past tense forms indicate gender and number. Thus, **Вы писали? Да, я писал** ‘Did you write?’, ‘Yes, I wrote’ could be rendered as **Вы писали? Да, писал** or **Писали? Писал**, depending on the degree of familiarity of the speech mode.

## 114 The pronoun мы

(1) **Мы** ‘we’ combines with first-person plural forms of the present or future tense of a verb (**мы говорим** ‘we speak’), with plural forms of the past tense (**мы говорили** ‘we were speaking’), and with plural adjectives and pronouns: **Мы одни** ‘we are alone’.

(2) **Мы** can also be used to refer to the whole of a social or other group, or all society etc.: **Я подчёркиваю слóво «мы», йбо имéю в виду всё óбщество в цéлом** ‘I stress the word “we” since I have in mind society as a whole’.

(3) **Мы** also expresses the royal ‘we’ (**мы, всеросси́йский импе́ратор** ‘we, Emperor of all the Russias’), the authorial ‘we’ (**Мы** пришл́и к слéдующим в́ыводам ‘We (i.e. I) have come to the following conclusions’) and the jocular paternal ‘we’ used by doctors (**Ну, сего́дня нам лу́чше?** ‘Well, are we better today?’). **Мы** may also convey a nuance of mockery (**Мы улыба́емся!** ‘So we’re smiling!’) or contempt (**Вида́ли мы та́ких!** ‘We’ve seen your type before!’).

## 115 The pronouns ты and вы

### (1) Ты

(i) **Ты** ‘you’ (familiar) takes second-person singular forms of the present and future tenses of a verb (**ты говори́шь** ‘you speak’ etc.). Like **я**, **ты** is of common gender: **Ты о́дин** ‘You are alone’ (to a male), **Ты о́дна** ‘You are alone’ (to a female).

(ii) **Ты** is used in addressing a relation, a friend, a colleague of similar age and status, a child, God, nature, oneself, an animal etc. While **ты** is generally acknowledged as the ‘familiar’ form, older people are likely to restrict its use to a circle of close friends and colleagues, whereas young people are usually quicker to address members of their own age group as **ты**.

(iii) **Ты** may also be used in conveying generalized information or instruction (cf. English ‘you’), as in the following guidance for correct breathing in singing: **Ты** набираешь полную грудь воздуха, а потом мало-помалу выпускаешь его изо рта ‘You fill your lungs with air and then expel it little by little through your mouth’.

(2) **Вы**

(i) **Вы** is used to address any group of more than one person, or an adult who is not a relation, friend or colleague of similar age and status. When writing to someone, **Вы** is usually spelt with a capital letter.

(ii) **Вы** combines with plural forms of the verb, whether the pronoun represents an individual or a group: **вы читаете, вы читали** ‘you read, were reading’. When reference is to one person, the pronoun combines with the *singular* forms of long adjectives (**Вы такой добрый** (to a male), **Вы такая добрая** (to a female) ‘You are so kind’, **Я считаю вас умным** (to a male)/**умной** (to a female) ‘I consider you clever’), but with the *plural* forms of short adjectives and participles: **Вы правы** ‘You are right’.

(3) **Ты** or **вы**

Usage may depend on social status, age difference, education and context of situation (e.g. teachers may address each other as **вы** in the presence of pupils or students but as **ты** in their absence). Any transition from **вы** to **ты** is normally initiated by the senior in age or rank. **Вы** is used as a mark of respect to adult strangers, and by academic staff to students and (desirably, though many school teachers prefer to use **ты**) to senior pupils. Subordinates have traditionally used the formal **вы** to their superiors, but have been addressed by them with the familiar **ты**. This practice is still widespread, despite condemnation in official circles of its perpetuation in, for example, the armed forces, the health service and industry.

---

## 116 The third-person pronouns (**он, она́, оно́, они́**)

---

(1) **Он, она́** may replace nouns denoting persons *or* things of masculine and feminine gender respectively:

Где брат?	Вот он	Where is my brother?	There he is
Где стол?	Вот он	Where is the table?	There it is
Где моя́ сестра́?	Вот она́	Where is my sister?	There she is

Где **кни́га**?      Вот **о́на**    Where is the book?    There it is

(2) **Оно́** replaces neuter nouns:

Где **крéсло**?      Вот **оно́**    Where is the armchair?    There it is

(3) **Они́** replaces plural nouns denoting persons or things:

Где **ма́льчики**?    Вот **они́**    Where are the boys?      There they are  
 Где **кни́ги**?      Вот **они́**    Where are the books?      There they are  
 Где **крéсла**?      Вот **они́**    Where are the armchairs?    There they are

(4) **Они́** may be used when the plural noun it replaces has been mentioned: Что де́лают **маляры́**? **Они́** кра́сят дом ‘What are the painters doing?’ ‘They are painting the house’. In impersonal constructions, however, the third-person plural of the verb is used *without* a pronoun: Здесь **стро́ят** общежи́тие ‘They (identity unspecified) are building a hostel here’ (or ‘A hostel is being built here’). This is in marked contrast with English, in which the pronoun ‘they’ is used in both personal *and* impersonal constructions. Note also the phrases: Здесь **не ку́рят** ‘No smoking’, **говора́ют** ‘they say, it is said’ etc.

(5) Verbs of yearning (**скуча́ть** ‘to miss’, **тоскова́ть** ‘to yearn’ etc.) and the verbs **стреля́ть** ‘to shoot’ and **удара́ть** ‘to strike’ take the preposition **по** + the **prepositional** case of first- and second-person pronouns (Скуча́ли по **вам** ‘They missed you’, Стреля́ли по **нам** ‘They were firing at us’) and *either* the dative *or* the prepositional of third-person pronouns (Скуча́ли по **нему́/по нём** ‘He was missed’). Such verbs take **по** + the *dative* of nouns (e.g. скуча́ть по **му́жу** ‘to miss one’s husband’).

(6) ‘He and Sergei/she and Sergei’ etc. may be rendered as **они́** с Серге́ем (also, in context, ‘they and Sergei’).

(7) The instrumental case of a third-person pronoun may be the equivalent of English ‘one’: Он стал вратаре́м, пото́му что реши́л **им** ста́ть (Makarov) ‘He became a goalkeeper because he had made up his mind to become **one**’.

## 117 The reflexive pronoun **себя́**

(1) The reflexive pronoun **себя́** declines as follows:

Nom.	—
Acc./Gen.	себ- <b>я</b>
Dat.	себ- <b>ё</b>
Instr.	соб- <b>ой</b> /соб- <b>ою</b>
Prep.	о себ- <b>ё</b>

(2) The reflexive pronoun refers back to the subject of the clause or, more exactly, to the subject or agent of the nearest verb or adjective (it therefore has no nominative case, since it cannot *itself* be a subject). The same form is used for all persons (Она́ дово́льна **собой** 'She is pleased with herself', Мы дово́льны **собой** 'We are pleased with ourselves' etc.), there being no differentiation between singular and plural or between the genders.

(3) **Себя́** expresses more varied relationships than **-ся, -сь** (see also 285 and 286), e.g. the indirect object (Она́ куп́ила **себе́** кн́игу 'She bought herself a book') and government by preposition (Он смóтрит **на себя́** в зéркало 'He looks at himself in the mirror', Они́ разговáривают **между собой** 'They are talking among themselves').

(4) Считáть **себя́** гéнием means 'to consider oneself a genius', считáться гéнием 'to be considered a genius' (cf. лишáть **себя́** 'to deprive oneself' and лишáться 'to be deprived').

(5) Some verbs combine with **себя́** on a seemingly arbitrary basis: вести́ **себя́** 'to behave', представля́ть **собой** 'to represent, be', чу́вствовать **себя́** 'to feel'.

(6) Ambiguity may arise when there are two verbs in a sentence: Ма́ть велéла сы́ну нал́ить себе́ ча́ю (ма́ть is the subject of the sentence, сы́н is the logical subject of нал́ить). The sentence should be taken to mean 'The mother told her son to pour **himself** some tea', but the following can be used to avoid confusion: Ма́ть велéла, чтóбы сын нал́ил **себе́** ча́ю 'The mother told her son to pour **himself** some tea', cf. Ма́ть велéла, чтóбы сын нал́ил **ей** ча́ю 'The mother told her son to pour **her** some tea'.

(7) Russian is more consistent than English in the use of reflexive pronouns: Он разлож́ил перед **собой** кáрту 'He spread out the map in front of **him**', Она́ закрýла за **собой** дверь 'She closed the door behind **her**', Возьм́ите меня́ с **собой** 'Take me with **you**'.

(8) The reflexive pronoun appears in a number of set phrases: так **себе́** 'so-so', Он хоро́ш **собой** 'He is good-looking', самó **собой** разуме́ется 'it goes without saying'.



(9) A reflexive pronoun may combine for emphasis with the emphatic pronoun **сам**: — Я тебя не понимаю. — Я **сам себя** не понимаю! ‘I don’t understand you’. ‘I don’t understand myself!’ (see **131** (1)).

## 118 The possessive pronouns **мой, твой, наш, ваш**

(1) The possessive pronoun **мой** declines as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	мой	мо-я́	мо-ё	мо-и́
Acc.	мой/мо-его́	мо-ю́	мо-ё	мо-и́/мо-их
Gen.	мо-его́	мо-е́й	мо-его́	мо-их
Dat.	мо-ему́	мо-е́й	мо-ему́	мо-и́м
Instr.	мо-и́м	мо-е́й/-ею	мо-и́м	мо-и́ми
Prep.	о мо-ём	о мо-е́й	о мо-ём	о мо-их

### Note

**Твой** ‘your’ (familiar) declines like **мой**.

(2) The possessive pronoun **наш** declines as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	наш	на́ш-а	на́ш-е	на́ш-и
Acc.	наш/на́ш-его	на́ш-у	на́ш-е	на́ш-и/на́ш-их
Gen.	на́ш-его	на́ш-е́й	на́ш-его	на́ш-их
Dat.	на́ш-ему	на́ш-е́й	на́ш-ему	на́ш-и́м
Instr.	на́ш-и́м	на́ш-е́й/-ею	на́ш-и́м	на́ш-и́ми
Prep.	о на́ш-ем	о на́ш-е́й	о на́ш-ем	о на́ш-их

### Note

- Ваш** ‘your’ declines like **наш**.
- Like **мы** and **вы** (see **113** note (a)), **наш** and **ваш** can form compounds with other pronouns or nouns: **ва́ша с па́пой** маши́на ‘yours and Dad’s car’, **наш с тобо́й** дом ‘our house’ (i.e. yours and mine).
- The colloquial phrase **наш брат** means ‘people like us’: Зна́ю, что не́редко руга́ют **на́шего бра́та** за рва́чество (*Russia Today*) ‘I know that our sort are often cursed for self-seeking’.
- Phrases of the type **на́ша** те́ма ‘our theme’ (i.e. ‘the present topic’) are used by authors and lecturers (cf. **114** (3)).
- The use of possessive instead of personal pronouns is characteristic of casual speech: Он сде́лал бо́льше **моего́** (= бо́льше, чем я) ‘He did more than me’.
- Ваш** is spelt with a capital letter in correspondence.

## 119 The possessive pronouns **его́, её, их**

**Его́** ‘his’, **её́** ‘her’, **их** ‘their’ are invariable:

<b>его́</b> сестра́	his sister
<b>её́</b> кни́ги	her books
<b>их</b> брат	their brother
Я зна́ю <b>его́</b> сестру́	I know his sister
Я дово́лен <b>её́</b> бра́том	I am pleased with her brother

### Note

- (a) **н-** is never affixed to the third-person possessives: cf. **письмо́ от него́** (personal pronoun) ‘a letter from him’ and **письмо́ от его́** (possessive pronoun) **бра́та** ‘a letter from his brother’ (see **110** (2)).
- (b) **Его́** is pronounced [jɪ'vo]. See also **110** (1) note (b).

## 120 The reflexive possessive pronoun **свой, своя́, своё, свои́**

(1) The reflexive possessive pronoun **свой** declines like **мой** (see **118** (1)).

(2) Like **себя́, свой** refers back to noun and pronoun subjects of any gender and either number (see **117** (2): **Я по́мню свою́** шко́лу ‘I remember my school’, **Ты по́мнишь свою́** шко́лу ‘You remember your school’, **Де́ти по́мнят свою́** шко́лу ‘The children remember their school’.

(3) In clauses which have a first- or second-person subject, **свой** can be used as an *alternative* to **мой, твой, наш** and **ваш** (**Я говорю́ о своей́/моей** рабо́те ‘I am talking about my work’, **Ты продаёшь свой́/твой** дом ‘You are selling your house’, **Мы моём своей́/нашу** маши́ну ‘We are washing our car’), though **свой** is commoner.

(4) Where there is a third-person subject, however, care must be taken to distinguish between **свой** and the possessive pronouns **его́, её, их** (see **119**), when rendering ‘his’, ‘her’, ‘their’, in order to avoid ambiguity:

Он дово́лен **свои́м** ученико́м  
He is pleased with **his** (own) pupil

Он не лю́бит Джо́на, но он дово́лен **его́** ученика́ми  
He does not like John, but he is pleased with **his** (John’s) pupils

Note that in English ‘his’ is used in both examples, and context is relied upon to differentiate meaning. Russian **её** ‘her’ and **их** ‘their’ are similarly distinguished from **свой**:

Орловы любят **своих** детей  
The Orlovs love **their** children

Он обнял её, она положила свою голову ему на плечо  
(Litvinova)  
He embraced her, (and) she put her head on his shoulder

Ивановы погибли в катастрофе, и Орловы усыновили **их** детей  
The Ivanovs died in an accident and the Orlovs adopted their children

(5) It is important to remember to use the reflexive possessive pronoun even when it is distanced from the subject:

Он, правда, никому не даёт **своего** адреса (Trifonov)  
It is true that he does not give **his** address to anyone

Он был свидетелем событий **своего** времени  
He was a witness of the events of **his** time

(6) **Свой** cannot qualify the *subject* of a clause in this type of construction:

Он говорит, что **его** друг болен  
He says that **his** friend (subject of new clause) is ill

Врач и **её** помощник совещаются  
The doctor and **her** assistant (joint subjects) are consulting

(7) In a sentence with two verbs, **свой** refers back to the subject of the nearer of the two, cf:

Редактор попросил журналиста прочитать **свою** статью  
The editor asked the journalist to read his (the journalist’s) article

and

Редактор попросил журналиста прочитать **его** статью  
The editor asked the journalist to read his (the editor’s) article

To avoid possible ambiguity, an alternative construction can be used:

Редактор попросил журналиста, чтобы он прочитал **его** статью  
The editor asked the journalist to read his (the editor’s) article

#### *Note*

When ownership is obvious from the context, Russian usually dispenses with a possessive pronoun: **Я мою** руки ‘I am washing **my** hands’ (it is

clear whose hands are being washed – mine), Он потерял **программу** ‘He has lost **his** (or ‘the’) programme’.

Парень опускаёт **ру́ки, го́лову**, закрывает **глаза́** (Rasputin)  
The lad lowers his hands hangs his head, closes his eyes

(8) Свой appears in the *nominative* case in phrases that denote possession: У меня **сво́я** маши́на ‘I have my own car’, У ру́сских — **сво́я** вы́страда́нная ку́льту́ра (Solzhenitsyn) ‘Russians have acquired their own culture through suffering’. Note: **Сво́я** рубашка́ бли́же к те́лу ‘Charity begins at home’, Он у нас **сво́й** челове́к ‘He is one of us’.

## 121 Declension of the interrogative/relative pronouns

**Кто** ‘who’, **что** ‘what’, **како́й** ‘what’ (adjective), **ко́торый** ‘which’ and **чей** ‘whose’ function as both interrogative and relative pronouns. **Како́й** and **ко́торый** decline like hard-ending adjectives (see 145 and 146 (3) note (b)). **Кто**, **что** and **чей** decline as follows:

			Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	к-т-о	чт-о	чей	чь-я	чь-ё	чь-и
Acc.	к-огó	чт-о	чей/чь-егó	чь-ю	чь-ё	чь-и/чь-их
Gen.	к-огó	ч-егó	чь-егó	чь-ей	чь-егó	чь-их
Dat.	к-ому́	ч-ему́	чь-ему́	чь-ей	чь-ему́	чь-им
Instr.	к-ем	ч-ем	чь-им	чь-ей/-ёю	чь-им	чь-ими
Prep.	о к-ом	о ч-ём	о чь-ём	о чь-ей	о чь-ём	о чь-их

## 122 Кто, что, како́й, ко́торый, чей as interrogative pronouns

(1) Кто

(i) **Кто** ‘who’ is used in both direct questions (**Кто** э́тот мужчи́на? ‘Who is that man?’), **О ком** вы говори́те? ‘Who are you talking about?’) and indirect questions (Он спроси́л, **кому́** вы даёте уро́ки ‘He asked whom you give lessons to’).

(ii) **Кто** takes a masculine predicate even when only females are involved: Кто **вы́шел** за́муж? ‘Who (in a group of women) got married?’ However, feminine agreement is possible if the subject contains a reference to a female exponent of an activity: Кто из

**лы́жниц** пришл́а пёрвой? ‘Which of the skiers (female) came in first?’.

(iii) Russian is consistent in using **кто** for people: **Кто** у вас роди́лся? **Ма́льчик** и́ли де́вочка? ‘What is it, a boy or a girl?’, **Кем** ты хóчешь бы́ть? ‘What do you want to be?’, cf.:

А **кем** мы ста́нем тепе́рь: друзья́ми и́ли врага́ми? (Gagarin)  
And **what** will we become now, friends or enemies?

(iv) **Кто** may be amplified to **кто тако́й/тако́я/тако́е?**: **Кто тако́й** э́тот па́рень? ‘Who is this fellow?’, **Кто тако́я** э́та де́вушка? ‘Who is that girl?’, **Кто тако́е** э́ти мо́лодые лю́ди? ‘Who are these young people?’, Кто вы **тако́й**? (to a male)/Кто вы **тако́я**? (to a female) ‘Who are you?’

## (2) Что

**Что** ‘what’ is used to ask about the identity of a thing or an animal (**Что** э́то — во́лк и́ли соба́ка? ‘What is that, a wolf or a dog?’) or the nature of an action (**Что** он де́лает? ‘What is he doing?’). **Что** may be expanded to **что тако́е?** (**Что** э́то **тако́е?** ‘What is that?’) or be extended by a genitive adjective (**Что но́вого?** ‘What’s new?’, **Что же** тут **оби́дного?** ‘What’s so offensive about that?’).

## (3) Како́й

**Како́й** means ‘What, what kind of?’: **Како́й** у него́ го́лос? ‘What kind of a voice does he have?’, **Каку́ю** кн́игу вы чита́ете? ‘What book are you reading?’. **Что за** may be used as a synonym of **како́й**: **Что** се́годня **за** по́года? (= **Кака́я** се́годня по́года?) ‘What is the weather like today?’.

## (4) Кото́рый

(i) **Кото́рый?** means ‘which?’ (in a sequence) and appears in the phrases **Кото́рый** час? ‘What’s the time?’, **В кото́ром** часу́? ‘At what time?’ (now largely replaced in the speech of young people by **Ско́лько** вре́мени? and **Во ско́лько?**). **Кото́рый** can also mean ‘umpteenth’: **Кото́рый** раз спра́шиваю ‘I am asking for the umpteenth time’.

(ii) However, **како́й** is now more commonly used in questions, the answers to which contain an ordinal numeral: **Како́й** ря́д? ‘Which row?’ **Пя́тый** ‘Five’.

## (5) Чей

**Чей** means ‘whose?’: **Чей** это дом? ‘Whose house is that?’, **Чью** дачу вы покупаете? ‘Whose country cottage are you buying?’.

---

**123 Который, какой, чей, кто and что as relative pronouns**

---

## (1) Который

(i) **Который** ‘who, which’ is used with animate and inanimate noun antecedents (кто and что are normally used as relatives to *pronoun* antecedents; see (4) and (5) below).

(ii) **Который** agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its *case* depends on the grammar of the relative clause:

Я познако́мился с молоды́м челове́ком, за кото́рого она́ вы́шла  
за́муж

I made the acquaintance of the young man (whom) she married

Он вошёл в ко́мнату, кото́рая нахо́дилась ря́дом с кúхней

He went into the room which was next to the kitchen

(iii) The genitive forms **кото́рого** (masculine and neuter), **кото́рой** (feminine), **кото́рых** (plural) mean ‘whose’, and *follow* the noun:

Вот студе́нт, рабо́ту кото́рого я проверя́ю  
There is the student whose work I am correcting

Прода́ли маши́ну, владе́льцы кото́рой обанкрóтились  
They have sold the car whose owners have gone bankrupt

Нельзя́ не жалéть дете́й, роди́тели кото́рых поги́бли во вре́мя  
блока́ды  
You cannot but pity the children whose parents perished during the  
blockade

## (2) Какóй

Unlike **кото́рый**, which relates to specific objects and persons, **како́й** relates to things and persons of a particular *type*, cf.:

Вокру́г ви́дишь пере́мены, **какие́** возмо́жны то́лько здесь  
All around you can see changes **of a kind which** are possible only here

and

Вокруг видишь перемены, **которые** возможны только здесь  
All around you can see changes **which** are possible only here

Compare

**Такое** выражение отчаяния, **какое** бывает у людей только перед смертью (Simonov)

The **kind of** expression of despair **that** people have only at death's door

(3) Чей

The use of **чей** as a relative is a mark of a bookish or poetic style: писатель, **чью** книгу ты изучаешь... 'the writer whose book you are studying...'. Normal usage is: писатель, книгу **которого** ты изучаешь....

(4) Кто

(i) **Кто** functions as relative pronoun to **тот** (**тот, кто** 'he, the one who'), **те** (**те, кто** 'those who'), **никто** 'nobody' (**никто, кто** 'no one who'), **все** 'everybody' (**все, кто** 'everyone who'), **первый** 'the first' (**первый, кто** 'the first to come'), **единственный** 'only' (Он же **единственный, кто** на нас постоянно жалуется 'He is the only one who constantly complains about us').

(ii) **Кто** takes a masculine singular predicate: тот, кто **решил** задачу 'he who solved the problem'. ('She who' may be rendered as **та** (женщина), **которая: Та, которая** полнее, одета с большим вкусом (Zalygin) 'The one who is plumper is dressed with consummate taste'.)

(iii) When, however, there is a *plural* antecedent (**все** or **те**), **кто** may take *either* a singular *or* a plural verb: Все, кто **пришёл/пришли** на собрание, голосовали за меня 'Everyone who came to the meeting voted for me', cf.:

Среди тех, кто **остался**, был Иван Карлович, наш сосед (Rybakov)

Among those who remained was Ivan Karlovich, our neighbour

and

Те из нас, кто **читали** стихотворение, были в восторге  
Those of us who read the poem were delighted

(iv) **Тот, кто** may be abbreviated to **кто**, with **тот** transferring to the beginning of a separate clause: **Кто** это видел, **тот** не забудет ‘Anyone who has seen that will not forget it’.

(5) **Что**

(i) **Что** may function as relative pronoun to a full noun (sing. or pl.), e.g.:

**Дом, что** стоит на углу  
The house that stands on the corner

but **который** should be regarded as the norm (see (1) (i) above).

(ii) **Что** as a relative pronoun is used mainly with:

(a) **Всё** ‘everything’:

Я скажу вам **всё, что** знаю I’ll tell you all I know

(b) Substantivized adjectives such as **главное** ‘the main thing’, **первое** ‘the first thing’:

**Первое, что** бросается в глаза — автовокзал  
The first thing that strikes you is the bus station

(c) **То** ‘that’:

Всякая литературная материя делится на три сферы:

1. То, что автор хотел выразить.
  2. То, что он сумел выразить.
  3. То, что он выразил, сам этого не желая.
- Третья сфера — самая интересная.

‘All literary material is divided into three spheres:

1. What the author wanted to express (i.e. ‘That which . . .’).
  2. What he managed to express.
  3. What he expressed without wanting this himself.
- The third sphere is the most interesting.’ (S. Dovlatov)

Variants of **то, что** thus function as links between clauses:

Учительницу огорчило **то, что** дети не хотели её слушать  
The teacher was upset by **the fact that** the children did not want to listen to her

Мы принимаем **то, от чего** вы отказались  
We accept **what** you refused



The construction is particularly important when the verb in the main clause governs an oblique case or prepositional phrase:

Он гордится **тем, что** он русский  
He is proud **of being** Russian

Началось **с того, что** Колька отнял у меня книжку (Soloukhin)  
It all began **with** Kolka **taking away** my book

**То, что** may be abbreviated to **что** for special emphasis, **то** transferring to the beginning of a separate clause:

**Что** нам просто кажется, **то** нашим предкам потом да мукой досталось  
**What** seems simple to us was achieved through the sweat and toil of our ancestors

**Что** also functions as relative pronoun to a whole clause:

Он не приходил на вечер, **что** меня удивило  
He did not come to the party, **which** surprised me (i.e. the fact that he did not come surprised me, *not* any particular noun)

## 124 Other functions of the interrogative/relative pronouns

(1) **Какой** can also be used as an exclamation (**Какой** позор! ‘What a disgrace!’) and, with negatives, can express quantity (**Каких** только подарков ему не купили! ‘And the **presents** they bought him!’).

(2) **Кто** appears:

(i) In the phrase **не кто иной, как** ‘none other than’: Это был **не кто иной**, как мой брат ‘It was none other than my brother’.

(ii) In concessive constructions: **С кем** ни говори, все настроены легкомысленно ‘Whoever you speak to is in a carefree mood’.

(iii) In the meaning ‘some... others’ (also rendered as **одни... другие**): **Кто** за, **кто** против ‘Some are for, others are against’.

(iv) In the reduplicated pronoun **кто-кто: Кому-кому́**, а ему-то грех было не реагировать (Zalygin) ‘For him of all people it was sinful not to react’.

(3) **Что** appears:

(i) In the phrase **не что иное, как** ‘nothing but’: **Это не что иное, как вымогательство** ‘That is nothing but extortion’.

(ii) In concessive constructions: **Что бы он ни делал, он не забывал** **своих друзей** ‘Whatever he did, he never forgot his friends’.

(iii) In quantitative contexts: **Чего только не было** в истории человечества (V. Putin) ‘Everything imaginable has happened in the history of mankind.’

(iv) In the reduplicated pronoun **что-что**: . . . **Уж что-что**, а это никто у неё не отнимет (Zalygin) ‘That of all things no one will take away from her’.

## 125 Declension of the demonstrative pronouns **этот, тот, такой, сей** and **экий**

**Такой** declines like a hard-ending adjective (see 146 (3) note (b)). **Этот, тот** and **сей** decline as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	этот	эт-а	эт-о	эт-и
Acc.	этот/эт-ого	эт-у	эт-о	эт-и/эт-их
Gen.	эт-ого	эт-ой	эт-ого	эт-их
Dat.	эт-ому	эт-ой	эт-ому	эт-им
Instr.	эт-им	эт-ой/-ою	эт-им	эт-ими
Prep.	об эт-ом	об эт-ой	об эт-ом	об эт-их
Nom.	тот	т-а	т-о	т-е
Acc.	тот/т-огó	т-у	т-о	т-е/т-ех
Gen.	т-огó	т-ой	т-огó	т-ех
Dat.	т-омý	т-ой	т-омý	т-ем
Instr.	т-ем	т-ой/т-óю	т-ем	т-éми
Prep.	о т-ом	о т-ой	о т-ом	о т-ех
Nom.	сей	си-я́	си-é	си-í
Acc.	сей/с-егó	си-ю́	си-é	си-í/с-их
Gen.	с-егó	с-ей	с-егó	с-их
Dat.	с-емý	с-ей	с-емý	с-им
Instr.	с-им	с-ей/с-éю	с-им	с-íми
Prep.	о с-ём	о с-ей	о с-ём	о с-их

*Note*

- (a) Except for usage in certain set phrases (see **129** (1)), **сей** is regarded as archaic and is used for purposes of irony.
- (b) **Экий** declines as follows: m. nom. *экий*, acc. *экий/экогого*, gen. *экогого*, dat. *экоему*, instr. *эким*, prep. *об эком*; f. nom. *экая*, acc. *экую*, gen. *экой*, dat. *экой*, instr. *экой/-ою*, prep. *об экой*; neut. *экое*, oblique cases as masculine; pl. nom. *экие*, acc. *экие/эких*, gen. *эких*, dat. *эким*, instr. *экими*, prep. *об эких*. It is found mainly in conversational registers.

**126 The demonstrative pronouns *этот* and *тот***(1) *Этот/тот*

- (i) **Этот** ‘this’ refers to something close to hand, **тот** ‘that’ to something further removed:

**Это** дере́во тако́е же большо́е, как и **то**  
This tree is just as big as that one

- (ii) **Это** is used in the meaning ‘this, that is’, ‘these, those are’: **Это** мой дом ‘This is my house’, **Это** мои́ де́ти ‘Those are my children’. Verbs agree with the noun, *not* with *это*: **Это бы́ли** мои́ кнѝги ‘Those were my books’, **Это бы́ла** егѝ же́на ‘That was his wife’.

*Note*

**Что вы хотѝте э́тим сказа́ть?** ‘What do you mean by **that**?’

- (iii) It is necessary to distinguish between

<b>Этот</b> дом	This house
<b>Эта</b> карти́на	This picture
<b>Это</b> окно́	This window
<b>Эти</b> кнѝги	These books

and

<b>Это</b> дом	This <b>is</b> a house
<b>Это</b> карти́на	This <b>is</b> a picture
<b>Это</b> окно́	This <b>is</b> a window
<b>Это</b> кнѝги	These <b>are</b> books

(2) *Тот*

- (i) **Тот** is sometimes used where English might use a definite article, especially when the pronoun is part of the antecedent to a relative clause:

Он ча́сто говори́л в **той** холо́дной мане́ре, в како́й нача́л разгово́р с Серпи́линым (Simonov)

He often spoke in **the** cold manner with which he had begun his conversation with Serpilin

Я смотре́л в **ту** сто́рону, отку́да должна́ была́ появи́ться ло́дка

I was looking in **the** direction from which the boat was expected to appear

(ii) **Тот** can also mean, ‘he, she, the latter’:

О прие́зде бра́тьев Ли́за узна́ла от А́нки. **Та** прибежа́ла к те́тке, как то́лько пришла́ телегра́мма (Abramov)

Liza learnt of her brothers’ arrival from Anka. **She** (Anka) came running to her aunt as soon as the telegram arrived

#### Note

The use of **она́** instead of **та** in this example would imply that the first-named (Liza) had come running. **Тот** thus has an important role to play in avoiding ambiguity.

(iii) **Тот** is used as a pronoun antecedent to a relative pronoun:

Арка́дий пожа́л одни́м плече́м, не **тем, на кото́ром** лежа́ла рука́ Ирۇ́нчика (Zalygin)

Arkady shrugged one shoulder, not **the one on which** Irunchik’s arm lay

(iv) **Не тот** means ‘the wrong’ (cf. неправи́льный ‘incorrect’): Он взял **не ту** кнѳгу ‘He took the wrong book’.

(v) **Тот же** (or **тот же са́мый**) means ‘the same’:

Гости́ница оказа́лась **той же**, в кото́рой оста́навливались пре́жде (Yakhontov)

The hotel turned out to be **the (same) one** they had stayed in before

#### Note

(a) **Тот же** can also mean ‘just the same as’: Ведь не́нави́сть — **та же** любо́вь, то́лько с о́брати́мым зна́ком (Zalygin) ‘After all hatred is **just the same as** love, but from the reverse side’.

(b) В о́дно и **то же** вре́мя ‘at one and the same time’.

(vi) **То** combines with the conjunction **что**:

Она́ приви́кла **к тому́, что** мужчи́ны на неѳ загла́дываются (Rybakov)

She was used to men feasting their eyes on her

It also appears in many time phrases: в **то** время, как ‘while’, с **тех** пор ‘since then’, до **тех** пор ‘until then’, после **того** как ‘after’, до **того** как ‘before’ (see also 466).

## 127 Constructions of the type **пример тому**

**Пример, причина** and some other abstract nouns combine with the dative of the pronoun **то** (and occasionally **это**):

Примером **тому** является выступление артиста  
The artiste’s performance is an example of this

Причиной **тому** является его упрямство  
His obstinacy is the cause of this

Да и фильм даёт наглядное **тому** свидетельство  
And in fact the film bears graphic witness to this

Примеров **этому** можно привести много (*Izvestiya*)  
One can quote many examples of this

### Note

- (a) These nouns normally combine with the *genitive* of a dependent *noun*: **пример мужества** ‘an example of courage’, **причина несчастного случая** ‘the cause of the accident’ (note also the use of the *genitive pronoun* where **причина** is defined by a prepositional phrase: **Причина этого** в демографическом взрыве ‘The cause of this is the population explosion’).
- (b) The dative reflexive pronoun appears in the expression **знать себе цену** ‘to know one’s worth’.

## 128 The demonstrative pronoun **такой**

(1) **Такой** ‘such’ combines with long adjectives: **Погода такая** хорошая (or **так** хороша) ‘The weather is so fine’.

(2) It can have a generalizing meaning: **Таких** марок, **какие** он собирает, очень мало ‘There are very few stamps of the kind that he collects’ (cf. 123 (2) ‘какой’).

*Note*

В **тако́м** слúчае ‘in **that** case’, Зада́м **тако́й** вопро́с ‘I shall ask **the following** question’, при **таки́х** обстоя́тельствах ‘in **the** circumstances’.

(3) **Тако́й же** means ‘the same, the same kind’: Ты **тако́й же**, как и все молодые люди твоего́ во́зраста ‘You’re just like all young people of your age’.

*Note*

**Же** is absent in the negative: Она́ не **така́я, как** была́ в де́тстве ‘She’s not **the same as** she was in her childhood’.

---

**129 The pronouns сей and экий**

---

(1) **Сей** appears mainly in set phrases: по **сей** день ‘to this very day’, ни с то́го ни с **се́го** ‘for no particular reason’, **сию́** мину́ту ‘this instant’ (Иди́ сюда́ **сию́** мину́ту! ‘Come here this instant!’), до **сих** пор ‘hitherto’ etc.

На **сей** раз в турни́ре не уча́ствовал наш сильне́йший теннисист (*Sputnik*)

This time round our best tennis player did not take part in the championships

(2) **Экий** ‘what a’ is a very colloquial form: Экий шалу́н ‘What a rogue’ (cf. also э́такий: э́такая неуда́ча ‘such a disaster’).

---

**130 Declension of the determinative pronouns сам, са́мый, весь, вся́кий, ка́ждый, вся́ческий**

---

**Ка́ждый** and **са́мый** are declined like hard-ending adjectives, **вся́кий** and **вся́ческий** like **ру́сский** (see 146 (3)). **Сам** and **весь** decline as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	сам	сам-а́	сам-о́	са́м-и
Acc.	сам/сам-о́го	сам-у́/сам-оё	сам-о́	са́м-и/сам-и́х
Gen.	сам-о́го	сам-о́й	сам-о́го	сам-и́х
Dat.	сам-о́му	сам-о́й	сам-о́му	сам-и́м
Instr.	сам-и́м	сам-о́й/-о́ю	сам-и́м	сам-и́ми
Prep.	о сам-о́м	о сам-о́й	о сам-о́м	о сам-и́х

*Note*

- (a) The accusative feminine **самоѐ** is the traditional literary form, but **самý** is now found in all styles. **Самоѐ**, though obsolescent and ‘bookish’, is still common with the reflexive pronoun **себя**: уничтожать **самоѐ себя** ‘to destroy oneself’.
- (b) Unlike **сам**, the oblique cases of which take *end stress* (**самогó** etc.), **сáмый** is *stem stressed* throughout declension (**сáмого** etc.)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	весь	вс-я	вс-ѐ	вс-е
Acc.	весь/вс-егó	вс-ю	вс-ѐ	вс-е/вс-ех
Gen.	вс-егó	вс-ей	вс-егó	вс-ех
Dat.	вс-емý	вс-ей	вс-емý	вс-ем
Instr.	вс-ем	вс-ей/-ёю	вс-ем	вс-ёмни
Prep.	обо вс-ём	обо вс-ей	обо вс-ём	обо вс-ех

**131 Сам and сáмый**

## (1) Сам

(i) **Сам** is an emphatic pronoun: Я **сам** это сделаю ‘I shall do it myself’, Она **самá** встала ‘She got up by herself’.

(ii) **Сам** may precede or follow a noun: Спросите учителя **самогó/самогó** учителя ‘Ask the teacher himself’. Note gender distinction in Я передал письмó тебе **самомý** ‘I passed the letter on to you personally’ (to a male), Я передал письмó тебе **самóй** ‘I passed the letter on to you personally’ (to a female).

(iii) **Сам** can also add emphasis to the reflexive pronoun **себя**: Вы губите **самогó/самý/самíх** себя ‘You are ruining yourself/yourselves’. It can also qualify *inanimate* nouns:

**Сам** закóн заставляет алиментщиков идти на обмáн (*Nedelya*)

The law **itself** compels alimony payers to resort to deception

*Note*

**Сам** agrees with other pronouns which stand in apposition to it: Ей надоело **самóй** носить бельё в прáчечную ‘She is sick of taking the washing to the laundry **herself**.’

## (2) Сáмый

(i) **Сáмый** indicates precise location: Он подошёл к **сáмому** обрýбу ‘He went right up to the precipice’, в **сáмом** цéнтре гóрода ‘in the very

centre of the city'. Note also Пóезд идёт до **са́мой** Москв́ы 'The train goes all the way to Moscow', с **са́мого** нача́ла 'from the very beginning' (for **са́мый** in superlative meaning, see also 185).

(ii) **Тот са́мый** means 'the very': Он купи́л **ту са́мую** кни́гу, кото́рую вы рекомендова́ли 'He bought **the very** book you recommended'. **Тот же са́мый** means 'the same': У нас **те же (са́мые)** интере́сы 'We have **the same** interests'.

### 132    **Весь, це́лый, вся́кий, ка́ждый, любóй, вся́ческий**

#### (1) **Весь/це́лый**

**Весь** means 'all, the whole' etc.: **весь** мир 'the whole world', **Мы** е́здили по **всей** стране́ 'We travelled all over the country', **все** рабо́чие 'all (the) workers'. **Це́лый** means 'a whole, whole', cf. Он съел **це́лое** я́блоко 'He ate **a whole** apple' and Он съел **всё** я́блоко 'He ate **the whole** apple', Голода́ли **це́лые** се́мьи '**Whole** families starved' and **Все** се́мьи голода́ли '**All the** families starved'. **Всё** also means 'everything' (**всё, что** я зна́ю 'everything I know'), while **все** can mean 'everyone', and takes a *plural* verb or adjective (**Все** **голос́уют** 'Everyone votes'). Note the phrases **все** о́ни, **все** мы etc. 'all of them, all of us'.

#### (2) **Вся́кий/ка́ждый/любóй/вся́ческий**

(i) **Вся́кий** means 'all kinds of': Он торго́ует **вся́кими** това́рами 'He trades in all kinds of goods', **Вся́кое** (adjectival noun) быва́ет 'All kinds of things happen'. In combination with the preposition **без**, it may be rendered as 'any': без **вся́кого** сомне́ния 'without any doubt', без **вся́кого** труда́ 'without any trouble'. Note also во **вся́ком** слу́чае 'in any case, at any rate' (cf. the precautionary на **вся́кий** слу́чай 'just in case', 'to be on the safe side').

(ii) By comparison with **ка́ждый**, **вся́кий** expresses *totality* (**вся́кий** раз 'each and every time', **Вся́кому** ребёнку́ нужна́ ла́ска 'Every child needs affection'), while **ка́ждый** emphasizes *each one individually* (**ка́ждый** раз 'every time', **Ка́ждый** из ученико́в получи́л по кни́ге 'Each of the pupils received a book'). **Ка́ждый** is also used with numerals and with plural-only nouns: **ка́ждые** два дня́ 'every two days', **ка́ждые** су́тки 'every twenty-four hours', **ка́ждые** че́тверть часа́ 'every quarter of an hour'.



(iii) **Любо́й** has a strong nuance of *selectivity*: Запиши́ **любо́е** число́ ме́ньше 50 ‘Write down **any** number less than 50’. Купи́те газе́ту в **любо́м** ки́оске ‘Buy the newspaper at any (but not every) kiosk’.

(iv) **Вся́ческий** is a synonym of **вся́кий** in the meaning ‘all kinds of’.

### 133 The negative pronouns **никто́**, **ничто́**, **никако́й**, **ниче́й**. The negative particle **не**

(1) **Никто́** ‘no one’, **ничто́** ‘nothing’, **никако́й** ‘none (whatsoever)’, **ниче́й** ‘nobody’s’ decline, respectively, like **кто**, **что**, **како́й** and **чей** (see 121).

(2) The negative particle **не** appears between a negative pronoun and the predicate: **Никто́ не** рабо́тает ‘No one works’.

### 134 **Никто́**

(1) **Никто́** means ‘no one, nobody, not anybody’:

<b>Никто́</b> не пришёл	No one has come
Он <b>никого́</b> не лю́бит	He doesn’t like anybody
Она́ <b>никому́</b> не ве́рит	She doesn’t believe anyone
Мы <b>нике́м</b> не дово́льны	We are not pleased with anyone

#### *Note*

The presence of **нет** or **нельзя́** renders **не** superfluous: **Никого́ нет** ‘No one’s here’, **Никому́ нельзя́** входи́ть ‘No one may enter’.

(2) **Никто́** takes a masculine predicate even when reference is exclusively to females (cf. 122 (1) (ii)), unless a feminine noun appears as part of the subject: **Никто́ из учени́ц, да́же Зо́я, не нашла́сь** что сказа́ть ‘None of the pupils, **not even Zoya**, could think of anything to say’.

(3) While English reverts to positive after the first negative, e.g. ‘No one **ever** says **anything** to **anyone**’, Russian can accumulate negatives: **Никто́ нико́гда́ ниче́го не** говори́т **никому́**.

(4) In prepositional constructions the prepositions appear between **ни** and the oblique form of **кто**:

Она́ <b>ни с кем</b> не игра́ет
She doesn’t play with anyone

Он **ни на ком** не собираётся жениться  
He doesn't mean to marry anyone

В доме **ни у когó ни от когó** нет секретов (Rybakov)  
No one in the house has any secrets from anyone

(5) 'Hardly anyone' is rendered as **почт́и никто́**.

---

### 135 Ничто́

---

(1) **Ничто́** can act as a subject to adjectives (**Ничто́** не вечно́ 'Nothing is eternal') and to *transitive* verbs (**Ничто́** не интересу́ет его́ 'Nothing interests him'). With intransitive verbs, however, **ничего́** is preferred: С ва́ми **ничего́** не случи́тся 'Nothing will happen to you'.

(2) The same rules of grammatical government and 'accumulation of negatives' apply to **ничто́** as to **никто́** (see 134):

Он **ничего́ не** де́лает  
He does nothing

Я **ниче́м не** дово́лен  
I am not satisfied with anything

**Никто́** **никогда́** **ничему́ не** ве́рит  
No one ever believes anything

Prepositions appear between **ни** and the relevant form of **что́**:

Никогда́ и **ни о чём** она́ Никола́я Демья́новича не проси́ла  
(Trifonov)  
She had never asked Nikolay Demyanovich for anything

(3) **Не** is omitted in certain set phrases: уйти́ **ни с чем** 'to come away empty-handed', поги́бнуть **ни за что́** 'to die for nothing', Но э́то бы́ло **ни к чему́** сейча́с (Zalygin) 'But this was irrelevant at the moment'.

(4) 'Hardly anything' is rendered as **почт́и ничего́/почт́и ничто́**.

Note the idioms: **Ничего́!** 'Never mind!', Муж у неё **ничего́** 'Her husband is not a bad chap', **ни за что́** на све́те 'not for anything in the world', **Ничего́ не** поде́лаешь 'It can't be helped'.

**нѣ** (always stressed) + relevant case of pronoun + infinitive  
**Нѣчем** писать      There is nothing to write **with**

**Нéкому** писать      There is no one to write **to**

(4) There are two variants of the construction:

(i) The impersonal:

**Нéчего** дéлать      There is nothing to do

**Нéкого** послáть      There is no one to send

(ii) The personal:

**Мне** нéчего дéлать      I have nothing to do (the logical subject of an infinitive appears in the dative, cf. **93** (1))

Нéчего **мне** бóяться, за авáрию я не отвéтчик (Tendryakov)  
I have nothing to fear, I am not responsible for the accident

Ленингрáд! Тумáн и сýрость! **Людям** нéчем дышáть (Rybakov)  
Leningrad! Fog and damp! People have nothing to breathe

(5) In prepositional constructions the preposition appears between **нé** and the pronoun:

Емú **нé к кому** обратíться за пóмощью  
He has no one to turn to for aid

Ей **нé в чем** признавáться (Rybakov)  
She has nothing to confess to

(6) The construction may also be used in the past and future: **Мне** нéчем **было** писать ‘I had nothing to write with’, **Мне** нéчем **будет** писать ‘I won’t have anything to write with’:

Комáнде **нé с кем** бýло игрáть (Vanshenkin)  
The team had nobody to play against

(7) The *positive* equivalent of the construction involves present **éсть**, past **было**, future **будет**: **Éсть** чем горд́иться ‘There is something to be proud of’ (cf. **Нéчем** горд́иться ‘There is nothing to be proud of’):

Ребáт остав́ить **было** с кем — как раз в éто врéмя прибежáла  
Áнка нóвое плáтье показывáть (Abramov)  
There **was** someone to leave the children with — Anka came running up at that very moment to show her new dress

#### *Note*

Idiomatic usage in **Нéчего (нéзачем)** обижáться ‘There’s no point in taking offence’, **нéчего** и говор́ить ‘needless to say’, от **нéчего**

дѣлать ‘for want of something to do’, **Нѣ за что** ‘Don’t mention it’.

(8) In all the above examples, the case of the pronoun is determined by the infinitive: **Кого** послать? **Нѣкого** послать ‘Whom to send? There is no one to send’.

However, in phrases of the type ‘There is no one to drive the car, look after the children’, ‘no one’ is the logical *subject* of the verb and therefore appears in the dative (see (4) (ii) above):

**Нѣкому** о нём заботиться (Rybakov)

There is no one to care for him

Порядок навести **нѣкому** (Rybakov)

There is no one to establish order

Дѣла **нѣкому** объяснить мальчику уроки

There is no one at home to explain the homework to the boy

### 138 The indefinite pronouns **кто-то**, **кто-нибудь**, **кто-либо**; **что-то**, **что-нибудь**, **что-либо**; **какой-то**, **какой-нибудь**, **какой-либо**; **чей-то**, **чей-нибудь**, **чей-либо**

The particles **-то**, **-нибудь** and **-либо** can be attached to **кто**, **что**, **какой**, **чей** to form indefinite pronouns (for declension, see 121; note that they can also be attached to **где**, **как**, **куда**, **когда**, **почему**, see 395).

(l) **-то**

(i) **Кто-то**.

(a) **Кто-то** ‘someone’ denotes one particular person whose identity, however, is unknown to or has been forgotten by the speaker. Since reference is to a definite event, **кто-то** tends to be confined almost exclusively to the past or present tense (for use with the future, however, see (iv) below): **Кто-то** стучит в дверь ‘Someone is knocking on the door’ (i.e. a definite person, but the speaker does not know who it is), **Кто-то** позвонил из школы ‘Someone rang from the school’ (again, a definite person, but identity unknown (or possibly forgotten by the person who took the call)), Она помогала **кому-то** перейти дорогу ‘She was helping someone to cross the road’ etc.

(b) **Кто-то** can also be extended by an adjective: **кто-то высокий** ‘someone tall’.

(c) **Кто-то** takes a masculine predicate even when reference is to a female: **Кто-то звонил. Это была какая-то девушка** 'Someone rang. It was some girl or other'.

(ii) **Что-то.**

(a) **Что-то** 'something' likewise denotes a definite object or thing, details of which are unknown to the speaker: **Он что-то сказал, но я не расслышал, что именно** 'He said something, but I did not catch exactly what it was', **Она что-то жуёт** 'She is chewing something' (but the speaker does not know what it is), **Он чем-то недоволен** 'He is displeased about something', cf.:

Нáдью **о чём-то** спроси́л Михаи́л, она́ **что-то** отве́тила — всё шёпотом (Rasputin)

Mikhail asked Nadya about **something**, she gave **some answer or other** — all in a whisper

(b) **Что-то** can also be extended by a neuter adjective: **Он бормотал что-то непонятное** 'He was mumbling something incomprehensible'. Note also **Это стоит миллион с чем-то** 'It costs something over a million roubles'.

(iii) **Какой-то** and **чей-то**.

(a) **Какой-то** and **чей-то** are used in similar fashion to **кто-то** and **что-то**: **Он изучает какой-то язык** 'He is studying some (definite but unspecified) language or other', **Она проверяла чью-то тетрадь** 'She was correcting someone's exercise book'.

(b) **Какой-то** may sometimes render English 'a': **Вас спрашивала какая-то девушка** 'A girl (some girl or other) was asking for you'.

(iv) Forms with **-то** may be used in the future, but only if the identity of the person or thing referred to is already known: **Я подарю тебе что-то ко дню рождения** 'I shall give you something for your birthday' (meaning that I have already decided **what** to give. If I still have to make the choice, **что-нибудь** must be used).

(2) **-нибудь**

(i) Unlike forms in **-то**, forms in **-нибудь** do not imply a particular person or thing, but someone or something indefinite, or one of an unspecified number, still to be decided or selected:

Я счастливее здесь, чем **в каком-нибудь другом месте**  
I am happier here than **anywhere else**

The hypothetical nature of forms in **-нибудь** accounts for their usage in **questions**, in the **future**, after **imperatives** and in **conditional** and **subjunctive** constructions:

(a) Questions:

— Ты **в кого-нибудь** влюбился? (Nikolaev)  
'Have you fallen in love with **someone**?'

— Кóля! **Что-нибудь** случилось? (Yakhontov)  
'Kolya! Has **anything** (or **something**) happened?'

(b) Future:

Он придумает **какое-нибудь** неотложное дело (Koluntsev)  
He is bound to think up **some** urgent business **or other**

(c) Imperative:

— Расскажите ещё **о чём-нибудь**, — попросила она ободряюще.  
— О чём же?  
— О чём хотите (Nosov)  
'Tell me about **something** else', she asked encouragingly.  
'About what, then?'  
'About anything you like'

(d) Conditional and subjunctive.

*Conditional:*

Разве **кто-нибудь** в этом случае поступил бы иначе? (Kuleshov)  
Do you really think **anyone** would have behaved differently in the circumstances?

*Subjunctive:*

Он хочет, чтобы **кто-нибудь** ему помо́г  
He wants **someone** to help him

(ii) **-нибудь** is also used, irrespective of tense, when reference is to different people or things on different occasions. Thus, Я часто приглашаю **кого-нибудь** сделать доклад, 'I often invite **someone** to give a talk' (different speakers on different occasions), Я всегда дарю ей **что-нибудь** ко дню рождения 'I always give her **something** for her birthday' (a different present on each birthday), cf.:

У нас в отделе всегда **кто-нибудь** висел на телефоне (Avdeenko)

In our department **someone** (i.e. different people on different occasions) was always on the phone

Чудик обладал одной особенностью: с ним постоянно **что-нибудь** случалось (Shukshin)

Chudik had a peculiarity: **something** was always happening to him

— Дядь, проведите на стадион, — просил я **какого-нибудь** доброго мужичку . . . (Makarov)

'Mister, take me into the stadium with you', I would ask **some** kind man **or other** . . .

Когда надо было перенести из склада **что-нибудь** тяжёлое, то помогал Кузьма (Rasputin)

Whenever **something** heavy had to be moved from the warehouse, Kuzma would help

(iii) **Какой-нибудь** can also denote:

(a) Approximation:

За **каких-нибудь** 70–80 лет на грани исчезновения оказалось 600 видов млекопитающих (*Selskaya zhizn*)

Over a period of **some** 70–80 years 600 species of mammals have found themselves on the verge of extinction

(b) Inferior quality:

Дам тебе не **какой-нибудь** учебник, а хороший  
I won't give you just **any old** textbook, but a good one

(3) -либо

Forms in **-либо** are similar in meaning to those in **-нибудь**, but imply an even greater degree of indefiniteness ('anyone, anything you care to name' etc.), functioning sometimes as a 'bookish' alternative to forms in **-нибудь**:

— Конечно, ты прав, — сказала она. — Менять **что-либо** поздно (Zalygin)

'You're right, of course', she said, 'It's too late to change **anything whatsoever**'

И происходит это . . . без **какой-либо** волокиты (*Nedelya*)  
And this happens . . . without **any** red tape **at all**

Разве любовь к своей команде оскорбляет **чьё-либо** достоинство (Makarov)

Does love for one's team really offend **anyone's** dignity

See also **395** (3).



### 139 The indefinite pronouns **кòе-кто́**, **кòе-что́**, **кòе-како́й**

(1) **Кòе-кто́**, **кòе-что́** and **кòе-како́й** decline like **кто**, **что** and **како́й** respectively (see 121 and 146 (3) note (b)). Note that **кòе-** does *not* decline. Though both **кòе-кто́** and **кòе-что́** take singular predicates, they have plural meaning (**кòе-кто́** ‘one or two people’, **кòе-что́** ‘a thing or two’; you know who; you know what’):

**Кòе-кто́** на За́паде за́дался це́лью за́ново «переписа́ть» исто́рию второ́й миро́вой война́ (*Russia Today*)

**One or two people** in the West have set themselves the task of ‘rewriting’ the history of the Second World War

На́до **кòе к кому́** забежа́ть

I need to pop in to see **a couple of people**

**Кòе на что́** смотре́ли скво́зь па́льцы (Rybakov)

**Some things** they turned a blind eye to

(2) As the examples show, prepositions appear between **кòе** and the oblique case form. In constructions with **кòе-како́й**, however, prepositions may precede or follow **кòе**:

Он обра́тился ко мне **кòе с како́ими** (or **с кòе-како́ими**) предложе́ниями

He approached me with **a number of** proposals

### 140 **Не́кто**, **не́что**

**Не́кто** ‘someone, a certain’ appears only in the nominative (**не́кто** Ива́нов ‘one Ivanov’) and **не́что** ‘something’ only in the nominative/accusative. The pronouns are usually qualified, e.g. **не́кто** в бе́лых перча́тках ‘someone in white gloves’, **не́что** подо́бное ‘something similar’.

### 141 **Не́который**

**Не́который** declines like a hard adjective. It appears in a number of set phrases (в/до **не́которой** стéпени ‘to a certain extent’, **не́которое** вре́мя ‘a certain time’, с **не́которого** вре́мени ‘for some time now’), but usually takes plural form (**не́которые** ‘some, certain’). By

comparison with **несколько** it is selective rather than merely quantitative:

У неё в группе **несколько** иностранных студентов; **некоторые** из них блестящие языковеды

There are **a few** foreign students in her group; **some** of them are brilliant linguists

## 142 Нёкий

(1) The indefinite pronoun **нёкий** declines as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	нёк-ий	нёк-ая	нёк-ое	нёк-ие
Acc.	нёк-ий/нёк-оего	нёк-ую	нёк-ое	нёк-ие/нёк-оих от нёк-их
Gen.	нёк-оего	нёк-еёй/нёк-ой	нёк-оего	нёк-оих/нёк-их
Dat.	нёк-оему	нёк-еёй/нёк-ой	нёк-оему	нёк-оим/нёк-им
Instr.	нёк-оим/нёк-им	нёк-еёй/нёк-ой	нёк-оим/нёк-им	нёк-оими/нёк-ими
Prep.	о нёк-оем	о нёк-еёй	о нёк-оем	о нёк-оих/нёк-их

(2) The pronoun's main function is to qualify surnames: **нёкий** Брагин 'a certain Bragin'.

(3) The contracted forms **нёким**, **нёкой**, **нёких**, **нёкими** are now preferred by many users of the language: У **нёкой** Ивановой нет паспорта 'A certain Ivanova has no passport'. However, the longer forms are still found:

Дом принадлежал **нёкому** Кислых (Granin)

The house belonged to a certain Kislykh

ссылаясь на **нёкого** представителя в ООН (*Pravda*)

with reference to a certain representative at the UN

## 143 Other parts of speech which can also function as pronouns

Some other parts of speech can also function as pronouns. They include:

(1) **Данный** 'present': в **данный** момент 'at the present moment'.

(2) **Один**:

(i) 'A (certain)': К вам заходил **один** студент 'A student called to see you'.

(ii) 'The same': Они учились в **одной** школе 'They went to the same school'.

(3) The reciprocal pronoun **друг друга** 'each other', the first part of which is invariable, while the second part is governed by the verb or adjective. Only singular forms are involved, never plural:

Они любят **друг друга** (Uvarova)  
They love each other

Они сигналили **друг другу** фонарями (Aytmatov)  
They were signalling to each other with lanterns

Prepositions appear centrally, between **друг** and the declined form:

Они сели на свои кровати **друг против друга** (Yakhontov)  
They sat down opposite each other on their beds.

This does not apply, however, to some secondary prepositions: **вблизи** друг друга 'near each other', **благодаря** друг другу 'thanks to each other', **вопреки** друг другу 'contrary to each other', **навстречу** друг другу 'to meet each other'.

**Друг друга** also functions as a possessive:

Знали о снежном человеке по рассказам **друг друга** (Povolyaev)  
They knew of the yeti from each other's stories.

---

# The Adjective

---

## 144 Introduction

---

(1) Adjectives may be attributive, either preceding the noun (e.g. ‘The **black** cat purred’) or following it and separated from it by a comma (‘A cat, **wet** with the rain, sat on the step’). Adjectives may also be predicative, following the noun and linked to it by a verb: ‘The cat **is wet**’.

(2) Adjectives also have comparative forms (‘My car is **newer** than yours’) and superlative forms (‘His house is the **oldest** in the street’).

(3) Most adjectives in Russian have *two* forms, a long (attributive) form (e.g. **краси́вый, краси́вая, краси́вое, краси́вые** ‘beautiful’) and a short (predicative) form (e.g. **краси́в, краси́ва, краси́во, краси́вы** ‘am, is, are beautiful’). This is also true of comparatives.

### *Note*

Subsequently, ‘is, are’ are used to designate the short form.

## The Long Form of the Adjective

### 145 The long adjective: hard endings

---

(1) Most long adjectives in Russian have **hard** endings, that is, the first vowel of the ending is **а, о** or **ы**, e.g.

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
но́в- <b>ый</b>	но́в- <b>ая</b>	но́в- <b>ое</b>	но́в- <b>ые</b> ‘new’

(2) Hard-ending adjectives decline as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	но́в- <b>ый</b>	но́в- <b>ая</b>	но́в- <b>ое</b>	но́в- <b>ые</b>
Acc.	но́в- <b>ый</b> /но́в- <b>ого</b>	но́в- <b>ую</b>	но́в- <b>ое</b>	но́в- <b>ые</b> /но́в- <b>ых</b>
Gen.	но́в- <b>ого</b>	но́в- <b>ой</b>	но́в- <b>ого</b>	но́в- <b>ых</b>
Dat.	но́в- <b>ому</b>	но́в- <b>ой</b>	но́в- <b>ому</b>	но́в- <b>ым</b>
Instr.	но́в- <b>ым</b>	но́в- <b>ой</b> /но́в- <b>ою</b>	но́в- <b>ым</b>	но́в- <b>ими</b>
Prep.	о но́в- <b>ом</b>	о но́в- <b>ой</b>	о но́в- <b>ом</b>	о но́в- <b>ых</b>

#### Note

- (a) The instrumental feminine form in **-ою** survives mainly in poetry.
- (b) End-stressed adjectives (e.g. **молодо́й**) decline like **но́вый** except in the masculine nominative singular and inanimate accusative singular, which have the ending **-о́й**.
- (c) **-го** in adjectival endings is pronounced [və] ([vo] under stress).

### 146 ‘Mixed’ declension

(1) The ‘mixed’ declension involves adjectives whose final consonant is a velar consonant (**г, к** or **х**), a palatal sibilant (**ж, ч, ш** or **щ**) or **ц**.

(2) Endings are determined by the spelling rules (see **16** (1) and (2)):

- (i) **и** replaces **ы** after **г, к, х, ж, ч, ш** and **щ**;
- (ii) unstressed **о** is replaced by **е** after **ж, ч, ш, щ** and **ц**.

(3) Declension of **ру́сский** ‘Russian’:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	ру́сск- <b>ий</b>	ру́сск- <b>ая</b>	ру́сск- <b>ое</b>	ру́сск- <b>ие</b>
Acc.	ру́сск- <b>ий</b> /ру́сск- <b>ого</b>	ру́сск- <b>ую</b>	ру́сск- <b>ое</b>	ру́сск- <b>ие</b> /ру́сск- <b>их</b>
Gen.	ру́сск- <b>ого</b>	ру́сск- <b>ой</b>	ру́сск- <b>ого</b>	ру́сск- <b>их</b>
Dat.	ру́сск- <b>ому</b>	ру́сск- <b>ой</b>	ру́сск- <b>ому</b>	ру́сск- <b>им</b>
Instr.	ру́сск- <b>им</b>	ру́сск- <b>ой/-ою</b>	ру́сск- <b>им</b>	ру́сск- <b>ими</b>
Prep.	о ру́сск- <b>ом</b>	о ру́сск- <b>ой</b>	о ру́сск- <b>ом</b>	о ру́сск- <b>их</b>

#### Note

- (a) Adjectives in **-гий** and **-хий** (e.g. **до́лгий** ‘long’, **ти́хий** ‘quiet’) decline like **ру́сский**.

- (b) End-stressed adjectives have **-ой** in the masculine nominative singular and inanimate accusative singular, e.g. **другой** ‘other’, **какой** ‘which’, **сухой** ‘dry’.

(4) Declension of **хороший** ‘good’:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	хорош- <b>ий</b>	хорош- <b>ая</b>	хорош- <b>ее</b>	хорош- <b>ие</b>
Acc.	хорош- <b>ий/-его</b>	хорош- <b>ую</b>	хорош- <b>ее</b>	хорош- <b>ие/хорош-их</b>
Gen.	хорош- <b>его</b>	хорош- <b>ей</b>	хорош- <b>его</b>	хорош- <b>их</b>
Dat.	хорош- <b>ему</b>	хорош- <b>ей</b>	хорош- <b>ему</b>	хорош- <b>им</b>
Instr.	хорош- <b>им</b>	хорош- <b>ей/-ею</b>	хорош- <b>им</b>	хорош- <b>ими</b>
Prep.	о хорош- <b>ем</b>	о хорош- <b>ей</b>	о хорош- <b>ем</b>	о хорош- <b>их</b>

*Note*

- (a) Adjectives in **-жий** (e.g. **свежий** ‘fresh’), **-чий** (e.g. **горячий** ‘hot’) and **-щий** (e.g. **настоящий** ‘real’) decline like **хороший**.
- (b) Adjectives in **-цый** (e.g. **куцый** ‘dock-tailed’) decline like **хороший** except in the masculine nominative singular and inanimate accusative singular, which end in **-ый**, the masculine and neuter instrumental singular (**куцым**) and the whole of the plural (**куцые, куцых** etc.). See 2 (ii) above.

(5) Declension of **большой** ‘big’:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	больш- <b>ой</b>	больш- <b>ая</b>	больш- <b>ое</b>	больш- <b>ие</b>
Acc.	больш- <b>ой/-ого</b>	больш- <b>ую</b>	больш- <b>ое</b>	больш- <b>ие/больш-их</b>
Gen.	больш- <b>ого</b>	больш- <b>ой</b>	больш- <b>ого</b>	больш- <b>их</b>
Dat.	больш- <b>ому</b>	больш- <b>ой</b>	больш- <b>ому</b>	больш- <b>им</b>
Instr.	больш- <b>им</b>	больш- <b>ой/-ою</b>	больш- <b>им</b>	больш- <b>ими</b>
Prep.	о больш- <b>ом</b>	о больш- <b>ой</b>	о больш- <b>ом</b>	о больш- <b>их</b>

*Note*

**Чужой** ‘someone else’s’ declines like **большой**.

## 147 Soft-ending adjectives

- (1) Soft-ending adjectives comprise some forty adjectives in **-ний** and the adjective **карий** ‘hazel’ (eye colour).

Declension of **последний** ‘last’:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	последн-ий	последн-яя	последн-ее	последн-ие
Acc.	последн-ий/-его	последн-юю	последн-ее	последн-ие/последн-их
Gen.	последн-его	последн-ей	последн-его	последн-их
Dat.	последн-ему	последн-ей	последн-ему	последн-им
Instr.	последн-им	последн-ей/-ею	последн-им	последн-ими
Prep. о	последн-ем	о последн-ей	о последн-ем	о последн-их

(2) Adjectives in **-ний** subdivide into those which express:

(i) **Time:** весённый 'spring', вечерний 'evening', всердашний 'customary', вчерашний 'yesterday's', давший 'long-standing', давнишний 'of long standing', древний 'ancient', завтрашний 'tomorrow's', зимний 'winter', летний 'summer', недавний 'recent', нынешний 'present-day', осенний 'autumn', поздний 'late', прежний 'former', прошлогóдный 'last year's', ранний 'early', сегоднѣшний 'today's', суббóтний 'Saturday's', тепѣрешний 'present-day', тогдѣшний 'of that time', ўтренний 'morning'.

(ii) **Location:** ближний 'near', верхний 'upper, top', внешнй 'external', внўтренний 'internal', дальний 'far', домашний 'domestic', задний 'back', здѣшний 'of this place', крайний 'extreme', нижний 'lower, bottom', перѣдний 'front', сосѣдний 'neighbouring, next', тамошний 'of that place'.

#### Note

(a) **Ближний** and **дальний** express relative distance: **ближний** ўгол 'the near corner', **дальний** ўгол 'the far (*not* 'the distant') corner', **Ближний** Восток 'the Near East' (i.e. 'the Middle East'), **Дальний** Восток 'the Far East'. Note that the counterpart to **дальний** рóдственник 'distant relative' is **рóдственник** 'relative' or **близкий** рóдственник 'close relative'.

(b) **Последний** 'last' and **средний** 'middle' can refer to both time and space.

(c) Some soft endings relate only to compound adjectives: **новогóдный** 'new year' (cf. годовóй 'annual' from год 'year'), **односторóнный** 'unilateral'.

(iii) **Others:** дочѣрный 'daughter's, daughterly', замўжня 'married' (of a woman), ѣскренний 'sincere', лишний 'superfluous', порóжний 'empty', сѣний (dark) 'blue', сынóвный 'filial'.

### 148 Formation of adjectives from nouns: the suffixes **-н-**, **-ск-** and **-ов-/ев-**

(1) Unlike English, in which most nouns can also function as adjectives (e.g. 'steel' (noun) becomes 'steel' (adjective) in '**steel** bridge'), adjectives in Russian derive from nouns mainly through suffixation.

(2) The commonest suffix is **-н-**: thus, **чайный** from чай 'tea' (чайная чашка 'tea cup'), **комнатный** from комната 'room' (комнатная температура 'room temperature'), **местный** from место 'place' (местный наркоз 'local anaesthetic'). **Г, к, х, ц** and **л** undergo mutation before suffix **-н-**:

<b>г : ж</b>	юг 'south'	южный 'southern'
<b>к : ч</b>	река́ 'river'	речной́ 'river' (adjective)
<b>х : ш</b>	возду́х 'air'	возду́шный 'air' (adjective)
<b>ц : ч</b>	у́лица 'street'	у́личный 'street' (adjective)
<b>л : ль</b>	шко́ла 'school'	шко́льный 'school' (adjective)

(3) The suffix **-ск-** is associated mainly with adjectives derived from the names of:

(i) People, thus : **мужской** 'male', **гражданский** 'civic' etc.

#### Note

Adjectives from some animate nouns have the suffix **-еск-**, e.g. **человеческий** 'human' from человек 'human'. Adjectives derived from some proper names take the infix **-ов-**: **горьковский** from Горький 'Gorky'.

(ii) Towns, rivers etc. (note also **городской** from город 'town', **сельский** from село 'village'): **донской** from Дон 'the Don', **московский** from Москва́ 'Moscow'.

#### Note

- (a) Some town names ending in a vowel have adjectives in **-инский**: **алма-атинский** from Алма́-Ата́ 'Alma Ata' (now also Алма́ты), **бакинский** from Баку́ 'Baku', **ялтинский** from Ялта́ 'Yalta' (note also **кубинский** 'Cuban', cf. **кубанский** from Куба́нь 'the (river) Kuban').
- (b) Adjectival stress differs in some cases from noun stress: **астраха́нский** from Астрахань́ 'Astrakhan', **новгоро́дский** from Но́вгород 'Novgorod'.
- (c) Consonant mutation occurs in adjectives derived from the names of some towns, rivers, mountain ranges etc.: **во́лжский** from Во́лга



‘the Volga’, **пра́жский** from Пра́га ‘Prague’, **ри́жский** from Ри́га ‘Riga’, **ура́льский** from Ура́л ‘the Urals’.

(iii) Nationalities and languages: **ру́сский/росси́йский** ‘Russian’, **по́льский** ‘Polish’, including more recent formations such as **зимбабвийский** ‘Zimbabwean’. Note that **латви́йский** ‘Latvian’ refers to the country (e.g. **латви́йское** побере́жье ‘the Latvian coastline’), whereas **латы́шский** ‘Latvian’ refers to the people (e.g. **латы́шский** язы́к ‘the Latvian language’).

(iv) Organizations: **ду́мский** ‘Duma’ (adj.), **заводско́й** from заво́д ‘factory’, **на́товский** from НА́ТО ‘NATO’ etc.

(v) Months: **октя́брьский** ‘October’ etc. Note the absence of a soft sign in **январский** ‘January’ and the infix **-ов-** in **августовский** ‘August’, **ма́ртовский** ‘March’.

(4) The suffix **-ов/-ев-** is used to form adjectives from the names of many trees (e.g. **бу́ковый** from бук ‘beech’), fruits and vegetables (e.g. **оре́ховый** from оре́х ‘nut’), growing areas (e.g. **полево́й** from по́ле ‘field’), metals and alloys (e.g. **цинко́вый** from цинк ‘zinc’), certain other substances (e.g. **рези́новый** from рези́на ‘rubber’), animals (e.g. **слоно́вый** from слон ‘elephant’), suits of cards (e.g. **пи́ковый** from пи́ки ‘spades’), colours (e.g. **ро́зовый** ‘pink’ from ро́за ‘rose’), the names of some young people (e.g.  **подро́стковый/подростко́вый** from подро́сток ‘adolescent’), synthetic materials (e.g. **нейло́новый** from нейло́н ‘nylon’), nouns in **-инг** (e.g. **ли́зинго́вый** from ли́зинг ‘leasing’), and other nouns (e.g. **звуко́вой** from звук ‘sound’, **ра́ковый** from рак ‘cancer’ etc.).

## 149 Adjectival endings with specific meanings

Some adjectival endings have specific meanings. These include:

(1) **-ивый, -ливый, -чивый**

Adjectives with these endings denote characteristics: **лени́вый** ‘lazy’, **терпели́вый** ‘patient’, **разговóрчивый** ‘talkative’ etc.

(2) **-мый**

Adjectives with this ending denote potential qualities (cf. English **-ble**): **преодоли́мый** ‘surmountable’, **раствори́мый** ‘soluble’. Such adjectives are of participial derivation (see also 344).

## (3) -атый

Adjectives with this ending denote possession of the object denoted by the root noun: **перна́тый** ‘feathered’, **рога́тый** ‘horned’.

## (4) -астый

Adjectives with this ending denote possession of a prominent physical feature: **груда́стый** ‘busty’, **скула́стый** ‘high-cheek-boned’ etc.

## (5) -истый

Adjectives with this ending denote abundance of the feature denoted by the root noun: **тени́стый** ‘shady’. They can also denote similarity: **золоти́стый** ‘golden’ (of colour etc.) (cf. **золото́й** ‘(made of) gold’).

## (6) -чий

Adjectives with this ending denote various states: **вися́чий** ‘hanging’ (**вися́чий** мост ‘suspension bridge’), **сидя́чий** ‘sedentary’ etc. The adjectives are of participial origin.

---

**150 Nouns with more than one adjective**

---

Nouns with two or more derivative adjectives subdivide as follows:

(1) Different meanings of the same noun are involved. Thus, мир ‘world’ has the adjective **мировóй** (мировáя война́ ‘world war’), while мир ‘peace’ has the adjective **ми́рный** (ми́рный догово́р ‘peace treaty’).

(2) The adjectival endings express different qualities or properties of a noun. Thus, both **дру́жеский** ‘friendly’ and **дру́жный** ‘concerted, harmonious’ derive from друг ‘friend’, as does the official **дру́жественный** (Перегово́ры проходи́ли в дру́жественной обстановке ‘The talks were held in a cordial atmosphere’).

---

**151 Possessive adjectives**

---

Possessive adjectives fall into two categories:

(1) The type **во́лчий** ‘wolf’s’.

(i) **Во́лчий** is declined as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	во́лчий	во́лчь-я	во́лчь-е	во́лчь-и
Acc.	во́лчий/во́лчь-его	во́лчь-ю	во́лчь-е	во́лчь-и/их
Gen.	во́лчь-его	во́лчь-ей	во́лчь-его	во́лчь-их
Dat.	во́лчь-ему	во́лчь-ей	во́лчь-ему	во́лчь-им
Instr.	во́лчь-им	во́лчь-ей/-ею	во́лчь-им	во́лчь-ими
Prep.	о во́лчь-ем	о во́лчь-ей	о во́лчь-ем	о во́лчь-их

(ii) Most adjectives in this category derive from the names of animals, birds, fish etc.: **ли́сий** ‘fox’s’, **ры́бий** ‘fish’s’ and so on. Some derive from the names of human beings. Consonant mutation operates as follows:

<b>г : ж</b>	бог	божий ‘god’s’
<b>д : ж</b>	медве́дь	медве́жий ‘bear’s’
<b>к : ч</b>	соба́ка	соба́чий ‘dog’s’
	охо́тник	охо́тничий ‘hunter’s’
<b>х : ш</b>	черепа́ха	черепа́ший ‘tortoise’s’
<b>ц : ч</b>	овца́	ове́чий ‘sheep’s’
	деви́ца	деви́чий ‘maiden’ (e.g. деви́чья фами́лия ‘maiden name’)

(iii) A number of the adjectives appear in set phrases: волк в **ове́чьей** шку́ре ‘wolf in sheep’s clothing’, вид с **пти́чьего** полёта ‘bird’s eye view’.

#### Note

Тре́тий ‘third’ also declines like **во́лчий**.

(2) The type **ма́мин** ‘Mum’s’.

(i) **Ма́мин** declines as follows, combining adjective and noun endings:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	ма́мин	ма́мин-а	ма́мин-о	ма́мин-ы
Acc.	ма́мин/ма́мин-ого	ма́мин-у	ма́мин-о	ма́мин-ы/-ых
Gen.	ма́мин-ого	ма́мин-ой	ма́мин-ого	ма́мин-ых
Dat.	ма́мин-у	ма́мин-ой	ма́мин-у	ма́мин-ым
Instr.	ма́мин-ым	ма́мин-ой/-ою	ма́мин-ым	ма́мин-ыми
Prep.	о ма́мин-ом	о ма́мин-ой	о ма́мин-ом	о ма́мин-ых

(ii) Possessive adjectives of this type are formed by adding the suffixes **-ин**, **-нин** or **-ов** to the stems of nouns (ма́ма ‘Mum’ etc.): ба́бушкин ‘grandma’s’, бра́тнин ‘brother’s’, де́дов ‘granddad’s’, дя́дин ‘uncle’s’, же́нин ‘wife’s’, ки́син/ко́шкин ‘pussy’s’, ма́мин ‘Mum’s’, му́жнин ‘husband’s’, ня́нин ‘nanny’s’, отцо́в/па́пин ‘Dad’s’, се́стрин ‘sister’s’, те́тин ‘auntie’s’. They are used mainly within the family circle:

От **ма́миных** за́втраков он реши́л бежа́ть (Tendryakov)  
He decided to escape from Mum's breakfasts

(iii) They also derive from the familiar forms of first names: **Ко́лин** 'Kolya's':

Я счита́ю, что **Ната́шина** ма́ма пра́ва (*Rabotnitsa*)  
I consider that Natasha's Mum is right

(iv) The endings also appear in phrases deriving from mythology, the Bible etc. (**ахилле́сова** пята́ 'Achilles' heel'), geographical terms (**Бе́рингов** проли́в 'Bering Straits'), other phrases (**крокоди́ловы** слёзы 'crocodile tears') etc.

(v) Some forms in **-ин**, mostly denoting animals, have acquired long adjectival endings and decline like **но́вый**: **лебеди́ный** 'swan's', **лошади́ный** 'horse's' (**лебеди́ная** пе́сня 'swan song', **лошади́ная** си́ла 'horse power').

## 152 Diminutive adjectives in **-енький/-онький**

(1) Most diminutive adjectives end in **-енький** (e.g. **но́венький** from **но́вый** 'new') and (after velar consonants) **-онький** (**высо́конький** from **высо́кий**, **лёгонький** from **лёгкий** 'light, easy', **ти́хонький** from **ти́хий** 'quiet'). The stress falls on the syllable preceding **-енький/-онький**.

(2) Diminutive adjectives may express smallness: **бле́денькое** ли́чико 'a pale little face', **А́лька** передёрнула **у́зенькими** плеча́ми (Koluntsev) 'A spasm convulsed Alka's narrow little shoulders'.

(3) Like diminutive nouns (see **104–108**), diminutive adjectives may also express emotive nuances of sympathy, scorn etc.: **моло́денький** студе́нт 'a nice young student', **глу́пенький** ма́льчо́нка 'a stupid little kid'.

(4) Diminutive endings may also impart a meaning of intensity to an adjective: e.g. **прóстенький** 'very plain', **чи́стенький** ма́льчик 'spotlessly clean little boy', cf.:

Михаи́л принёс две **холо́денькие** буты́лки моско́вского пивка́ (Abramov)  
Mikhail brought two **ice-cold** bottles of Moscow beer

### 153 Diminutive adjectives in -оватый/-еватый

(1) The diminutive suffix **-оват(ый)/-еват(ый)** denotes incompleteness: **дороговáтый** ‘rather dear’, **кисловáтый** ‘rather sour’, **синевáтый** ‘bluish’.

#### Note

These diminutives cannot be formed from all adjectives. Thus, they are formed from **ста́рый** ‘old’ and **глу́пый** ‘stupid’ (**старовáтый**, **глуповáтый**), but not from their opposites **молодо́й** ‘young’ and **у́мный** ‘clever’.

(2) Such diminutives may acquire an evaluative nuance: **дороговáтая кварти́ра** ‘a rather expensive apartment’, **холодновáтая пого́да** ‘weather somewhat on the cold side’.

(3) Maximum colloquial expressiveness is achieved by the addition of **-енький**: **глуховáтенький** ‘somewhat hard of hearing’.

### 154 Indeclinable adjectives

(1) Most indeclinable adjectives are loan words and *follow* the noun. Some denote colour (e.g. **ха́ки** ‘khaki’):

Два но́вых пла́тья: откры́тое, **беж** . . . и цве́та **бордо́** (Zalygin)  
Two new dresses, an open-necked beige . . . and a deep red

(2) Others denote:

(i) Food and drink:

ко́фе <b>мо́кко</b>	mocha coffee
карто́фель <b>фри</b>	French fries

(ii) Styles of clothing:

пальто́ <b>демисезо́н</b>	spring or autumn coat
брю́ки <b>клёш</b>	bell-bottom trousers
ю́бка <b>ми́ни</b> (also <b>ми́ни-ю́бка</b> or <b>ми́ни</b> )	mini-skirt
пальто́ <b>регла́н</b>	Raglan coat

(iii) Languages (these adjectives *precede* the noun):

<b>ко́ми</b> за́ймствовáния	Komi loans
<b>урдú</b> язы́к	Urdu
<b>хи́нди</b> язы́к	Hindi

Compare, however, язы́к **эспера́нто** ‘Esperanto’.

(iv) Various other meanings:

вес <b>брутто</b>	gross weight
вес <b>нётто</b>	net weight
часы <b>пик</b>	rush hour

*Note*

Some indeclinable adjectives also function as nouns: **джерси** ‘jersey material’, **макси** ‘maxi clothes’.

## 155 Attributive use of the long adjective

(1) The long adjective usually precedes the noun and agrees with it in gender, case and number:

	‘new house’		‘new book’		‘new armchair’	
	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
Nom.	но́в- <b>ый</b>	дом	но́в- <b>ая</b>	кни́га	но́в- <b>ое</b>	крéсло
Acc.	но́в- <b>ый</b>	дом	но́в- <b>ую</b>	кни́гу	но́в- <b>ое</b>	крéсло
Gen.	но́в- <b>ого</b>	до́ма	но́в- <b>ой</b>	кни́ги	но́в- <b>ого</b>	крéсла
Dat.	но́в- <b>ому</b>	до́му	но́в- <b>ой</b>	кни́ге	но́в- <b>ому</b>	крéслу
Instr.	но́в- <b>ым</b>	до́мом	но́в- <b>ой/-ою</b>	кни́гой	но́в- <b>ым</b>	крéслом
Prep.	о но́в- <b>ом</b>	до́ме	о но́в- <b>ой</b>	кни́ге	о но́в- <b>ом</b>	крéсле

*Plural*

Nom.	но́в- <b>ые</b>	дома́	но́в- <b>ые</b>	кни́ги	но́в- <b>ые</b>	крéсла
Acc.	но́в- <b>ые</b>	дома́	но́в- <b>ые</b>	кни́ги	но́в- <b>ые</b>	крéсла
Gen.	но́в- <b>ых</b>	домо́в	но́в- <b>ых</b>	книг	но́в- <b>ых</b>	крéсел
Dat.	но́в- <b>ым</b>	дома́м	но́в- <b>ым</b>	кни́гам	но́в- <b>ым</b>	крéслам
Instr.	но́в- <b>ыми</b>	дома́ми	но́в- <b>ыми</b>	кни́гами	но́в- <b>ыми</b>	крéслами
Prep.	о но́в- <b>ых</b>	дома́х	о но́в- <b>ых</b>	кни́гах	о но́в- <b>ых</b>	крéслах

*Note*

- (a) The animate accusative/genitive rule is applied: Знаю **нового учителя, новых учителей** ‘I know the new teacher, the new teachers’ (see 47).
- (b) An adjective or pronoun qualifying a masculine animate noun in **-а/-я** takes masculine endings, while the noun takes feminine endings: Я знаю **вашего дядю** ‘I know your uncle’, дом **вашего дяди** ‘your uncle’s house’, Верю **вашему дяде** ‘I trust your uncle’, Я доволен **вашим дядей** ‘I am pleased with your uncle’, о **вашем дяде** ‘about your uncle’.

(2) The long adjective may also follow the noun, separated from it by a comma and agreeing with it in gender, case and number:

Он лежал на **траве, мокрой** от росы  
He was lying on the grass, (which was) wet with the dew

*Note*

In certain contexts (e.g. in restaurant menus, with generic nouns) the long attributive adjective may follow the noun: кофе **натуральный** ‘real coffee’, Туризм — дело **полезное** ‘Tourism is a healthy pursuit’.

## 156 Use of the long adjective with predicative meaning

(1) In predicative position, the long adjective denotes characteristics which are inherent in or completely identified with the noun (cf. the predicative *short* form (see **166–174**)), e.g.

Эта комната — **большая**  
This room is **large** (is a large one)

(2) When linked to the noun by the past or future tense of the verb **быть**, the long predicative adjective appears:

(i) In the nominative case (the more *colloquial* variant):

Лес был **тёплый и спокойный** (Aksenov)  
The forest was warm and serene

И я буду тогда **старая, некрасивая**, в морщинках (Kovaleva)  
And by that time I shall be old, ugly, wrinkled

(ii) In the instrumental case (more typical of *written* styles):

Перестройка была **нелёгкой**, но она произошла (Kovaleva)  
Restructuring was not easy, but it occurred

— Буду я когда-нибудь **богатым**? (Rubina)  
‘Will I ever be rich?’

(3) When linked to the noun by the conditional, subjunctive, infinitive or imperative mood of the verb **быть**, the instrumental case of the adjective is the norm:

Если бы он был **высоким**, он поступил бы в милицию  
If he were tall he would join the police

Главное, чтобы эти встречи были **регулярными**  
The main thing is that these meetings should be regular

Эти догадки могут быть **правильными** или **ошибочными**  
(Rybakov)

These conjectures may be right or wrong

Будь всегда **вёжливым**!

Always be polite!

(4) After other verbs which take a predicate (**выглядеть** ‘to look’, **казаться** ‘to seem’, **притворяться** ‘to pretend’, **чувствовать** себя ‘to feel’ etc.), the adjective also appears in the instrumental case:

Улицы выглядели **грязными**

The streets looked dirty

Мой расчёт оказался **точным** (Nikolaev)

My calculation turned out to be accurate

Минфин РФ запретил крупному бизнесу притворяться **малым**  
(V. Putin)

The Russian Federation Finance Ministry has forbidden large-scale business from pretending to be small-scale

(5) An adjectival complement to intransitive and transitive verbs also appears in the instrumental:

Он начал **первым**

He began first, was the first to begin

Он оставил сейф **открытым**

He left the safe open

Я никогда не видел её **такой красивой** (Kazakov)

I had never seen her looking so lovely

---

## 157 Some uses of singular and plural adjectives

---

(1) A plural adjective is used to qualify two or more singular nouns if it relates to all the nouns named:

Маргарита с грохотом бросила **железные** совок и лопатку  
(Rubina)

With a clatter Margarita threw down an iron trowel and spade



*Note*

A *singular* adjective or pronoun may be used, however, if it is obvious that it relates to all the nouns named. The adjective or pronoun in such circumstances agrees with the first of the nouns: написать **свою** фамилию, имя и отчество ‘to write one’s surname, first name and patronymic’.

(2) A singular adjective is also used if it relates only to the *first* of the nouns named: **каменный** дом и гараж ‘a stone house and a garage’ (cf. **каменные** дом и гараж ‘a stone house and (a stone) garage’).

(3) Phrases comprising numeral and noun are qualified by a plural adjective: **каждые** два дня ‘every two days’. Adjectives which fulfil an emphatic role (e.g. **добрый, полный, целый**) appear in the genitive plural: **полных** три месяца ‘a full three months’, **целых** две тарелки ‘two whole plates’ (cf. also опоздал на **целых** полчаса ‘he was a whole half hour late’).

(4) Singular adjectives and nouns are used in the following phrases: **в разное время** ‘at various times’, **всякого рода** ‘all kinds of’ (**всякого рода** товары ‘all kinds of goods’), **разного рода** ‘of various kinds’.

## 158 Adjectival nouns

(1) An adjectival noun has the form of an adjective but functions as a noun (**белые** ‘the Whites’).

(2) Most adjectival nouns result from the omission of a word that can be understood from the context, e.g. **столовая** (комната) ‘dining room’.

(3) Adjectival nouns decline like adjectives (**в ванной** (from ванная) ‘in the bathroom’), behave like adjectives when governed by numerals (**два мороженных** ‘two ice-creams’ (see 194 (2) (v))) and can themselves be qualified by adjectives: **русское мороженое** ‘Russian ice-cream’.

(4) Most **masculine** adjectival nouns denote people: **рядовой** ‘private soldier’, **учёный** ‘scientist’, **часовой** ‘sentry’ etc.

(5) **Feminine** adjectival nouns denote:

(i) Lines: **кривая** ‘curve’, **прямая** ‘straight line’ (линия ‘line’ understood).

(ii) Rooms and other accommodation: **закýсочная** ‘snack-bar’, **кладовáя** ‘store-room’, **пра́чечная** ‘laundry’, **убо́рная** ‘lavatory’.

(6) **Neuter** adjectival nouns denote:

(i) The names of dishes: **пе́рвое** ‘first course’, **сла́дкое** ‘sweet’ etc. (блюдо ‘dish’ understood).

(ii) Time: **про́шлое** ‘the past’, **насто́ящее** ‘the present’, **бу́дущее** ‘the future’ (вре́мя ‘time’ understood).

(iii) Abstracts: **ста́рое и но́вое** ‘the old and the new’.

(iv) Classes of animal: **живо́тное** ‘animal’, **млекопита́ющее** ‘mammal’, **насеко́мое** ‘insect’, (существо ‘being’ understood).

(v) Grammatical terms: **прилагáтельное** ‘adjective’, **существи́тельное** ‘noun’, **числи́тельное** ‘numeral’ (и́мя ‘noun, nomen’ understood).

(7) **Plural** adjectival nouns denote money: **налі́чные** ‘cash’, **све́рхурабо́чные** ‘overtime’, **чаевы́е** ‘gratuities’ (cf. де́ньги ‘money’).

#### *Note*

- (a) Many adjectival nouns are formed on a seemingly *ad hoc* basis: Она́ поступи́ла в **архитекту́рный** (институ́т) ‘She has enrolled at the school of architecture’. Note also **борза́я** (соба́ка) ‘borzoi’, **выходно́й** (де́нь) ‘day off’, **сбо́рная** (кома́нда) ‘combined team, international team’ etc.
- (b) Some adjectival nouns function *only* as nouns (**вселённая** ‘the universe’, **запята́я** ‘comma’, **мостова́я** ‘roadway’), whereas others function as nouns or adjectives (cf. **рабо́чий** ‘worker’ and **рабо́чий** де́нь ‘working day’ etc.).

## The Short Form of the Adjective

### 159 Endings of the short form of the adjective

---

(1) Most adjectives have long forms and short forms (compare, however, **160**).

(2) The short form derives from the long form by the removal of the

whole of the masculine ending and the final vowel of the feminine, neuter and plural endings, e.g. **суровый** ‘severe’:

	Long form	Short form
Masculine	суров- <b>ый</b>	суров
Feminine	суров- <b>ая</b>	суров- <b>а</b>
Neuter	суров- <b>ое</b>	суров- <b>о</b>
Plural	суров- <b>ые</b>	суров- <b>ы</b>

See also **161** on the use of buffer vowels.

## 160 Adjectives which have long forms only

(1) Some adjectives which denote **inherent characteristics** have long forms only. They include:

- (i) Adjectives of colour (except for **синий** ‘blue’).
- (ii) Adjectives with the suffix **-ск-**, e.g. **русский** ‘Russian’.

### *Note*

Many adjectives in **-ический**, e.g. **драматический** ‘dramatic’, have synonyms in **-ичный**, e.g. **драматичный**, which *do* have short forms.

- (iii) Adjectives in **-ний** (except for **искренний** ‘sincere’ and **синий** ‘blue’).
- (iv) Adjectives of time (e.g. **месячный** ‘month’s’) and place (e.g. **местный** ‘local’).
- (v) Adjectives which denote materials or substances: **деревянный** ‘wooden’, **железный** ‘iron’ etc.
- (vi) Possessive adjectives of the type **волчий** ‘wolf’s’ (see **151** (1)).
- (vii) Ordinal numerals: **первый** ‘first’, **второй** ‘second’ etc.

(2) Some adjectives have short forms in certain meanings only. For example, **глухой** has short forms in the meaning ‘deaf’, but not in the meanings ‘blank’ (**глухая** стена ‘blank wall’), ‘remote’ (**глухая** провинция ‘remote province’) and ‘voiceless’ (**глухой** согласный ‘voiceless consonant’). **Видный** has a short form in the meaning ‘visible’ (see **161** (1)) but not in the meaning ‘prominent’.

## 161 The buffer vowels -e-, -o- and -ë- in the masculine short form

A buffer vowel is introduced between two or more final consonants in the *masculine* short form of many adjectives.

(1) The commonest of the buffer vowels is **-e-**:

Long-form masculine		Short forms
ва́жный	‘important’	<b>ва́жен</b> , ва́жна, ва́жно, ва́жны/ва́жны
ви́дный	‘visible’	<b>ви́ден</b> , ви́дна, ви́дно, ви́дны
голо́дный	‘hungry’	<b>голо́ден</b> , голо́дна, голо́дно, голо́дны/голо́дны
дли́нный	‘long’	<b>дли́нен</b> , дли́нна, дли́нно, дли́нны/дли́нны
слы́шный	‘audible’	<b>слы́шен</b> , слы́шна, слы́шно, слы́шны/слы́шны

Compare:

Сейча́с зага́р не **мо́ден** (Koluntsev)

Now a suntan is not fashionable

The buffer vowel **-e-** may replace a soft sign or the semi-consonant **й**:

больно́й	sick	<b>бо́лен</b> , больна́, больно́, больны́
дово́льный	pleased	<b>дово́лен</b> , дово́льна, дово́льно, дово́льны
спокóйный	calm	<b>спокóбен</b> , spokóйна, spokóйно, spokóйны

(2) The buffer vowel **-o-** splits clusters of consonants ending in **к**, **г**:

до́лгий	long	<b>до́лог</b> , долга́, до́лго, до́лги
ле́гкий	light, easy	<b>ле́гок</b> , легка́, легко́, легки́
у́зкий	narrow	<b>у́зок</b> , узка́, у́зко, узки́/узки́

— По моёй статье́ предельный́ срок доста́точно **до́лог** (Koluntsev)

‘The maximum term for my offence is fairly long’

### Note

However, **-e-** replaces a *soft sign* in such clusters: го́ркий ‘bitter’, short form **го́рек**. It also appears in unstressed position between **ж**, **ч**, **ш** and **к**: тя́жкий ‘severe’, short form **тя́жек**.

The following adjectives also take **-o-**:

злой	wicked	<b>зол</b> , зла, зло, злы
пóльный	full	<b>пóлон</b> , полна́, полно́, полны́
смешно́й	funny	<b>смешо́н</b> , смешна́, смешно́, смешны́

(3) The buffer vowel **-ě-** affects a small number of adjectives:

о́стрый	sharp, sharp-witted	<b>остёр</b> , остра́, остро́, остры́
си́льный	strong	<b>силён</b> , сильна́, си́льно, си́льны́
у́мный	clever	<b>умён</b> , умна́, умно́, умны́
хи́трый	cunning	<b>хитёр</b> , хитра́, хитро́, хитры́

#### Note

Some adjectives with a stem ending in more than one consonant do *not* take a buffer vowel in the masculine short form. They include бо́дрый ‘cheerful’ (**бодр**), до́брый ‘kind’ (**добр**), го́рдый ‘proud’ (**горд**), ме́ртвый ‘dead’ (**ме́ртв**), пе́стрый ‘multicoloured’ (**пе́стр**).

## 162 Some special short forms

The following short forms should be specially noted.

- |                |         |  |
|----------------|---------|--|
| (1) Большо́й   | big     | : <b>вели́к</b> , велика́, велико́, велики́.   |
| (2) Досто́йный | worthy  | : <b>досто́ин</b> , досто́йна, досто́йно, досто́йны.   |
| (3) И́скренний | sincere | : <b>и́скренен</b> , и́скренна, и́скренне (the commoner alternative)/и́скренно, и́скренни/и́скренны. |
| (4) Ма́ленький | small   | : <b>мал</b> , ма́ла, ма́ло, малы́.  |
| (5) Си́ний     | blue    | : <b>синь</b> , синя́, си́не, си́ни.   |
| (6) Соле́ный   | salted  | : <b>со́лон</b> , со́лона́, со́лоно, со́лоны́/со́лоны.   |

#### Note

- (a) **Рад**, ра́да, ра́до, ра́ды ‘glad’ has no long form (however, ра́достный means ‘glad, joyful’: ра́достное собы́тие ‘a joyful event’).

- (b) Какóв, коковá, коковó, коковы́ are used predicatively in the meaning ‘what, what kind of’ (**Какová** смéртность от ráка? ‘What is the mortality rate from cancer?’) and такóв, такová, такóвó, таковы́ in the meaning ‘such’ (**Такová** нáше мнéние ‘Such is our opinion’). However, **как** and **так** are used to modify short adjectives: Он **так** добр/Она́ **так** добра́ ‘He is so kind/She is so kind’.
- (c) For meanings of **вели́к** and **мал**, see 169.

---

### 163 Masculine short forms of adjectives in -енный

---

- (1) The masculine short form of adjectives in unstressed **-енный** ends in **-ен**, e.g. бессмы́сленный ‘senseless’, short form **бессмы́слен**:

Разговóр был **бессмы́слен** (Trifonov)  
The conversation was senseless

- (2) Adjectives in stressed **-éнный** have masculine short forms in **-éнен**, e.g. откровен́ный ‘candid’, short form **откровен́ен**:

А взгляд егó, пожа́луй, сли́шком **откровен́ен** (Koluntsev)  
But I suppose his glance is too frank

#### *Note*

- (a) Some adjectives in unstressed **-енный** have alternative masculine short forms in **-ен** and **-енен**, e.g. естéственный ‘natural’, **естéствен/естéственен**, the form in **-ен** usually being preferred.
- (b) Some ‘high style’ adjectives in **-éнный** have masculine short forms in **-én**, e.g. благословéнный ‘blessed’:

**Благословéн** ма́стер, достíгший верши́ны масте́рства  
Blessed is the craftsman who has achieved the summit of craftsmanship

---

### 164 Stress patterns

---

- (1) Very many adjectival short forms have fixed stem stress throughout:  
**краси́в краси́ва краси́во краси́вы** (is, are) beautiful’
- (2) Short forms with mobile stress subdivide into the following:

(i) End stress in feminine, neuter and plural:

**хоро́ш хороша́ хорошо́ хороши́** (is, are) ‘good’

Similarly **боле́н** ‘ill’, **горя́ч** ‘hot’, **лёгок** ‘light, easy’, **по́лон** ‘full’, **сме́шон** ‘funny’, **тяже́л** ‘heavy’, **уме́н** ‘clever’.

#### Note

Some adjectives of this type (e.g. свеж ‘fresh’) have alternative end or stem stress in the plural (**свежи́/све́жи**); others (e.g. широк ‘wide’) have alternative end or stem stress in the neuter *and* plural (**широ́ко** or **широкó**, **широкí/широ́ки**).

(ii) End stress in the feminine:

**жив жива́ живо́ жи́вы** (is, are) ‘alive’

Similarly **цел** ‘whole’ and, with alternative *end* stress in the plural, **блэ́ден** ‘pale’, **го́лоден** ‘hungry’, **мил** ‘dear’, **слы́шен** ‘audible’, **стро́г** ‘strict’.

(iii) End stress in the feminine and plural:

**ви́ден видна́ ви́дно видны́** (is, are) ‘visible’

Similarly **силё́н/си́лен** ‘strong’.

## 165 Divergence in stress between masculine, neuter and plural long and short forms

(1) A handful of adjectives switch from medial or end stress in the long form to initial stress in the masculine, neuter and plural short forms, with end stress in the feminine: **весёлый** ‘merry’, **вёсел**, **весела́**, **вёсело**, **вёселы́**; **голо́дный** ‘hungry’, **го́лоден**, **голо́дна́**, **го́лодно**, **го́лодны/голо́дны́**; **дешёвый** ‘cheap’, **дёшев**, **дешева́**, **дёшево**, **дёшевы́**; **дорого́й** ‘dear’, **до́рог**, **дорога́**, **до́рого**, **до́роги**; **корóткий** ‘short’, **ко́роток**, **коротка́**, **ко́ротко**, **ко́ротки/коротки́**; **молодо́й** ‘young’, **мо́лод**, **молода́**, **молодо**, **мо́лоды**.

(2) Счастл́ивый ‘happy’ has initial stress in all short forms: **сча́стлив**, **сча́стлива**, **сча́стливо**, **сча́стливы**.

## 166 The short form: usage. Introductory comments

(1) Both long and short forms may be used predicatively (see 156).

(2) However, there is usually a distinction in meaning, the long form denoting inherent permanent characteristics (Он **злой** ‘He is wicked’) and the short form relating to temporary states (Он **голоден** ‘He is hungry’) or to specific contexts or circumstances (Он **прав** ‘He is right’ (i.e. about a particular matter)).

(3) Usage depends to a considerable extent on the capacity or incapacity of a particular adjective to denote both permanent and temporary states. Thus, Он **больной** ‘He is (chronically) sick’ may be contrasted with Он **блен** ‘He is (temporarily) ill’. In adjectives, however, where no such distinction is possible, long and short forms are virtually synonymous: Он **умный**/Он **умен** ‘He is clever’.

(4) The difference between the two forms of the adjective may be stylistic, the short form reflecting a more ‘bookish’ style:

Психоло́гия ли́чности о́чень **сложна́**

The psychology of the personality is very complex

and the long form being the ‘colloquial’ variant:

Психоло́гия ли́чности о́чень **сложная**

---

## 167 Use of the short form to denote temporary state

---

While the long form implies *complete identification* of the quality expressed by the adjective with the person or thing it qualifies, the short form indicates a temporary state or condition, cf.

Река́ **бу́рная**

The river is a turbulent one (an inherent characteristic)

and

Сего́дня река́ **споко́йна**

Today the river is calm (the short form denoting a temporary state)

Similarly Он о́чень **весёлый, бо́дрый** ‘He is very jolly, cheerful’ (i.e. by nature), but Ты бы́л **бодр** и **вёсел** и шути́л всю доро́гу (Koluntsev) ‘You were cheerful and jolly and joked the whole way’, where the short forms refer to a person’s mood *on a particular occasion*.

---

## 168 Short forms: pairs of opposites

---

Many short forms comprise pairs of opposites and describe alternative states: hungry/full, healthy/ill etc.:



- (1) **голоден, голодна́, голодно, голодны́/голодны** (is, are) hungry  
**сыт, сыта́, сыто, сыты** (is, are) full, replete
- (2) **здоров, здорова́, здорово, здоровы** (is, are) healthy  
**болен, больна́, больно, больны** (is, are) sick

*Note*

- (a) Unlike **здоров** and **болен**, which denote *temporary* states, Он **здоровый** ‘He has a strong constitution’ denotes an *inherent* characteristic and Он **больной** ‘He is chronically sick, an invalid’ denotes a chronic state.
- (b) The colloquial forms **здоров, здорова́, здорово, здоровы́** mean ‘strong, good at’: Ему́ удало́сь наконец вы́толкнуть её. — Ну, **здорова́!** (Shukshin) ‘He finally managed to shove her out. “Gosh, she’s strong!”’
- (3) **счастлив, счастлива, счастливо, счастливы** (is, are) happy  
**несчастен, несчастна, несчастно, несчастны** (is, are) unhappy
- (4) **жив, жива́, живо, живы** (is, are) alive  
**мёртв, мертва́, мёртво, мёртвы** (is, are) dead

*Note*

Он **живо́й** means ‘he is lively’ (an *inherent* characteristic).

- (5) **прав, права́, пра́во, пра́вы** (is, are) right  
**непра́в, неправá, неправо, неправы́** (is, are) wrong

Compare На́ше де́ло **пра́вое** ‘Our cause is just’.

*Note*

Она́ **хоро́шая** ‘She is good’ but Она́ **хороша́ (собой/собо́ю)** ‘She is good-looking’; Он — **плохо́й** ‘He is bad’ but Он **плох** (здоровье́м) ‘He is poorly’.

## 169 Adjectives of dimension

The short form of an adjective of dimension relates the dimension to a particular set of circumstances, while the long form completely identifies the dimension with the noun it qualifies, cf.

- (a) Э́та ко́мната **больша́я**  
 This room is big/a big one

- (b) Эта ко́мната **велика́**  
This room is **too** big (i.e. for a particular purpose)

Э́тот пиджа́к **широ́к**  
This jacket is too big (for a particular person)

Пла́тье ей **мало́**  
The dress is too small for her

Compare Ю́бка **дли́нна** ‘The skirt is too long’, Рукава́ **коро́ткі** ‘The sleeves are too short’, Две́рь **ни́зка** ‘The door is too low’, Костю́м **свобо́ден** ‘The suit is too loose-fitting’, Сапоги́ **тесны́** ‘The boots are too tight’, Брю́ки **у́зкі** ‘The trousers are too tight’, Но́ша **тяже́ла** для ребёнка ‘The burden is too heavy for the child’ (cf. Но́ша **тяже́лая** ‘The burden is a heavy one’).

*Note*

- (a) The idea of excess may be reinforced by the adverb **сли́шком** ‘too’:  
Не **сли́шком** ли вы **мо́лоды** для нас? (Rubina) ‘Don’t you think you are too young for us?’
- (b) The short form of adjectives of dimension can also be used *without* a relative nuance: **Широ́к** круг интере́сов у на́ших чита́телей (*Yunyi naturalist*) ‘Our readers’ range of interests **is broad**’.

---

## 170 Delimitation of meaning by the oblique case of a noun or pronoun

---

(1) When the meaning of a predicative adjective is ‘delimited’ by the oblique case of a noun or pronoun, the short form must be used. Compare

Како́е имее́т значе́ние, **симпати́чен** он **ей** и́ли нет? (Koluntsev)  
What does it matter if she likes him or not?

where the quality denoted by **симпати́чен** is valid only for *her* (**ей**), with

Он о́чень **симпати́чный**  
He is very good-looking/attractive

where the *long* form denotes an inherent trait.

(2) The short form can be ‘delimited’ by any of the oblique cases.

(i) Genitive:

Автóбус пóлон **на́роду**  
The bus is full **of people**

*Note*

Он пóльный means ‘He is over-weight’.

(ii) Dative:

Я **вам** благода́рен  
I am grateful **to you**

(iii) Instrumental:

Я дово́лен **ва́ми**  
I am pleased **with you**

Э́тот край бога́т **не́фтью** и **пуши́ной** (*Sputnik*)  
This territory is rich **in oil and furs**

## 171 Delimitation by a prepositional phrase

(1) The short form is also used when the quality expressed by the adjective is delimited by a **prepositional phrase**. Thus, while either long or short form may be used in

Лéкция была́ **интерéсная/интерéсна**  
The lecture was interesting

the short form *must* be used in

Лéкция была́ интерéсна **по фóрме**  
The lecture was interesting in form

since the adjective is ‘delimited’ by the phrase **по фóрме**. Compare:

Мы **безору́жны** перед мо́щью совреме́нной ра́диоаппара́туры  
(*Izvestiya*)  
We are powerless in the face of the might of modern radio technology

Ра́ньше она́ была́ **равноду́шна** к лы́жам (Koluntsev)  
She used to be indifferent to skiing

(2) Common prepositional phrases include **глух на** (ле́вое у́хо) ‘deaf in’ (the left ear), **гото́в к** ‘ready for’, **гото́в на** + acc. ‘ready for’ (in the meaning ‘desperate’), **до́бр к** ‘kind to’, **знако́м с** + instr. ‘familiar with’, **похо́ж на** + acc. ‘similar to’, **се́рдит на** + acc. ‘angry with’,

**си́лен в** (матема́тике) ‘good at’ (mathematics), **скло́нен к** ‘inclined to’, **слеп на** (пра́вый глаз) ‘blind in’ (the right eye), **согла́сен на** (усло́вия) ‘agreeing to’ (conditions), **согла́сен с** ‘in agreement with’, **способе́н к** ‘good at’, **способе́н на** (обма́н) ‘capable of’ (deception), **характе́рен для** ‘characteristic of’, **хро́м на** (пра́вую но́гу) ‘lame in’ (the right leg).

#### *Note*

Used predicatively, the long forms of some of these adjectives denote inherent characteristics: Она́ **до́брая** ‘She is kind’, Он **си́льный** ‘He is strong’, Он **способный** ‘He is a capable person’.

---

### **172 Delimitation by a subordinate clause or an infinitive**

---

The short form predicative is also used when the adjective is delimited:

- (1) By a subordinate clause:

Я **сча́слив**, что вас встреча́ю  
I am happy to meet you

- (2) By an infinitive, either:

- (i) *with* **чтобы́**

Он доста́точно **уме́н, чтобы́ поня́ть**, где раска́яние, а где игра́  
(Koluntsev)  
He is intelligent enough to understand where remorse ends and  
playacting begins

or:

- (ii) *without* **чтобы́**

— Ты не **способе́н поня́ть**, чего́ мне сто́ило прийт́и сюда́  
(Koluntsev)  
‘You are incapable of understanding what it has cost me to come  
here’

---

### **173 The short form as predicate to infinitives, verbal nouns and nouns with certain qualifiers**

---

The short form is also used as predicate to the following.

- (1) Infinitives and verbal nouns:

Пить/Употребление наркотиков **вредно**  
 Drinking/Use of drugs is **harmful**

(2) Nouns qualified by **всякий/каждый** ‘each, every’, **какой?** ‘what kind of?’, **любой** ‘any’, **такой** ‘such’ etc. (including the short form):

Любой совет **полезен**  
 Any advice is useful

Такого рода комплименты **бесмысленны**  
 Compliments of that kind are meaningless

Память о национальных трагедиях так же **священна**, как память о победах (D. Medvedev)  
 Memory of national tragedies is just as sacred as memory of victories

## 174 The short form in generalized statements

The short form appears in many generalized sayings, proverbs etc.:

Жизнь <b>трудна</b>	Life is hard
Любовь <b>слепá</b>	Love is blind
Мир <b>тесен!</b>	It's a small world!

## 175 Position of the short form of the adjective

The short form of the adjective normally follows the noun:

Все великие истины **просты**      All great truths are simple

but may, for greater emphasis, precede it (see **484** (1) (i)):

**Известна** зависимость дорожных происшествий от возраста шофёра  
 The connection between road accidents and the age of the driver **is well known**

## The Comparative Degree of the Adjective

### 176 The comparative degree. Introductory comments

Most English adjectives have either

a comparative in -er (e.g. ‘harder’)

or

a comparative with ‘more’ (e.g. ‘more comfortable’).

By contrast, most Russian adjectives have two comparatives, each with a specific function.

### 177 The attributive comparative with **бо́лее**

---

(1) The attributive form of almost all comparatives comprises **бо́лее** + long adjective, e.g. **бо́лее краси́вый** дом ‘a more beautiful house’.

(2) **Бо́лее** is *invariable*, while the adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies:

(i) In gender and number:

<b>бо́лее</b>	<b>краси́вый</b>	дом	a more beautiful house
<b>бо́лее</b>	<b>краси́вая</b>	де́вушка	a more beautiful girl
<b>бо́лее</b>	<b>краси́вое</b>	де́рево	a more beautiful tree
<b>бо́лее</b>	<b>краси́вые</b>	де́ти	more beautiful children

(ii) In case:

Нет **бо́лее краси́вого са́да**  
There is no more beautiful garden

Он подошёл к **бо́лее краси́вой де́вушке**  
He went up to the more beautiful girl

(3) Comparatives with **бо́лее** may also be used predicatively:

Первичные па́рторганиза́ции ста́ли **бо́лее крúпными** (*Pravda*)  
The primary party organizations became larger

However, predicative forms in **-ее** or **-е** should be regarded as the norm (see 179–181).

(4) **Мéнее** ‘less’ is used to form a ‘reverse’ comparative:

Э́то **мéнее краси́вый** дом      This is a less beautiful house

### 178 One-word attributive comparatives

---

Six adjectives have attributive comparatives consisting of one word:

хоро́ший ‘good’	лу́чший ‘better’
плохо́й ‘bad’	ху́дший ‘worse’

ста́рый ‘old’	ста́рший ‘older, senior’
молодо́й ‘young’	мла́дший ‘younger, junior’
большо́й ‘big’	бо́льший ‘bigger’
ма́ленький ‘small’	ме́ньший ‘smaller’

*Note*

- (a) Ста́рший and мла́дший are used only with animate nouns and collectives, and usually imply seniority and juniority: мла́дший/ста́рший сын ‘younger/elder son’, мла́дший/ста́рший класс ‘junior/senior class’, мла́дший/ста́рший лейтенант ‘junior/senior lieutenant’ etc. The context may be amplified to resolve possible ambiguity: ста́рший по во́зрасту/по служе́бному положению ‘older in years/senior in rank’, мла́дший по во́зрасту/по до́лжности ‘younger in years/junior in position’. For inanimate nouns, бо́лее ста́рый is used:

На эстра́де стоя́ло ста́рое пиани́но и лежа́ла ещё бо́лее ста́рая шта́нга (Kuleshov)

On the stage were an old piano and an even older lifting weight

- (b) Мла́дший and ста́рший can also mean ‘youngest’ and ‘eldest’, лу́чший and ху́дший ‘best’ and ‘worst’ (see **185** (3) notes (a) and (b)).
- (c) Some forms of большо́й ‘big’ and бо́льший ‘bigger’ are distinguished only by stress: большо́я часть ‘a large part’, бо́льшая часть ‘the greater part’ etc.

## 179 Predicative comparative forms in -ee

- (1) The predicative comparative of most adjectives is formed by adding the ending **-ee** to the stem of the adjective:

краси́в-ee	(is, are) more beautiful
удобн-ee	(is, are) more comfortable

- (2) Comparatives in **-ee** are invariable, that is, they are used as predicates to nouns of any gender and either number:

сад краси́вее	the garden is more beautiful
карти́на краси́вее	the picture is more beautiful
де́рево краси́вее	the tree is more beautiful

цвѣты **красѣвѣе**      the flowers are more beautiful

(3) Adjectives which have end-stressed **-ѧ** in the feminine short form have end stress **-ѣе** in the comparative (see **164** (2)):

<b>новѣе</b>	(is, are) newer
<b>сложнѣе</b>	(is, are) more complex
<b>тяжелѣе</b>	(is, are) heavier

*Note*

Здоровѣе, (is, are) 'healthier', despite feminine short form здороѡа.

(4) An alternative comparative form in **-ей** is confined mainly to conversational styles, verse and the more casual prose styles:

Клубы дѣлают жизнь своих членов **полѣзней** (*Sputnik*)  
The clubs make the lives of their members more useful

(5) The following types of adjective either have *no* comparative short forms or have forms which are very rarely used:

(i) Adjectives which denote concepts which cannot be manifested to a greater or lesser degree, e.g. **босой** 'barefoot', **брѧтскій** 'fraternal', **деревѧнный** 'wooden'.

(ii) Adjectives of colour.

(iii) Some others, e.g. **внѣшний** 'external', **гордый** 'proud'.

(6) Some adjectives with no short-form comparative (e.g. **драматическій** 'dramatic') have synonyms which *do* have short forms (**драматичнее** 'is, are more dramatic', from драматическій).

(7) If an adjective *does* have a short-form comparative, the use of its long form in predicative meaning is regarded as 'bookish' (Эта книга **бѡлее полѣзная** 'The book is more useful' (**полѣзнее** is the preferred form)) and may distinguish high style (Показатели **бѡлее высѡкие** 'Indices are higher') from neutral style (Дом **выше** 'The house is taller'. See **180**(1)).

---

## **180 Comparative short forms in -е**

---

(1) The final consonants of some adjectives undergo mutation in the comparative short form (note, however, that in some adjectives with



suffix **-к-** it is the *preceding* consonant that mutates, e.g. гла́дкий: гла́же). The resultant comparatives end in a single unstressed **-е**:

**В : ВЛ** дешёвый cheap дешёв**е** (is, are) cheaper

(However, но́вый ‘new’, comparative нов**ее** (is, are) ‘newer’.)

**Г : Ж** доро́гий dear доро́ж**е** (is, are) dearer  
 стрóгий strict стрóж**е** (is, are) stricter  
 тугóй tight туж**е** (is, are) tighter

**Д : Ж** гла́дкий smooth гла́ж**е** (is, are) smoother  
 молодóй young молóж**е** (is, are) younger  
 рё́дкий rare рё́ж**е** (is, are) rarer  
 твёрдый hard твёрж**е** (is, are) harder

(However, худóй ‘thin’, comparative худ**ее** ‘is, are thinner’.)

#### Note

‘Is, are younger’ is also rendered as **младше**, mainly in a family context: cf. Она́ **младше/молóже** сестры́ ‘She is younger than her sister’ and Она́ **молóже** начальни́ка ‘She is younger than the boss’.

**З : Ж** бли́зкий near бли́ж**е** (is, are) nearer  
 низкий low ни́ж**е** (is, are) lower  
 узкий narrow у́ж**е** (is, are) narrower

**К : Ч** грóмкий loud грóмч**е** (is, are) louder  
 жа́ркий hot жа́рч**е** (is, are) hotter  
 кре́пкий strong кре́пч**е** (is, are) stronger  
 лёгкий light, easy лёгч**е** (is, are) lighter, easier  
 ме́лкий shallow ме́льч**е** (is, are) shallower  
 мя́гкий soft мя́гч**е** (is, are) softer  
 ре́зкий sharp ре́зч**е** (is, are) sharper

**С : Ш** вы́сокий high вы́ш**е** (is, are) higher

**СК : Щ** плóский flat плóщ**е** (is, are) flatter

**СТ : Щ** густóй thick гúщ**е** (is, are) thicker  
 простóй simple прóщ**е** (is, are) simpler  
 то́лстый thick то́лщ**е** (is, are) thicker  
 ча́стый frequent ча́щ**е** (is, are) more frequent  
 чи́стый clean чи́щ**е** (is, are) cleaner

<b>т : ч</b>	бога́тый	rich	бога́че	(is, are) richer
	коро́ткий	short	коро́че	(is, are) shorter
	круто́й	steep	кру́че	(is, are) steeper

(However, свято́й ‘holy’, comparative **святе́е** ‘is, are holier’.)

<b>х : ш</b>	сухо́й	dry	су́ше	(is, are) drier
	ти́хий	quiet	ти́ше	(is, are) quieter

#### Note

- (a) Though го́рький ‘bitter’ has the short-form comparative **го́рче**, **бо́лее го́рький** (is, are) ‘more bitter’ is normally used in both attributive and predicative meanings.
- (b) Adjectives which have no short-form comparative or a little-used comparative also form the predicate with **бо́лее** : **ве́тхий** ‘ancient’, **го́рдый** ‘proud’, **зы́бкий** ‘shaky’, **ли́пкий** ‘sticky’, **ста́рый** ‘old’ (of objects) etc.

(2) Irregular short forms include a number which end in **-ше**:

большо́й	big	бо́льше	(is, are) bigger
до́лгий	long	до́льше	(is, are) longer
ма́ленький	small	ме́ньше	(is, are) smaller
ста́рый	old	ста́рше	(is, are) older
то́нкий	thin	то́ньше	(is, are) thinner
хоро́ший	good	лу́чше	(is, are) better

Объём това́рного хле́ба был на 40% **бо́льше**

The volume of marketable grain was 40 per cent greater

#### Note

**Да́льше** ‘further’ and **ра́ньше** ‘earlier’ are used only as adverbs.

(3) Other irregular short forms end in **-же**, **-ще**, **-е**:

глубо́кий	deep	глу́бже	(is, are) deeper
плохо́й	bad	ху́же	(is, are) worse
по́здний	late	по́зже	(is, are) later (also <b>поздне́е</b> )
сла́дкий	sweet	сла́ще	(is, are) sweeter
широ́кий	wide	ши́ре	(is, are) wider

#### Note

Unlike **поздне́е**, **по́зже** (here used as an adverb) also has an absolute meaning: Опе́рацию ребя́та прове́ли то́чно — ска́жет **по́зже** гла́вный геоло́г (*Komsomolskaya pravda*) “‘The lads carried out the

operation precisely”, the chief geologist was to say later’ (i.e. afterwards).

## 181 The short-form comparative in predicative meaning

The short-form comparative’s main function is predicative:

Его́ го́лос **гро́мче**  
His voice **is louder**

Моя́ маши́на была́ **нове́е**  
My car **was newer**

Её́ воспомина́ния бу́дут **интереснее**  
Her reminiscences **will be more interesting**

Живы́е цветы́ ста́ли ещё **све́жее**  
The live flowers **became fresher** still

## 182 Constructions with the comparative

### (1) Than

‘Than’ is rendered in one of the following ways:

(i) By **чем**, preceded by a comma. Both items for comparison must be in the same case:

Я вы́ше, **чем** он  
I am taller than he is

У меня́ бо́лее све́тлые глаза́, **чем** у вас  
I have lighter eyes than you do

or:

(ii) By the genitive of comparison. This construction is possible only when the first item for comparison is in the *nominative* case:

Я вы́ше **его́**  
I am taller than he is

Я ста́рше **свое́й** сестры́  
I am older than my sister

*Note*

Only the **чем** construction is possible with attributive adjectives:

Это бо́лее краси́вый дом, **чем** наш  
This is a more attractive house than ours

and when the second item for comparison has the form of a third-person possessive pronoun (его́, её, их)

Мой дом краси́вее, **чем** его́  
My house is more beautiful than his

(2) Quantification of a difference

A difference is quantified in one of the following ways:

(i) By the preposition **на** + accusative case:

Он ста́рше меня́ **на три го́да**  
He is three years older than me

(ii) (Less usually) with an instrumental:

Он **тремя́ годáми** ста́рше меня́  
He is three years older than me

(3) Expression of comparison through a multiple

Comparison may also be expressed through a multiple (constructions with **в** + accusative):

Он **в два ра́за (вдво́е)** ста́рше меня́  
He is twice as old as I am

(4) The ‘gradational’ comparative

Constructions of the type ‘the bigger the better’ are rendered by **чем . . . , тем**:

**Чем** бо́льше, **тем** лу́чше  
The bigger the better

*Note*

**Тем лу́чше** ‘So much the better’.

(5) The expression of ‘much’ + comparative

‘Much’ in combination with a comparative is expressed by **намного́, гораздо́, куда́** or **много́**:

Его́ рабо́та **намного́** лу́чше/**гораздо́** лу́чше, чем моя́  
His work is much better than mine

(6) As . . . as possible

‘As . . . as possible’ is rendered by **как мо́жно** + comparative:

Купи́ буты́лку **как мо́жно бо́лее дешёвого́** вина́  
Buy a bottle of the cheapest wine you can get

#### Note

This construction, however, is commoner with *adverbs* than with adjectives, in combination with which it can sound somewhat stilted (cf. also use of the *short* form in: Купи́ вина́ **подешёвле** ‘Buy some cheaper wine’. See **183** (2).

(7) Repeated comparatives (e.g. ‘smaller and smaller’)

Repeated comparatives normally combine with **всё**:

**Всё бли́же и бли́же** роковой́ моме́нт (Makarov)  
The fateful moment gets nearer and nearer

#### Note

Unlike English, Russian may omit the second comparative: **всё бли́же** ‘nearer and nearer’. However, the repetition of the comparative lends greater expressiveness. Cf. **всё бо́льшее** (и бо́льшее) призна́ние ‘greater and greater recognition’.

### 183 The short-form comparative in attributive meaning

(1) In colloquial registers the short-form comparative is sometimes used attributively:

У тебя́ нет челове́ка **бли́же** (Aksenov)  
There is no person closer to you

(2) This is particularly common with short forms prefixed **по-**:

Покажи́те пла́тье **подешёвле**  
Show me a slightly cheaper dress

## 184 Other functions of the short-form comparative

- (1) Short-form comparatives can function as introductory words:

**Интереснее** говорить, чем слушать

It is more interesting to speak than to listen

- (2) Many short-form comparatives also function as adverbs (see 398):

Он едет **быстрее**

He is driving faster

Она работает **больше**

She works harder

Вожак всё **ниже и ниже** опускал голову к земле (Astafev)

The leader of the herd hung his head lower and lower to the ground

### Note

In such cases the distinction between comparative adjective and comparative adverb is syntactic only, cf.: Эта книга **интереснее**, чем та ‘This book is **more interesting** (adjective) than that one’ and Эта книга написана **интереснее**, чем та ‘This book is written **in a more interesting way** (adverb) than that one’.

- (3) Short-form comparatives are also used impersonally: **ветренее** ‘it is windier’, **прохладнее** ‘it is cooler’, **светлее** ‘it is lighter’, **темнее** ‘it is darker’, **теплее** ‘it is warmer’, **холоднее** ‘it is colder’.

### Note

Adverbs of the type **более внимательно** ‘more attentively’ (for standard **внимательнее**) are rarely used.

## The Superlative Degree of the Adjective

### 185 The superlative degree with **самый**

- (1) The superlative degree is formed by combining **самый** with the positive adjective:

**самый** красивый дом

the most beautiful house

**самая** красивая машина

the most beautiful car

**самое** красивое здание

the most beautiful building

**самые** красивые дети

the most beautiful children

(2) **Сáмый** agrees with the adjective and noun in gender, number and case:

Он провёл пять лет в одном из **сáмых краси́вых европе́йских** городов  
He spent five years in one of the most beautiful European cities

Она́ живёт в **сáмом большо́м** до́ме на на́шей у́лице  
She lives in the largest house in our street

(3) **Сáмый** also combines with the comparatives **лу́чший** and **ху́дший**:

**сáмые лу́чшие** пожела́ния  
the very best wishes

**сáмое ху́дшее**, что мо́жно себе́ предста́вить  
the worst thing one can imagine

*Note*

(a) **Лу́чший** and **ху́дший** (see 178 note (b)) also function as superlatives in their own right: **лу́чшая** из же́нщин ‘the best of women’; в **ху́дшем** слу́чае ‘in the worst case, if the worst comes to the worst’.

(b) **Ста́рший** and **мла́дший** may also function as comparatives or superlatives: **ста́рший** брат ‘elder/eldest brother’, **мла́дшая** сестра́ ‘younger/youngest sister’. Outside the family or other hierarchy, however, ‘youngest’ and ‘oldest’ are rendered as **сáмый ста́рый**, **сáмый молодо́й**:

Ма́сло́в — кста́ти, **сáмый молодо́й** из полково́ых нача́льников  
(Bogomolov)

Maslov, incidentally, is the youngest of the regimental commanders  
(cf. **сáмый мла́дший** ‘the most **junior**’)

(c) The phrases **сáмое бо́льшее** ‘at most’, **сáмое ме́ньшее** ‘at the very least’: **сáмое бо́льшее** 30 челове́к ‘30 people at most’.

(4) Superlatives with **сáмый** may also express an extreme manifestation of the quality denoted by the adjective:

**Сáмые ширóкие** круги́ учёных  
The very widest circles of scientists

## 186    **Вы́сший and н́зший**

**Вы́сший** and **н́зший** are used mainly in technical and set expressions: **вы́сший/н́зший балл** ‘top/bottom mark’, **вы́сший/н́зший сорт** ‘superior/inferior brand’, **вы́шая матемáтика** ‘higher mathematics’, **вы́сшее учёбное заведе́ние** ‘higher teaching establishment’, **в вы́сшей стéпени** ‘to the highest degree’.

### *Note*

‘Highest’ and ‘lowest’ in the literal sense are rendered as **са́мый вы́сокий/н́зкий: са́мый вы́сокий/н́зкий потоло́к** ‘the highest/lowest ceiling’.

## 187    **The superlative in -ейший and -айший**

(1) Superlatives in **-ейший** are formed from a limited range of adjectives, mainly with monosyllabic roots: **важне́йший** ‘most important’, **крупне́йший** ‘largest, very large’, **мале́йший** ‘slightest’, **нове́йший** ‘latest, most recent’, **си́льнее́йший** ‘strongest’, **сложне́йший** ‘most complex’:

Нет ни **мале́йшего** сомне́ния  
There is not the slightest doubt

**Нове́йшие** дости́жения нау́ки  
The latest achievements of science

**Чисте́йший** вздор  
The most arrant nonsense

(2) However, a number of superlatives derive from roots of more than one syllable: **вы́годнее́йший** ‘most favourable’, **интересе́нейший** ‘most interesting’ etc.

(3) The ending **-айший** is affixed to stems ending in a velar consonant, following mutation of **г** to **ж** (**строжа́йший** from **стро́гий** ‘strict’, **дража́йший** from **дорого́й** ‘dear’), **к** to **ч** (**высоча́йший** from **высо́кий** ‘high’, **кратча́йший** from **кратко́й** ‘short’, **легча́йший** from **лёгкий** ‘light’, **мельча́йший** from **ме́лкий** ‘small’, **редча́йший** from **ре́дкий** ‘rare’) and **х** to **ш** (**тиша́йший** from **тихо́й** ‘quiet’). Note also **ближа́йший** ‘nearest’ from **близко́й** ‘near’.

(4) Most superlatives in **-ейший** and **-айший** express an extreme manifestation of the quality denoted by the adjective:



**Вернейшее** средство  
A **most reliable** remedy

С помощью лазеров проводятся **тончайшие** операции (*Russia Today*)  
The **most delicate** of operations are carried out with the help of lasers

Распад Советского Союза было **крупнейшей** геополитической  
катастрофой 20-ого века (V. Putin)  
The collapse of the Soviet Union was a major geopolitical disaster of  
the 20th century

(5) However, forms in **-ейший** and **-айший** may also be true superlatives:

**Ближайшая** остановка  
The nearest stop

**Величайший** поэт  
The greatest poet (or ‘A very great poet’)

**Кратчайшее** расстояние  
The shortest distance

#### Note

**Дальнейший** ‘further’ has comparative, not superlative, meaning.

(6) Forms in **-ейший/-айший** are often characteristic of high style: cf. **глубочайшие** мысли ‘the most profound thoughts’ and **самые глубокие** скважины ‘the deepest bore-holes’ (neutral style).

### 188 The superlative with **наиболее**

The superlative with **наиболее** is characteristic of a ‘bookish’ style. **Наиболее** is indeclinable and combines mainly with adjectives with roots of more than one syllable (**наиболее вероятный** исход ‘the most likely outcome’, **наиболее влиятельный** человек ‘the most influential person’, **наиболее желательный** результат ‘the most desirable result’) and with a number of adjectives with monosyllabic roots (**наиболее точный** ‘the most accurate’ etc.).

Note also **наименее** ‘the least’: **наименее точный** метод ‘the least accurate method’.

### 189 Other superlatives

(1) Other superlatives include **наибольший** ‘the greatest’, **наивысший** ‘the highest’, **наилучший** ‘the very best’, **наименьший**

‘the smallest’. These forms are characteristic of newspaper style: **наибольшая** вы́года ‘the greatest benefit’, **наилу́чшее** решéние ‘the best solution’, **наимéньший** риск ‘the smallest risk’.

(2) The prefix пре- is used to form colloquial superlatives of the type **преспоко́йный** ‘as cool as a cucumber’.

---

# The Numeral

---

## Cardinal, Collective and Indefinite Numerals

### 190 The cardinal numeral

---

The cardinal numerals are as follows:

0	ноль/нуль		
1	о́дин, одна́, о́дно; одні́	50	пятьдеся́т
2	два/две	60	шестьдеся́т
3	три	70	се́мьдеся́т
4	четы́ре	80	во́семьдеся́т
5	пять	90	девяно́сто
6	шесть	100	сто
7	семь	200	двѐсти
8	во́семь	300	три́ста
9	де́вять	400	четы́реста
10	де́сять	500	пятьсо́т
11	оди́ннадцать	600	шестьсо́т
12	двена́дцать	700	семьсо́т
13	трина́дцать	800	восемьсо́т
14	четы́рнадцать	900	девятьсо́т
15	пятна́дцать	1,000	ты́сяча
16	шестна́дцать	2,000	две ты́сячи
17	семна́дцать	5,000	пять ты́сяч
18	восемна́дцать	1,000,000	миллио́н
19	девятна́дцать	2,000,000	два миллио́на

20	два́дцать	5,000,000	пять миллио́нов
30	три́дцать	1,000,000,000	миллиа́рд/биллио́н
40	со́рок	1,000,000,000,000	триллио́н

*Note*

- (a) Each of the numerals 5–20 and 30 ends in a soft sign. The construction of the numerals 11–19 is based on the model **о́дин-на-дцать** ‘eleven’ (lit. one-on-ten) etc., that of 20 and 30 on the model **два́-дцать** and **три́-дцать** (lit. two tens and three tens), **-дцать** being a contraction of **де́сять** ‘ten’. Of the numerals 11–19, only **о́диннадцать** ‘eleven’ and **че́тырнадцать** ‘fourteen’ are *not* stressed on the penultimate **a**.
- (b) **Пятьдеся́т** and **шестьдеся́т** have end stress, **се́мьдесят** and **во́семьдесят** initial stress. All four numerals have a soft sign in the middle, but not at the end.
- (c) 300–900 subdivide formally into **три́ста** ‘three hundred’, **че́тыреста** ‘four hundred’ (**три**, **че́тыре** + gen. sing. of **сто**) and **пятьсо́т** ‘five hundred’ through to **девяты́со́т** ‘nine hundred’ (**пять** etc. + gen. pl. of **сто**). The form **двэ́сти** ‘two hundred’ is a residue of the dual number.
- (d) Compound numerals are formed by placing simple numerals in sequence: **два́дцать че́тыре** ‘twenty-four’, **шестьсо́т пятьдеся́т два** ‘six hundred and fifty-two’, **со́рок че́тыре ты́сячи се́мьсо́т девяно́сто о́дин** ‘forty-four thousand seven hundred and ninety-one’ etc.
- (e) The inversion of numeral and dependent noun indicates approximation: **лет пять** ‘about five years’. Prepositions are placed between inverted noun and numeral: **лет че́рез пять** ‘in about five years’ time’.

**191 Declension of cardinal numerals**

The cardinal numerals decline as follows.

- (1) Но́ль/ну́ль ‘nought, zero, nil’

**Но́ль/ну́ль** declines like a masculine soft-sign noun with end stress in declension (see 57 (2) (ii)).

- (2) О́дин/о́дна/о́дно/о́дні ‘one’

Од́ин/одна́/одно́/одни́ decline like э́тот but with stressed endings, cf. 125:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	од́ин	одн-а́	одн-о́	одн-и́
Acc.	од́ин/одн-огó	одн-у́	одн-о́	одн-и́/одн-и́х
Gen.	одн-огó	одн-о́й	одн-огó	одн-и́х
Dat.	одн-ому́	одн-о́й	одн-ому́	одн-и́м
Instr.	одн-и́м	одн-о́й/-о́ю	одн-и́м	одн-и́ми
Prep.	об одн-о́м	об одн-о́й	об одн-о́м	об одн-и́х

(3) Полторá (m. and n.)/полторы́ (f.) ‘one and a half’

There is only one oblique case form: **полу́тора**, the genitive, dative, instrumental and prepositional of полторá *and* полторы́.

(4) Два (m. and n.)/две (f.) ‘two’, три ‘three’, четы́ре ‘four’

Nom.	дв-а/дв-е	тр-и	четы́р-е
Acc.	дв-а, дв-е/дв-ух	тр-и/тр-ёх	четы́р-е/четы́р-ёх
Gen.	дв-ух	тр-ёх	четы́р-ёх
Dat.	дв-ум	тр-ём	четы́р-ём
Instr.	дв-умя́	тр-емя́	четы́рь-мя́
Prep.	о дв-ух	о тр-ёх	о четы́р-ёх

(5) О́ба (m. and n.)/о́бе (f.) ‘both’

Nom.	о́б-а	о́б-е
Acc.	о́б-а/обо́-их	о́б-е/обе́-их
Gen.	обо́-их	обе́-их
Dat.	обо́-им	обе́-им
Instr.	обо́-ими	обе́-ими
Prep.	об обо́-их	об обе́-их

Note the phrase де́ти **обо́его** по́ла ‘children of both sexes’.

(6) Пять ‘five’ (declension of numerals ending in a soft sign)

Nom./Acc.	пять	шесть	семь
Gen./Dat.	пят-и́	шест-и́	сем-и́
Instr.	пять-ю́	шесть-ю́	семь-ю́
Prep.	о пят-и́	о шест-и́	о сем-и́
Nom./Acc.	во́семь	два́дцать	
Gen./Dat.	восьм-и́	двадцат-и́	

---

Instr.	ВОСЬМЬ- <b>Ю</b> /ВОСЕМЬ- <b>Ю</b>	двадцать- <b>Ю</b>
Prep.	о ВОСЬМ- <b>И</b>	о двадцат- <b>И</b>

*Note*

- (a) 5–20 and 30 decline like soft-sign feminine nouns, 5–10, 20 and 30 with end stress in declension, 11–19 with medial stress in declension.
- (b) Instrumental *восьмью* is characteristic of colloquial styles, *восемью* of written styles.

## (7) 50–80

Each of the numerals 50–80 declines like *two* feminine soft-sign nouns. The stress in oblique cases falls on the second syllable:

Nom./Acc.	пятьдесят	шестьдесят
Gen./Dat.	пяти́десят-и	шести́десят-и
Instr.	пяти́юдесять-ю	шести́юдесять-ю
Prep.	о пяти́десят-и	о шести́десят-и
Nom./Acc.	сёмьдесят	восьмьдесят
Gen./Dat.	семи́десят-и	восьми́десят-и
Instr.	семи́юдесять-ю	восьми́юдесять-ю
Prep.	о семи́десят-и	о восьми́десят-и

## (8) Сорок ‘forty’, девяносто ‘ninety’, сто ‘hundred’

Each of these numerals has one oblique case ending only: **-a**.

Nom./Acc.	сорок	девяно́ст-о	ст-о
Gen./Dat./Instr.	сорок-а́	девяно́ст-а	ст-а
Prep.	о сорок-а́	о девяно́ст-а	о ст-а

## (9) 200–900

Nom.	двѣст-и	три́ст-а	пятьсо́т
Acc.	двѣст-и	три́ст-а	пятьсо́т
Gen.	двухсо́т	трѣхсо́т	пятисо́т
Dat.	двумст-а́м	трѣмст-а́м	пятист-а́м
Instr.	двумя́ст-а́ми	тремя́ст-а́ми	пятью́ст-а́ми
Prep.	о двухст-а́х	о трѣхст-а́х	о пятист-а́х

(10) **Ты́сяча** ‘thousand’, **миллио́н** ‘million’, **миллиа́рд** ‘thousand million’, **биллио́н** ‘billion’, **триллио́н** ‘trillion’.

**Ты́сяча** ‘thousand’ declines like second-declension **да́ча** ‘country cottage’, **миллио́н**, **миллиа́рд**, **биллио́н** and **триллио́н** like hard-ending masculine nouns of the first declension. However, **ты́сяча** has two forms of the instrumental: **ты́сячью** and **ты́сячей** (see 197 note (a)). The numerals also appear in multiples: **две ты́сячи** ‘two thousand’, **пять ты́сяч** ‘five thousand’, **двёсти пятьдесят одна́ ты́сяча** ‘251,000’, **четы́ре миллио́на** ‘four million’, **шестьдеся́т миллио́нов** ‘sixty million’, **два́дцать два миллиа́рда** ‘twenty-two thousand million’ and so on.

For declension of compound numerals see **198**.

## 192 Ноль/нуль. Meanings and usage

(1) **Ноль/нуль** ‘nought, zero, nil’ governs the genitive case of singular and plural nouns.

(2) The two forms are often stylistically and phraseologically differentiated. Thus:

(i) **Нуль** tends to be used in mathematics, in technical terminology and in indicating temperature:

<b>нуль</b> гра́дусов Це́льсия	zero degrees Celsius (n.b. gen. pl.)
ни́же ну́ля	below zero

(ii) **Ноль** is used:

(a) In colloquial contexts:

Игра́ ко́нчилась со счё́том 5:0 (пять:но́ль)  
The game ended 5:0

Её телефо́н: 231-00-45 (двёсти три́дцать о́дин но́ль но́ль со́рок пять)  
Her telephone number is 231 00 45

(Also, in colloquial contexts, **но́ль гра́дусов** ‘zero degrees’.)

(b) In decimals (see **205** (1)).

(c) In giving precise indications of the time:

шесть но́ль-но́ль  
six hundred hours (six o’clock precisely)

(iii) Either numeral may be used to indicate the figure 0, though **нуль** is preferred in technical registers.

(iv) **Нуль** is used in the phrases начинать с **нуля́** ‘to start from scratch’ and сводиться к **нулю́** ‘to come to nothing’, **ноль** in **ноль внимания́** ‘no attention whatsoever’. Either is possible in стрижка под **ноль/нуль** ‘a close haircut’.

### 193 The numeral **один, одна, одно, один**

(1) The numeral 1 agrees with the noun in gender, number and case:

<b>один</b> стол ‘one table’	<b>одно́</b> окно́ ‘one window’
<b>одна́</b> карта́ ‘one map’	<b>один</b> часы́ ‘one clock’

Он по́днял шта́нгу **одной** руко́й  
He lifted the weight with one hand

#### Note

- (a) The numeral is omitted in some time expressions: час дня ‘one o’clock in the afternoon’.
- (b) In counting, **раз** usually replaces **один**: **Раз** . . . два . . . три . . . ‘**One** . . . two . . . three . . .’.
- (c) The animate accusative/genitive rule applies: Ви́жу **одного́** ма́льчика ‘I see one boy’.

(2) The agreement of compound numerals ending in **один, одна, одно́** is as follows:

(i) They take a singular noun: со́рок **один стул** ‘forty-one **chairs**’, cf.:

Бы́л день её ро́ждения, и я принёс **два́дцать одну́** свечу́ (Gagarin)  
It was her birthday and I brought twenty-one candles

(ii) They take a singular predicate:

В э́том го́ду **бы́л заде́ржан во́семьдесят один** наруши́тель пра́вил  
пожа́рной безопа́сности в лесу́ (*Russia Today*)  
This year eighty-one people have been arrested for breaches of forest  
fire safety precautions

В про́шлом го́ду **поги́б 271** челове́к (*Nedelya*)  
271 people died last year

У нас прожы́точный ми́нимум о́чень ни́зкий — **2121** ру́бль (V. Putin)  
In Russia the subsistence minimum is very low — 2121 roubles



(iii) Long adjectives and participles also appear in the singular:

Всего у Чосера двадцать **один** рассказ, **изложенный** простым языком (Propp)

Chaucer has twenty-one tales in all, told in simple language

(iv) However, *relative pronouns* normally appear in the plural:

Двадцать один мальчик, **которые** бежали по улице  
Twenty-one boys who were running down the street

(3) The plural form **одни́** is used with plural-only nouns (see 49): **одни́** сánки ‘one sledge’, **одни́** носилки ‘one stretcher’ (also **двадцать одни́** сánки, носилки ‘twenty-one sledges, stretchers’).

#### Note

Compare also the colloquial **одни́** сли́вки ‘one cream’ (= one portion, packet of cream), heard in shops and buffets.

(4) Other meanings of **один, одна, одно́, одни́** include:

(i) ‘Alone, by oneself: Она́ **одна́** ‘She is all by herself’, Ему́ скучно **одному́** ‘He is bored by himself’.

#### Note

Compare the use of the nominative in Я был **один** ‘I was alone’ and the use of the instrumental in Я был **одним** из его́ друзей ‘I was one of his friends’.

(ii) ‘Only, nothing but’: Я **один (одна́)** знаю́ ‘Only I know/I alone know’:

— Навёрное, остров. Тут **одни́** острова́ (Gagarin)  
‘It’s probably an island. There are nothing but islands here’

(iii) ‘A’, ‘a certain’, ‘some’: У меня́ есть **один** знако́мый, кото́рый роди́лся в Росси́и ‘I have a friend who was born in Russia’, **Одни́** мои́ знако́мые неда́вно пере́ехали в друго́й го́род ‘Some of my friends recently moved to another town’.

(iv) ‘The same’: Мы учи́лись в **одной** шко́ле We went to the same school’.

(v) **Одни́** . . . **други́е** . . . **трёты́** render ‘some . . . others . . . others still’: **Одни́** молча́т, **други́е** красне́ют, **трёты́** возму́щаются ‘Some are silent, others blush, others still get indignant’.

*Note*

In some cases, potential ambiguity can be resolved only by context: Здесь растёт **одна** ель ‘One fir-tree grows here’ or ‘Only fir-trees grow here’.

See also **143** (2).

## **194   Полтора́/полторы́; два/две, три, четы́ре; оба/обе**

The numerals **полтора́/полторы́; два/две, три, четы́ре; оба/обе** take the genitive singular of the noun, when the numerals themselves are in the nominative or inanimate accusative (for usage after *declined* forms of these numerals, see **196**).

(1) **Полтора́** (m. and n.)/**полторы́** (f.) ‘one and a half’:

полтора́ <b>часá</b>	an hour and a half
полторы́ <b>мину́ты</b>	a minute and a half

(i) Other numerals which include a half are expressed as follows: **два с полови́ной часá** ‘two and a half hours’, **пять с полови́ной часо́в** ‘five and a half hours’ etc.

(ii) **Полтора́-** also appears in the compound numeral **полтора́ста** ‘150’ (oblique case **полу́тораста**).

(2) **Два** (m. and n.)/**две** (f.) ‘two’, **три** ‘three’, **четы́ре** ‘four’ (nom. and inan. acc.):

два <b>ма́льчика</b>	‘two boys’	три <b>сту́ла</b>	‘three chairs’
два <b>окна́</b>	‘two windows’	четы́ре <b>страны́</b>	‘four countries’
две <b>гору́</b>	‘two mountains’		

(i) **Ряд** ‘row’, **час** ‘hour’, **шаг** ‘step’, **шар** ‘sphere, globe’ have *end* stress in the genitive singular after **два, три, четы́ре**: **два часá** ‘two o’clock’, **два шарá** ‘two globes’, **три ряда́** ‘three rows’, **четы́ре шага́** ‘four steps’ (cf. *stem* stress with other forms: **около́ часа́** ‘about an hour’).

(ii) The accusative plural of the noun is used as an alternative to the genitive singular in certain set expressions: **отпусти́ть на все четы́ре сторо́ны/сто́роны** ‘to give complete freedom of movement’.

(iii) Nouns governed by the numerals **два/две, три, четы́ре** appear in the genitive *plural* if the noun *precedes* the numeral and is linked to it by a form of the verb ‘to be’ or other copula: **Стака́нов было́ то́лько**

два (Rasputin) ‘There were only two glasses’. Compare usage with 1: **Больниц** в городе **две**, а **школ** только **одна́** ‘There are two hospitals in the town, and only one school’.

(iv) Compound numerals ending in **два/две, три, четы́ре** also take the genitive singular of the noun when the numerals themselves are in the nominative or inanimate accusative case:

сорок два <b>дня</b>	forty-two days
пятьдесят две <b>минúты</b>	fifty-two minutes
сто три <b>окна́</b>	one hundred and three windows
девяно́сто четы́ре <b>челове́ка</b>	ninety-four people

(v) **Два/две, три, четы́ре** take the *genitive plural* of an adjective qualifying a masculine or neuter noun and the *nominative plural* of an adjective qualifying a feminine noun:

два <b>больш́их</b> стака́на/окна́	two large glasses/windows
три <b>бе́дные</b> де́вушки	three poor girls

#### Note

- (a) A *genitive plural* adjective is preferred with a feminine noun after 2–4 when there is a stress difference between the genitive singular and nominative plural of the noun (три **высо́ких** горы́ ‘three high mountains’ (cf. nom. pl. **го́ры**)), when a distributive phrase is governed by the preposition **по** (по три **спёлых** гру́ши ‘three ripe pears each’) and in fractions and decimals (see 205 (1)).
- (b) Pre-positive adjectives appear in the *nominative plural*: **ка́ждые** три минúты ‘every three minutes’, **послед́ние** два дня ‘the last two days’. See, however, 157 (3).
- (c) Adjectival nouns behave like adjectives after 2–4: два **учёных** ‘two scientists’, три **гости́ные** ‘three living-rooms’, четы́ре **живо́тных** ‘four animals’. See 158.

(3) **О́ба** (m. and n.)/**о́бе** (f.) ‘both’:

(i) **о́ба/о́бе** behave like **два/две** ‘two’, taking a genitive singular noun and a plural adjective:

о́ба <b>кру́глых</b> стола́/окна́	both round tables/windows
о́бе <b>кру́глые</b> тарéлки	both round plates

(ii) **о́ба** may also denote a male-female pair: **И ста́ли ои́й о́ба** смотре́ть дру́г на дру́га . . . **Не вы́держала она́ его́** взгля́да (Shcherbakov) ‘And

they both began looking at each other, . . . she could not withstand his gaze’.

*Note*

- (a) Accusative plural **стороны** is possible as an alternative to genitive singular **стороны** in the phrase **в обе стороны/стороны: переводить в обе стороны/стороны** ‘to translate both ways’.
- (b) Два **ряда** ‘two rows’ but оба **ряда** ‘both rows’.

---

## 195 Numerals five and above

---

The nominative and accusative of the numerals 5–999 take the *genitive plural* of the adjective and noun:

пять <b>месяцев</b>	five months
восемь <b>часов</b>	eight o’clock, eight hours
пятнадцать <b>минут</b>	fifteen minutes
двадцать <b>важных писем</b>	twenty important letters
сорок пять <b>дней</b>	forty-five days
семьдесят <b>школ</b>	seventy schools
сто семь <b>грамм/граммов</b>	one hundred and seven grams
триста <b>просторных комнат</b>	three hundred spacious rooms

*Note*

- (a) See **193** (2) (i) and **194** (2) (iv) for usage after compound numerals ending in 1–4.
- (b) 5–999 take the genitive plural **человек**, not **людей**: **семь человек** ‘seven people’ (if the noun is qualified by an adjective, however, **людей** is preferred: **пять пезнакомых людей** (or **лиц** or **человек**) ‘five unknown people’). Cf. also dat. **пяти человекам** ‘to five people’, instr. **с пятью человеками** ‘with five people’, etc.

---

## 196 Agreement of oblique cases of numerals полтора́/полторы́ to 999 with oblique plural forms of nouns

---

- (1) Declined numerals from 1½ to 999 combine with nouns and adjectives in the same case of the *plural*:

**(i) Genitive**

около **полутора часов**      about an hour and a half  
 больше **трёх дней**      more than three days

В течение **двух–трёх месяцев** после этого Лужина звали Антошей (Nabokov)

For two or three months after this they called Luzhin Antosha

**(ii) Dative**

Она учит **трём языкам**  
 She teaches three languages

Он обратился к **четырёхстам новым избирателям**  
 He addressed four hundred new voters

**(iii) Instrumental**

Куда она могла деться с **четырьмя детьми**? (Rybakov)  
 Where could she have got to with four children?

Он обещал ограничиться **десятью сигаретами** в день (Avdeenko)  
 He promised to limit himself to ten cigarettes a day

**(iv) Prepositional**

В **двух шагах** от камня стоял человек (Gagarin)  
 At two paces from the stone stood a man

в **пятидесяти южных городах**  
 in fifty southern towns

(2) The **animate accusative/genitive rule** (see 47) applies to the numerals 2–4 and to ‘both’, the numeral appearing in the genitive (**двух, трёх, четырёх; об́их/обе́их**), adjectives and nouns in the genitive *plural*:

Она приняла на курсы **трёх молодых студентов**  
 She accepted three young students on to the course

Она пригласила **четырёх медсестёр**  
 She invited four nurses

Она любит **об́их братьев и обе́их сестёр**  
 She loves both her brothers and both her sisters

*Note*

- (a) The animate accusative/genitive rule does *not* apply to *compound* numerals ending in **два/две, три** or **четыре**: Она приняла на

- курсы **двадцать три студента** ‘She accepted twenty-three students on to the course’.
- (b) Application of the animate accusative/genitive rule varies where animals, birds, quasi-animates etc. are concerned: Он поймал **двух птичек** (or **две птички**) ‘He caught two small birds’, Он принёс **двух кукол** (or **две куклы**) ‘He brought two dolls’ (cf. alternative accusative forms of существо́ ‘being’: **двух существ** or **два существа** ).
- (c) The animate accusative/genitive rule does *not* apply to the numerals 5–999: я встрéтил **пять/сорок/сто** моряко́в ‘I met five/forty/a hundred sailors’.

### 197 Ты́сяча ‘thousand’, миллио́н ‘million’, миллиа́рд ‘a thousand million’, биллио́н ‘billion’, триллио́н ‘trillion’

**Ты́сяча** (pronounced ты́ща in colloquial speech), **миллио́н** and **миллиа́рд** etc. take the *genitive plural* of the noun, regardless of their own case (see, however, note (a) below):

ты́сяча **рублёй**  
a thousand roubles

с **тремя́ ты́сячами рублёй**  
with three thousand roubles

забо́титься о **миллио́нах дете́й**  
to care for millions of children

Ассигно́вания равня́ются **семи́ миллиа́рдам до́лларов**  
Subsidies amount to seven thousand million dollars

#### Note

- (a) In its capacity as a noun of quantity, **ты́сяча** has instrumental **ты́сячей** + genitive plural (с ты́сячей **друзе́й** ‘with a thousand friends’), while in its capacity as a numeral it has instrumental **ты́сячью** + instrumental plural: с ты́сячью **рабо́чими** ‘with a thousand workers’. **Ты́сячей** is regarded as the more literary form, **ты́сячью** as the more colloquial. While **ты́сячей** is the preferred instrumental in its function as a noun of quantity, **ты́сячью** is making inroads in this area also. In combination with *одной*, however, **ты́сячей** is always used: с *одной* ты́сячей **солда́т** ‘with one thousand soldiers’.
- (b) Ты́сяча, миллио́н, миллиа́рд take genitive plural **челове́к**: ты́сяча **челове́к** ‘a thousand people’. However, **люде́й** is

preferred when qualified by an adjective (ты́сяча **че́стных** люде́й ‘a thousand honest people’) and with **ты́сячи** ‘thousands’ (ты́сячи люде́й ‘thousands of people’) (emphasizing mass rather than precise quantity).

- (c) **Ты́сяча** may be written in figures as ‘1.000’, ‘1000’, or ‘1 000’ (commas are reserved for decimals, see **205** (1)).
- (d) **Ты́сяча** observes feminine singular agreement: Пя́тьдеся́т одна́ ты́сяча из них **больна́** наркома́нией (*Izvestiya*) ‘Fifty-one thousand of them are addicted to drugs’.

## 198 Declension of compound numerals

- (1) In **written** Russian, all parts of a compound numeral are declined, the noun agreeing with the final element of the compound:

**К трёхста́м тридца́ти шести́ часа́м** прибави́ть ещё́ сто́ шестьдеся́т че́тыре (Koluntsev)

Add another one hundred and sixty-four hours **to three hundred and thirty-six**

- (2) In colloquial speech, however, it is common to decline either:

- (i) the **final elements** of the numeral only:

предста́вители **пятьдеся́т одной́** страны́  
representatives of **fifty-one countries** (cf. written norm **пяти́десяти одной́** страны́)

с че́тыреста **пятью́десятью́ двумя́** рубля́ми  
with four hundred and fifty-two roubles (cf. written norm **с четы́рмяста́ми . . .**)

с ше́стьсо́т се́мьдесят **семью́** иллюстра́циями  
with six hundred and seventy-seven illustrations (cf. written norm **с ше́стьюста́ми семью́десятью́ . . .**)

or:

- (ii) the **first and final** elements only:

с **пятью́ ты́сячами** пятьсо́т се́мьдесят **четы́рма** рубля́ми with  
five thousand five hundred and seventy-four roubles (cf. written  
norm с **пятью́ ты́сячами** **пятью́ста́ми семью́десятью́** **четы́рма**  
рубля́ми)

## 199 Cardinals as numerical 'labels'

(1) Cardinal numerals are widely used as indeclinable numerical 'labels' in addresses, both with **но́мер** 'number':

в кварти́ре но́мер **два́дцать семь**  
in flat number 27

and without **но́мер**

Мичу́рина, **два́дцать семь**, кварти́ра **восемна́дцать** (Shukshin)  
Flat 18, 27 Michurin Street

Она́ занима́ется у подру́ги в до́ме **четы́рнадцать** (Trifonov)  
She is studying at her friend's house at number 14

(2) Cardinal numerals are also used with series of air/spacecraft (Салю́т-4 (**четы́ре**) 'Salyut-4', ТУ-104 (**сто четы́ре**) 'TU-104', ИЛ-62 (**шестьдеся́т два**) 'IL-62'), with the names of major international events, where the cardinal numeral denotes the year of occurrence (Олимпиа́да-88 (**во́семьдесят во́семь**) 'the 1988 Olympics'), with the names of airports (Шереме́тьево-о́днн 'Sheremetevo-1'), flight numbers (рейс **сто три́дцать семь** 'flight number 137'), ticket numbers (**два́дцать четы́ре ты́сячи сто се́мьдесят** (ticket number) '24170') and receipt numbers (**се́мьна́дцать два́дцать пять** '1725'). Telephone numbers are read in one group of three digits and two groups of two: **сто пятьдеся́т во́семь двена́дцать но́ль четы́ре** (158-12-04).

### *Note*

In other contexts (e.g. the numbers of trains, carriages, seats) the more colloquial **ordinal** is the norm: **во́сьмо́й** ваго́н 'carriage number 8', три́дцать **пя́тое** ме́сто 'seat number 35', се́мьдесят **второ́й** по́езд 'train number 72'. Compare **два́дцáтый** ряд, се́редина 'row 20, centre', в **пя́той** па́лате 'in ward 5' (rooms are numbered with cardinals or ordinals: ко́мната **пя́тая/пять** 'room 5').

(3) Numerals may be left undeclined in measuring speed: **е́хать со ско́ростью три́дцать** км/ч (киломе́тров в час) 'to travel at a speed of thirty kilometres per hour' (or **три́дцáти киломе́тров в час** or **в три́дцать киломе́тров в час**).



## 200 Collective numerals

(1) The collective numerals:

(i) Constitute a series from 2 to 10: **двóе** 'two', **трóе** 'three', **чétверо** 'four', **пýтерo** 'five', **шéстерo** 'six', **сéмерo** 'seven', **вóсьмерo** 'eight', **дéвятерo** 'nine', **дéсятeрo** 'ten'. Collectives above **сéмерo** 'seven' are little used now. The collectives decline as follows (**сéмерo**, **вóсьмерo**, **дéвятерo**, **дéсятeрo** decline like **шéстерo**):

Nom.	двó- <b>е</b>	трó- <b>е</b>	чétвер- <b>о</b>
Acc.	двó- <b>е/-íх</b>	трó- <b>е/-íх</b>	чétвер- <b>о/-íх</b>
Gen.	дво- <b>íх</b>	тро- <b>íх</b>	четвер- <b>íх</b>
Dat.	дво- <b>íм</b>	тро- <b>íм</b>	четвер- <b>íм</b>
Instr.	дво- <b>íми</b>	тро- <b>íми</b>	четвер- <b>íми</b>
Prep.	о дво- <b>íх</b>	о тро- <b>íх</b>	о четвер- <b>íх</b>
Nom.	пýтер- <b>о</b>	шéстер- <b>о</b>	
Acc.	пýтер- <b>о/-íх</b>	шéстер- <b>о/-íх</b>	
Gen.	пýтер- <b>íх</b>	шéстер- <b>íх</b>	
Dat.	пýтер- <b>íм</b>	шéстер- <b>íм</b>	
Instr.	пýтер- <b>íми</b>	шéстер- <b>íми</b>	
Prep.	о пýтер- <b>íх</b>	о шéстер- <b>íх</b>	

(ii) They take the genitive plural of adjectives and nouns when they themselves are in the nominative/inanimate accusative.

(2) Collective numerals are used in four main constructions:

(i) With nouns used only in the plural (see 49). This applies especially to **двóе** 'two', **трóе** 'three' and **чétверо** 'four', which, unlike the cardinal numerals **два**, **три**, **чeты́ре**, govern genitive *plural* forms:

двóе <b>часóв</b>	two clocks
трóе <b>носíлок</b>	three stretchers
трóе <b>похорóн</b>	three funerals

Через чétверо **сýток** пóезд бýдет в Москвé (Trifonov)  
In four days' time the train will be in Moscow

Above four, collective numerals are the norm with plural-only nouns:

<b>пýтерo</b> санéй	five sledges
<b>шéстерo</b> ворóт	six gates

and cardinals a colloquial variant (пять санéй etc.)

*Note*

- (a) The collectives can be used with ‘paired’ objects (e.g. **двóе лыж** ‘two pairs of skis’, **трóе нóжниц** ‘three pairs of scissors’), but constructions with **пáра** ‘pair’ are preferred: **три пáры нóжниц** etc.
- (b) Compare also the colloquial **двóе сли́вок** ‘two creams’ (= portions, packets of cream), heard in shops and buffets, **двóе щей** ‘two cabbage soups’, **трóе духóв** ‘three types *or* bottles of perfume’ etc.
- (c) Collectives cannot appear in compound numerals. Thus, **день**, not **су́тки**, is used in rendering ‘22 days’ (**два́дцать два дня**). Paraphrases with **штúка** ‘item’, **ко́личество** ‘quantity’ and **пáра** ‘pair’ are also found: **Прóдано пятьсо́т со́рок три штúки са́нок** or **Прóданы са́нки в ко́личестве** **пятисо́т со́рока трёх** ‘Five hundred and forty-three sledges have been sold’, **со́рок три пáры саней/часо́в** ‘43 sledges/clocks’.
- (d) *Cardinal* numerals, *not* collectives, are used with the *oblique cases* of plural-only nouns: на **четырёх** (not \***четверых**) са́нках ‘on four sledges’.

(ii) The collectives can be used with *animate masculine nouns*: **двóе друзéй** (= два дрúга) ‘two friends’, **трóе ма́льчиков** (= три ма́льчика) ‘three boys’. As with animate forms in general (see below), the use of the collective numeral emphasizes the cohesiveness of the group, by contrast with the individualizing nature of the cardinals. Usage is particularly common:

(a) With nouns in **-а/-я** (e.g. **мужчи́на**, **судья́**, **юноша́**) (**пýтеро мужчи́н** ‘five men’, **трóе судей** ‘three judges’, **двóе юношей** ‘two youths’), including nouns of common gender (**двóе сирóт** ‘two orphans’ (две сироты́ is preferred, however, if both orphans are female)).

(b) With **лю́ди** ‘people’ and **лицó** ‘person’: **трóе людéй** ‘three people’, **пýтеро незнако́мых лиц** ‘five strangers’.

(c) With adjectival nouns: **двóе прохо́жих** ‘two passers-by’, **трóе больны́х** ‘three patients’, **чéтверо знако́мых** ‘four acquaintances’, **се́меро отды́хающих** ‘seven holiday-makers’.

Note that either cardinals *or* collectives may be used in oblique cases:

Он вы́грузил в Берёзове **шестерых** (or **шесть**) пассажи́ров  
(Zalygin)

He off-loaded six passengers in Berezovo

The use of collective numerals with *feminine* animate nouns (e.g. **чѣтверо жѣнщин** ‘four women’) is a mark of substandard colloquial Russian, cf. standard **чѣтыре жѣнщины**.

The collectives are not normally used with nouns denoting high rank: thus **два миністра** ‘two ministers’ rather than **двое министров**; similarly, **два профессора** ‘two professors’, **четыре генерала** ‘four generals’.

(iii) The collectives are used with **дѣти** ‘children’: **двое дѣтѣй** ‘two children’, **трое дѣтѣй** ‘three children’, **чѣтверо дѣтѣй** ‘four children’, **пѣтеро дѣтѣй** ‘five children’ (colloquially also **два ребѣнка** ‘two children’ etc.). The series rarely proceeds beyond **сѣмеро** ‘seven’, cf.

Супруги Никитины, у которых **сѣмеро** дѣтѣй (*Sputnik*)

The Nikitins, who have seven children

and

Она вспоминает свою мать, у которой было **дѣвять** дѣтѣй (*Russia Today*)

She recalls her mother, who had nine children

In oblique cases, either cardinal or collective numerals may be used, cf.

Мать **четырёх** дѣтѣй . . . (Rybakov)

The mother of four children

and

**Пятерых** дѣтѣй вырастила (Trifonov)

She raised five children

#### Note

The collective numerals are also used:

- (a) With **ребята**: **пѣтеро** ребят ‘five kids’, с **пятерыми/пятью** ребятами ‘with five kids’, cf. У него **пѣтеро ребятишек** ‘He has five kiddies’.
- (b) With **внѹки** ‘grandchildren’: За столѡм — **чѣтверо дѣтѣй и трое внѹков** (Kovaleva) ‘At the table are four children and three grandchildren’.
- (c) With **близнецы**: **трое/чѣтверо** близнецѡв ‘triplets/quadruplets’.
- (d) Colloquially, with the young of animals: **трое щенят/три щенка** ‘three puppies’.

(iv) The collective numerals are also used when an animate noun is absent from the construction: **Нас было двое** ‘There were two of us’,

**Трое** стояли на углу́ ‘Three people were standing on the corner’, **Эти пятеро** остались ‘These five stayed’, **Мы трое** протестовали ‘We three protested’, **Кóмната на троих** ‘A room for three’. Reference is to:

(a) Groups of males:

Их **шестеро** прòтив наших **троих** (*Russia Today*)

There are six of them against our three

(b) Females:

Их **четверо**; все онí машинíстки высóкого клáсса

There are four of them; they are all first-class typists

(c) Mixed company:

Нас **четверо**: мой прíятель с дéвушкой, Лíля и я (*Kazakov*)

There are four of us: my friend and his girl-friend, Lilya and I

(v) The collectives are also used in some idioms: **есть, рабóтать за троих**, ‘to eat, work enough for three’ etc., **на сво́их дво́их** (colloquial) ‘on foot’.

---

## 201 Indefinite numerals

---

(1) Indefinite numerals include **достáточно** ‘enough’, **мáло** ‘few’, **мнóго** ‘many, much’, **немáло** ‘not a few’, **немнóго** ‘not many, a few’, **не́сколько** ‘several’, **скóлько** ‘how many’, **стóлько** ‘so many’.

(2) All the indefinite numerals may govern the genitive singular and plural: достáточно **продúктов** ‘sufficient provisions’, мáло **солдáт** ‘not many soldiers’ мнóго **вре́мени** ‘much time’, скóлько **сáхара?** ‘how much sugar?’, стóлько **дéнег** ‘so much money’.

(3) **Стóлько** and **скóлько** often relate to each other, standing in adjacent clauses:

Старáйтесь дава́ть хомякú **стóлько** кóрма, **скóлько** он в состоянии съесть (*Yunyi naturalist*)

Try to give the hamster as much food as it is able to eat

(4) **Не́сколько**, **скóлько**, **стóлько** take genitive plural человек (не́сколько человек ‘a few people’), while **мáло**, **мнóго**, **немáло**, **немнóго** take genitive plural людей (мнóго людей ‘many people’ etc.).

### Note

Скóлько людей is used in emotive contexts: **Скóлько людей**

получили в последние годы новые квартиры! 'How many people have received new apartments in recent years!', cf. the matter-of-fact Сколько человек погибло? 'How many people died?'

(5) **Несколько** is distinguished from the 'selective' pronoun **некоторые** 'some, certain' (see also 141). Compare В зале сидело **несколько пассажиров** 'In the hall sat several passengers' and **Некоторые** из них были недовольны 'Some of them were dissatisfied'.

(6) **Несколько**, **сколько** and **столько** decline like plural adjectives, agreeing with oblique cases of plural nouns:

Можно одновременно соединиться с **несколькими абонентами** (*Izvestiya*)

It is possible to link up with several subscribers simultaneously

(7) **Мало** implies negative quantity (У него **мало** денег 'He has not got much money'), while **немного** can imply negative *or* positive (У него **немного** денег 'He has not got much money' (negative)/ 'He does have a little money' (positive)). Since **мало** does not decline, paraphrase is sometimes necessary: в редких случаях 'in a few cases', с очень маленьким количеством муки 'with very little flour' etc.

(8) **Много** (от **многое**, pl. **многое**) declines both in the singular (**Многое** было скрыто от меня 'Much was concealed from me', Я **многому** научился у него 'I learnt a lot from him') and in the plural (**Многое** так думают 'Many people think that', У **многох** рек правый берег выше левого 'The right bank of many rivers is higher than the left').

#### Note

- (a) While **много** means 'a lot' and is often used with passive or static verbs (На собрании было **много** учителей 'There were a lot of teachers at the meeting'), **многое** implies 'not all, a considerable proportion', and is more common with verbs which denote action on the part of the subject (**Многое** учителя голосовали за предложение 'Many teachers voted for the proposal'). **Много** is commoner with inanimate nouns, unless the intention is to individualize, cf. Снесено **много** зданий 'Many buildings have been demolished' and **Многое** дома восстановлены в прежнем стиле 'Many houses have been restored in their original style', **Многое** берёзы уже без листьев 'Many birches are already without leaves'.

- (b) The animate accusative/genitive rule is not normally applied to indefinite numerals: thus, Я встрѣтил **нѣсколько** (rather than **нѣскольких**) студѣнтов.

---

## 202 Agreement of the predicate with a subject which contains a numeral

---

(1) It is difficult to formulate hard and fast rules for the agreement of a verb predicate with a subject which contains a numeral. In some instances the predicate appears in the *singular*, in others it appears in the *plural*.

(2) Factors which affect choice include word order, with a preference for the *singular* when the verb *precedes* the noun:

Егó **опередѣло** нѣсколько лыжников  
He was overtaken by several skiers

and for the *plural* when the verb *follows* the noun:

Нѣсколько лыжников **опередѣли** егó  
Several skiers overtook him

(3) **Мно́го** and **ма́ло** almost invariably take a *singular* predicate: Там **бы́ло** ма́ло наро́ду ‘There were not many people there’, Во вре́мя пожа́ра **поги́бло** мно́го книг ‘Many books perished during the fire’.

(4) With cardinal and collective numerals, **нѣсколько** ‘several’ and **ско́лько** ‘how much’, the choice of a *singular* or *plural* predicate depends on a number of factors. Prime among these is the nature of the verb predicate.

(i) If this denotes state (**быть** ‘to be’, **существова́ть** ‘to exist’ etc.), then a *singular* predicate is preferred:

У неѣ **бы́ло** три бра́та  
She had three brothers

Нас **бы́ло** дво́е  
There were two of us

Нам **предстои́т** нѣсколько трудо́вых встре́ч с роди́телями  
We face a number of difficult meetings with parents

(ii) A *singular* is also preferred with verbs which do not denote action

on the part of the subject:

В бою **поги́бло** со́рок солда́т  
Forty soldiers perished in the battle

Во вре́мя налёта **уби́то** две же́нщины  
Two women were killed during the raid

**Издаётся** 80 журна́лов  
80 journals are published

**Зарегистр́ровано** бо́лее 130 ты́сяч люде́й (*Izvestiya*)  
More than 130,000 people have been registered

in expressions of time

Ей ско́ро **исполнится** два́дцать лет  
She will soon be twenty

**Прошло́** три го́да  
Three years have passed

До прихода́ почто́вого авто́буса **остава́лось** часа́ полтора́  
(Abramov)  
About an hour and a half remained to the arrival of the post bus

in expressing approximate quantity

Кварти́ры **получа́ет** око́ло трёхсо́т семе́й  
About three hundred families receive apartments

and where a distributive phrase in **по** functions as subject (see also 448):

У ка́ждой двéри **стоя́ло** по солда́ту  
At each door stood a soldier

(iii) A *plural* predicate will be used, however, if the numeral phrase is qualified by a demonstrative or other plural form (Э́ти пять лет **прошли́** незамётно ‘These five years have passed by imperceptibly’, Э́ти три до́ма **проданы́** неда́вно ‘These three houses have been sold recently’), or by a relative clause (cf. Со́рок мину́т **истекло́** ‘Forty minutes have expired’ and Со́рок мину́т, **о кото́рых вы проси́ли, истекли́** ‘The forty minutes that you requested have expired’).

(iv) A *plural* predicate is also preferred if the verb denotes action on the part of the subject:

**Вошли́** трóе в шинéлях  
Three people came in wearing greatcoats

Нéсколько человек **кíнулись** вслед бежавшему (Nikitin)  
Several people dashed off after the running man

Note also use with fractions and decimals: В движéнии за сохранéние национа́льной самобы́тности и охрáну прирóды **учáствуют** соотвéтственно 3,5 и 3,1 процéнта (*Komsomolskaya pravda*) ‘3.5 and 3.1 per cent respectively participate in the movement for the preservation of national identity and nature conservation’. Compare the use of the *plural* of an *active* verb in Сейчáс полгóрода **хóдят** в такіх шмóтках (*Komsomolskaya pravda*) ‘Now half the town wears such gear’ and the use of the *singular* of a *passive reflexive* verb in Полдóма **ремóнтируется** ‘Half the house is being repaired’.

(v) A *plural* predicate is especially common where attention is drawn to separate activity on the part of individual members of a subject group:

Сóрок демонстрáнтов **разошл́ись**  
The forty demonstrators dispersed

Егó три сестры́ **вы́шли** зáмуж  
His three sisters got married

#### *Note*

This factor may affect even indefinite numerals like **мнóго**: Мнóго фаши́стских самолётов **бомб́или** испáнский гóрод Гёрника ‘Many Fascist aircraft bombed the Spanish town of Guernica’.

(vi) A *plural* predicate is also used with **óба/óбе**: Óба сы́на **верну́лись** ‘Both sons returned’.

(vii) *The plural* is normal if the predicate is a *short adjective*:

Нéсколько статéй в éтом сбóрнике **интерéсны**  
Several articles in this collection are interesting

## Ordinal Numerals

### 203 Formation of ordinal numerals

---

Apart from **пéрвый** ‘first’ and **вторóй** ‘second’, ordinal numerals derive from cardinals (see 190). They are as follows:



1st	пёрвый	51st	пятьдесят пёрвый
2nd	второй	60th	шестидесятый
3rd	трётый	61st	шестьдесят пёрвый
4th	четвёртый	70th	семидесятый
5th	пятый	71st	сёмьдесят пёрвый
6th	шестой	80th	восмидесятый
7th	сдьмой	81st	восьмьдесят пёрвый
8th	восьмой	90th	девяно́стый
9th	девя́тый	91st	девяно́сто пёрвый
10th	деся́тый	100th	со́тый
11th	оди́ннадцатый	200th	двухсо́тый
12th	двена́дцатый	300th	трёхсо́тый
13th	трина́дцатый	400th	четырёхсо́тый
14th	четы́рнадцатый	500th	пятисо́тый
15th	пятна́дцатый	600th	шестисо́тый
16th	шестна́дцатый	700th	семисо́тый
17th	семна́дцатый	800th	восемисо́тый
18th	восемна́дцатый	900th	девятисо́тый
19th	девятна́дцатый	1000th	ты́сячный
20th	двадца́тый	1001st	ты́сяча пёрвый
21st	два́дцать пёрвый	1002nd	ты́сяча второ́й
22nd	два́дцать второ́й	2000th	двухты́сячный
30th	тридца́тый	3000th	трёхты́сячный
31st	три́дцать пёрвый	5000th	пяти́тысячный
40th	сороко́вый	1,000,000th	миллио́нный
41st	со́рок пёрвый	10,000,000th	деся́тымиллио́нный
50th	пятидеся́тый		

### Note

- Ordinal numbers decline like hard adjectives in **-ый/-ой**, except for **трётый** (see **151** (1) note).
- Девя́тый** ‘ninth’, **деся́тый** ‘tenth’, **двадца́тый** ‘twentieth’, **тридца́тый** ‘thirtieth’ have medial stress, cf. the initially-stressed cardinals from which they derive.
- Note the central **-и-** in 50th to 80th: **пятидеся́тый** ‘fiftieth’ etc.
- In abbreviations, the final letter of the ending is used (**1-я** пятиле́тка ‘the first five-year plan’, **3-й** де́нь ‘the third day’, **20-е** го́ды ‘the twenties’), unless the penultimate letter of the ending is a consonant, in which case the final *two* letters are used (**5-го** ря́да ‘of row 5’).
- In compounds, only the final component has the form of an ordinal and declines: **пятьсо́т четвёртый** биле́т ‘the five hundred **and** fourth ticket’, **в два́дцать пёрвом** ря́ду ‘in row 21’.

- (f) Roman numerals are used in denoting centuries (в **XX** (двадцá-том) вéке ‘in the 20th century’), Communist Party congresses (**XXII** (два́дцать второ́й) съезд ‘XXII Congress’), major international events (e.g. sessions of the General Assembly of the UNO), international congresses (**IX** (девя́тый) Конгрéсс МАПРЯ́Л ‘the **IX** Congress of MAPRYAL’) and monarchs (Пётр I (Пéрвый) ‘Peter the First’).

---

## 204 Ordinal numerals: usage

---

- (1) Like adjectives, ordinal numerals agree in gender, case and number with the noun they qualify:

в пýтом рядý      in row five

- (2) For use in time expressions see **206**.

- (3) Ordinals are used with pages, chapters, TV channels etc.:

уро́к пýтидеся́тый	lesson <b>fifty</b>
на страни́це семна́дцатой	on page <b>seventeen</b>
в т́ридцать седьмо́й главé	in chapter <b>thirty-seven</b>
по второ́й програ́мме	on channel <b>two</b>

and to denote clothes and footwear sizes

ту́фли т́ридцать четвёртого́ разме́ра  
size **thirty-four** shoes

See also **199** (2) note.

- (4) Ordinals cannot be extended by a superlative, as they can in English. Instead, prepositional phrases with **по** are used:

второ́я река́ <b>по</b> дли́нэ	the second <b>longest</b> river
тре́тий го́род <b>по</b> вели́чинэ	the third <b>largest</b> town

## Special Functions of Numerals

---

### 205 Cardinals and ordinals in fractions and decimals

---

- (1) Both cardinals and ordinals are used in **fractions** and **decimals**. In Russian *commas* are used instead of decimal points:

**(i) Fractions**

одна <b>пя́тая</b> (часть от до́ля understood)	one-fifth
две <b>пя́тых</b>	two-fifths
пять <b>восьмы́х</b>	five-eighths

Note the use of the genitive plural of the ordinal after 2–4 (cf. **194** (2) (v) note (a)).

**(ii) Decimals**

0,1 (одна́ де́сятая/но́ль це́лых и одна́ де́сятая)	0.1 <i>or</i> 1/10
0,05 (пять со́тых/но́ль це́лых и пять со́тых)	0.05
1,375 (одна́ це́лая и т́риста се́мьдесят пять ты́сячных)	1.375
2,4 (две це́лых и че́тыре де́сятых/два и че́тыре де́сятых)	2.4
57,365 (пятьдеся́т се́мь це́лых, т́риста ше́стьдеся́т пять ты́сячных)	57.365

*Note*

- (a) 1, 2 and compounds of 1, 2 take the gender of a following noun: два́дцать **оди́н** и одна́ де́сятая ме́тра ‘21.1 metres’, **две** и че́тыре де́сятых то́нны ‘2.4 tons’.
- (b) Decimals/fractions are followed by the genitive singular of the noun:

12,5% (двена́дцать и пять де́сятых **проце́нта**)  
12.5% (twelve point five per cent)

even if the decimal or fraction is declined:

Су́мма равня́ется пяти́ се́дью́м **насле́дства**  
The sum equals five-sevenths of the inheritance

- (c) Треть ‘a third’, че́тверть ‘a quarter’ and полови́на ‘a half’ are commonly used instead of fractions: две **трё́ти**/две **трё́тих** ‘two-thirds’, три **че́тверти**/три **че́твёртых** ‘three-quarters’, три **с че́твертью** ‘three and a quarter’, два **и пять де́сятых** **проце́нта**/два **с полови́ной** **проце́нта** ‘two and a half per cent’.
- (d) Temperatures are read as follows: т́ридцать ше́сть и ше́сть ‘36.6’ (normal body temperature).
- (2) По́л- combines with the genitive singular of many nouns to denote half of something: **по́лго́да** ‘six months’, **по́лме́тра** ‘half a metre’, **по́лчасá** ‘half an hour’.

*Note*

(i) A hyphen separates **пòл-** from the noun component when the latter begins with an **л** or a vowel or has proper-noun status: **пòл-лїтра** ‘half a litre’, **пòл-яблока** ‘half an apple’, **пòл-Варшавы** ‘half Warsaw’.

(ii) In oblique cases **пòл-** becomes **полу-**, while the noun component declines in the usual way:

Nom./Acc.	пòлчас-á
Gen.	получас-а
Dat.	получас-у
Instr.	получас-ом
Prep.	о получас-е

(iii) In colloquial speech, **-у-** is omitted in the declension of some compounds: в **пòл[у]стакáне** воды ‘in half a glass of water’, бóлее **пòл[у]миллиóна** ‘more than half a million’. The better-established of these oral forms have found their way into the written language as alternatives to forms with **полу-**: Емý нет и **пòлгòда/полугòда** ‘He is not even six months old’. **Пòл-** also appears in certain set phrases: **на пòлпути́** ‘half-way’, **на пòлста́вки** ‘on half-pay’, **к пòлпéрвого** ‘by half past twelve’ etc.

(iv) Compounds in **пòл-** are qualified by plural adjectives (**пéрвые** **пòлчасá** ‘the first half-hour’), while oblique cases are qualified by singular adjectives (**пòсле пéрвого** **полугòда** ‘after the first six months’).

(v) **Полу-** is also used as an adjective and noun prefix: **полукрýг** ‘semicircle’, **полуфина́л** ‘semi-final’, **получасовóй** ‘half-hour’ (adjective), **полуша́рие** ‘hemisphere’.

---

## 206 Telling the time

---

(1) Numerals are used to answer the questions **котóрый час?/скóлько врéмени?** ‘what is the time?’ and **в котóром часý?/во скóлько?** ‘at what time?’

(i) On the hour, the question **Котóрый час?/Скóлько врéмени?** ‘What is the time?’ is answered as

**час, два часá, три часá, четы́ре часá, пять часóв**  
one, two, three, four, five o’clock

up to **двена́дцать часóв** ‘twelve o’clock’.

(ii) The 24-hour clock may be used in official contexts: **семнадцать часoв** ‘five p.m.’ Otherwise one distinguishes (apart from **двенадцать часoв нoчи** ‘twelve o’clock at night’ and **двенадцать часoв дня** ‘twelve noon’):

час/два часа́/три часа́ <b>но́чи</b>	one/two/three o’clock <b>in the morning</b>
четы́ре часа́ through to oдiннадцaть часoв <b>утра́</b>	four o’clock through to eleven o’clock <b>in the morning</b>
час/два часа́/три часа́/ четы́ре часа́/пять часoв <b>дня</b>	one/two/three/four/five o’clock <b>in the afternoon</b>
шесть часoв through to oдiннадцaть часoв <b>вeчepa</b>	six o’clock through to eleven o’clock <b>in the evening</b>

*Note*

- Чeты́pe часа́ **но́чи** ‘four a.m.’ and пять часoв **вeчepa** ‘five p.m.’ are also found.
- Пoлдeнь** ‘midday’, **пoлночь** ‘midnight’.
- Approximation is expressed by the preposition oкoлo: oкoлo двyx часoв ‘about two o’clock’, oкoлo пoлyнoчи ‘about midnight’, oкoлo дeвятi вeчepa ‘about nine p.m.’

(iii) Between the hour and half-hour, the time is rendered as ‘five, ten minutes’ etc. of the *next* hour (expressed as an ordinal numeral):

пять минyт	} <b>шeстoгo</b> }	five	} past <b>five</b>
дeсять минyт		ten	
чeтвeрть		quarter	
двaдцaть минyт		twenty	
двaдцaть пять минyт		twenty-five	
пoлoвiнa		half	

(Literally, ‘five minutes of the sixth’, ‘ten minutes of the sixth’ etc.)

*Note*

- In spoken Russian **пoлoвiнa** can be replaced by **пoл-: пoлпepвoгo** ‘half past twelve’, **пoлдeвятoгo** ‘half past eight’.
- Минyт may be omitted in multiples of five (**двaдцaть пять (минyт) шeстoгo** ‘twenty-five (minutes) past five’); otherwise минyты/минyт must be included (**две минyты тpeтьeгo** ‘two minutes past two’).
- Ordinal numerals are used to denote unspecified times between hours: **втopoй час** ‘between one and two’ (usually closer to one

than two), **начало пятого** ‘just after four’ (lit. ‘the beginning of the fifth’) etc.:

Куда ж уходить? **Второй час**. На метро опоздала (Trifonov)  
 ‘What’s the hurry? It’s **past one**. You’ve missed the last train on the Underground’

(iv) After the half-hour the time is rendered as ‘without five, ten minutes’ etc. one (o’clock), two (o’clock), three (o’clock), the hours being expressed as *cardinal* numerals:

без двадцати пяти (минут)	} <b>четыре</b>	25 (minutes) to	} <b>four</b>
без двадцати (минут)		20 (minutes) to	
без четверти		quarter to	
без десяти (минут)		ten (minutes) to	
без пяти (минут)		five (minutes) to	
без двух минут		two minutes to	

(Literally ‘without 25 minutes four’ etc.)

#### Note

Neuter agreement in **было** три часа/десять минут первого/половина шестого/без пяти минут три ‘it was three o’clock/ten past twelve/half past five/five to three’ etc.

(2) **В котором часу?/во сколько?** ‘at what time?’

(i) The construction **в** + accusative case is used up to the half-hour:

<b>в час дня</b>	at 1 p.m.
<b>в пять минут шестого</b>	at five past five

(ii) After the half-hour, however, **в** is omitted:

<b>без четверти семь</b>	at quarter to seven
<b>без десяти два</b>	at ten to two

It is also omitted when the time phrase is governed by another preposition or a comparative:

Вторую тóню мы заканчиваем **около двух часов** нóчи (Nikolaev)  
 We complete the second haul **at about 2 o’clock** in the morning

Он ложился всегда **не позже одиннадцати** (Yakhontov)  
 He always went to bed **no later than 11 o’clock**

(iii) **В** + prepositional case is used to denote unspecified times between hours (**в начале** седьмого ‘at just gone six’, **во втором часу** ‘between one and two’):

Однако в **одиннадцатом часу́** он сам занервничал (Trifonov)  
However, **after it had gone ten** he began to get the jitters himself

and for times on the half-hour:

**В половине первого** (colloquially в полпервого) пояс теща  
побежала на Сокóл, к метрó — встречать (Trifonov)

**At half past midnight** mother-in-law rushed off to Sokol to meet  
them off the Underground

#### Note

The time may be given, both colloquially and in official contexts, using cardinals only: в три пятнадцать ‘at three fifteen’, cf.:

Телевизионный репортаж по второй программе смотрите в  
**семнадцать часов двадцать пять минут** (radio)

Watch TV coverage on channel 2 at 5.25 p.m.

## 207 Giving the date

(1) The questions **Какое (было, будет) число́?** ‘What is (was, will be) the date?’ are answered by an ordinal numeral in the neuter nominative and the name of a month in the genitive:

Сегодня <b>первое февраля́</b>	Today it is 1 February
Вчера́ <b>было двадцать пятое марта́</b>	Yesterday was 25 March
Скóро будет <b>семнадцатое ию́ня</b>	Soon it will be 17 June

(2) The question **Какого́ числа́?** ‘On what date?’ is answered by a genitive:

Международный же́нский день — **восьмого́ марта́**  
International Women’s Day is **on 8 March**

(3) The question **Како́й год?** ‘Which year is it?’ is answered as follows:

Сейча́с **двухты́сячный год** ‘Now it is **the year 2000**’ etc.

(4) The question **В како́м го́ду?** ‘in which year?’ is answered as follows:

<b>в ты́сяча девяти́со́том го́ду</b>	in 1900
<b>в ты́сяча девяти́со́т пятидеся́том го́ду</b>	in 1950
<b>в двухты́сячном го́ду</b>	in the year 2000
<b>в две ты́сячи пяти́на́дцатом го́ду</b>	in 2015

#### Note

(a) Only the final component of the numeral declines (see **203** note (e)).

- (b) If any detail other than the year itself is added, the year appears in the genitive case:

в мае тысяча девятьсот девяносто **восьмого** года in May **1998**

в воскресенье третьего сентября тысяча девятьсот тридцать **девятого** года

on Sunday 3 September 1939

- (c) Plural forms may be involved: **в 1957–1963 годах** во всех республиках появились законы об охране природы (*Izvestiya*) ‘**Over the period 1957–1963** laws on nature conservation appeared in all republics’.
- (d) Note the use of **г.** (singular) and **гг.** (plural) in abbreviations: **в 1995 г.** ‘in 1995’, **в 1957–1963 гг.** ‘in 1957–63’.
- (e) In denoting decades, **в** is used with the accusative *or* prepositional case: **В пятидесятые годы/пятидесятых годах XX века** ‘In the 1950s’. Compare: В 90-х годах в Японии планируют выпустить новую семью компьютеров (*Nedelya*) ‘The Japanese are planning to manufacture a new family of computers **in the 90s**’ (see also 429 (2) (ii) note (c)).

---

## 208 Age

---

- (1) The question **Сколько вам (ему, ей etc.) лет?** ‘How old are you (is he, she etc.)?’ is answered as follows:

Ему **двадцать один** год      He is twenty-one

Ей **сорок два** года      She is forty-two

Мне **восемнадцать** лет      I am eighteen

Ребёнку ещё **нет двух** лет (ещё не исполнилось два года/двух лет)

The child is not yet two (has not had its second birthday)

The numeral may be used alone in more relaxed speech: **Мне двадцать пять** (лет) ‘I am 25’. Note also the following:

«Нашей Лёночке **четвёртый** год» (*Russia Today*)

‘Our Lenchka is **in her fourth year**’

Галке **шёл 17-й** год (Rasputin)

Galka was **in her seventeenth year**



Емý ужé за сóрок or Емý **40** с чéм-то  
He is **in his forties**

Ей ещё **нет** двáдцатí  
She is in her **late teens**

(2) To answer the question **В каком вóзрасте?/Ско́льких лет?** ‘At what age?’ it is possible to use **в** + accusative:

Он ўмер **в сéмьдесят лет**      He died at the age of 70

Alternatively, a genitive construction may be used:

Он ўмер (**в вóзрасте**) **семíдесяти лет**  
He died at the age of 70

## 209 Quantitative nouns

Quantitative nouns include:

(1) The series **едини́ца** ‘one’, **дво́йка** ‘two’, **тро́йка** ‘three’, **четвёрка** ‘four’, **пятёрка** ‘five’, **шестёрка** ‘six’, **семёрка** ‘seven’, **восьмёрка** ‘eight’, **девятка** ‘nine’, **деся́тка** ‘ten’. Their functions are as follows:

(i) The first five of the nouns figure in the five-point marking scale: **едини́ца** ‘fail’, **дво́йка** ‘two’ (unsatisfactory), **тро́йка** ‘three’ (satisfactory), **четвёрка** ‘four’ (good), **пятёрка** ‘five’ (very good). Colloquially, cardinal numerals can also be used: **учи́ться на пять** ‘to get very good marks’.

(ii) The series can denote playing cards (**семёрка бубён, пик** ‘seven of diamonds, spades’, **деся́тка червёй, треф** ‘ten of hearts, clubs’) as well as the numbers of buses etc. (Он приёхал **на девятке** ‘He arrived on the no. 9’).

(iii) They also denote various other groups or objects consisting of several units: **тро́йка** ‘sleigh drawn by three horses’, ‘three-piece suit’, ‘three-man commission’; **четвёрка** ‘a rowing four’; **пятёрка** ‘group of five persons’; **Бо́льшая восьмёрка** ‘the G-8 countries’ etc.

(2) The series **пятьо́к** ‘a five’, **деся́ток** ‘a ten’ (also **полто́ра деся́тка** ‘fifteen’, **два деся́тка** ‘a score’), **со́бня** ‘a hundred’ (**не́сколько со́тен** ‘several hundreds’): **пятьо́к яи́ц** ‘five eggs’, **деся́ток сига́ре́т** ‘ten cigarettes’, **деся́тки люде́й** ‘dozens of people’, **продава́ть яи́ца со́бнями** ‘to sell eggs in hundreds’ etc.

## 210 Numerals in arithmetic

Numerals are used in operating the four arithmetical processes (**четыре арифметических действия**):

(1) Multiplication (Умножение).

оди́ножды три —	три	once three is three
два́жды три —	шесть	two threes are six
три́жды три —	де́вять	three threes are nine
четы́режды три —	двена́дцать	four threes are twelve
пятью́ три —	пятна́дцать	five threes are fifteen
ше́стью три —	восемна́дцать	six threes are eighteen
во́семью три —	два́дцать четы́ре	eight threes are twenty-four etc.

*Note*

Stress in **пятью́**, **ше́стью** etc. differs from the normal end stress of the instrumental **пятью́**, **шестью́**.

(2) Division (деление):

два́дцать во́семь (разде́лить) на четы́ре — бу́дет семь  
twenty-eight divided by four is seven

(3) Addition (Сложение):

к пяти́ прибави́ть два — бу́дет семь	} five plus two is seven
сложи́ть пять с двумя́ — бу́дет семь	
пять плю́с два — бу́дет семь	
пять да два — се́мь	

(4) Subtraction (Вычитание):

(вы́честь) два из пяти́ — бу́дет три	} five minus two is three
пять ми́нус два — бу́дет три	

*Note*

Два **в квадра́те** — четы́ре ‘The square of two is four’, Два **в ку́бе** — во́семь ‘Two cubed is eight’, **Ко́рень квадра́тный** из четырёх — два ‘The square root of four is two’.

## 211 Numerals in compound nouns and adjectives

(1) With the exception of 1, 90, 100 and 1000 (see (2) below), numeral components of compound nouns and adjectives appear in the *genitive* case of the cardinal:

---

<b>двухлётный</b>	two year old
<b>пятилётка</b>	five-year plan
<b>сорокапята́тка</b> (colloquial)	forty-five (gramophone record)
<b>двадцатипяти́минутная па́уза</b>	a 25-minute break

*Note*

A number of more abstract or technical terms take **дву-/тре-/четверо-** instead of **двух-/трёх-/четырёх-**: **двусло́жный** 'disyllabic', **двусторо́нный** 'bilateral', **двуязы́чный** 'bilingual' (note also **двоу́родный** брат 'cousin'); **треуго́льник** 'triangle'; **четвероно́гий** 'quadruped'.

(2) 1, 90, 100 and 1000 assume the forms **одно-**, **девяносто-**, **сто-** and **тысяче-** in compound nouns and numerals:

<b>одноэта́жный дом</b>	single-storey house
<b>девяно́стоми́нутная игра́</b>	a ninety-minute game
<b>сто́метровка</b>	hundred metres race
<b>сто́пятидеся́тиле́тие</b>	one hundred and fiftieth anniversary
<b>ты́сячеле́тие</b>	millennium

---

# The Verb

---

## Conjugation

### 212 Infinitive-preterite stem and present-future stem

---

(1) Each Russian verb has:

(i) An *infinitive (infinitive-preterite) stem*, from which the past tense, the future imperfective, past participles and most perfective gerunds are formed.

(ii) A *present-future stem*, from which the present tense, the future perfective, the imperative, present participles, imperfective gerunds and some perfective gerunds are formed.

In some verbs the two stems coincide, in others they differ.

(2) The present-future stem of a verb is derived by removing the last two letters of the third-person plural of the verb:

Infinitive	Third-person plural	Present–future stem
<b>понимáть</b> ‘to understand’	<b>понимá-ют</b>	<b>понимá-</b>
<b>говорíть</b> ‘to say’	<b>говор-я́т</b>	<b>говор-</b>
<b>сказа́ть</b> ‘to tell’	<b>ска́ж-ут</b>	<b>скаж-</b>

## 213 The conjugation of the verb

Each Russian verb conjugates in accordance with one of two patterns: the first (or **-е-**) conjugation and the second (or **-и-/я-**) conjugation. The following endings are added to the present-future stems of verbs:

First-conjugation endings	Second-conjugation endings
<b>-ю</b>	<b>-ю</b>
<b>-ешь</b>	<b>-ишь</b>
<b>-ет</b>	<b>-ит</b>
<b>-ем</b>	<b>-им</b>
<b>-ете</b>	<b>-ите</b>
<b>-ют</b>	<b>-ят</b>

### *Note*

- (a) In first-conjugation verbs **у** replaces **ю** after a consonant (except after **л** and **р** in certain verbs, for example, verbs in **-отъ**, **слать** 'to send' and **стлатъ** 'to spread').
- (b) **ѣ** replaces **е** under stress.
- (c) **у** and **а** replace **ю** and **я** respectively after **ж**, **ч**, **ш** or **щ** (see 16 (1)).

## 214 The first conjugation

(1) The first conjugation contains:

- (i) Most verbs in **-ать/-ять**.
- (ii) Many verbs in **-еть**.
- (iii) All verbs with a monosyllabic infinitive in **-ить**, **почить**, compounds of **-шибить**.
- (iv) All verbs in **-отъ**, **-уть**, **-ыть**, **-сть**, **-зть**, **-ти**, **-чь**.

(2) First-conjugation verbs subdivide into:

- (i) Those with stems ending in **vowels**.
- (ii) Those with stems ending in **consonants**.

## 215 First-conjugation verbs with stems ending in a vowel

First-conjugation verbs with vowel stems comprise most verbs of the first conjugation in **-ать/-ять** (including all verbs in **-авать, -евать, -ивать, -овать, -увать, -ывать**), many in **-еть** and some in **-ить, -уть, -ыть**.

### (1) Verbs in -ать/-ять

<b>знать</b> 'to know'	<b>гулять</b> 'to stroll'
я <b>зна́-ю</b>	гуля́-ю
ты <b>зна́-ешь</b>	гуля́-ешь
он <b>зна́-ет</b>	гуля́-ет
мы <b>зна́-ем</b>	гуля́-ем
вы <b>зна́-ете</b>	гуля́-ете
они́ <b>зна́-ют</b>	гуля́-ют

#### Note

- (a) Most vowel stems in **-ать/-ять** conjugate like **знать** and **гулять**. See, however, verbs in **-авать** and **-овать/-евать** ((2) and (3) below) and note that *stem-stressed* verbs in **-ять** lose **я** in conjugation (**се́ять** 'to sow': я се́ю, ты се́ешь), except for **ка́шлять** 'to cough': я ка́шляю, ты ка́шляешь.
- (b) **Смеяться** 'to laugh' conjugates смею́сь, смеёшься, смеётся, смеёмся, смеётесь, смеются.

### (2) Verbs in -авать.

<b>дава́ть</b> 'to give'
я да- <b>ю́</b>
ты да- <b>ёшь</b>
он да- <b>ёт</b>
мы да- <b>ём</b>
вы да- <b>ёте</b>
они́ да- <b>ю́т</b>

#### Note

Compounds of **дава́ть, -знава́ть** (e.g. **узнава́ть** 'to recognize') and **-ставáть** (e.g. **вставáть** 'to get up') conjugate like **дава́ть**.

### (3) Verbs in -овать/-евать

<b>ГОЛОСОВА́ТЬ</b> 'to vote'	<b>КОВА́ТЬ</b> 'to forge'	<b>ПЛЕВА́ТЬ</b> 'to spit'
я голосо́у-ю	ку-ю́	плю-ю́
ты голосо́у-еши́	ку-ёши́	плю-ёши́
он голосо́у-ет	ку-ёт	плю-ёт
мы голосо́у-ем	ку-ём	плю-ём
вы голосо́у-ете	ку-ёте	плю-ёте
они́ голосо́у-ют	ку-ю́т	плю-ю́т

*Note*

- (a) All verbs in **-овать** with more than two syllables conjugate like **голосова́ть** (some are stem stressed, e.g. **тре́бовать** 'to demand', **тре́бую**, **тре́буешь**).
- (b) Note the conjugation of the following:
- |                               |                  |
|-------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>воева́ть</b> 'to wage war' | вою́ю, вою́ешь   |
| <b>горева́ть</b> 'to grieve'  | гори́ю, гори́ешь |
| <b>жева́ть</b> 'to chew'      | жу́ю, жуёшь      |
| <b>клева́ть</b> 'to peck'     | клю́ю, клюёшь    |
| <b>снова́ть</b> 'to dart'     | снужу́, снуёшь   |
| <b>сова́ть</b> 'to thrust'    | сужу́, суёшь     |
- (c) **Застре́вать** 'to get stuck', **затева́ть** 'to undertake', **здороваться** 'to greet', **зева́ть** 'to yawn', **подозрева́ть** 'to suspect', **преодолева́ть** 'to overcome' and secondary imperfectives in **-дева́ть**, **-пева́ть**, **-спева́ть** conjugate like **знать**.

(4) Verbs in **-еть**

<b>КРАСНЕ́ТЬ</b> 'to blush'
я красне́-ю
ты красне́-еши́
он красне́-ет
мы красне́-ем
вы красне́-ете
они́ красне́-ют

*Note*

- (a) Verbs in **-еть** which are derived from adjectives (e.g. **худе́ть** 'to slim' from **худой** 'slim') and nouns (e.g. **сироте́ть** 'to be orphaned' from **сирота́** 'an orphan') conjugate like **красне́ть**, as do **владе́ть** 'to own', **гре́ть** 'to heat', **жале́ть** 'to pity', **зре́ть** 'to ripen', **име́ть** 'to have', **мле́ть** 'to grow numb', **преодоле́ть** 'to overcome', **сме́ть** 'to dare', **спе́ть** 'to ripen', **тле́ть** 'to decay', **уме́ть** 'to know how to'.

(b) **Петь** ‘to sing’ conjugates пою, поёшь, поёт, поём, поёте, поют.

(5) Verbs in -ить

<b>бить</b> ‘to strike’	<b>брить</b> ‘to shave’	<b>гнить</b> ‘to rot’
я бь-ю	брé-ю	гни-ю́
ты бь-ёшь	брé-ешь	гни-ёшь
он бь-ёт	брé-ет	гни-ёт
мы бь-ём	брé-ем	гни-ём
вы бь-ёте	брé-ете	гни-ёте
они́ бь-ют	брé-ют	гни-ю́т

*Note*

(a) **Вить** ‘to weave’, **лить** ‘to pour’, **пить** ‘to drink’ and **шить** ‘to sew’ conjugate like **бить** (with ‘zero vowel’ in the present-future stem).

(b) **Почить** ‘to rest’ conjugates like **гнить**, but with stress on **-и́-**:  
почию́, почйёшь.

(6) Verbs in -ыть

<b>мыть</b> ‘to wash’	
я мо́-ю	мы мо́-ем
ты мо́-ешь	вы мо́-ете
он мо́-ет	они́ мо́-ют

Similarly **выть** ‘to howl’, **крыть** ‘to roof’, **ныть** ‘to gnaw’ and **рыть** ‘to dig’.

(7) Verbs in -уть

**Дуть** ‘to blow’: дую́, дую́шь, дует, дуём, дуёте, дуют. Likewise **обуть** ‘to put shoes on someone’ and **разуть** ‘to take shoes off someone’.

## 216 First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems I

(1) Present-future and infinitive stems coincide

(i) Verbs in **-ать**, e.g. **ждать** ‘to wait’:

я жд-у
ты жд-ёшь



ОН ЖД-ѢТ  
 МЫ ЖД-ѢМ  
 ВЫ ЖД-ѢТЕ  
 ОНІ ЖД-УТ

Similarly:

<b>врать</b> 'to lie'	вру, врѣшь
<b>жаждать</b> 'to thirst for'	жажду, жаждешь
<b>жрать</b> 'to devour'	жру, жрѣшь
<b>орать</b> 'to yell'	ору, орѣшь
<b>рвать</b> 'to tear'	рву, рвѣшь
<b>ржать</b> 'to neigh'	ржу, ржѣшь
<b>сосать</b> 'to suck'	сосу, сосѣшь
<b>стонать</b> 'to groan'	стону, стонѣшь
<b>ткать</b> 'to weave'	тку, ткѣшь

#### Note

The absence of velar/sibilant mutation in the conjugation of **ткать** is abnormal, cf. mutation in **лгать** 'to lie': лгу, лжѣшь, лжѣт, лжѣм, лжѣте, лгут.

#### (ii) Verbs in **-(н)уть**:

**гнуть** 'to bend' гну, гнѣшь,

Likewise all other verbs in **-нуть** (some with stem stress (**мёрзнуть** 'to freeze': мёрзну, мёрзнѣшь) and a few with mobile stress, see 219 (3)(iv).

#### (iii) Verbs in **-оть**:

**колоть** 'to chop' колю́, колѣшь, колѣют

Likewise all other verbs in **-оть**: **бороться** 'to struggle', **молоть** 'to grind' (молю́, мелѣшь), **полоть** 'to weed', **пороть** 'to rip'.

### (2) Present-future stem and infinitive stem differ

#### (i) Through the presence of a mobile vowel in conjugation:

<b>брать</b> 'to take'	беру́, берѣшь (likewise <b>драть</b> 'to flay')
<b>звать</b> 'to call'	зову́, зовѣшь
<b>стлать</b> 'to spread'	стелю́, стѣлѣшь, стѣлѣют

#### (ii) **-в-** appears in conjugation:

<b>жить</b> 'to live'	живу́, живѣшь
<b>плыть</b> 'to swim'	плыву́, плывѣшь (likewise <b>слыть</b> 'to have the reputation of being')

(iii) **-д-** appears in conjugation:

<b>быть</b> ‘to be’	<b>б́уду, б́удешь</b>
<b>е́хать</b> ‘to travel’	<b>е́ду, е́дешь</b>

(iv) **-м-** or **-н-** appears in conjugation:

<b>взять</b> ‘to take’	<b>возьм́у, возьмёшь</b>
<b>деть</b> ‘to put’	<b>дэ́ну, дэ́нешь</b>
<b>жать</b> ‘to press’	<b>жму́, жмёшь</b>
<b>жать</b> ‘to reap’	<b>жну́, жнёшь</b>
<b>застрять</b> ‘to get stuck’	<b>застря́ну, застря́нешь</b>
<b>мять</b> ‘to crumple’	<b>мну́, мнёшь</b>
<b>начать</b> ‘to begin’	<b>начну́, начинёшь</b>
<b>понять</b> ‘to understand’	<b>пойму́, поймёшь</b>
<b>распять</b> ‘to crucify’	<b>распну́, распнёшь</b>
<b>снять</b> ‘to take off’	<b>сниму́, снимёшь</b>
<b>стать</b> ‘to become’	<b>ста́ну, ста́нешь</b>
<b>стыть</b> ‘to go cold’	<b>сты́ну, сты́нешь</b>

*Note*

Compounds of **-нять** with prefixes ending in a vowel (except for **принять** ‘to accept’: **приму́, примёшь**) conjugate like **понять** ‘to understand’; those with prefixes ending in a consonant conjugate like **снять** ‘to take off’.

(v) Mobile vowel lost in conjugation (verbs in **-ереть**):

<b>тереть</b> ‘to rub’	<b>тру, трёшь</b> (likewise compounds of <b>-мереть, -переть</b> )
------------------------	--

(vi) Others (**реветь, слать** and compounds of **-шибить**)

<b>ошибиться</b> ‘to err’	<b>ошибу́сь, ошибёшься</b>
<b>реветь</b> ‘to roar’	<b>реву́, ревьёшь</b>
<b>слать</b> ‘to send’	<b>шлю́, шлёшь, шлю́т</b>

---

## 217 First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems II: verbs in **-ать** with consonant mutation throughout conjugation

---

(1) Verbs of this type:

(i) Undergo consonant mutation throughout conjugation.

(ii) Switch stress from the ending to the *stem* after the first-person singular, except for:

(a) **Алка́ть** ‘to crave’, **колеба́ться** ‘to hesitate’, **колыха́ть** ‘to sway’, which have stem stress *throughout* conjugation.

(b) Verbs with stem stress in the infinitive, e.g. **ма́зать** ‘to daub’.

(2) The following consonant mutations operate:

Д : Ж	Т : Ч	Т : Щ	З : Ж	С : Ш
<b>глода́ть</b> ‘to gnaw’	<b>шепта́ть</b> ‘to whisper’	<b>клевета́ть</b> ‘to slander’	<b>вяза́ть</b> ‘to tie’	<b>писа́ть</b> ‘to write’
я глож- <b>у́</b>	шепч- <b>у́</b>	клевец- <b>у́</b>	вяж- <b>у́</b>	пиш- <b>у́</b>
ты глож- <b>ешь</b>	шепч- <b>ешь</b>	клевец- <b>ешь</b>	вяж- <b>ешь</b>	пиш- <b>ешь</b>
он глож- <b>ет</b>	шепч- <b>ет</b>	клевец- <b>ет</b>	вяж- <b>ет</b>	пиш- <b>ет</b>
мы глож- <b>ем</b>	шепч- <b>ем</b>	клевец- <b>ем</b>	вяж- <b>ем</b>	пиш- <b>ем</b>
вы глож- <b>ете</b>	шепч- <b>ете</b>	клевец- <b>ете</b>	вяж- <b>ете</b>	пиш- <b>ете</b>
они́ глож- <b>ут</b>	шепч- <b>ут</b>	клевец- <b>ут</b>	вяж- <b>ут</b>	пиш- <b>ут</b>
Г : Ж	К : Ч	Х : Ш	СК : Щ	Б : бл/м : мл/ П : пл
<b>двига́ть</b> ‘to move’	<b>пла́кать</b> ‘to weep’	<b>маха́ть</b> ‘to wave’	<b>иска́ть</b> ‘to seek’	<b>дрема́ть</b> ‘to doze’
я двйж- <b>у</b>	пла́ч- <b>у</b>	маш- <b>у́</b>	ищ- <b>у́</b>	дремл- <b>ю</b>
ты двйж- <b>ешь</b>	пла́ч- <b>ешь</b>	ма́ш- <b>ешь</b>	ищ- <b>ешь</b>	дремл- <b>ешь</b>
он двйж- <b>ет</b>	пла́ч- <b>ет</b>	ма́ш- <b>ет</b>	ищ- <b>ет</b>	дремл- <b>ет</b>
мы двйж- <b>ем</b>	пла́ч- <b>ем</b>	ма́ш- <b>ем</b>	ищ- <b>ем</b>	дремл- <b>ем</b>
вы двйж- <b>ете</b>	пла́ч- <b>ете</b>	ма́ш- <b>ете</b>	ищ- <b>ете</b>	дремл- <b>ете</b>
они́ двйж- <b>ут</b>	пла́ч- <b>ут</b>	ма́ш- <b>ут</b>	ищ- <b>ут</b>	дремл- <b>ют</b>

#### Note

- (a) **Двига́ть** ‘to move’ conjugates **двйжу**, **двйжешь** in figurative meanings (Им **двйжет** самолю́бие ‘He is motivated by self-esteem’) and in technical contexts (Пру́жина **двйжет** меха́низм ‘A spring activates the mechanism’), but **двигаю**, **двигаешь** in literal meaning (Он **двйгает** ме́бель ‘He moves the furniture’). Note also the distinction between **По́езд двйгается** ‘The train moves off’ and **По́езд двйжется** ‘The train is in motion’.
- (b) Other verbs of this type include **алка́ть** ‘to crave’ (**а́лчу**, **а́лчешь**), **бормота́ть** ‘to murmur’ (**бормочу́**, **бормоче́шь**), **брызга́ть** ‘to spray, sprinkle’ (**бры́зжу**, **бры́зжешь** in intransitive meanings (Фонта́н **бры́зжет** ‘The fountain plays’); **брызгаю**, **брызгаешь** in transitive meanings (Он **бры́згает** во́лосы духа́ми ‘He sprays his hair with perfume’)), **грохота́ть** ‘to rumble’ (**грохочу́**, **грохоче́т**), **каза́ться** ‘to seem’ (**кажу́сь**, **кажешься**) (likewise compounds

of **-казать**), **капать** ‘to drip’ (каплю, каплешь; also капаю, -аешь), **клокотать** ‘to gurgle’ (клокочет), **колебаться** (колеблюсь, колеблешься) ‘to hesitate’, **колыхать** ‘to sway’ (колышу, колышешь), **лепетать** ‘to babble’ (лепечу, лепечешь), **лизать** ‘to lick’ (лижу, лижешь), **мазать** ‘to daub’ (мажу, мажешь), **метать** ‘to throw’ (мечу, мечешь), **мурлыкать** ‘to purr’ (мурлычу, мурлычешь; also мурлыкаю, -аешь), **пахать** ‘to plough’ (пашу, пашаешь), **плескать** ‘to splash’ (плещу, плещешь), **плясать** ‘to dance’ (пляшу, пляшаешь), **полоскать** ‘to rinse’ (полощу, полощешь), **прятать** ‘to hide’ (прячу, прячешь), **резать** ‘to cut’ (режу, режешь), **роптать** ‘to grumble’ (ропщу, ропщешь), **рыскать** ‘to rove’ (рыщу, рыщешь), **скакать** ‘to gallop’ (скачу, скачешь), **скрежетать** ‘to grind’ (скрежечу, скрежечешь), **сыпать** ‘to sprinkle’ (сыплю, сыплешь), **тесать** ‘to hew’ (тешу, тешешь), **топтать** ‘to trample’ (топчу, топчешь), **трепать** ‘to touse’ (треплю, треплешь), **трепетать** ‘to tremble’ (трепещу, трепещешь), **тыкать** ‘to prod’ (тычу, тычешь), **хлопотать** ‘to busy oneself’ (хлопочу, хлопочешь), **чесать** ‘to scratch’ (чешу, чешешь), **щебетать** ‘to twitter’ (щебечу, щебечешь), **щекотать** ‘to tickle’ (щечочу, щечочешь), **щипать** ‘to pinch’ (щиплю, щиплешь).

## 218 First-conjugation verbs with consonant stems III: verbs in -ти, -сть/-зть, -чь

### (1) Verbs in -ти

Verbs in **-ти** subdivide in accordance with the following stem consonants:

<b>-б-</b>	<b>-д-</b>	<b>-з-</b>
<b>гребти́</b> ‘to row’	<b>идти́</b> ‘to go’	<b>везти́</b> ‘to convey’
я греб- <b>у́</b>	ид- <b>у́</b>	вез- <b>у́</b>
ты греб- <b>ёшь</b>	ид- <b>ёшь</b>	вез- <b>ёшь</b>
он греб- <b>ёт</b>	ид- <b>ёт</b>	вез- <b>ёт</b>
мы греб- <b>ём</b>	ид- <b>ём</b>	вез- <b>ём</b>
вы греб- <b>ёте</b>	ид- <b>ёте</b>	вез- <b>ёте</b>
они́ греб- <b>у́т</b>	ид- <b>у́т</b>	вез- <b>у́т</b>

<b>-с-</b> <b>нести́</b> 'to carry'	<b>-т-</b> <b>мести́</b> 'to sweep'	<b>-ст-</b> <b>расти́</b> 'to grow'
нес-у́	мет-у́	раст-у́
нес-ёшь	мет-ёшь	раст-ёшь
нес-ёт	мет-ёт	раст-ёт
нес-ём	мет-ём	раст-ём
нес-ёте	мет-ёте	раст-ёте
нес-у́т	мет-у́т	раст-у́т

Other verbs include:

<b>блести́</b> 'to conserve'	блюду́, блюдёшь
<b>блести́</b> 'to wander'	бреду́, бредёшь
<b>вести́</b> 'to lead'	веду́, ведёшь
<b>обрести́</b> 'to acquire'	обрету́, обретёшь
<b>паст́и</b> 'to tend'	пасу́, пасёшь
<b>плести́</b> 'to plait'	плету́, плетёшь
<b>ползти́</b> 'to crawl'	ползу́, ползёшь
<b>скрести́</b> 'to scour, claw'	скребу́, скребёшь
<b>трясти́</b> 'to shake'	трясу́, трясе́шь
<b>цвести́</b> 'to flower'	цвету́, цветёшь

## (2) Verbs in -сть/-зть

Verbs in **-сть/-зть** subdivide in accordance with the following stem consonants:

<b>-д-</b> <b>класть</b> 'to place'	<b>-н-</b> <b>клясть</b> 'to curse'	<b>-т-</b> <b>честь</b> 'to consider'	<b>-з-</b> <b>лезть</b> 'to climb'
я клад-у́	клян-у́	чт-у	лэз-у
ты клад-ёшь	клян-ёшь	чт-ёшь	лэз-ёшь
он клад-ёт	клян-ёт	чт-ёт	лэз-ет
мы клад-ём	клян-ём	чт-ём	лэз-ем
вы клад-ёте	клян-ёте	чт-ёте	лэз-ете
они́ клад-у́т	клян-у́т	чт-ут	лэз-ут

Other verbs include the following:

<b>грызть</b> 'to gnaw'	грызу́, грызёшь
<b>красть</b> 'to steal'	краду́, крадёшь
<b>пасть</b> 'to fall'	паду́, падёшь
<b>сесть</b> 'to sit down'	сяду́, сядёшь

*Note*

**Честь** ‘to consider’ is now obsolete as an independent verb, but appears as a component of compound prefixed verbs such as **учесть** ‘to take into account’.

## (3) Verbs in -чь

Verbs in **-чь** subdivide into **г**-stems (with mutation to **ж** before **е/ё**) and **к**-stems (with mutation to **ч** before **е/ё**).

<b>-г-</b>	<b>-к-</b>
<b>беречь</b>	<b>печь</b>
‘to look after’	‘to bake’
я берег- <b>у́</b>	пек- <b>у́</b>
ты береж- <b>ёшь</b>	печ- <b>ёшь</b>
он береж- <b>ёт</b>	печ- <b>ёт</b>
мы береж- <b>ём</b>	печ- <b>ём</b>
вы береж- <b>ёте</b>	печ- <b>ёте</b>
они́ берег- <b>у́т</b>	пек- <b>у́т</b>

Other verbs include the following:

<b>влечь</b> ‘to pull, draw’	влеку́, влечёшь, влеку́т
<b>жечь</b> ‘to burn’	жгу, жжёшь, жгут
<b>лечь</b> ‘to lie down’	лягу, ляжешь, лягут
<b>мочь</b> ‘to be able’	могу́, можешь, могут
<b>напрячь</b> ‘to strain’	напрягу́, напряжёшь, напрягу́т (similarly other compounds of <b>-прять</b> )
<b>пренебречь</b> ‘to disdain’	пренебрегу́, пренебрежёшь, пренебрегу́т
<b>сечь</b> ‘to cut’	секу́, сечёшь, секу́т
<b>стричь</b> ‘to cut’ (hair)	стригу́, стрижёшь, стригу́т
<b>течь</b> ‘to flow’	течёт, теку́т

*Note*

**Достичь** (= **достигнуть**) ‘to achieve’: **достигну**, **достигнешь**. Both infinitives are standard forms. **Достичь** has a colloquial nuance and is commoner in the press; **достигнуть** is regarded as more ‘bookish’.

## 219 Mobile stress in the conjugation of first-conjugation verbs

(1) Stress change in the conjugation of verbs of more than one syllable

usually involves a shift of stress from the *ending* in the first-person singular to the *stem* in the other forms of the present tense or future perfective: **я пишу́** ‘I write’, **ты пи́шешь** ‘you write’; **я приму́** ‘I shall accept’, **ты при́мешь** ‘you will accept’ etc.

(2) Verbs with stem-stressed infinitives (e.g. **прятать** ‘to hide’) are not subject to stress change in conjugation.

(3) Stress change takes place in the conjugation of the following types of first-conjugation verbs with *consonant* stems:

(i) Verbs in **-ать** with end stress in the infinitive and consonant mutation throughout conjugation (see 217). Note that **алка́ть**, **колеба́ть[ся]** and **колыха́ть** take stem stress *throughout* conjugation.

(ii) **Стлать** ‘to spread’ (see 216 (2) (i)) and **стонать** ‘to groan’ (see 216 (1) (i)).

(iii) Verbs in **-оть** (see 216 (1) (iii)).

(iv) Compounds of **-гляну́ть**, e.g. **загляну́ть** ‘to peep in’ (**загляну́, заглянешь**), **обману́ть** ‘to deceive’, **тону́ть** ‘to drown’, **тяну́ть** ‘to pull’ (see 216 (1) (ii)).

(v) **Принять** ‘to accept’ and compounds of **-нять** with prefixes ending in a consonant (see 216 (2) (iv) note).

(vi) **Мочь** ‘to be able’ (see 218 (3)).

## 220 Second conjugation: present-future stems

(1) The present-future stems of verbs in the second conjugation end in a *consonant* (with very few exceptions, which include **бо-я́ться** ‘to fear’, **сто́-ить** ‘to cost’, **сто-я́ть** ‘to stand’, **стро́-ить** ‘to build’).

(2) Second-conjugation verbs include:

(i) All verbs in **-ить** (except for those with monosyllabic infinitives (see 215 (5), 216 (2) (ii)), **почи́ть** ‘to rest’ and compounds of **-шиби́ть** (see 216 (2) (vi)).

(ii) Many verbs in **-еть**.

(iii) Some verbs in **-ать**.

(iv) Two verbs in **-я́ть**: **бо́-я́ться** ‘to fear’, **сто́-я́ть** ‘to stand’.

## 221 Present-future endings in the second conjugation

Second-conjugation verbs conjugate as follows:

Verbs in <b>-ить</b>	Verbs in <b>-еть</b>	Verbs in <b>-ать</b>	Verbs in <b>-ять</b>
<b>говорить</b> 'to speak'	<b>смотреть</b> 'to look'	<b>стучать</b> 'to knock'	<b>стоять</b> 'to stand'
я говор- <b>ю</b>	смотр- <b>ю</b>	стуч- <b>у</b>	сто- <b>ю</b>
ты говор- <b>ишь</b>	смóтр-ишь	стуч- <b>ишь</b>	сто- <b>ишь</b>
он говор- <b>ит</b>	смóтр-ит	стуч- <b>ит</b>	сто- <b>ит</b>
мы говор- <b>им</b>	смóтр-им	стуч- <b>им</b>	сто- <b>им</b>
вы говор- <b>ите</b>	смóтр-ите	стуч- <b>ите</b>	сто- <b>ите</b>
они говор- <b>ят</b>	смóтр-ят	стуч- <b>ят</b>	сто- <b>ят</b>

(1) **ю** is replaced by **у** and **я** by **а** after **ж, ч, ш** or **щ** (see 16 (1)).

(2) Second-conjugation verbs in **-еть** include many verbs which denote sounds, and some others: **вертеть** 'to spin' (верчú, вёртишь), **видеть** 'to see' (вижу, видишь), **висеть** 'to hang' (вишú, висишь), **глядеть** 'to glance' (гляжú, глядишь), **гореть** 'to burn' (горю, горяишь), **греметь** 'to thunder' (гремлю, гремишь), **гудеть** 'to buzz' (гудит), **звенеть** 'to ring' (звеню, звенишь), **кипеть** 'to boil' (киплю, кипишь), **лететь** 'to fly' (лечú, летишь), **свистеть** 'to whistle' (свишú, свистишь), **сидеть** 'to sit' (сижú, сидишь), **скрипеть** 'to creak' (скриплю, скрипишь), **смотреть** 'to look' (смотрю, смóтришь), **терпеть** 'to endure' (терплю, тёрпишь), **храпеть** 'to snore' (храплю, храпишь), **хрипеть** 'to wheeze' (хриплю, хрипишь), **шипеть** 'to hiss' (шиплю, шипишь), **шуметь** 'to make a noise' (шумлю, шумишь). For consonant changes see 222 and for stress changes see 223.

(3) Second-conjugation verbs in **-ать** include:

(i) Many verbs associated with sound, with stems ending in **ж, ч, ш** or **щ**: **бренчать** 'to strum' (бренчú, бренчишь); likewise **визжать** 'to scream, squeal', **ворчать** 'to growl', **дребезжать** 'to jingle' (third person only), **жужжать** 'to buzz', **звучать** 'to sound' (third person only), **кричать** 'to shout', **молчать** 'to be silent', **мычать** 'to moo, bellow', **пищать** 'to squeak', **рычать** 'to roar', **слышать** 'to hear', **стучать** 'to knock', **трещать** 'to crackle'.

(ii) A number of other verbs: **гнать** 'to drive' (гоню, гонишь), **держать** 'to hold' (держú, дёржишь), **дрожать** 'to tremble' (дрожу, дрожишь), **дышать** 'to breathe' (дышú, дышишь), **лежать** 'to lie' (лежú, лежишь), **спать** 'to sleep' (сплю, спишь).



(4) **Бояться** ‘to fear’ conjugates бою́сь, бойи́шься.

## 222 Consonant change in the conjugation of second-conjugation verbs

A consistent feature of the second conjugation is the mutation of the consonant in the first-person singular of the present tense and future perfective of verbs in **-ить** and **-еть**. This is regular for all second-conjugation verbs with stems ending in **-б-, -в-, -д-, -з-, -с-, -т-, -ф-** (verbs in **-ить** only), **-м-, -п-** and **-ст-** (verbs in **-ить** and **-еть**).

<b>б : бл</b> <b>люби́ть</b> ‘to love’	<b>в : вл</b> <b>ста́вить</b> ‘to stand’	<b>д : ж</b> <b>гла́дить</b> ‘to iron’	<b>з : ж</b> <b>ла́зить</b> ‘to climb’
--	--	--	--

я люблю́	ста́влю	гла́жу	ла́жу
ты люби́шь	ста́вишь	гла́дишь	ла́зишь
он люби́т	ста́вит	гла́дит	ла́зит
мы люби́м	ста́вим	гла́дим	ла́зим
вы люби́те	ста́вите	гла́дите	ла́зите
они́ любя́т	ста́вят	гла́дят	ла́зят

<b>с : ш</b> <b>проси́ть</b> ‘to ask’	<b>т : ч</b> <b>плати́ть</b> ‘to pay’	<b>ф : фл</b> <b>графи́ть</b> ‘to rule’ (paper)
---	---	---

я про́шу	плачу́	графи́ю
ты про́сишь . . .	пла́тишь . . .	графи́шь . . .

### м : мл

### п : пл

<b>корми́ть</b> ‘to feed’	<b>шуме́ть</b> ‘to make a noise’	<b>топи́ть</b> ‘to heat’	<b>храпе́ть</b> ‘to snore’
------------------------------	--	-----------------------------	-------------------------------

я кормлю́	шумлю́	топлю́	храплю́
ты ко́рмишь . . .	шуми́шь . . .	то́пишь . . .	храни́шь . . .

### ст : щ

<b>мсти́ть</b> ‘to avenge’	<b>свисте́ть</b> ‘to whistle’
-------------------------------	----------------------------------

мщу́	сви́щу
мсти́шь . . .	свисти́шь . . .

*Note*

The mutation **т : щ** affects only certain perfective verbs (e.g. **прекрати́ть** ‘to cease’ (прекращу́, прекрати́шь).

For other verbs affected by consonant changes see **221** (2) and **223** (3) (i), (ii).

## 223 Stress change in the second conjugation

(1) Many second-conjugation verbs with end-stressed infinitives shift stress from the ending in the first-person singular to the stem in the rest of the conjugation, e.g. **кури́ть** ‘to smoke’ (курю́, ку́ришь, ку́рит). Verbs with *stem-stressed* infinitives (e.g. **ве́рить** ‘to believe’) do not undergo stress change in conjugation.

(2) Verbs in **-ить**, **-еть** and **-ать** which undergo stress change in conjugation include the following types:

<b>варить</b> ‘to boil’	<b>смотреть</b> ‘to look’	<b>держать</b> ‘to hold’
я <b>варю́</b>	смот <b>рю́</b>	держу́
ты ва <b>ри</b> шь	смот <b>ри</b> шь	де <b>р</b> жишь
он ва <b>ри</b> т	смот <b>ри</b> т	де <b>р</b> жит
мы ва <b>ри</b> м	смот <b>ри</b> м	де <b>р</b> жим
вы ва <b>ри</b> те	смот <b>ри</b> те	де <b>р</b> жите
они́ ва <b>ря</b> т	смот <b>ря</b> т	де <b>р</b> жат

(3) Other verbs which undergo stress change include the following (those which also undergo *consonant* change (see **222**) are indicated with an asterisk):

(i) Verbs in **-ить**:

* <b>бродить</b>	‘to wander’	<b>дружить</b>	‘to be friends’
* <b>будить</b>	‘to awaken’	<b>душить</b>	‘to stifle’
* <b>водить</b>	‘to lead’	<b>жениться</b>	‘to marry’
* <b>возить</b>	‘to convey’	* <b>заблудиться</b>	‘to get lost’
<b>вскочить</b>	‘to jump up’	* <b>катить</b>	‘to roll’
* <b>гасить</b>	‘to cancel’	<b>клонить</b>	‘to incline’
* <b>грузить</b>	‘to load’	* <b>колотить</b>	‘to hammer’
* <b>давить</b>	‘to press, crush’	* <b>копить</b>	‘to accumulate’
<b>дарить</b>	‘to present’	* <b>кормить</b>	‘to feed’
<b>делить</b>	‘to share’	* <b>косить</b>	‘to scythe’
<b>дразнить</b>	‘to tease’	* <b>крестить</b>	‘to christen’

* <b>купить</b>	'to buy'	* <b>сердить</b>	'to anger'
* <b>лепить</b>	'to mould, sculpt'	<b>служить</b>	'to serve'
<b>лечить</b>	'to give treatment'	compounds of	* <b>-становить</b>
* <b>ловить</b>	'to catch'	* <b>ступить</b>	'to step'
compounds of	<b>-ложить</b> 'to lay'	* <b>судить</b>	'to judge'
* <b>любить</b>	'to like'	<b>сушить</b>	'to dry'
<b>манить</b>	'to entice'	<b>тащить</b>	'to drag'
compounds of	* <b>-менить</b> 'to change'	* <b>топить</b>	'to heat'
<b>молить</b>	'to pray'	* <b>торопить</b>	'to hasten'
* <b>молотить</b>	'to thresh'	<b>точить</b>	'to sharpen'
<b>мочить</b>	'to wet'	* <b>трудиться</b>	'to labour'
* <b>носить</b>	'to carry'	<b>тушить</b>	'to extinguish'
<b>пилить</b>	'to saw'	<b>уронить</b>	'to drop'
* <b>платить</b>	'to pay'	<b>учить</b>	'to teach'
<b>получить</b>	'to receive'	<b>хвалить</b>	'to praise'
<b>провалиться</b>	'to fail'	* <b>ходить</b>	'to go, walk'
* <b>проглотить</b>	'to swallow'	<b>хоронить</b>	'to bury'
* <b>просить</b>	'to request'	<b>ценить</b>	'to value'
* <b>простудиться</b>	'to catch cold'	* <b>чертить</b>	'to draw'
* <b>пустить</b>	'to let go'	* <b>шутить</b>	'to joke'
* <b>рубить</b>	'to chop'	* <b>явить</b>	'to display'
* <b>светить</b>	'to shine'		

### Note

**Косить** 'to squint' has fixed end stress in conjugation.

Some verbs have alternative stress in conjugation:

до́ит or дои́т	'milks'
зубри́т or зубри́т	'swots'
кро́шит or кроши́т	'crumbles'
кру́жит or кружи́т	'circles'
по́ит or пои́т	'waters'

### (ii) Verbs in -еть:

* <b>вертеть</b> 'to spin'	я верчу́	ты ве́ртишь
<b>смотреть</b> 'to look'	я смотре́ю	ты смóтришь
* <b>терпеть</b> 'to endure'	я терплю́	ты те́рпишь

### (iii) Verbs in -ать:

<b>гнать</b> 'to drive'	я гоню́	ты го́нишь
<b>держать</b> 'to hold'	я держу́	ты де́ржишь
<b>дышать</b> 'to breathe'	я дышу́	ты ды́шишь

## 224 Irregular verbs

A number of verbs conform to none of the above patterns, or combine elements of both conjugations. They include

<b>бежа́ть</b> 'to run'	<b>есть</b> 'to eat'	<b>хоте́ть</b> 'to want'	<b>да́ть</b> 'to give'
я бежу́	ем	хочу́	дам
ты бежи́шь	ешь	хоче́шь	дашь
он бежи́т	ест	хоче́т	даст
мы бежи́м	е́дим	хоти́м	да́дим
вы бежи́те	е́дите	хоти́те	да́дите
они́ бежу́т	едя́т	хотя́т	даду́т

as well as **чита́ть** 'to honour' (читу, чита́ешь, чита́ет, чита́ем, чита́ете, чита́ют/чита́ют).

## 225 Deficiencies in the conjugation of certain verbs

(1) The following verbs have no first-person singular: **затми́ть** 'to eclipse', **очути́ться** 'to find oneself', **побе́дить** 'to win', **убе́дить** 'to convince', **чуди́ть** 'to behave eccentrically'. However, paraphrases can be used: **могу́ очути́ться** 'I may find myself', **я смогу́ побе́дить** 'I shall win', **мне уда́стся его́ убе́дить** 'I shall convince him', **я не ду́маю чуди́ть** 'I have no intention of behaving eccentrically'. A paraphrase (e.g. **говори́ю де́рзости**) is also required for the first-person singular of **де́рзить** 'to be impertinent' (since **держу́**, as the first-person singular of **держа́ть** 'to hold', is not available).

(2) Some doubt remains about the first-person singular of **пылесоси́ть** (colloquial) 'to Hoover'; **пылесосу́** is recorded, but the paraphrase **убира́ю пылесосом** 'I Hoover' is often preferred.

(3) Some verbs have no first- or second-person singular or plural. They include **звуча́ть** 'to sound', **зна́чить** 'to mean' ('I mean', 'you mean' etc. are rendered as **хочу́ сказа́ть**, **хочешь сказа́ть**), **означа́ть** 'to signify', **течь** 'to flow'.

(4) The first and second persons of some other verbs (e.g. **горе́ть** 'to burn', **кипе́ть** 'to boil') appear in figurative meanings only: **горе́ю** желáнием у́ехать 'I am burning with a desire to leave', **киплю́** негодовáнием 'I am boiling with indignation'.

(5) **Кѹшать** ‘to eat’ should not be used in the first-person singular or plural, while in the second-person singular and plural it can sound cloying, and the third-person forms are addressed mainly to children. ‘To eat’ is best rendered by the verb **есть** (see 224), except in the imperative, where **кѹшай!**, **кѹшайте!** are preferred. (Note, however, a mother’s strict instruction to her child: **Ешь** всё по порядку! ‘Eat everything in the right order!’ See 229 (2).)

(6) **Слы́хатъ** ‘to hear’ is used only in the infinitive and past tense (there are, however, no such restrictions on **слы́шать** ‘to hear’).

(7) **Мочь** ‘to be able’ and **хотѣть** ‘to want’ are not normally found in the imperfective future. Instead, the perfectives **смочь**, **захотѣть** are used, or, in the case of **мочь**, the paraphrase **быть в состоя́нии** ‘to be capable of’.

## 226 The verb ‘to be’

(1) The verb **быть** ‘to be’ has no present tense in Russian:

Я ру́сский	I am Russian
Э́то мой муж	This is my husband

(2) A dash may be used for emphasis:

Я ру́сский, а он — нет	I am Russian and he is not
------------------------	----------------------------

A dash also appears in definitions:

Москва́ — сто́лица	Moscow is the capital of
Росси́и	Russia

(3) ‘It is’ has no equivalent in many impersonal expressions:

<b>Интересно́</b> слѹшать ра́дио	It is interesting to listen to the radio
<b>Темне́ет</b>	It is getting dark
<b>Хо́лодно</b>	It is cold

(4) The declarative ‘**there is/are**’ either has no equivalent in Russian or may be rendered by a dash:

На стене́ — карти́на	There is a picture on the wall
----------------------	--------------------------------

Alternatively, На стене́ **есть** карти́на. See (5).

(5) **Есть**, a relic of a former verb conjugation, may be used for emphasis. **Есть** is particularly common:

- Папи́рoсы **е́сть?**  
— **Е́сть!**  
'Are there any cigarettes?'  
'Yes, there are'

- Кем же ты хочешь быть?  
— Кем **есть** — рядовым матросом  
'What do you want to be, then?'  
'What **I am**, an ordinary rating'  
— Нужно справедливое решение  
— Наше решение **и есть** справедливое  
'We need an equitable solution'  
'Our solution **is** equitable'

Закон **есть** закон  
The law is the law

- Есть** такие люди, которые не любят икры  
There are people who do not like caviar

- Прямая линия **есть** кратчайшее расстояние между двумя точками  
A straight line is the shortest distance between two points

- Целью переговоров **является** подписание договора  
The aim of the talks is the signing of a treaty

Равноправие **является** основой нашего общества  
Equality is the basis of our society

- Вот** моя тетрадь  
Here is/there is my exercise book

- Наступает** пáуза                      **There is** a pause

<b>Разда́ются</b> аплодисме́нты	There <b>is</b> applause
<b>сиде́ть</b> в тю́рьме	<b>to be</b> in prison
<b>служи́ть</b> в а́рмии	<b>to be</b> in the army
<b>состо́ять</b> чле́ном	<b>to be</b> a member
<b>сто́ять</b> на я́коре	<b>to be</b> at anchor
<b>Простира́ются</b> леса́	There <b>are</b> forests
<b>учи́ться</b> в университе́те	<b>to be</b> at university

(9) **Быва́ть** denotes repetition or frequency:

Я ча́сто **быва́ю** в Москв́е

I am often in Moscow

В на́шем рестора́не **быва́ют** гри́бы

You can sometimes get mushrooms in our restaurant

## 227 Formation of the imperative

(1) The *familiar* imperative is used in issuing commands to persons one normally addresses as **ты** (see 115). The *formal* imperative, which is used in addressing people whom one would normally address as **вы** (see 115), is made by adding **-те** to the familiar imperative.

(2) The familiar imperative is formed from imperfective and perfective verbs by adding **-й**, **-и** or **-ь** to the present-future stem (see 212).

### (i) Imperative in -й

The letter **-й(те)** is added to present-future stems ending in a vowel.

Infinitive	Third-person plural	Stem	Imperative
<b>петь</b>	<b>по-ю́т</b>	<b>по-</b>	<b>по́й(те)</b>
<b>постро́ить</b>	<b>постро́-ят</b>	<b>постро́-</b>	<b>постро́й(те)</b>
<b>рабо́тать</b>	<b>рабо́та-ю́т</b>	<b>рабо́та-</b>	<b>рабо́тай(те)</b>

#### Note

- The imperatives of **дава́ть** ‘to give’ and compounds of **-дава́ть**, **-знава́ть** and **-става́ть** are as follows: **дава́й(те)** ‘give’, **встава́й(те)** ‘get up’, etc.
- Бить** ‘to hit’ has the imperative **бей(те)**; **вить** ‘to weave’, **лить** ‘to pour’, **пить** ‘to drink’, **шить** ‘to sew’ form their imperatives in the same way.
- Perfective compounds in **-е́хать** (e.g. **прие́хать**) have the same

imperative as imperfective compounds in **-ежж́ать** (e.g. **приежж́ать**):  
**приежж́ай(те)!** ‘come!’

## (ii) Imperative in -и

The letter **-и(те)** is added to the present-future stem of verbs with *final* or *mobile* stress in conjugation and with a present-future stem ending in a *consonant*.

### (a) Final stress throughout conjugation:

Infinitive	Third-person plural	Stem	Imperative
<b>вест́и</b>	<b>вед-у́т</b>	<b>вед-</b>	<b>веди́(те)</b>
<b>взя́ть</b>	<b>возь-му́т</b>	<b>возьм-</b>	<b>возьми́(те)</b>
<b>говор́ить</b>	<b>говор-я́т</b>	<b>говор-</b>	<b>говори́(те)</b>

### (b) Mobile stress in conjugation:

<b>держ́ать</b>	<b>де́рж-ат</b>	<b>де́рж-</b>	<b>держи́(те)</b>
<b>получ́ить</b>	<b>полу́ч-ат</b>	<b>полу́ч-</b>	<b>получи́(те)</b>
<b>шеп́тать</b>	<b>ше́пч-ут</b>	<b>ше́пч-</b>	<b>шепчи́(те)</b>

## (iii) Imperative in -ь

A soft sign is added to the present-future stem of verbs which are *stem-stressed throughout conjugation* and whose present-future stem ends in a *single consonant*.

<b>ве́рить</b>	<b>ве́р-ят</b>	<b>ве́р-</b>	<b>верь(те)</b>
<b>зажа́рить</b>	<b>зажа́р-ят</b>	<b>зажа́р-</b>	<b>зажа́рь(те)</b>
<b>ма́зать</b>	<b>ма́ж-ут</b>	<b>ма́ж-</b>	<b>мажь(те)</b>
<b>пла́кать</b>	<b>пла́ч-ут</b>	<b>пла́ч-</b>	<b>плачь(те)</b>
<b>поста́вить</b>	<b>поста́в-ят</b>	<b>поста́в-</b>	<b>поста́вь(те)</b>

### Note

- (a) Apart from many stem-stressed second-conjugation verbs (**знако́мить** ‘to acquaint’ (imper. **знако́мь**), **мно́жить** ‘to multiply’ (imper. **мно́жь**) etc.), this category contains a number of first-conjugation verbs with consonant stems and stress on the stem throughout conjugation: **бы́ть** ‘to be’ (imper. **бу́дь**), **де́ть** ‘to put’ (imper. **де́нь**), **ле́зть** ‘to climb’ (imper. **ле́зь**), **ма́зать** ‘to daub’ (imper. **ма́жь**), **пря́тать** ‘to hide’ (imper. **пря́чь**), **ре́зать** ‘to cut’ (imper. **ре́жь**), **се́сть** ‘to sit down’ (imper. **ся́дь**), **ста́ть** ‘to stand’ (imper. **ста́нь**). Note **ле́чь** ‘to lie down’, imper. **ляг** — a soft sign may not appear after a velar consonant.
- (b) Stem-stressed **по́мнить** ‘to remember’ has imperative **по́мни**,



since the stem ends in *two* consonants.

- (c) The third-person imperative is expressed by the particle **пусть** and the third-person singular or plural of the present tense or perfective future: **пусть (она́) пи́шет** ‘let her write’, **пусть (они́) придут** ‘let them come’.

## 228 Stress in the imperative

With the exception of a number of monosyllabic imperatives, where the stress necessarily falls on the single syllable (**жди!** ‘wait!’, **пой!** ‘sing!’, **не сме́йся!** ‘don’t laugh!’), stress in the imperative falls on the same syllable as in the first-person singular.

Infinitive	First-person singular	Imperative
<b>гна́ть</b>	<b>гони́ю</b>	<b>гони́!</b>
<b>дыша́ть</b>	<b>дышу́</b>	<b>дыши́!</b>
<b>звать</b>	<b>зову́</b>	<b>зови́!</b>
<b>писа́ть</b>	<b>пишу́</b>	<b>пиши́!</b>
<b>получи́ть</b>	<b>получу́</b>	<b>получи́!</b>
<b>сказа́ть</b>	<b>скажу́</b>	<b>скажи́!</b>
<b>смотре́ть</b>	<b>смотрю́</b>	<b>смотри́!</b>

## 229 Verbs with no imperative or a little-used imperative

(1) **Ви́деть** ‘to see’ and **слы́шать** ‘to hear’ do not have imperatives. However, **слу́шай!** ‘listen!’ and **смотри́!** ‘look!’ are commonly used.

(2) **Есть** ‘to eat’ has the imperative **ешь!** However, it is usually replaced by the imperative of **ку́шать**, since the latter has a courteous nuance absent in the rather familiar **ешь!** (see 225 (5)).

## 230 Formation of the past tense

(1) The past tense of verbs with infinitives in **-ть** and **-сть** is formed by replacing **-ть** or **-сть** by **-л** to give the masculine past:

кури́ть	<b>он кури́л</b>	‘he was smoking’
писа́ть	<b>он писа́л</b>	‘he was writing’
сказа́ть	<b>он сказа́л</b>	‘he said’

упасть	<b>он упáл</b>	‘he fell’
покраснеть	<b>он покраснёл</b>	‘he blushed’

(2) The feminine, neuter and plural are formed by adding **-а**, **-о** and **-и** respectively to the masculine:

он писáл/упáл	(masculine)
онá писáла/упáла	(feminine)
онó писáло/упáло	(neuter)
мы, вы, онí писáли/упáли	(plural)

(3) The past agrees with the subject of the verb in *number* (singular or plural) and *gender* (masculine, feminine or neuter):

я писáл	I was writing (male subject)
я писáла	I was writing (female subject)
ты писáл	you were writing (male subject)
ты писáла	you were writing (female subject)
он писáл	he was writing
онá писáла	she was writing
онó писáло	it was writing
мы, вы, онí писáли	we, you, they were writing

#### Note

Учётся ‘to take into account’, past учёл, учлá, учлó, учли́ (similarly other compounds of -честь).

## 231 Verbs with no -л in the masculine past tense

Some types of verb have no **-л** in the masculine past tense.

(1) Verbs in **-ереть**

**тереть** ‘to rub’: **тёр** тёрла тёрло тёрли

Similarly **запереть** ‘to lock’ (он зáпер/онá заперлá/онí зáперли ‘he/she/they locked’), **умереть** ‘to die’ (он ўмер/онá умерлá/онí ўмерли ‘he/she/they died’).

(2) Verbs in **-нуть**

The suffix **-нуть** is optional in the masculine past of *imperfective* stem-stressed verbs which indicate a change in state:

**гáснуть** ‘to be extinguished’: **гас/гáснул** гáсла гáсло гáсли

Similarly:

<b>вѣзнуть</b>	‘to stick fast’	<b>крѣпнуть</b>	‘to get stronger’
<b>гѣбнуть</b>	‘to perish’	<b>мѣркнуть</b>	‘to grow dim’
<b>глохнуть</b>	‘to go deaf’	<b>пахнуть</b>	‘to smell’
<b>дохнуть</b>	‘to die’ (of animals)	<b>слѣпнуть</b>	‘to go blind’
<b>кѣснуть</b>	‘to turn sour’	<b>сохнуть</b>	‘to become dry’

*Note*

- (a) Some imperfectives in **-нуть** are now often replaced by secondary imperfectives:

гаснуть	<b>погасать</b>	‘to be extinguished’
гѣбнуть	<b>погибать</b>	‘to perish’
мѣрзнуть	<b>замерзать</b>	‘to freeze’
сохнуть	<b>просыхать</b>	‘to become dry’
тухнуть	<b>потухать</b>	‘to be extinguished’

- (b) Stem-stressed *perfective* verbs in **-нуть** which indicate a change in state (**замѣрзнуть** ‘to freeze’, **привыкнуть** ‘to get used to’ etc.) do *not* have optional **-ну-** in the masculine past: он **замѣрз**, **привык** etc.
- (c) Verbs in **-ну-** which denote instantaneous actions (e.g. **прыгнуть** ‘to jump’) retain the suffix in all past forms: он **прыгнул** ‘he jumped’.

(3) Verbs in **-ти**

Verbs in **-ти** (except for those with present-future stems in **-д** and **-т**, e.g. **вести** ‘to lead’, past **вѣл**, **велá**, **велó**, **вели**; **мести** ‘to sweep’, past **мѣл**, **мелá**, **мелó**, **мели**).

б-stems	з-stems	с-stems	ст-stems
<b>грести</b>	<b>везти</b>	<b>нести</b>	<b>расти</b>
‘to row’	‘to convey’	‘to carry’	‘to grow’
<b>грѣб</b>	<b>вѣз</b>	<b>нѣс</b>	<b>рос</b>
<b>греблá</b>	<b>везлá</b>	<b>неслá</b>	<b>рослá</b>
<b>греблó</b>	<b>везлó</b>	<b>неслó</b>	<b>рослó</b>
<b>греблѣ</b>	<b>везлѣ</b>	<b>неслѣ</b>	<b>рослѣ</b>

*Note*

**Пастѣ** ‘to tend, graze’ (past **пас**, **паслá**), **ползти** ‘to crawl’ (**полз**, **ползлá**), **скрести** ‘to scour, claw’ (**скрѣб**, **скреблá**), **трясти** ‘to shake’ (**тряс**, **тряслá**).

(4) Verbs in **-зть**

These include **грызть** ‘to gnaw’ (past **грыз**, **грызла**, **грызло**, **грызли**)

and **лезть** ‘to climb’.

(5) Verbs in **-чь**

<b>г-stems</b>	<b>к-stems</b>
<b>беречь</b> ‘to look after’	<b>печь</b> ‘to bake’
<b>берёг</b>	<b>пёк</b>
<b>берегла́</b>	<b>пекла́</b>
<b>берегло́</b>	<b>пекло́</b>
<b>берегли́</b>	<b>пекли́</b>

The past of other verbs in **-чь** is as follows:

<b>влечь</b> ‘to pull, draw’	влёк, влекла́, влекло́, влекли́
<b>достичь</b> ‘to achieve’	достиг, достигла, достигло, достигли
<b>жечь</b> ‘to burn’	жёл, жгла, жгло, жгли
<b>лечь</b> ‘to lie down’	лёг, легла́, легло́, легли́
<b>мочь</b> ‘to be able’	мог, могла́, могло́, могли́
<b>напрячь</b> ‘to strain’	напряг, напрягла́, напрягло́, напрягли́
<b>пренебречь</b> ‘to disdain’	пренебрёл, -брегла́, -брегло́, -брегли́
<b>сечь</b> ‘to cut’	сёл, секла́, секло́, секли́
<b>стеречь</b> ‘to guard’	стерёл, стерегла́, стерегло́, стерегли́
<b>стричь</b> ‘to cut’ (hair)	стриг, стригла́, стригло́, стригли́
<b>течь</b> ‘to flow’	тёл, текла́, текло́, текли́

(6) Compounds of **-шибить**

Perfective compounds of **-шибить** (e.g. **ушибить** ‘to bruise’) have past tense **-шиб**, **-шибла**, **-шибло**, **-шибли**.

---

## 232 Mobile stress in the past tense of verbs

---

Most past-tense forms from verbs in **-ть** have the same stress as the infinitive. There are, however, a number of verbs which have:

(1) End stress in the feminine past

Most of them are monosyllabic verbs and their prefixed derivatives:

**(i) Unprefixed verbs**

**быть** 'to be': был **была́** было **бы́ли**

Similarly **брать/взять** 'to take', **вить** 'to twine', **гнать** 'to drive', **дать** 'to give', **драть** 'to flay', **ждать** 'to wait', **жить** 'to live', **звать** 'to call', **лить** 'to pour', **пить** 'to drink', **плыть** 'to swim', **рвать** 'to tear', **слыть** 'to have the reputation of being', **спать** 'to sleep', **ткать** 'to weave'.

*Note*

- (a) **Дать** 'to give' has alternative neuter stress **да́ло** or **дало́**.  
 (b) **Не** is stressed when combined with the masculine, neuter and plural past forms of **быть** (**не́** был, не **была́**, **не́** было, **не́** были) and *may* be stressed when combined with the masculine, neuter and plural forms of the verbs **жить** and **дать**: **не́** жил, не **жила́**, **не́** жило, **не́** жили *or* не **жи́л**, не **жила́**, не **жи́ло**, не **жи́ли**; **не́** дал, не **дала́**, **не́** дало, **не́** дали *or* не **да́л**, не **дала́**, не **да́ло**, не **да́ли**.

**(ii) Prefixed verbs**

- (a) **Собрать** 'to collect': **собра́л**, **собрала́**, **собра́ло**, **собра́ли**.

Similarly **взорва́ть** 'to blow up', **добы́ть** 'to acquire', **избра́ть** 'to elect', **разда́ть** 'to distribute', **сда́ть** 'to surrender', **сня́ть** 'to take off', **убра́ть** 'to clear away' etc.

- (b) **Заня́ть** 'to occupy': **за́нял**, **заняла́**, **за́няло**, **за́няли**.

Similarly **заперё́ть** 'to lock' (**за́пер**, **заперла́**), **нача́ть** 'to begin', **отперё́ть** 'to unlock', **подня́ть** 'to pick up', **поя́нить** 'to understand', **приня́ть** 'to accept', **умерё́ть** 'to die' (**у́мер**, **умерла́**) etc.

*Note*

**Зада́ть** 'to set' has alternative stem and prefix stress in the masculine, neuter and plural past: **за́дал**, **задала́**, **за́дало**, **за́дали**, *or* **зада́л**, **задала́**, **зада́ло**, **зада́ли**. Similarly **нали́ть** 'to pour', **обня́ть** 'to embrace', **отда́ть** 'to give back', **подня́ть** 'to raise', **поли́ть** 'to water', **продáть** 'to sell', **прож́ить** 'to live, spend' (a certain time), **созда́ть** 'to create' etc. **Переда́ть** 'to hand over' has the past forms **пéредал**, **пéредала́**, **пéредало**, **пéредали**.

**(2) End stress in the feminine, neuter and plural**

This affects:

- (i) A number of reflexive verbs, e.g.

**собра́ться** 'to assemble': **собра́лся**, **собрала́сь**, **собра́лось**,  
**собрали́сь**

Similarly **братъся/взятъся** ‘to get down to’, **дождатъся** ‘to wait until’, **оторватъся** ‘to be torn away from’, **создатъся** ‘to be created’, **удатъся** ‘to succeed’ (план удался ‘the plan succeeded’, мне удалось ‘I succeeded’).

(ii) All verbs in **-ти**:

<b>блості</b> ‘to conserve’	блюл, блюла́, блюло́, блюли́
<b>бресті</b> ‘to wander’	брёл, брела́, брело́, брели́
<b>везті</b> ‘to convey’	вёз, везла́, везло́, везли́
<b>весті</b> ‘to lead’	вёл, вела́, вело́, вели́
<b>гресті</b> ‘to row’	грёб, грела́, грело́, грели́
<b>идті</b> ‘to go’	шёл, шла́, шло́, шли́
<b>месті</b> ‘to sweep’	мёл, мела́, мело́, мели́
<b>несті</b> ‘to carry’	нёс, несла́, несло́, несли́
<b>обресті</b> ‘to acquire’	обрёл, обрела́, обрело́, обрели́
<b>пасті</b> ‘to tend’	пас, пасла́, пасло́, пасли́
<b>плесті</b> ‘to weave’	плёл, плела́, плело́, плели́
<b>ползті</b> ‘to crawl’	полз, ползла́, ползло́, ползли́
<b>расті</b> ‘to grow’	рос, росла́, росло́, росли́
<b>скресті</b> ‘to scour’	скрёб, скребла́, скребло́, скребли́
<b>трясті</b> ‘to shake’	тряс, трясла́, трясло́, трясли́
<b>цвесті</b> ‘to flower’	цвёл, цвела́, цвело́, цвели́

(iii) Most verbs in **-чь** (see **231** (5)).

(3) Reflexive endings stressed throughout

**начатъся** ‘to begin’: начался́, началась́, началось́, начались́

Similarly **занятъся** ‘to occupy oneself’ (with alternative masculine занялся́).

## 233 Formation of the future (imperfective and perfective)

(1) The imperfective future

The compound future (imperfective) consists of the relevant form of the future tense of **быть** and the imperfective infinitive:

я <b>б́уду</b> отды́хатъ	I shall rest
ты <b>б́удешь</b> отды́хатъ	you will rest
он, она́, онó <b>б́удет</b> отды́хатъ	he, she, it will rest
мы <b>б́удем</b> отды́хатъ	we shall rest

вы **бўдете** отды́хаться  
они́ **бўдут** отды́хаться

you will rest  
they will rest

### Note

- (a) **Бўду** is also used as a future in its own right: Лётом он **бўдет** в Санкт-Пете́рбурге ‘In the summer he will be in St Petersburg’.  
 (b) In some contexts it implies suspicion (Вы кто **бўдете**? ‘Who might you be?’), approximation (Ему́ **бўдет** 50 лет ‘He must be about 50’) and is used in arithmetic (ше́стью шесть **бўдет** 36 ‘six sixes are 36’ (see 210)).

### (2) The perfective future

The perfective future is expressed by conjugating a perfective verb. The same endings are used as those used with imperfective verbs in rendering the present tense:

я <b>пиш́у</b>	(impf.)	письмо́	‘I am writing a letter’
я <b>напиш́у</b>	(pf.)	письмо́	‘I shall write a letter’
она́ <b>чита́ет</b>	(impf.)	статья́	‘she is reading the article’
она́ <b>прочита́ет</b>	(pf.)	статья́	‘she will read the article’

See 215–223 for conjugation patterns, 238–253 for the formation of aspects and 263–268 for differentiation of imperfective and perfective usage in the future.

## 234 The buffer vowel -o- in conjugation

In many verbs the vowel **-o-** appears between a prefix ending in a consonant and a verb form which begins with two or more consonants or with a consonant + soft sign. This may affect:

### (1) All perfective forms:

Infinitive	Past	Future	Imperative
совра́ть ‘to lie’	совра́л	совр́у	совр́и(те)
отосла́ть ‘to send away’	отосла́л	отошл́ю	отошл́и(те)

### (2) The future, imperative and feminine, neuter and plural past:

сже́чь ‘to burn’	сже́г	сожѓу	сожѓи(те)
	сожѓла́		
	сожѓло́		
	сожѓли́		

(3) The **infinitive** and **past tense** only:

разобрáть	‘to discern’	разобрáл	разберу́	разберí(те)
отозвáть	‘to recall’	отозвáл	отзову́	отзовí(те)
разогнáть	‘to disperse’	разогнáл	разгоню́	разгонí(те)

(4) The **future** and **imperative** only:

сжать	‘to compress’	сжал	сожму́	сожмí(те)
отперéть	‘to unlock’	отпер	отопру́	отопри́(те)

(5) The **future** only (compounds of -бить, -вить, -лить, -пить, -шить):

разбíть	‘to smash’	разбíл	разобью́	разбей(те)
сшить	‘to sew’	сшил	сошью́	сшей(те)

## Aspect

### 235 The aspect. Introductory comments

---

(1) The Russian verb system is dominated by the concept of **aspect**.

(2) Most Russian verbs have *two* aspects, an **imperfective** and a **perfective**, formally differentiated in one of the following ways:

(i) By prefixation: imperfective писа́ть/perfective написа́ть.

(ii) By internal modification: imperfective забывáть/perfective забы́ть ‘to forget’; imperfective пуска́ть/perfective пусти́ть ‘to let go’.

(iii) By derivation from entirely different roots: imperfective говори́ть/perfective сказа́ть ‘to say’.

(iv) In a few instances, by stress: imperfective насыпа́ть/perfective насы́пать ‘to pour’; imperfective среза́ть/perfective среза́ть ‘to cut down’.

#### Note

Where aspect is differentiated by stress, the imperfectives are conjugated like **знать** and the perfectives like first-conjugation verbs with consonant stems (type II; see **217**).

(3) *Both* aspects are used in the past and future, the imperative and the infinitive. However, only the *imperfective* is used in the present tense.



(4) Most verbs thus have five finite forms, e.g. imperfective **пить**/perfective **выпить** ‘to drink’:

	Past	Present	Future
Impf.	я пил	я пью	я буду пить
Pf.	я выпил	—	я выпью

(5) The fundamental distinction between the aspects is that the **imperfective**:

(i) focuses on **an action in progress**.

Он **пил/пьёт/будет пить** молоко  
He **was, is, will be drinking** milk

(ii) denotes **frequency** of occurrence:

Он **часто пил, пьёт, будет пить** молоко  
He often **drank, drinks, will drink** milk

The **perfective**, by contrast, emphasizes **successful completion and result**:

Я **выпил** молоко      **I have drunk** the milk  
Я **выпью** молоко      **I shall drink** the milk

(Note, as a *result*, there is, will be no milk left.)

#### Note

The perfective past can render *both* perfect *and* pluperfect tenses. Thus, Он напис<sup>а</sup>л письм<sup>о</sup> can mean, in context, either ‘**He has** written a letter’ or ‘**He had** written a letter’.

(6) The aspects may also distinguish attempted action (imperfective) from successfully completed action (perfective). Compare

Он **уговáривал** (impf.) меня остáться  
He **tried to persuade** me to stay

Он **уговорíл** (pf.) меня остáться  
He **persuaded** me to stay

#### Note

Aspectival usage is dealt with in **255–283**.

## 236 Verbs with one aspect only

(1) While most verbs have two aspects, some have an imperfective only:

<b>госпо́дствовать</b>	‘to dominate’
<b>зави́сеть</b>	‘to depend’
<b>изобильно́вать</b>	‘to abound’
<b>наблюда́ть</b>	‘to observe’
<b>находи́ться</b>	‘to be situated’
<b>нужда́ться</b>	‘to need’
<b>отрица́ть</b>	‘to deny’
<b>повинова́ться</b>	‘to obey’
<b>подлежа́ть</b>	‘to be subject to’
<b>полага́ть</b>	‘to assume’
<b>предви́деть</b>	‘to foresee’
<b>предсто́ять</b>	‘to be imminent’
<b>предчу́ствовать</b>	‘to have a premonition’
<b>преоблада́ть</b>	‘to prevail’
<b>пресле́довать</b>	‘to persecute’
<b>принадлежа́ть</b>	‘to belong’
<b>противорече́чь</b>	‘to contradict’
<b>содержа́ть</b>	‘to contain’
<b>состоя́ть</b>	‘to consist’
<b>сочу́ствовать</b>	‘to sympathize’
<b>сто́ить</b>	‘to cost’
<b>уча́ствовать</b>	‘to participate’

*Note*

**Утвержда́ть** has no perfective in the meaning ‘to affirm’ but has perfective **утверди́ть** in the meaning ‘to fix, establish’.

(2) Other verbs are perfective only (many though not all of these denote precipitate action):

<b>воспря́нуть</b>	‘to cheer up’
<b>встре́пену́ться</b>	‘to start’ (with surprise)
<b>гряну́ть</b>	‘to burst out, ring out’
<b>очути́ться</b>	‘to find oneself’
<b>пона́добиться</b>	‘to be needed, come in handy’
<b>хлы́нуть</b>	‘to gush’

---

**237 Bi-aspectual verbs**

---

(1) Some verbs are bi-aspectual, that is, imperfective and perfective are represented by one verb form (though some also have alternative

imperfectives: **образовать** (imperfective and perfective) ‘to form’, alternative imperfective **образовывать**). There are many bi-aspectuals in **-овать** and **-изировать**. (Some of these have alternative perfectives, e.g. biaspectual **финансировать** ‘to finance’, pf. also **профинансировать**, similarly **инструктировать/проинструктировать** ‘to brief’, **координировать/скоординировать** ‘to coordinate’, **реставрировать/отреставрировать** ‘to restore’.)

(2) Among the commonest bi-aspectuals are **атаковать** ‘to attack’, **велеть** ‘to order, bid’, **воздействовать** ‘to have an effect on’, **гармонизировать** ‘to harmonize’, **жениться** ‘to marry’ (of a man marrying a woman – the perfective **пожениться** is used only when both partners are joint subjects of the verb: **Они поженились** ‘They got married’), **использовать** ‘to use’, **исследовать** ‘to research’, **казнить** ‘to execute’, **коллективизировать** ‘to collectivize’, **конфисковать** ‘to confiscate’, **крестить** ‘to christen’ (alternative perfective **окрестить**), **миновать** ‘to pass by’, **наследовать** ‘to inherit’ (alternative perfective **унаследовать**), **обещать** ‘to promise’ (alternative perfective **пообещать**), **оборудовать** ‘to equip’, **ранить** ‘to wound’, **родиться** ‘to be born’ (alternative imperfective **рождаться**), **сочетать** ‘to combine’.

(3) Thus, for example, **исследую** can mean both ‘I research’ and ‘I shall/will research’. Ambiguity may be resolved by contrastive adverbs, as follows:

Положение **постепенно** стабилизируется  
The situation is gradually stabilizing

Положение **скоро** стабилизируется  
The situation will soon stabilize

#### *Note*

Imperfective **бежать** ‘to run’ is also perfective in the meaning ‘to escape’; imperfective **приветствовать** ‘to greet’ is also perfective in the past tense; in the past tense, bi-aspectual **организовать** ‘to organize’ (imperfective also **организовывать**) is perfective only.

## 238 Formation of the aspects

Most pairs of verbal aspects arise in one of the following ways:

(1) Through the addition of a **prefix** to the imperfective to make the perfective:

читать (impf.)      прочесть (pf.)      ‘to read’

(2) Through **internal modification** involving:

(i) The insertion of a syllable into the stem infinitive:

завязáть (pf.)	завязывáть (impf.)	‘to tie’
сосредотóчить (pf.)	сосредотóчивáть (impf.)	‘to concentrate’
разб́ить (pf.)	разбивáть (impf.)	‘to smash’

(ii) A change in conjugation, an *imperfective* first-conjugation verb in **-а/-я-** being paired with a *perfective* second-conjugation verb in **-и/-е-**:

бросáть (impf.)	бро́сить (pf.)	‘to throw’
загорáть (impf.)	загорéть (pf.)	‘to acquire a tan’

## 239 Formation of the perfective by prefixation

(1) An imperfective verb may become perfective through the addition of a **prefix**:

писа́ть (impf.)	написа́ть (pf.)	‘to write’
-----------------	-----------------	------------

(2) The conjugation of a perfective verb gives it **future** meaning:

**Я напишú** éто письмó

**I shall write** this letter (= get it written)

(3) While the choice of perfective prefixes appears in most cases to be arbitrary, some prefixes are associated with particular meanings; for example, **на-** is associated with verbs of printing, writing and drawing (**напечатать**, **написать**, **нарисовать**), **у-** with verbs of perception (**увидеть**, **узнать**, **услышать**), and so on.

(4) All common prefixes (except for **в-** and **до-**) participate in the process of perfectivization:

Imperfective	Perfective	
кипят́ить	вскипят́ить	to boil
уч́ить	вы́учить	to learn
плат́ить	заплат́ить	to pay
купáть	искупáть	to bathe
писа́ть	написа́ть	to write
сиротéть	осиротéть	to be orphaned
редакти́ровать	отредакти́ровать	to edit
ночевáть	переночевáть	to spend the night
смотрéть	посмотрéть	to look

ждать	подождать	to wait
грозить	пригрозить	to threaten
читать	прочитать	to read
будить	разбудить	to awaken
петь	спеть	to sing
видеть	увидеть	to see

## 240 Functions of the perfective prefixes

(1) The perfective prefixes tend to be semantically neutral, that is, they change the *aspect* of a verb but *not* its meaning. Thus, both **будить** and **разбудить** mean ‘to awaken’, but **будить** describes the progress of the action, without any reference to result, whereas the perfective **разбудить** stresses the result:

Я его **будил**, **будил** и, наконец, **разбудил**  
I tried and tried to wake him, and finally woke him

(2) The *imperfective* verb describes:

(i) A past, present or future action in progress:

Он **учил** урок/**учит** урок/**будет учить** урок  
He **was learning/is learning/will be learning** the lesson

(ii) Repeated actions:

Она **платила/платит/будет платить** регулярно  
She **paid/pays/will pay** regularly

(3) The *perfective* focuses on the *completion* of a single action in the past or future. Usually, a result is implied:

Она **написала** письмо  
She has written a letter (it is ready to send)

Она **прочитала** книгу  
She has read the book (now *you* can read it, or it can be returned to the library)

Она **заплатит** за электричество  
She will pay the electricity (the account will be settled)

(4) Often the perfective denotes the *culmination of a process*:

Она **приготовила** ужин      She cooked dinner

In this example the culmination of the action, expressed by the

perfective **пригото́вила**, will have been preceded by a process of indeterminate length (она́ **гото́вила** у́жин ‘she **was cooking** dinner’), the completion of which is denoted by the perfective.

---

## 241 Semantic differentiation of aspects

---

In some verbs it is possible to detect at least a minor measure of semantic differentiation between imperfective and perfective. Thus, the imperfective past of **ви́деть** ‘to see’ contains a nuance (‘to associate with’)

Я **ви́дел** его́ вчера́      I saw him yesterday

which the perfective **увиде́ть** contains in the future, but *not* in the past. Compare

Я **увиде́л** его́ вчера́  
I caught sight of him (but *not* ‘saw, associated with him’) yesterday

and

Я **увви́жу** его́ за́втра  
I shall see him (i.e. ‘meet, associate with him’) tomorrow

Я **увви́жу** его́, как то́лько он войде́т  
I shall catch sight of him as soon as he comes in

---

## 242 Submeanings of perfectives

---

Apart from the resultative meaning (see **240** (3)), the perfective has a number of submeanings.

(1) **The inceptive**, denoting the beginning of an action. This meaning is often conveyed by the prefix **за-**:

<b>заболе́ть</b>	to fall ill
<b>заговори́ть</b>	to start speaking
<b>закури́ть</b>	to light up
<b>замолча́ть</b>	to fall silent
<b>запе́ть</b>	to burst into song
<b>запла́кать</b>	to burst into tears
<b>засмея́ться</b>	to burst out laughing
<b>зацвести́</b>	to blossom

*Note*

- (a) Only some of these verbs have imperfectives: **заболевать, закуривать, запевать, зацветать**. Where a verb has no imperfective, a paraphrase may be possible: **заливаться смехом** ‘to burst out laughing’, **обливаться слезами** ‘to burst into tears’.
- (b) The meaning of inception also adheres to the perfective aspects of unidirectional verbs of motion (он **пошёл** ‘he set out’) (see also 326) and to the perfectives **полюбить, понравиться**: Вы любите литературу? Да, я **полюбил** её ещё в школе (Vasilenko) ‘Do you like literature?’ ‘Yes, **I took a liking to it** when still at school’. Compare Вам **понравится** фильм ‘You **will like** the film’.
- (c) Inception can also be expressed by the prefixes **вз-/вс-** and **раз/рас-**: **встревожиться** ‘to get alarmed’, **рассердиться** ‘to get angry’.
- (2) The **instantaneous** or **semelfactive** submeaning:

Он **услышал** мой гóлос  
He heard, caught the sound of my voice

*Note*

Instantaneous meanings are often expressed by perfectives with the suffix **-ну-**:

Он **чиркнул** спичкой      He struck a match

Other semelfactives include **крикнуть** ‘to shout’, **махнуть** ‘to wave’, **плюнуть** ‘to spit’ etc.

- (3) The submeaning of **limited duration** (prefix **по-**):

<b>поговорить</b>	to have a chat
<b>посидеть</b>	to sit for a while
<b>поспать</b>	to have a nap

*Note*

- (a) **По-** can impart the meaning of limited duration to verbs which form their ‘neutral’ perfectives with other prefixes:

<b>написать</b> (neutral pf.)	<b>пописать</b> ‘to write for a while’
<b>прочитать</b> (neutral pf.)	<b>почитать</b> ‘to read for a while’

- (b) See 249 for imperfective submeanings.

## 243 Formation of verbal aspects by internal modification

Many aspectual pairs are created as the result of internal modification,

in particular through suffixation. This may involve:

(1) The insertion of a syllable into a perfective infinitive to form the imperfective. This is the commonest method of forming aspectual pairs:

переписать (pf.)      перепи́сывать (impf.)      ‘to copy’

(2) The pairing of a first-conjugation imperfective in **-а/-я-** with a second-conjugation perfective in **-и/-е-**: impf. позволя́ть/pf. позво́лить ‘to allow’; impf. решáть/pf. реши́ть ‘to decide’; impf. загорáть/pf. загорéть ‘to acquire a tan’.

## 244 The formation of imperfectives from prefixed first-conjugation verbs

(1) This occurs when a prefix other than the ‘neutral’ perfective prefix is added to an imperfective first-conjugation verb, changing not only its *aspect* but also its *meaning*.

(2) Thus, the neutral perfective of писать ‘to write’ (changing its aspect only, *not* its meaning) is **написать**. But other prefixes may combine with писать, changing aspect **and** meaning:

записать	to note down
переписать	to copy
подписать	to sign

and so on, each newly formed verb being a perfective *with a new meaning*.

(3) Imperfectives of such verbs are formed by inserting the suffix **-ыв-** before the final syllable of the infinitive, with stress falling on to the syllable preceding the suffix. In this way new sets of aspectual pairs are established:

записать (pf.)	запи́сывать (impf.)	‘to note down’
подписать (pf.)	подпи́сывать (impf.)	‘to sign’

(4) This method of forming ‘secondary imperfectives’ from compounds of first-conjugation verbs is an important word-formatory device which is used with many verbs, e.g.

вязáть ‘to tie’	→	связа́ть (neutral pf.) ‘to tie’
↓		
развяза́ть (pf. with new meaning: ‘to untie’)	→	развяза́ывать (impf.) ‘to untie’



(5) Of two adjacent vowels in a compound perfective, the second is replaced by **-ива-** in the imperfective: pf. отта́ять ‘to thaw out’ impf. отта́ивать (there are exceptions, e.g. pf. зате́ять ‘to undertake’, impf. зате́вывать).

## 245 Vowel mutation in secondary imperfective verbs

(1) The vowel **е** becomes **ё** under stress in the secondary imperfective, thus (based on root verb **чеса́ть** ‘to scratch’):

причеса́ться (pf.)/причёсыва́ться (impf.) ‘to comb one’s hair’

Similarly,

завоева́ть (pf.)/завоёвывать (impf.) ‘to conquer’

(2) In similar circumstances, **о** becomes **а** in the secondary imperfective:

зарабо́тать (pf.)/зараба́тывать (impf.) ‘to earn’

раскопа́ть (pf.)/раска́пывать (impf.) ‘to excavate’

### Note

The **о : а** mutation does *not* affect verbs in **-овать**: pf. образо́вать ‘to form’, impf. образо́вывать.

## 246 Secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs

(1) A process similar to that described in **244** is used to form secondary imperfectives from second-conjugation verbs, but with the following differences:

(i) The suffix **-ив-** is used instead of **-ыв-**.

(ii) Consonant mutation operates, e.g. **с : ш** in

краси́ть (impf.) → окраси́ть (neutral pf.) ‘to paint’

↓

перекраси́ть (pf. with new meaning ‘to repaint’) → перекра́шивать (impf. ‘to repaint’)

Note that **о** mutates to **а** in stressed position:

рассмо́т্রেть (pf.)/рассма́тривать (impf.) ‘to scrutinize’

приговори́ть (pf.)/пригова́ривать (impf.) ‘to sentence’

Similarly pf. запод<sup>о</sup>зрить ‘to suspect’, impf. запод<sup>а</sup>зривать; pf. зак<sup>о</sup>нчить ‘to conclude’, impf. зак<sup>а</sup>нчивать; pf. осп<sup>о</sup>рить ‘to dispute’, impf. осп<sup>а</sup>ривать; подгот<sup>о</sup>вить ‘to prepare, train’, impf. подгот<sup>а</sup>вливать; pf. приспособ<sup>о</sup>бить ‘to adapt’, impf. приспособ<sup>а</sup>бливать.

#### Note

- (a) In some secondary imperfectives, **о** and **а** are stylistically differentiated, **о** being characteristic of literary style, **а** of a more conversational style: thus pf. сосредот<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to concentrate’/impf. сосредот<sup>а</sup>чивать or сосредот<sup>а</sup>чивать. Similarly, pf. обусл<sup>о</sup>вить, ‘to condition’, impf. обусл<sup>а</sup>вливать/обусл<sup>а</sup>вливать.
- (b) Some imperfectives retain **о**: pf. опор<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to discredit’, impf. опор<sup>о</sup>чивать; pf. отср<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to defer’, impf. отср<sup>о</sup>чивать; pf. подыт<sup>о</sup>жить, ‘to sum up’, impf. подыт<sup>о</sup>живать; pf. приур<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to time’, impf. приур<sup>о</sup>чивать; pf. уполном<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to authorize’, impf. уполном<sup>о</sup>чивать; pf. упр<sup>о</sup>чить ‘to consolidate’, impf. упр<sup>о</sup>чивать.

(2) Of two adjacent vowels in a compound perfective, the second is replaced by **-ива-** in the imperfective. The mutation **о : а** operates (pf. успоко<sup>и</sup>ть ‘to reassure’, impf. успоко<sup>а</sup>ивать):

pf. прикл <sup>е</sup> ить ‘to stick to’	impf. прикл <sup>е</sup> ивать
pf. устр <sup>о</sup> ить ‘to arrange’	impf. устр <sup>а</sup> ивать

### 247 Consonant mutation in secondary imperfectives based on second-conjugation verbs

Standard consonant mutations are observed in deriving secondary imperfectives from second-conjugation perfective verbs.

<b>б : бл</b>	приспос <sup>о</sup> бить ‘to adapt’	impf. приспос <sup>а</sup> бливать
<b>в : вл</b>	выздоров <sup>е</sup> ть ‘to recover’	impf. выздор <sup>а</sup> вливать
<b>д : ж</b>	прослед <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to track’	impf. просл <sup>е</sup> живать
<b>з : ж</b>	замороз <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to freeze’	impf. замор <sup>а</sup> живать
<b>м : мл</b>	вскорм <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to rear’	impf. вскар <sup>м</sup> ливать
<b>п : пл</b>	затоп <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to heat’	impf. зат <sup>а</sup> пливать
<b>с : ш</b>	взв <sup>е</sup> сить ‘to weigh’	impf. взв <sup>е</sup> шивать
<b>ст : щ</b>	выраст <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to grow’	impf. выра <sup>а</sup> щивать
<b>т : ч</b>	оплат <sup>и</sup> ть ‘to pay’	impf. опла <sup>а</sup> чивать

#### Note

- (a) Absence of mutation in pf. захват<sup>и</sup>ть ‘to seize’, impf. захв<sup>а</sup>ты-

вать, pf. проглотить 'to swallow', impf. проглатывать, pf. сбросить 'to drop, throw down', impf. сбрасывать.

- (b) 'Reverse mutation' (**ч : к**) in pf. выскочить 'to jump out', impf. выскакивать, pf. перекричать 'to shout down', impf. перекрикивать.

## 248 Secondary imperfectives based on monosyllabic verbs

(1) Secondary imperfectives derive from the compound prefixed perfectives of many monosyllabic verbs by the insertion of the suffix **-ва-** after the root vowel of the perfective. Thus:

бить (impf) → побить (neutral pf.) 'to hit'  
 ↓  
 забить (pf. with new meaning 'to score') → забивать (impf.) 'to score'

Similarly,

pf. зажить 'to heal'	impf. заживать
pf. надеть 'to put on'	impf. надевать
pf. налить 'to pour'	impf. наливать
pf. открыть 'to open'	impf. открывать

### Note

The initial consonant of the syllable inserted into compounds of monosyllabic verbs in the formation of secondary imperfectives is often identical with that which appears in the first-person singular of the conjugation of the stem verb.

Perfective	Imperfective	First-person singular of stem verb
зажечь 'to ignite'	зажигать	жгу (from жечь 'to burn')
пересечь 'to intersect'	пересека́ть	секу́ (from сечь 'to cut')
сгрести́ 'to rake together'	сгреба́ть	гребу́ (from грести́ 'to row')
сжать 'to compress'	сжима́ть	жму (from жать 'to squeeze')
учесть 'to take into consideration'	учи́тывать	чту (from честь 'to consider')

Note also pf. разъесть 'to corrode', impf. разъедать (cf. **-д-** in, for example, еда́ 'food').

(2) The suffix **-ы-** or **-и-** is inserted between two initial consonants in the stem verb to form the imperfective:

pf. <b>вызвать</b> ‘to call out, cause’	impf. <b>вызыва́ть</b>
pf. <b>вырвать</b> ‘to tear out’	impf. <b>вырыва́ть</b>
pf. <b>отослать</b> ‘to send away’	impf. <b>отсыла́ть</b>
pf. <b>собрать</b> ‘to collect’	impf. <b>собира́ть</b>

## 249 Submeanings of some prefixed imperfectives

Some imperfective verbs with the prefixes **пере-**, **по-** or **при-** have the following submeanings, as distinct from the standard imperfective meanings of duration and frequency:

(1) Reflexives with the prefix **пере-** denote joint action (mostly imperfective only): **переписываться** ‘to correspond’, **перестукиваться** ‘to communicate by knocking’, **перешёптываться** ‘to exchange whispers’.

### Note

Some verbs of this type have perfectives: **переглядываться** (impf.)/**перегляну́ться** (pf.) ‘to exchange glances’, **перемигиваться** (impf.)/**перемигну́ться** (pf.) ‘to wink at each other’.

(2) Verbs in **по-** with the iterative ending **-ивать/-ывать** denote the intermittent performance of a short-lived action, e.g. **посвистывать** ‘to whistle every now and again’. The mutations **е:ё** and **о:а** operate: **поблёскивать** ‘to glint’ (cf. **блестеть** ‘to shine’), **посматривать** ‘to steal glances at’ (cf. **смотреть** ‘to look’). Compare

Голова́ у меня́ **поба́ливает**  
I keep getting headaches

Шпиль **поблёскивает** на со́лнце  
The spire glints in the sun

Ма́слово флегма́тично **позёвыва́л** (Yakhontov)  
Maslov kept yawning in a phlegmatic sort of way

Бе́режно, **поста́нывая** и **покрѣхтывая**, он опуска́ется вниз  
(Rasputin)  
He descends cautiously, groaning and wheezing intermittently

### Note

- (a) Verbs in this category have no perfective.
- (b) Other verbs of this type include **поглаживать** from **гла́дить** ‘to stroke’, **подёргивать** from **де́ргать** ‘to tug’, **покашливать** from **ка́шлять** ‘to cough’, **помаргивать** from **морга́ть** ‘to blink’,

**посиживать** from **сидеть** ‘to sit’, **постукивать** from **стучать** ‘to knock’, **почитывать** from **читать** ‘to read’.

(3) Verbs in **при-** with the suffix **-ва-** or **-ива-/ыва-** may denote actions accompanying other actions: **припевать** ‘to sing along’, **приплясывать** ‘to skip up and down’, **притопывать** ‘to stamp one’s feet’ (e.g. in time to music).

#### Note

Verbs in this category have no perfectives.

## 250 The differentiation of aspects by conjugation

(1) Many aspectual pairs consist of a first-conjugation imperfective in **-ать/-ять** and a second-conjugation perfective in **-ить** (or **-еть**). This affects:

(i) A number of unprefixated verbs (imperfectives first):

бросáть	бро́сить	‘to throw’
конча́ть	ко́нчить	‘to finish’
лиша́ть	лиши́ть	‘to deprive’
реша́ть	реши́ть	‘to decide, resolve’

(ii) More especially, prefixed verbs:

включа́ть	включи́ть	‘to switch on’
выполня́ть	вы́полнить	‘to fulfil’
выступа́ть	вы́ступить	‘to appear, perform’
загора́ть	загоре́ть	‘to get sun-tanned’

#### Note

Покупа́ть, купи́ть ‘to buy’ (prefixed imperfective/unprefixated perfective).

(2) In many pairs the imperfective has *end* stress and the perfective *stem* stress: доверя́ть, дове́рить ‘to trust’; измеря́ть, изме́рить ‘to measure’; наруша́ть, нару́шить ‘to disrupt’; позволя́ть, позво́лить ‘to allow’; улучша́ть, улу́чить ‘to improve’ etc.

(3) The usual consonant mutations apply to many verbs of this type:

б : бл	pf. употребле́ть ‘to use’	impf. употребле́ть
в : вл	pf. оста́вить ‘to leave’	impf. оста́влять
д : ж	pf. заря́дить ‘to load’	impf. заряжа́ть
д : жд	pf. награди́ть ‘to reward’	impf. награжда́ть

<b>з : ж</b>	pf. отразить ‘to reflect’	impf. отражать
<b>п : пл</b>	pf. прикрепить ‘to attach, fasten’	impf. прикреплять
<b>с : ш</b>	pf. пригласить ‘to invite’	impf. приглашать
<b>ст : ск</b>	pf. пустить ‘to let go’	impf. пускать
<b>ст : щ</b>	pf. угостить ‘to treat’	impf. угощать
<b>т : ч</b>	pf. заметить ‘to notice’	impf. замечать
<b>т : щ</b>	pf. запретить ‘to ban’	impf. запрещать

*Note*

- (a) Double perfectivization (imperfective first) in **вешать, повесить** ‘to hang’, **кусать, укусить** ‘to bite’, **ронять, уронить** ‘to drop’, **сажать, посадить** ‘to seat’ and **стрелять, выстрелить** ‘to shoot’.
- (b) Some prefixed derivatives of **менять** ‘to change’ are imperfective, with a perfective in **-менить: заменять/заменить** ‘to replace’, **изменять/изменить** ‘to alter’, **отменять/отменить** ‘to cancel’. Others acquire perfective meaning, with an imperfective in **-менивать: обменивать/обменять** ‘to exchange’, **разменивать/разменять** ‘to change’ (money to smaller denominations).

**251 Aspectual pairs with different roots**

The verbs in some aspectual pairs derive from different roots. These include (imperfective first) the following:

бить	ударить	‘to strike’
брать	взять	‘to take’
говорить	сказать	‘to say’
класть	положить	‘to put, place’
ловить	поймать	‘to catch’

**252 Verbs which are reflexive in the imperfective aspect only**

Some verbs are reflexive in the imperfective aspect only. These include:

- (1) Some verbs of sitting, lying and standing:

<b>ложиться</b>	лечь	to lie down
<b>пересаживаться</b>	пересесть	to change seats, trains etc.
<b>присаживаться</b>	присесть	to sit down for a while
<b>садиться</b>	сесть	to sit down
<b>становиться</b>	стать	to (go and) stand

(2) **Лопаться/лопнуть** ‘to burst, snap’ and **рушиться/рухнуть** ‘to collapse’.

## 253 Compounds of -ложить

Some perfective compounds of **-ложить** have imperfectives in **-кладывать**, while others have imperfectives in **-лагать**. Those with imperfectives in **-кладывать** have a more literal meaning (**проклады́вать**, **проложíть** *дорóгу* ‘to lay a road’); those with imperfectives in **-лагать** are more abstract (**предлага́ть**, **предложíть** ‘to propose’). The distinction is well marked in verbs which have both types of imperfective, with differing meanings: **вклады́вать**, **вложíть** *письмо́* в *конве́рт* ‘to place a letter into an envelope’, **влага́ть**, **вложíть** *ду́шу* во *что́-нибудь* ‘to put one’s heart into something’.

## 254 Meanings of verbal prefixes

Prefixes are important elements in Russian word formation. As many as sixteen prefixes may be attached to certain root verbs, each prefix imparting a different meaning: thus **вяза́ть** ‘to tie’, **завяза́ть** ‘to knot’, **отвяза́ть** *от* ‘to untie from’, **привяза́ть** *к* ‘to tie to’ and so on. Most prefixes are associated with particular prepositions, as follows.

Prefix	Preposition		Meaning
<b>в-</b>	<b>в</b>	+ acc.	into
<b>вы-</b>	<b>из</b>	+ gen.	out of
<b>до-</b>	<b>до</b>	+ gen.	as far as
<b>за-</b>	<b>за</b>	+ acc.	behind
<b>из-</b>	<b>из</b>	+ gen.	out of
<b>на-</b>	<b>на</b>	+ acc.	on to
<b>от-</b>	<b>от</b>	+ gen.	detaching
<b>пере-</b>	<b>через</b>	+ acc.	across
<b>под-</b>	<b>к</b>	+ dat.	approach
	<b>под</b>	+ acc.	under
<b>при-</b>	<b>к</b>	+ dat.	attaching
<b>с-</b>	<b>с</b>	+ gen.	down from
	<b>с</b>	+ instr.	together with

### Note

- (a) Prefixed verbs in some meanings also have non-prepositional government, or government through other prepositions.

- (b) Prefixes also impart meanings to parts of speech other than verbs: cf. **перелётный** 'migratory', **приложение** 'supplement', **съезд** 'congress' etc. See also 28.
- (c) Some prefixes have alternative spellings (**вз-/вс-; из-/ис-; раз-/рас-**), **вс-**, **ис-** and **рас-** combining with stems which begin with unvoiced consonants (**к, п, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ**), **вз-**, **из-** and **раз-** combining with other stems.
- (d) Compare also prefixes with verbs of motion (see 331).
- (e) Imperfectives are listed first in aspectual pairs.

(1) В(о)-

(i) Direction into:

<b>включать/включить</b> в список	to include in a list
<b>вмешиваться/вмешаться</b> в спор	to interfere in an argument

- (ii) Movement upwards (mainly with verbs of motion, e.g. **влезать/влезть** на дерево 'to climb a tree'):

<b>вставать/встать</b> из-за стола	to get up from a table
------------------------------------	------------------------

(2) Вз(о)-/вс-; воз-/вос

(i) Movement upwards:

<b>взбираться/взобраться</b> на гору	to climb a hill
--------------------------------------	-----------------

(ii) Disruption:

<b>взрывать/взорвать</b> мост	to blow up a bridge
-------------------------------	---------------------

(3) Вы-

(i) Movement out of:

<b>вырывать/вырвать</b> страничку из дневника	to tear a page out of a diary
---	-------------------------------

(ii) Achievement through the action of the root verb:

<b>выпрашивать/выпросить</b> отпуск	to get leave on request
-------------------------------------	-------------------------

(iii) Exhaustiveness of action (reflexive verbs):

<b>высказываться/высказаться</b>	to have one's say
----------------------------------	-------------------



**высыпáться/выспáться**  
to have a good sleep

*Note*

As a perfective prefix, **вы-** is always stressed; as an imperfective prefix it is stressed only in **выгáлдеть** 'to look'.

(4) До-

(i) Completion of action already begun:

**доживáть/дожítь** до стáрости  
to live to a ripe old age

**допíсывать/дописáть** письмó  
to finish writing a letter

(ii) Achievement of hard-won result:

**договáриваться/договорítься**  
to come to an agreement

**дозвáниваться/дозвонítься** (к) дрúгу  
to get through to one's friend

(5) За-

(i) Movement behind:

**заклáдывать/заложítь** рúки зá спину  
to put one's hands behind one's back

(ii) Process covering an area:

**засáживать/засадítь** сад дерéвьями  
to plant a garden with trees

(iii) Absorption in an action (often detrimental (reflexives)):

**засíживаться/засидéться** в гостя́х  
to outstay one's welcome

**зачítываться/зачитáться**  
to get absorbed in reading

(iv) Acquisition:

<b>завоёвывать/завоевáть</b>	to conquer
<b>зарабáтывать/зарабóтать</b>	to earn
<b>захвáтывать/захватítь</b>	to seize

## (v) Fastening, securing:

<b>завя́зывать/завя́зать</b> га́лстук	to fasten a tie
<b>закрыва́ть/закры́ть</b>	to close
<b>застёгивать/застегну́ть</b> па́льто	to fasten a coat

## (vi) To spoil by excess:

<b>зака́рмливать/закорми́ть</b> щенка́	to overfeed a puppy
---	---------------------

## (6) Из(о)-/ис-

## (i) Extraction, selection:

<b>избира́ть/избра́ть</b>	to elect
<b>исключа́ть/исключи́ть</b>	to exclude, expel

## (ii) Action affecting whole area:

<b>изорва́ть</b> (pf. only) руба́шку	to tear a shirt all over
--------------------------------------	--------------------------

## (7) На-

## (i) Action directed on to:

<b>нажима́ть/нажа́ть</b> (на) кно́пку	to press a button
<b>накле́ивать/накле́ить</b> ма́рку на конве́рт	to stick a stamp on an envelope

## (ii) Action performed to point of satisfaction:

<b>наеда́ться/нае́сться</b>	to eat one's fill
<b>насмотре́ться</b> (pf. only)	to have a good look

## (iii) Quantity, accumulation:

<b>наруба́ть/наруби́ть</b> дров	to chop some firewood
<b>нарва́ть</b> (pf. only) цвето́в	to pick some flowers

## (8) Над(о)-

## (i) Superimposition:

<b>надстра́ивать/надстро́ить</b> эта́ж	to add a storey
--	-----------------

(ii) Detaching part of surface:

**надкусывать/надкусить** грушу  
to take a bite out of a pear

(9) Недо- (opposite of 13 (v)).

Shortfall:

**недооценивать/недооценить**  
to underrate

**недосаливать/недосолить** кашу  
not to put enough salt in the porridge

(10) О-/об-/обо-

(i) Action affecting many:

**опрашивать/опросить** студентов  
to canvas student opinion

(ii) Detailed comprehensive action:

<b>обсуждать/обсудить</b>	to discuss
<b>осматривать/осмотреть</b>	to examine

(iii) Action directed over whole area:

<b>оклеивать/оклénить</b> стéны обóями	to wall-paper
<b>окружать/окружить</b>	to surround

(iv) Error:

<b>оговариваться/оговориться</b>	to make a slip of the tongue
<b>ошибаться/ошибиться</b>	to make a mistake

(v) Endowment with/acquisition of a quality or state:

<b>облегчать/облегчить</b>	to lighten, relieve
<b>оглушать/оглушить</b>	to deafen

#### *Note*

In some verbs the prefix appears only in the perfective: **вдовéть/овдовéть** 'to be widowed', **слéпнуть/ослéпнуть** 'to go blind'.

## (vi) Outdoing:

<b>обгонять/обогнать</b>	to overtake
<b>обыгрывать/обыграть</b>	to outplay

## (vii) Deception:

<b>обманивать/обмануть</b>	to deceive
<b>обсчитывать/обсчитать</b> покупателя	to short-change a customer

## (11) Обез-/обес-

## Deprivation (bookish styles):

<b>обесценивать/обесценить</b>	to devalue
--------------------------------	------------

## (12) От(о)-

## (i) Moving, receding a certain distance:

<b>отставать/отстать</b> от других
to lag behind the others

<b>отступать/отступить</b>
to retreat, digress

## (ii) Detachment:

<b>отрубать/отрубить</b> ветку от дерева
to lop a branch off a tree

<b>отрывать/оторвать</b> листок
to tear off a sheet

## (iii) Reversal of action:

<b>отвыкать/отвыкнуть</b> от курения
to get out of the habit of smoking

<b>отменять/отменить</b>
to cancel

## (13) Пере-

## (i) Movement across:

<b>перепрыгивать/перепрыгнуть</b> (через) канаву
to jump across a ditch

**переставля́ть/переста́вить** ме́бель  
to move furniture round

(ii) Redoing:

**перекра́шивать/перекра́сить**  
to repaint

**переодева́ться/переоде́ться**  
to change one's clothes

(iii) Division:

**перепи́ливать/перепи́лить**  
to saw through

(iv) Action affecting many objects:

**пересма́тривать/пересмотре́ть** все фи́льмы  
to see all the films

(v) Excess:

**перегружа́ть/перегрузи́ть** маши́ну  
to overload a vehicle

(vi) Reciprocal action:

**перепи́сываться** (impf. only)  
to correspond

(vii) Outdoing:

**перекри́кивать/перекрича́ть** толпу́  
to shout down a crowd

(14) Под(о)-

(i) Movement or position under:

**подкла́дывать/подложи́ть** поду́шку под го́лову  
to place a pillow under one's head

**подпи́сывать/подписа́ть**  
to sign

(ii) Approach:

**пододвига́ть/пододви́нуть** стул к стене́  
to move a chair up to the wall

(iii) Addition of substance or material:

**подсы́пать/подсы́пать** са́хару в чай  
to add some sugar to one's tea

(iv) Furtive, underhand action:

**подде́лывать/подде́лать**  
to forge, counterfeit

**подслу́шивать/подслу́шать**  
to eavesdrop

(v) Supplementary action:

**подви́нчивать/подвинти́ть** кран небольшо́го  
to tighten up a tap

(15) Пре- (mainly in bookish styles)

(i) Transformation:

**преобразо́вывать/преобразова́ть**  
to transform

(ii) Termination:

**прекраща́ть/прекрати́ть**  
to curtail

(iii) Excess:

**преувели́чивать/преувели́чить**  
to exaggerate

**превыша́ть/превы́сить**  
to exceed

(16) Пред(о)-

Anticipation:

**предви́деть** (impf. only)  
to foresee

**предполага́ть/предположи́ть**  
to presume

**предупрежда́ть/предупреди́ть**  
to warn, prevent

(17) При-

(i) Approach, arrival:

**приближаться/приблизиться**  
to approach

**приземляться/приземлиться**  
to land

(ii) Attachment:

**привязывать/привязать** собаку к дереву  
to tie a dog to a tree

**прикреплять/прикрепить** фотографию к бланку  
to attach, pin a photograph to a form

(iii) Addition:

**прибавлять/прибавить**  
to add

**приписывать/приписать** несколько строк  
to add a few lines

(iv) Limited action:

**привставать/привстать**  
to half rise

**приоткрывать/приоткрыть** дверь  
to open a door slightly

(v) Accustoming:

**привыкать/привыкнуть** к дисциплине  
to get used to discipline

(18) Про-

(i) Through, past:

**пропускать/пропустить**  
to miss, let past

**просматривать/просмотреть**  
to look through

(ii) Harmful error:

**проливать/пролить** to spill  
**просыпать/проспать** to oversleep, sleep in

## (19) Раз(о)-/рас-

## (i) Separation, dispersal, disintegration, distribution:

**раздвигать/раздвинуть** занавёски  
to part the curtains

**размещать/разместить** ракёты  
to deploy missiles

**распиливать/распилить** ствол  
to saw up a tree trunk

## (ii) Reversal of an action:

<b>развязывать/развязать</b>	to untie
<b>раздеваться/раздеться</b>	to get undressed
<b>раздумывать/раздумать</b>	to change one's mind

## (20) С(о)-

## (i) Removal:

**свергать/свергнуть** самодержáвие  
to overthrow an autocracy

**снимать/снять** пальтó  
to take off one's coat

## (ii) Descent:

**спускаться/спуститься** на морскóе дно  
to descend to the sea bed

## (iii) Joining:

<b>скреплять/скрепить</b>	to staple together
<b>складывать/сложить</b>	to fold

## (iv) Joint feeling or action:

**сочувствовать** (impf. only)      to sympathize

## (21) У-

## (i) Removal:

**удалять/удалить** óпухоль      to remove a tumour

## (ii) Imparting a quality:



улучша́ть/улучи́ть	to improve
упроща́ть/упрости́ть	to simplify

## 255 The imperfective and perfective aspects

See also 235.

### (1) The imperfective

(i) The imperfective may describe an action:

(a) In progress:

Он **за́втракал** (impf.)                      He was having breakfast

(b) Progressing towards the completion of a goal, represented by a perfective:

Он до́лго **вспомина́л** (impf.) мою́ фами́лию, и наконёц **вспомни́л** (pf.) её

He took a long time to recall my name, and finally he **did** recall it

(ii) Imperfectives may describe a number of actions occurring simultaneously or in an indeterminate order:

Говори́ли (impf.) мы сразу́, **перебива́ли** (impf.) друг дру́га, **смея́лись** (impf.) (Shukshin)

We were all speaking at once, interrupting each other, laughing

### Note

(a) The imperfective here does not *move* events, but describes actions as they *develop*, focusing on *circumstances* rather than completion. The imperfective therefore tends to be associated with conjunctions which imply development or continuity of action: **по мере́ того́ как** ‘in proportion as’, **чем . . . тем**, ‘the . . . the’ (with comparatives), **в то вре́мя как/пока́** ‘while’ etc. Compare

**В то вре́мя пока́** он **собира́лся** (impf.), я **успе́ла** (pf.) **убра́ть** (pf.) всю посу́ду в шкаф

While he was getting ready I managed to clear all the crockery away into the cupboard

Here the completed action (‘I managed to clear all the crockery away into the cupboard’ (pf.)) is set against the background of an action in progress (‘while he was getting ready’ (impf.)).

(b) In the following example two processes are seen developing in

parallel and are therefore rendered by imperfectives:

И чем бóльше Косíхин его **слýшал** (impf.), тем грустнее ему **станови́лось** (impf.) (Yakhontov)

And the more Kosikhin listened to him, the sadder he became

(iii) The idea of continuity of action can be reinforced by an adverb which either:

(a) Emphasizes action in progress:

Он рассказывал (impf.) **подробно**

He related his story in detail

or:

(b) Denotes the passage of time, thus underlining the durative meaning:

Он чита́л (impf.) «Войну́ и мир» **три часа́**

He read *War and Peace* for three hours

Attention here is drawn to the *time* involved in the action, *not* its completion or result; hence the use of the *imperfective* aspect.

*Note*

For frequentative meanings see **256** (2) (ii), **257** (3), **266**, **269** (2), **274**, **276** (2) (i).

(2) The perfective aspect

(i) Unlike the imperfective, the perfective emphasizes **result**:

Он **дал** (pf.) ученика́м по учебнику

He **gave** each pupil a textbook (as a result, they have a copy, can prepare their homework, take a full part in the class work etc.)

(ii) The perfective **moves** events, advances the action step by step, unlike the imperfective, which describes an action in progress:

Воше́дший **снял** (pf. 1) плащ, **сел** (pf. 2) за стол и **по́днял** (pf. 3) дневни́к

The man who had come in **removed** his coat, **sat down** at the table and **picked up** the diary

Here emphasis is laid on the completion in sequence of a series of actions: perfective 1 is completed before perfective 2 takes place, perfective 2 is completed before perfective 3 takes place, and so on, each perfective moving events a stage further.

(iii) Verbs of different aspect may coexist in the same sentence, the

imperfectives **describing the scene** and the perfectives **advancing the action**:

Она **сняла** (pf.) пальто́, стоя́ла (impf.) спиной ко мне и **шелестела** (impf.) бума́гами (Kazakov)

She took off her coat and stood with her back to me, rustling the papers

(iv) An imperfective describing an action in progress can be succeeded by a perfective which denotes successful completion of that action:

Он долго **догоня́л** (impf.) меня́ и, наконец, **догна́л** (pf.)

He chased me for a long time and finally caught me up

This exemplifies the comparison which has been made between the use of imperfectives and the filming of a scene, and between the use of some perfectives and a **snapshot**.

(v) The perfective tends to combine with conjunctions which imply the completion or the suddenness of an action (**до того́ как** ‘before’, **как то́лько** ‘as soon as’, **после того́ как** ‘after’ etc.), and with adverbs which imply immediacy or unexpectedness (**внеза́пно** ‘suddenly’, **сра́зу** ‘immediately’, **чу́ть не** ‘almost, within an ace of’ etc.).

(vi) Unlike the imperfective past, which is totally rooted in past time, the perfective may have implications for the present. This occurs when a **present state** results from a past perfective action or process (the so-called ‘pure perfect’):

Я **забы́л** (pf.)

I have forgotten, I **forget**

Он **опозда́л** (pf.)

He **is late** (but has arrived; cf. Он **опа́здывает** (impf.) ‘He is late’ (and has not yet arrived))

Я **привы́к** к этому́ (pf.)

I **am used** to this

Он **у́мер** (pf.)

He **is dead** (has died)

## 256 Aspect in the present tense

(1) The present tense has only one form, the imperfective.

(2) The present tense is used:

(i) To denote actions in progress:

Сейча́с я **пишу́** письмо́

At the moment I am writing a letter

(ii) To denote habitual actions:

По воскресеньям он **лѳвит** рыбу в рекѳ  
On Sundays he fishes in the river

(iii) To make general statements:

земля **вращается** вѳкруг Сѳлнца  
The Earth revolves around the Sun

(iv) To denote capabilities and qualities:

Зѳлото не **ржѳвеет**  
Gold does not tarnish

*Note*

Except for verbs of motion (see **315–325**), the present tense does not distinguish durative from habitual actions, thus: Я **готѳвлю** ѳжин ‘**I am preparing/prepare** supper’

(v) To express intention to perform an action in the not too distant future. The verb involved is often a simple or compound verb of motion in the first-person singular or plural:

Сегѳдня вѳчером **идѳ** в кинѳ  
I am going to the cinema this evening

Бѳдущей зимѳй **уезжѳем** за гранѳцу  
We are going abroad next winter

*Note*

Other verbs found in this meaning include **возвращѳться** ‘to return’, **встрѳчать** ‘to meet’, **начинѳть** ‘to begin’ etc.

(vi) As a ‘historic present’. The use of the present tense with past meaning brings the action more graphically before the mind’s eye of the reader or listener. It is a device commonly found in literary works and is much more widely used in Russian than in English:

Приходѳл он к нам чѳсто. **Сидѳт**, бывѳло, и **расскѳзывает**  
He would often come to see us. He **would sit** and **tell** us stories

(vii) To describe an action or state that *began* in the past and *continues* into the present (the ‘continuous present’):

Я **рабѳтаю** здѳсь с прѳшлого гѳда  
I **have been working/have worked** here since last year

*Note*

The use of the past tense in such contexts would be rendered by an English pluperfect: Она **была́** заму́жем уже́ 10 лет 'She **had been** married for ten years'.

(viii) In reported speech (see also 265).

(a) In reporting a statement, the same tense is used as in direct speech. Thus the statement Я **люблю́** её 'I love her' is reported as:

Я сказа́л, что **люблю́** её  
I said I loved her

or

Он сказа́л, что **люби́т** её  
He said he loved her

(b) This contrasts with English, where a past tense in the main clause ('he said') generates a past tense in the subordinate clause: 'He said he *loved* her'. To use a past tense here in Russian would imply that the direct statement had contained a past tense. Thus, Он сказа́л, что **люби́л** её means 'He said he **had loved** her/**used to love** her'.

(c) The construction extends to reported knowing, asking, hoping etc., and can be introduced by **ду́мать** 'to think', **знать** 'to know', **наде́яться** 'to hope', **обеща́ть** 'to promise', **спроси́ть** 'to ask' etc.:

Ей каза́лось, что ма́льчик **спит**  
She thought the child **was asleep**

Он писа́л, что **прово́дит** ле́то в Волгогра́де  
He wrote that he **was spending** the summer in Volgograd

(d) The same principles of tense sequence apply, though *less rigidly*, to verbs of perception, cf. use of the *present* tense in

Шу́рка слы́шал, как в темноте́ **бе́гает** ёж (Vasilev)  
Shurka heard a hedgehog running about in the dark

and the *past* tense in

Слы́шно бы́ло, как **мурлы́кал** Ку́стик (Belov)  
You could hear Kustik purring

Бы́ло ви́дно, что он не **бо́ялся** холо́дной воды́ (Fadeev)  
It was obvious that he was not afraid of cold water

In such contexts, the present tense is said to be more 'vivid' than the past.

## 257 Aspect in the past tense

### (1) The durative meaning

(i) Past durative meanings, that is, descriptions of actions as they develop, are invariably rendered by the **imperfective** aspect:

Мы **составляли** (impf.) телеграмму в Москвѹ  
We **were composing** a telegram to send to Moscow

(ii) Passage of time may be indicated by an appropriate adverb or adverbial phrase:

**Чѣтверть вѣка** он собирал (impf.) всё, что относилось (impf.) к истории края (Granin)  
He spent **a quarter of a century** collecting everything that related to the history of the area

### (2) Endeavour contrasted with successful completion

(i) An action in progress (impf.) can be contrasted with its successful completion (pf.):

Мы долго **решали** (impf.) задачу — и наконец **решили** (pf.) её  
We **spent a long time solving** the task and finally **solved it**

(ii) The imperfective denotes an *attempt* which may either:

#### (a) Fail:

Он **убеждал** (impf.) меня, что без согласия родителей мы всё равно не сможем быть счастливы (*Russia Today*)  
He **tried to convince me** that we could not be happy anyway without our parents' consent

#### (b) Succeed, achievement being expressed by a perfective:

Я **пробивался** (impf.) к нему ровно неделю и наконец **пробился** (pf.)  
I spent exactly a week **trying to force my way** into his office, and finally **succeeded in doing so**

(iii) Some aspectual pairs consist of *imperfectives* which denote attempt to achieve and *perfectives* which denote successful achievement:

Imperfective		Perfective
добиваться	'to try to achieve'	добиться
		'to achieve'

дока́зывать	'to contend'	доказа́ть	'to prove'
ловить	'to try to catch'	пойма́ть	'to catch'
реша́ть	'to tackle'	реши́ть	'to solve'
сдава́ть	'to take'	сда́ть	'to pass'
	(an examination)		(an examination)
увере́ять	'to try to assure'	уве́рить	'to assure'
уговора́ивать	'to try to persuade'	уговори́ть	'to persuade'

(3) Repeated actions in the past

(i) Repeated actions are normally expressed by the **imperfective**:

Он звони́л (impf.) нам по вечера́м  
He used to ring us in the evenings

**Быва́ло** is sometimes added to emphasize repetition:

Он, **быва́ло**, звони́л (impf.) нам по вечера́м  
He was in the habit of ringing us in the evenings

(ii) Frequency may also be stressed by an adverb or adverbial phrase of time: **всегда́** 'always', **иногда́** 'sometimes', **никогда́** 'never', **раз в неде́лю** 'once a week', **ча́сто** 'often':

Пото́м он **ча́ще всего́**, не разогрева́я, съеда́л (impf.) оста́вленный ма́терью обе́д (Vanshenkin)  
Then, **more often than not**, he would eat the lunch left by his mother, without heating it up

*Note*

*Secondary* imperfectives (here, **съеда́ть**) are often preferred to *primary* imperfectives (cf. **есть** 'to eat') in frequentative constructions, in view of the durative connotations which adhere to primaries, cf. Он **сиде́л** (primary impf.) над статья́й не ме́нее трёх часо́в 'He **pored** over the article for no less than three hours', a reference to one durative action, and Он **проси́живал** (secondary impf.) над статья́й не ме́нее трёх часо́в 'He **would pore** over the article for not less than three hours at a time', a reference to a **series** of actions.

(iii) When reference is made to the **number of times** an action occurs:

(a) The **imperfective** is preferred when the actions are repeated at irregular and spaced-out intervals:

Три ра́за о́ни покида́ли (impf.) бор́т ста́нции и **выходи́ли** (impf.) в откры́тый ко́смос (*Russia Today*)  
Three times they left the space station and walked in space

**Нéсколько раз я прогоня́л** (impf.) его́. Он **сади́лся** (impf.) в отдалéнии, нeмнóго **пережида́л** (impf.) и снóва **бежа́л** (impf.) за мной (Kazakov)

Several times I chased him away. He would sit down at a distance, bide his time and run after me again

(b) The **perfective** is preferred when a series of identical actions, repeated in swift succession, can be interpreted as **components of one multiple action**:

Вы́лез (pf.) из-под кры́ши крупный воробéй, **чири́кнул** (pf.) **два́жды** и улетéл (pf.) (Belov)

A large sparrow emerged from under the eaves, **chirped twice** and flew off

Приблiзивши́сь к нему́, она́ доста́ла (pf.) из сýмочки пистолéт и **три ра́за вы́стрелила** (pf.) в упóр

Approaching him she took a pistol from her bag and **fired three times** at point-blank range

#### Note

The imperfective is preferred for verbs of *beginning*, however, even when a number of actions occur in swift succession:

Он **начина́л** (impf.) письмó **раз двена́дцать**, рвал (impf.) листы́, изне́рвничался (pf.), испсихова́лся (pf.) (Shukshin)

He began the letter about a dozen times, kept tearing up the sheets, got all hot and bothered, almost blew a fuse

### 258 Use of the imperfective past to express a ‘statement of fact’

— Вы **звонили́** (impf.) ему́?

‘Have you rung him?’

— Да, **звонил** (impf.)

‘Yes, I have’

— Я где-то **ви́дел** (impf.) вас

‘I have seen you somewhere’

— Вы **чита́ли** (impf.) «Це́мент»?

‘Have you read *Cement*?’

— Да, **чита́л** (impf.)

‘Yes, I have’

(1) The imperfective is used in the above examples to denote an action in isolation, with no emphasis on its completion or non-completion, the circumstances in which it occurred, or other detail. The statements and responses show that a phone call has been made, that two people have met before, that *Cement* is one of the books read by a particular person. These are bald statements of fact, with no fleshing-out of the context



and no stress on the achievement of a result. This ‘submeaning’ of the imperfective is known as **констатация факта** ‘statement of fact’. It is particularly common in the past tense and is usually set in the vaguest of contexts:

— Этот человек вам знаком?

‘Do you know that man?’

— Да, я однажды **встречал** (impf.) его

‘Yes, I met him once’

(2) The ‘statement of fact’ is common:

(i) In the imprecise context of an interrogative or in a situation where, for example, a check is being made to see whether a particular action has been carried out:

Вы **провётривали** (impf.) комнату?

Have you aired the room?

(ii) In enquiring about someone’s whereabouts:

Вы не **видели** (impf.) Лёну?

Have you seen Lena?

(iii) In delivering a reminder:

Но ведь я **говорил** (impf.) вам об этом!

But I told you about this!

(3) As the context is firmed up, however, or a result emphasized, the perfective comes into contention. Compare:

(i) Use of the *imperfective* in:

Я **писал** (impf.) ей

I wrote to her

Я **рассказывал** (impf.) вам об этом

I told you about that

Я **звонил** (impf.) ему

I have rung him

Мы уже **встречались** (impf.)

We have already met

Я **читал** (impf.) «*Чапаяева*» в школе

I read *Chapaev* at school

(ii) Use of the *perfective* as the context is filled in:

Я **написал** (pf.) ей **письмо**

I wrote her **a letter**

Я **только что** **сказал** (pf.) вам об этом

I have **only just** told you about this

Я **позвонил** (pf.) ему, **чтобы напомнить** ему о вечере

I rang him to **remind him about the party**

Я встрéтил (pf.) егó в прошлoм годú на Чёрном мóре  
I met him **last year on the Black Sea**

(4) It will be clear from the above examples that the imperfective is preferred where a fact is placed in a contextual vacuum, and that the perfective is preferred when the context is filled in, in terms of **what** action was carried out, **when**, **where** or **for what purpose**, or if the result or completion of an action is stressed. Thus, the question — Вы **прочитáли** (pf.) «Наканúне»? can be rendered as ‘Have you **finished** *On the Eve*?’ — completion of the action is important since, say, the person asking the question is waiting to read the novel. The answer to this question might be **Прочитáл** (pf.), **возьмите, пожалуйста** ‘Yes, I have; here you are’. The perfective would also be used if someone had been *told* to read the novel: Вы **прочитáли** (pf.) «Наканúне»? ‘**Did you read** *On the Eve*?’ (i.e. as you were told to).

## 259 Use of the imperfective past to denote an action and its reverse

(1) The imperfective past may be used to denote an action and its reverse:

Она **брала́** (impf.) кнiгу в библиотéке  
She had a book out of the library (*and has now returned it*)

Similarly, **открывáл** (impf.) can mean ‘opened **and closed again**’:

У меня́ в ко́мнате так хо́лодно сего́дня. Навéрное, ктó-то **открывáл** (impf.) зде́сь **окно́**  
It is so cold in my room today. Someone has probably **had the window open** in here

The implication of this example is that the window has been opened but is now shut again. By contrast, Ктó-то **открýл** (pf.) **окно́** means that the window is still open ‘Someone has opened the window’, or refers to the single act of opening ‘Someone opened the window’.

(2) Other imperfective past forms of this type include:

<b>включáл</b>	‘switched on’ (and off again)
<b>вставáл</b>	‘got up’ (and sat or lay down again)
<b>выключáл</b>	‘switched off’ (and on again)
<b>давáл</b>	‘gave’ (and received back again)
<b>закрывáл</b>	‘closed’ (and opened again)
<b>клал</b>	‘put down’ (and took up again)

<b>ложился</b>	‘lay down’ (and got up again)
<b>надевал</b>	‘put on’ (and took off again)
<b>поднимался</b>	‘ascended’ (and came down again)
<b>спускался</b>	‘descended’ (and went up again):

Он **вставал** (impf.) нóчью  
He got up in the night (and went back to bed again)

Ребёнок **просыпался** (impf.), но сейчáс он о́пять спит  
The child woke up, but now he is asleep again

(3) In fact, the imperfective past of *any* verb denoting an action which has an opposite action may be used in this way:

Од́ин из них **пóднял** (pf.) рúку. Их ли́ца по́нра́вились мне, и я остано́вился. Тот, кто **поднимáл** (impf.) рúку, просóнул в маши́ну смýглое ли́цо (Strugatskys)  
One of them **raised his arm**. I liked the look of them and stopped. The one who **had raised his arm** thrust a dark-skinned face through the car window

Here, the perfective denotes a *one-way* action (**пóднял** рúку ‘raised his arm’) and the imperfective a *two-way* action, the action and its reverse (**поднимáл** рúку ‘raised his arm **and lowered it again**’).

## 260 Aspectival usage when emphasis is on the identity of the person performing the action

(1) If we examine the examples

Кто мыл (impf.) посóду?	Who washed the dishes?
Кто убирáл (impf.) кóмнату?	Who tidied the room?

then it is clear that the washing up has been done and the room tidied. Emphasis centres *not* on the *action*, but on the identity of the person who *performed* it. In such circumstances the *imperfective* is preferred:

Та́ня, э́то ты **разби́рала** (impf.) кн́иги в шкафу́?  
Tanya, was it you who sorted the books in the cupboard?

Use of the imperfective may also imply that something (usually untoward) happened while the action was being carried out (e.g. papers were mislaid).

Вы не зна́ете, кто **открывáл** (impf.) окно́? На подокóннике лежа́ли мо́й бума́ги.

Do you know who opened the window? My papers were lying on the window-sill.

(2) The *perfective* is preferred, however:

(i) When the **quality** of the action is stressed:

Кто **так хорошо** убрáл (pf.) кн́иги в шка́ф?

Who made such a good job of tidying the books into the cupboard?

or when the result is specially emphasized:

В ко́мнате так чи́сто. Интере́сно, кто **убра́л** (pf) её?

The room is beautifully clean. I wonder who tidied it?

(ii) When the verb denotes 'discovery':

Кто **изобрё́л** (pf.) ра́дио?

Who invented radio?

Кто **откры́л** (pf.) Аме́рику?

Who discovered America?

Кто **нашёл** (pf.) ключи́?

Who found the keys?

(iii) When the action involved is not deliberate or has an untoward result:

Кто **разби́л** (pf.) ча́шку?

Who broke the cup?

(3) The imperfective is also used when attention is directed to the **place** or **time** of an action rather than to the action itself:

Где вы **покупа́ли** (impf.) «Вече́рку»?

Where did you buy the evening paper?

— Я **показа́л** (pf.) ему́ чертёж

'I showed him the blueprint'

— Когда ты **пока́зывал** (impf.)?

'When did you show it to him?'

In these examples the questioner is interested in the place and time of the actions, **not** in their completion, which is in any case clear from the context (as in the first example) or explicitly stated (as in the second).

## 261 Use of the imperfective past to denote a forthcoming event

The imperfective past is used to indicate that an action was due to take place:

Поезд **отходил** (impf.) в пять часо́в  
The train **was due to leave** at five o'clock

Он мно́го рабо́тал, пото́му что в воскресе́нье **выступáл** (impf.) перед большо́й аудито́рией  
He worked hard, because on Sunday he **was to appear** in front of a large audience

## 262 Negated verbs in the past

(1) Both aspects may be used to indicate non-performance of an action in the past, but while the negative imperfective indicates that the action **did not take place at all**, the negative perfective indicates that it took place but **was not successful**, thus:

Он не **решáл** (impf.) зада́чу  
He **did not** do the sum (perhaps because he was off school)

Он не **решíл** (pf.) зада́чу  
He **could not** do the sum (he tried but failed)

(2) The aspects may similarly be used to distinguish an action which has not yet begun (impf.) from one which has begun but is not yet completed (pf.):

Я ещё не **чита́л** (impf.) э́ту статью́  
I haven't **read** this article yet

Я ещё не **прочита́л** (pf.) э́ту статью́  
I haven't **finished** this article yet

(3) The imperfective past is also used to negate a statement or supposition expressed by a perfective:

—Почему́ вы ушли́ из цы́рка, почему́ вас **увóлили**? (pf.)  
—Меня́ не **увольни́ли** (impf.), я ушла́ сама́ (*Ogonek*)  
'Why did you leave the circus, why were you dismissed?'  
'I was not dismissed, I left of my own accord'

(4) The imperfective past is also used to denote the continuation of a

negative state:

Он долго **не соглашался** со мной (impf.)

He **took a long time to agree** with me

(5) The **perfective** past is used when an expected event did not take place:

Меня никто не **встретил** (pf.)

No one met me (despite, for example, a promise or understanding that someone would)

Compare Меня никто не **встречал** (impf.), ‘No one met me’ — a simple statement of fact with no implication that the reverse was expected.

Мы не **посмотрели** (pf.) фильм

We **didn’t see** the film (though, for example, it is just the kind of film we might have been expected to see)

Compare Мы не **смотрели** (impf.) фильм ‘We **haven’t seen** the film’.

(6) The perfective past is also used when an expected or desired result has not yet materialized:

Он ещё не **пришёл** (pf.)

He has not arrived yet.

---

## 263 Aspect in the future

---

(1) The imperfective future focuses on the progress of an action, while the perfective future stresses expected result or successful attainment. Compare the two future forms, the first imperfective and the second perfective, in the following example:

**Буду читать** (impf.) статью, надеюсь, что **прочитаю** (pf.)

I shall **read/be reading** the article and hope I shall **get it finished**

(2) The imperfective is used when emphasis is placed on the way in which an action is carried out, *not* on its result or successful implementation:

Как бы **будете отправлять** (impf.) книги, простой или заказной бандеролью?

How will you be sending the books, as ordinary printed matter or registered?

(3) A perfective future may refer to a completed action within the framework of an action in progress, e.g.

Когда я **бúду проходить** (impf.) мимо аптеки, **куплю** (pf.)  
таблётки от кашля

When I pass the chemist's I shall buy some cough drops

#### Note

- (a) Perfectives often appear in sequence, each perfective advancing the action a stage further: Я **связа́юсь** (pf.) со своими друзьями, всё **узна́ю** (pf.), и **позвоню́** (pf.) (Soloukhin) 'I shall contact my friends, get all the facts and give you a ring'.
- (b) A negated perfective future may be used to denote the impossibility of an action: Раскалённое железо го́лой руко́й **не возьмёшь** 'You cannot take hold of red-hot iron with your bare hands'.

### 264 The 'logical' future

Unlike English, where the future tense is not used after conjunctions such as 'after', 'as soon as', 'before', 'until', 'when' etc., Russian uses an imperfective or perfective future to express future meaning in such contexts:

Когда вы **бу́дете ремо́нтировать** (impf.) маши́ну, не забу́дете (pf.)  
поменять свёчи

When you **are overhauling** the car, don't forget to change the plugs

Как то́лько он **приде́т** (pf.), поста́вим (pf.) чайник

As soon as he **arrives** we shall put the kettle on

### 265 The future in reported speech

An imperfective or perfective future in **direct** speech

—В э́том го́ду я не **бу́ду отды́хаться**  
'This year I won't be having a holiday'

—Я **приду́**, е́сли успе́ю  
'I shall come if I have time'

is expressed as a future in **reported** speech:

Он сказа́л, что в э́том го́ду не **бу́дет отды́хаться**  
He said he **wouldn't** be having a holiday this year

Она обеща́ла, что **приде́т**, е́сли успе́ет  
She promised she **would** come if she **had** time

Compare **256** (2) (viii).

---

## **266 Use of the future to express repeated actions**

---

(1) Repeated actions in the future are usually expressed using the imperfective aspect:

Ле́том я **бу́ду** регуля́рно **загора́ть** (impf.)  
In summer I shall sun-bathe regularly

(2) A perfective future may be used to stress the sequential nature of actions:

Когда́ пита́мцы **окре́пнут** (pf.), их выпуска́ют (impf.) в тайгу́  
(*Sputnik*)  
When our small charges (baby sable) **grow strong enough** they are released into the taiga

The use of two imperfectives in this example would imply that the actions occur simultaneously, that the sable are released while they are still in the process of growing strong. The perfective (**окре́пнут**) shows that the actions are sequential: first the sable get strong, then they are released. Compare

У меня́ был кро́хотный но́мер с телеви́зором, кото́рый **включáлся** (impf.), когда́ в автома́т **опу́стишь** (pf.) сто ие́н (Granin)  
I had a tiny room with a television set which switched on when one inserted one hundred yen

In this example, too, the perfective (**опу́стишь**) indicates that the actions are sequential (first the money is inserted, then the set switches on), *not* simultaneous.

(3) The ‘historic perfective future’ may be used for graphic effect in past frequentative contexts, in literary and other written styles, to denote repeated quick movements:

Она́ то **вздохне́т** (pf.), то **о́хнет** (pf.)  
She would now sigh, now moan

**Быва́ло** serves to stress the past frequentative nature of the action:



**Бывало**, он заглянет (pf.) к нам

He was in the habit of looking in to see us

(4) The perfective future can also appear in frequentative contexts in combination with temporal adverbs such as **всегда** ‘always’:

Он вам **всегда** поможет (pf.)

He will always give you a hand

#### *Note*

The meaning of the perfective future in such contexts is ‘potential’ rather than frequentative, since its use does not imply a repeated action (cf. genuine repetition in *Каждый день она **будет** ему **помогать** (impf.)* ‘She will help him every day’), but rather constant readiness to perform an action if the need should arise, the element of repetition being expressed in terms of one typical action.

### 267 The perfective future in warnings

In colloquial Russian the first-person singular of the perfective future may be used to express a warning:

Я тебе **поспóрю!** (pf.)

I’ll give you argue!

Я тебе **погуляю!** (pf.)

I’ll give you gallivanting around!

Я тебе это **припо́мню!** (pf.)

I won’t let you forget this!

### 268 Aspect in questions

(1) Questions about intended actions are more often than not couched in the imperfective:

Что вы **будете** **дéлать**? (impf.)

What are you going to do?

Что вы **будете** **зака́зывать**? (impf.)

What are you going to order?

Вы **будете** **пить** (impf.) чай или ко́фе?

Will you have tea or coffee?

unless special emphasis is laid on successful completion:

Вы **найдёте** (pf.) э́тот дом?

Will you find the house?

(2) Answers, however, can be in either aspect, depending on the context:

**Я буду дочитывать** (impf.) книгу/**дочитаю** (pf.) книгу  
**I shall be finishing off** the book/shall **get** the book **finished**

**Я буду пить** (impf.) кофе/**выпью** (pf.) чашечку кофе  
**I shall have** coffee/**have** a small cup of coffee

Compare

— Ладно, я уйду́. А ты что **будешь делать** (impf.)?

— **Уложу́** (pf.) Светланку спать, а потом **буду реветь** (impf.)  
 (Zalygin)

‘All right, I’ll leave. And what are you going to do?’

‘I shall put Svetlanka to bed and then cry my eyes out’

(3) The answer to the question **Что вы будете заказывать?** ‘What are you going to order?’ is likely to be perfective, however, since the *result* of the action is of particular importance (the diner will presumably get the dish he or she orders):

**Я возьму́** (pf.) бульо́н  
 I will have clear soup

#### Note

In colloquial Russian *negative* forms of the verb are frequently used in making requests: вы на следующей **не выходите?** (impf.) ‘Are you getting out at the next stop?’ Quite often the perfective future is used: Вы не **скажете** (pf.), сколько сейчас времени? ‘You couldn’t tell me the time, could you?’; Вы не **разрешите** (pf.) позвонить от вас? ‘Would you mind if I used your phone?’

## 269 Some uses of the imperfective imperative

The imperfective imperative is used to express:

(1) General injunctions:

**Берегите** (impf.) природу!  
 Conserve nature!

(2) Frequentative instructions:

**Всегда относí** (impf.) книги в срок  
 Always return your books on time

- (3) Instructions to continue an action:

**Пишите** (impf.) *дальше!*  
Carry on writing!

## 270 Use of the imperative in the context of a single action

- (1) The **perfective** imperative is used to order the implementation of a single action:

**Закройте** (pf.) *окно!*  
**Shut** the window!

### Note

The addition of the particle **-ка** adds a nuance of familiarity to the command: **Запиши-ка!** (pf.) ‘Do jot it down!’

- (2) The negated **imperfective** imperative is used to **forbid** an action:

Не **закрыва́йте** (impf.) *окно!*      **Don’t shut** the window!

- (3) Both aspects can appear in one sentence, the imperfective forbidding and the perfective ordering an action:

Если всё же что́-то загорéлось, **не теря́йтесь** (impf.), **постара́йтесь** (pf.) *сохранить хладнокровие (Rabotnitsa)*  
If something really has caught fire, **don’t panic, try** to retain your composure

- (4) If a perfective imperative has been ineffectual, then an imperfective may be used to impart a sense of urgency:

**Запиши́** (pf.) мой телефон. . . . **Записывай** (impf.), пожалуйста, я *очень тороплюсь!*  
**Make a note** of my telephone number. . . . **Would you mind writing it down**, please, I am in a terrible hurry!

## 271 Use of the imperative to exhort and invite

- (1) The imperfective imperative is also used:

- (i) In exhortations:

— **Вставай** (impf.), сказала она́      ‘Do get up’, she said

- (ii) In expressing wishes:

**Поправляйтесь!** (impf.)      Get well soon!

(iii) In conveying an invitation, in social or other conventional situations:

**Проходите** (impf.), пожалуйста!

Pass down the aircraft, please! (air-hostess to passengers)

**Берите!** (impf.)

Take one/some!

**Кладите** (impf.) сахар!

Have some sugar!

**Раздевайтесь!** (impf.)

Take off your hat and coat!

**Садитесь!** (impf.)

Sit down!

**Снимайте** (impf.) пальто!

Take off your coat!

(2) In a more formal or professional relationship, however, the **perfective** may be preferred:

Нюра, **сними** (pf.) с больного пижаму, хладнокрѳвно сказа́ла Ве́ра Ива́новна (Aksenov)

‘Nyura, remove the patient’s pyjamas’, said Vera Ivanovna coolly (doctor to nurse)

«Я тебе́ покажу́ фанта́зию! **Сядь** (pf.) как сле́дует!» (Trifonov)  
‘I’ll give you imagination! Sit properly!’ (mother to child)

#### *Note*

- (a) The first-person plural of an imperfective or perfective verb may also be used to express wishes or appeals: **бу́дем наде́яться** (impf.), что ‘let’s hope that’, **Попробуем** (pf.) ‘Let’s have a go’. The addition of **дава́й/дава́йте** lends emphasis: **Дава́йте** бу́дем чита́ть (impf.) Пу́шкина! ‘Let’s read Pushkin!’, **Дава́й** сыгра́ем! (pf.) ‘Let’s have a game!’
- (b) The negative optative is usually expressed by an imperfective: **Не бу́дем зажига́ть** (impf.) све́та, ла́дно? — сказа́ла она́ (Kazakov) ‘“Do you mind if we leave the light off?” she said’, **Не бу́дем преувели́чивать** (impf.) ‘Let’s not exaggerate’, **Дава́йте не бу́дем спо́рить** (impf.) ‘Let’s not argue’.

---

## **272 A command arising naturally from context**

---

The imperfective imperative is preferred when an instruction is the expected norm in particular circumstances. For example, a student at an examination knows the procedure: he selects a slip of paper with a question on it, prepares his answer and is invited to speak. The examiner’s instructions are therefore expressed in the imperfective:

**Берите** (impf.) билет! **Отвечайте!** (impf.)  
Take a slip! Answer!

Similarly, standard recommendations and requests from a shop assistant will be in the imperfective:

**Платите** (impf.) в кассу! Pay at the cash-desk!

while non-predictable statements will be in the perfective:

**Возьмите** (pf.) эту кофточку! Она вам идёт  
Take this blouse! It suits you

## 273 Negative commands/warnings

(1) A negative command usually appears in the imperfective aspect (see 270 (2)). When the imperative implies a **warning**, however, rather than a command, tempered with a nuance of apprehension that the action might occur inadvertently, then the **perfective** is preferred:

<b>Не заболѐй!</b> (pf.)	Mind you don't fall ill!
<b>Не поскользнѐсь!</b> (pf.)	Mind you don't slip!
<b>Не пролѐй</b> (pf.) молоко!	Mind you don't spill the milk!
<b>Не простудѐсь!</b> (pf.)	Mind you don't catch a cold!
<b>Не уронѐте</b> (pf.) вазу!	Mind you don't drop the vase!

### Note

- (a) These commands forbid actions which would not normally be performed deliberately, but might occur inadvertently or as the result of carelessness. It is in these circumstances that the negative perfective imperative is used, sometimes combined with **смотри(те)!** 'mind!':

<b>Смотри,</b> не забудь! (pf.)	Mind you don't forget!
<b>Смотри,</b> не обрежься! (pf.)	Mind you don't cut yourself!
<b>Смотри,</b> не опоздай! (pf.)	Mind you're not late!
<b>Смотри,</b> не упади! (pf.)	Mind you don't fall!

- (b) Other perfective verbs whose negative imperatives may be used to express warnings include **испачкаться** 'to get dirty', **опрокинуть** 'to overturn, capsize', **потеряться** 'to get lost', **промахнуться** 'to miss the target', **проспать** 'to oversleep'. Compare «Умоляю, девочки, **не заразитесь** (pf.), будьте осторожнее!» (*Rabotnitsa*) 'I implore you, girls, don't get

infected, be more careful!’ Из сосѣдней комнаты, где шумѣли гости, тѣтя просила: “Ради Бѣга, **не потеряй** ничего!” (Nabokov) ‘From the next room, where the guests were making a din, my aunt could be heard asking: “For heaven’s sake, don’t lose anything!”’

**Не пропади!**

Mind you don’t get lost!

(2) The imperfective is used, however, when reference is to a protracted period rather than a single occurrence:

Смотри **не забывай** (impf.) нас!

Mind you don’t forget us!

---

## **274 Use of the perfective imperative with repeated actions**

---

While a repeated action is usually associated with an imperfective imperative (See 269 (2).), the perfective is used when reference is made to the number of times an action is repeated in swift succession (cf. 257 (3) (iii) (b)):

Прослушайте (pf.) плѣнку **два раза/несколько раз**

Listen to the tape twice/several times

---

## **275 Use of the future and the infinitive to express peremptory commands**

---

(1) Future perfectives may be used to express categorical commands:

**Пойдѣшь** к мамѣ, **возьмѣшь** у неѣ ключи от шкафа и **принесѣшь** посуду

You will go to mother, get the keys of the cupboard from her and bring the crockery

(2) A strict imperative may also be rendered by use of the infinitive:

**Сидѣть** смѣрно!      Sit quietly!

---

## **276 Aspect in the infinitive. Introductory comments**

---

(1) The perfective infinitive is used to denote the completion of a single action:

Мне надо **позвонить** (pf.) домой

I need to ring home

(2) The imperfective infinitive denotes:

(i) A repeated action:

Их надо **кормить** (impf.) три раза в день  
They have to be fed three times a day

(ii) A continuous action:

Помогли ей **воспитывать** (impf.) девочку  
They helped her to bring up the little girl

(3) An imperfective infinitive may simply name an action, with no implication of result or completion, while the perfective stresses intention to achieve a result. Compare

Мне сегодня нужно **разбирать** (impf.) книги  
I must **spend some time sorting out** the books today

and

Мне сегодня нужно **разобрать** (pf.) книги  
I must **get the books sorted out** today

## 277 Use of the infinitive to denote habitual actions

(1) The imperfective infinitive combines with verbs and other forms that imply habitual processes, tendencies, preferences etc.:

Рыбка **научилась** открывать (impf.) холодильник (*Yunyi naturalist*)  
Rybka (an otter) learned how to open the fridge

Я **привык** вставать (impf.) рано I am used to rising early  
Он **умеет** рисовать (impf.) He knows how to draw

(2) Other words that combine with an imperfective infinitive include **надоест** 'to be bored with', **отвыкнуть** 'to get out of the habit of', **предпочитать** 'to prefer', **привычка** 'habit', **разучиться** 'to forget how to' (Я **разучился** играть (impf.) на пианино 'I have forgotten how to play the piano').

(3) Though **любить** 'to like' almost invariably combines with the imperfective infinitive, the perfective is possible in the meaning of 'intermittent repetition'. Compare

Он **любит** **отдыхать** (impf.) в саду  
He likes to relax in the garden

Он любит **отдохну́ть** (pf.) в саду́  
He likes relaxing in the garden now and then

*Note*

**Боя́ться** ‘to fear’ is used with the perfective infinitive when it expresses apprehension that something might happen inadvertently: Бою́сь **заблуди́ться** ‘I am afraid of getting lost’. In the case of deliberate actions, use of aspect depends on context, cf: Бою́сь **купа́ться** (impf.) в о́зере ‘I am scared of bathing in the lake’ and Бою́сь **призна́ться** (pf.) ‘I am afraid to confess’.

(4) The perfective infinitive also appears in a frequentative context when the element of frequency relates to another word in the sentence, and *not* to the infinitive. Thus, in

Я всегда́ рад **помо́чь** (pf.) тебе́  
I am always glad to help you

the meaning of frequency expressed by **всегда́** ‘always’ is ‘absorbed’ by the adjective **рад** ‘glad’. The construction: adverb of frequency + adjective or verb + *perfective* infinitive reflects standard practice:

Вы всегда́ мо́жете (impf.) **взять** (pf.) у меня́ слова́рь  
You can always get a dictionary from me

Иногда́ мне удава́лось (impf.) **подста́вить** (pf.) ему́ но́жку  
(Granin)  
Sometimes I succeeded in tripping him up

Его́ неоднократи́чно пыта́лись (impf.) **отпугну́ть** (pf.) (*Izvestiya*)  
Several times they had tried to scare it (a tiger) off

---

## 278 Use of the imperfective infinitive after verbs of beginning, continuing and concluding

---

The imperfective infinitive is mandatory after:

(1) Verbs of beginning:

<b>начина́ть/нача́ть</b>	to begin
<b>принимáться/приниáться</b>	to get down to
<b>ста́ть</b> (pf. only)	to begin

Они́ приня́лись **выдвига́ть** (impf.) я́щики (Nagibin)  
They set to work pulling out the drawers

(2) Verbs of continuing:



**продолжа́ть** to continue

Он продолжа́л **укла́дываться** (impf.)

He continued packing

*Note*

Perfective **продо́лжить** usually takes a direct object, *not* an infinitive: **продо́лжить** провер́ку ‘to continue the check’.

(3) Verbs of concluding:

**броса́ть/бро́сить** ‘to give up’

**конча́ть/ко́нчить** ‘to finish’

**перестава́ть/переста́ть** ‘to cease’

**прекраща́ть/прекрати́ть** ‘to desist’

Ли́дия Миха́йловна перестала́ **приглаша́ть** (impf.) меня́ за стол (Rasputin)

Lidia Mikhailovna stopped inviting me for meals

## 279 Inadvisable and advisable actions

(1) The imperfective infinitive combines with adverbs, impersonal expressions and other words which imply the inadvisability or deny the necessity of an action: **бесполе́зно** ‘it’s useless’, **вре́дно** ‘it is harmful’, **доста́точно** ‘that’s enough’, **заче́м?** ‘why?’, **не на́до** ‘you should not’, **не ну́жно** ‘it is not necessary’, **не сле́дует** ‘you ought not to’, **не сто́ит** ‘there is no point in’, **не́чего** ‘there is no point’, **сме́шно** ‘it is ridiculous’, **сты́дно** ‘it is disgraceful’:

Да и заче́м **меня́ть** (impf.) ку́зов? (*Sputnik*)

And anyway, why change the bodywork?

Не ну́жно **вызыва́ть** (impf.) врача́

There is no need to call the doctor

В ка́ждый дом **заходи́ть** (impf.) нет смы́сла (Rasputin)

There’s no point in calling into every house

Нехорошо́ **обижа́ть** (impf.) стари́ка (Nagibin)

It’s not nice to hurt an old man’s feelings

*Note*

**Не до́лжен** combines with the imperfective infinitive to denote inadvisability (Вы не должны́ **подава́ть** (impf.) заявле́ние ‘You shouldn’t apply’) and with the perfective infinitive to denote

supposition (Он не должен **опоздать** (pf.) ‘He is not likely to be late’) (see also **313** (1)).

(2) **Perfective** infinitives may be used to denote advisability:

Не слéдует ли **послать** (pf.) поздравлénие?  
Don’t you think we should send our congratulations?

Почему́ не **спросить**? (pf.)      Why not ask?

(3) **Нельзя́** combines with the imperfective infinitive in the meaning of inadmissibility and the perfective in the meaning of impossibility:

Нельзя́ **входить** (impf.)  
You can’t go in (i.e. it is forbidden)

Нельзя́ **войти́** (pf.)  
You can’t get in (because, for example, the door is locked)

---

## 280    A request to perform/not to perform an action

---

(1) A **perfective** infinitive is used after a verb denoting a request or intention to perform a single completed action:

Она́ попросила́ меня́ **уйти́** (pf.)      She asked me to leave  
Он обеща́л **помочь** (pf.) мне      He promised to help me

Other verbs denoting request or intention include **решать/решить** ‘to decide’, **советовать/посоветовать** ‘to advise’, **убеждать/убедить** ‘to convince’, **уговаривать/уговорить** ‘to persuade’.

(2) An **imperfective** infinitive is used, however, if **не** appears between the verb and the infinitive:

Она́ решила́ **не уходить** (impf.)  
She decided not to go away

Он обеща́л **не приглашать** (impf.) Та́ню на вéчер  
He promised not to invite Tanya to the party

### *Note*

- (a) A negated **perfective** infinitive in such contexts expresses, not a request or undertaking to abstain from certain actions, but apprehension that an undesired action might inadvertently take place: **Стара́юсь не сде́лать** (pf.) **ошибок** ‘I am trying not to make any mistakes’.

- (b) Verbs such as **отговáривать/отговорить** ‘to dissuade’ and **раздúмывать/раздúмать** ‘to change one’s mind’ contain a built-in negative meaning and combine with an imperfective infinitive:

Он отговорил меня **спрашивать** (impf.)

He dissuaded me from asking

Он раздúмал **ехать** (impf.)

He changed his mind about going (decided not to go)

## 281 Use of the infinitive after не хочú

- (1) Infinitives of either aspect are used after **не хочú** ‘I don’t want to’, **нет желания** ‘I have no wish to’, **я не дúмаю** ‘I do not mean to’, the imperfective being preferred after a categorical negative:

Я и не дúмал **отказываться** (impf.)

I didn’t dream of refusing

### Note

The imperfective infinitive is virtually compulsory after the impersonal reflexive **не хотётся**: Домóй **уходить** (impf.) не хочется (Abramov) ‘We don’t feel like going home’.

- (2) The use of a *perfective* infinitive after **не хочú** etc. may denote that an action *has* taken place, but *unintentionally*:

Я не хотёл его **обидеть** (pf.)

I did not mean to offend him

## 282 Use of the infinitive with порá

- (1) In the meaning ‘it is time to’, **порá** combines with the **imperfective** infinitive:

Порá **начинáть** (impf.) It is time to begin

- (2) In the meaning ‘it is necessary to’ it combines with the **perfective** infinitive:

Но ведь порá **понять** (pf.), что чúда не бúдет (Nedelya)

It is high time we realized that there isn’t going to be any miracle

### 283 Use of infinitives after verbs of motion

---

(1) The imperfective infinitive is used after verbs of motion to describe actions involving processes:

Соня пошла **ста́вить** (impf.) чайник (Greкова)  
Sonya went to put on the kettle

Она́ ведёт ребёнка в поликлинику **проверя́ть** (impf.) зрение  
She is taking the child to the polyclinic to have his eyes tested

(2) If, however, result is emphasized rather than process, then the perfective is preferred:

Пошёл **почини́ть** (pf.) часы́  
He has gone to get the clock mended

## Reflexive Verbs

### 284 Reflexive verbs: conjugation

---

In conjugating a reflexive verb, the ending **-ся** is affixed to verb forms ending in a consonant or the semi-consonant **-й**, and to all active participles; **-сь** is affixed to forms ending in a vowel. The reflexive verb is thus conjugated as follows:

<b>мы́ться</b> 'to wash'	<b>верну́ться</b> 'to return'
я мо́юсь	верну́сь
ты мо́ешься	вернёшься
он мо́ется	вернётся
мы мо́емся	вернёмся
вы мо́етесь	вернётесь
они́ мо́ются	вернутся

Past tense

мы́лся, мы́лась	верну́лся, верну́лась
мы́лось, мы́лись	верну́лось, верну́лись

Imperative

мо́йся, мо́йтесь	верни́сь, верни́тесь
------------------	----------------------

For active participles, see **340** (2) and **342** (2).

## 285 The ‘true’ reflexive

(1) The number of ‘true’ reflexives, in which the agent ‘turns the action back’ upon himself or herself, is relatively small. The category contains a number of verbs which relate to personal grooming:

<b>бриться/по-</b>	to shave (oneself)
<b>готовиться/при-</b>	to get ready, prepare oneself
<b>гримироваться/за-</b>	to put on make-up
<b>завиваться/завиться</b>	to have one’s hair waved
<b>краситься/вы-, по-</b>	to dye one’s hair
<b>краситься/на-</b>	to make up one’s face
<b>купаться/вы-, ис-</b>	to bathe (oneself)
<b>мыться/по-, вы-</b>	to wash (oneself)
<b>обуваться/обуться</b>	to put on one’s shoes
<b>одеваться/одеться</b>	to dress oneself
<b>переодеваться/переодеться</b>	to change (one’s clothes)
<b>причёсываться/причесаться</b>	to do one’s hair, have one’s hair done
<b>пудриться/на-, по-</b>	to powder one’s face
<b>раздеваться/раздеться</b>	to get undressed
<b>разуваться/разуться</b>	to take off one’s shoes
<b>умываться/умыться</b>	to wash one’s hands and face

(2) Other ‘true’ reflexives include the following:

(i) **Бросаться/броситься** ‘to rush’, **защищаться/защититься** ‘to defend oneself’, **подниматься/подняться** ‘to ascend’, **прислоняться/прислониться** ‘to lean’, **спускаться/спуститься** ‘to descend’.

(ii) A number of verbs which are reflexive only in the **imperfective**:

<b>ложиться/лечь</b>	to lie down
<b>пересаживаться/пересесть</b>	to change places, trains etc.
<b>садиться/сесть</b>	to sit down
<b>становиться/стать</b>	to (go and) stand

*Note*

**Усаживаться/усесться** ‘to settle down’ is reflexive in both aspects.

## 286 Semi-reflexive verbs

Semi-reflexive verbs describe an action which the agent performs **for** rather than to himself or herself: **запасаться/запастись** ‘to stock up with’, **укладываться/уложиться** ‘to pack’ etc.

## 287 Intransitive reflexives

A reflexive ending may transform a transitive into an intransitive verb. Compare transitive **возвращать**

**Он возвращает** книгу в библиотéку  
He returns the book to the library

with intransitive **возвращаться** in

**Он возвращается** домóй  
He returns home

Other examples include:

Земля <b>вращается</b>	The Earth rotates
Колесó <b>вэртится</b>	The wheel spins
Война́ <b>кончается/кóнчилась</b>	The war ends/ended
Стул <b>ломается/сломáлся</b>	The chair breaks/broke
Дом <b>находится</b> на берегу́	The house is situated on the shore
Фильм <b>начинается/начался́</b>	The film begins/began
Урóк <b>продолжается</b>	The lesson continues
Болезнь <b>распространяется/распространи́лась</b>	The disease is spreading/spread
Положение <b>улучшается/улучшилось</b>	The situation improves/improved

### Note

- (a) All the verbs in the above list can be used transitively without the reflexive endings: Учитель **вращает** глобус ‘The teacher rotates the globe’ etc.
- (b) While English uses many verbs both transitively *and* intransitively (‘She *grows* tulips’/‘Tulips *grow*’; ‘She *stops* the bus’/‘The bus *stops*’), Russian always distinguishes transitive from intransitive, either by using different verbs (Она́ **выра́щивает** тюльпáны/Тюльпáны **растúт**) or by affixing a reflexive ending to convert a transitive into an intransitive verb (Она́ **останáвливает** авто́бус/Авто́бус **останáвливается**).

## 288 Reflexive verbs with passive meaning

(1) Reflexive suffixes impart **passive** meaning to many imperfective transitive verbs. There is usually a third-person subject:

Как это **делается**?

How is that done?

Симфония **исполняется** (оркестром)

The symphony is performed (by an orchestra)

(2) The possibility of indicating the **agent** of an action (usually in the form of an instrumental) distinguishes the passive from the intransitive construction. Compare:

Passive:

Книги **возвращаются** в библиотеку **учениками**

The books **are returned** to the library **by the pupils**

Intransitive:

Они **возвращаются** домой

They return home

Likewise, Колёса дв́жутся **водой** ‘The wheels are moved by water power’ (passive), Толпа́ дв́жется по́ улице ‘The crowd moves down the street’ (intransitive).

### Note

In general, only **imperfective** verbs function as reflexive passives: Про́ект **обсуждался** министрами ‘The project was being discussed by the ministers’, Как **пи́шется** это́ сло́во? ‘How is this word spelt?’ The **perfective** passive is normally rendered by a participle (see **359** (3)).

## 289 Reciprocal meanings

(1) A small number of reflexives denote reciprocal or joint action:

Они́ ча́сто **встречаются**

They often meet

Мы **собира́емся**

We gather

Скóро **увидимся**

We shall see each other soon

(2) Others include:

делі́ться/по-

to share

здорóваться/по-

to say hello

<b>мири́ться/по-, при-</b>	to make it up
<b>обнима́ться/обня́ться</b>	to embrace
<b>объединя́ться/объедини́ться</b>	to amalgamate
<b>проща́ться/прости́ться</b>	to say goodbye
<b>сове́товаться/по-</b>	to take advice
<b> совеща́ться (impf. only)</b>	to consult
<b>сраба́таться (pf. only)</b>	to achieve a working relationship
<b>услáвливаться/услóвиться</b>	to agree
<b>целова́ться/по-</b>	to kiss

(3) **С** + instrumental may combine with such verbs:

Делиться **с кѐм-нибудь** кусо́м хлѐба  
To share a crust of bread with someone

Совещаться **со специа́листами**  
To consult experts

in which case the **subject** of the verb may be singular

**Я** здоро́ваюсь/проща́юсь с ним  
I say hello/goodbye to him

or plural

**Мы** сраба́тались с ни́ми  
We developed a good working relationship with them

In the absence of **с** + instrumental, however, the subject is always plural:

<b>Друзья́</b> обня́лись	The friends embraced
<b>Враги́</b> помири́лись	The enemies made it up

(4) Some reciprocal reflexives denote conflict and dispute:

Он со все́ми **брани́тся**      He quarrels with everyone

Other verbs include: **би́ться** 'to fight', **боро́ться/по-** 'to struggle', **руга́ться/по-** 'to abuse one another', **ссора́ться/по-** 'to quarrel'.

(5) Reflexive verbs of motion with the prefixes **раз-** and **с-** (**разбега́ться/разбежа́ться** 'to disperse', **слета́ться/слетѐться** 'to congregate' (of birds) etc.) also express joint action (see 331).

#### *Note*

See 143 (3) (constructions with **дру́г дру́га** 'each other').



## 290 Reflexive verbs which express feelings and attitudes

A number of reflexive verbs express or reflect feelings and attitudes. They may be subdivided into:

(1) Those which appear only as reflexives: **боя́ться** + gen. 'to fear', **го́рдиться** + instr. 'to be proud of', **любова́ться/по-** + instr./**на** + acc. 'to admire', **наде́яться на** + acc. 'to hope for, rely on', **наслажда́ться** + instr. 'to revel in', **пра́виться/по-** + dat. 'to please', **опаса́ться** + gen. 'to fear', **распла́каться** (pf. only) 'to burst into tears', **рассмея́ться** (pf. only) 'to burst out laughing', **смея́ться/за-** + dat./**над** + instr. 'to laugh', **сомнева́ться/усомни́ться в** + prep. 'to doubt', **улыба́ться/улыбну́ться** 'to smile'.

(2) Those which, shorn of their reflexive endings, can be used as transitive verbs in their own right: **беспоко́иться/по-** 'to worry', **весели́ться/по-** 'to enjoy oneself', **волнова́ться/вз-** 'to get excited', **восхища́ться/восхити́ться** + instr. 'to be delighted', **печа́литься/о-** 'to grieve', **признава́ться/призна́ться в** + prep. 'to confess to', **пуга́ться/ис-** + gen. 'to be frightened', **ра́доваться/об-** + dat. 'to rejoice', **расстра́иваться/расстро́иться** 'to get distraught, upset', **серди́ться/рас-** **на** + acc. 'to get angry', **удивля́ться/удиви́ться** + dat. 'to be surprised'. Compare

Э́то меня́ беспоко́ит      That concerns me

and

Я беспоко́юсь      I am worried

## 291 Intense or purposeful action

The following reflexive verbs denote intense or purposeful action: **добива́ться/добы́ться** + gen. 'to achieve', **принимáться/приня́ться за** + acc. 'to tackle', **проси́ться/по-** 'to apply', **пыта́ться/по-** 'to attempt', **стара́ться/по-** 'to try', **стреми́ться** (impf. only) 'to strive', **сту́чаться/по-** 'to knock' (hoping to be admitted), **трудо́ться/по-** 'to labour'.

## 292 Reflexive verbs that emphasize thoroughness

(1) A number of reflexive verbs, mostly prefixed **вы-**, **до-** or **на-**,

emphasize thorough completion of an action: **высыпаться/выспаться** ‘to have a good sleep’, **доучиваться/доучиться** ‘to complete one’s studies’, **наедаться/наесться** ‘to eat one’s fill’, **напиваться/напиться** ‘to slake one’s thirst/get drunk’, **насмотряться** (pf. only) ‘to look one’s fill’ etc.

(2) Reflexive verbs in **за-** denote absorption in an activity: **задумываться/задуматься** ‘to be lost in thought’, **засматриваться/засмотреться** ‘to be absorbed in looking at something’ etc.

---

### 293 Reflexive verbs that denote potential to perform an action

---

Some reflexives denote that the subject has the potential to perform some, usually harmful, action:

Корóвы <b>бодáются</b>	Cows butt
Крапíва <b>жжётся</b>	Nettles sting
Собáки <b>кусаются</b>	Dogs bite
Кóшки <b>царапаются</b>	Cats scratch

## Impersonal Constructions

---

### 294 Use of impersonal constructions to denote natural processes

---

(1) The third-person singulars of some verbs denote climatic or other natural processes:

<b>Вечерéет</b>	Evening is drawing in
<b>Морóзит</b>	Frost is in the air
<b>Светáет</b>	Dawn is breaking
<b>Сквозíт</b>	There is a draught
<b>Смеркáется рáно</b>	It gets dark early
<b>Темнéет</b>	It is getting dark

(2) In the past tense, the neuter is used:

<b>Вечерéло</b>	Evening was drawing in
-----------------	------------------------

## 295 Impersonal constructions with an animate accusative or dative

Impersonal verbs may denote physical state, inclination or urge, the person affected appearing:

(1) In the accusative case:

Петра́ <b>зно́бит</b>	Petr feels shivery
Меня́ ко сну́ <b>кло́нит</b>	I feel drowsy
Ната́шу <b>лихо́радит</b>	Natasha feels feverish
Бо́льно́го <b>рвёт</b>	The patient vomits (Его́ <b>вы́рвало</b> 'He threw up')
Ма́шу <b>тошнит</b>	Masha feels sick (Ма́шу <b>стошни́ло</b> 'Masha vomited')
Нас <b>тяну́ло</b> друг к другу́ (Gagarin)	We felt drawn to each other

Меня́ **зудило́** посмотре́ть, как они́ отнесу́тся к моему́ появле́нию (Rasputin)

I was itching to see how they would react to my appearance

(2) In the dative case (with a reflexive verb):

Мне <b>нездорови́тся</b>	I am feeling off colour
Ей не <b>рабо́тается</b>	She doesn't feel like working
Ему́ не <b>спи́тся</b>	He doesn't feel sleepy
Мне <b>хо́чется</b> пить	I feel thirsty

Про́бывал чита́ть, **не чита́лось**, лёг на кровáть, кури́л (Trifonov) He tried to read but **wasn't in the mood for reading**, lay down on the bed, smoked

## 296 Impersonal constructions involving an external force

(1) In some impersonal constructions the object of a verb (usually in the neuter past tense) appears in the **accusative** and its inanimate agent, often a natural phenomenon or external force, in the **instrumental**:

Да́чу <b>зажгло́</b> мо́лнией	The country cottage was struck by lightning
Подва́л <b>за́лило</b> водо́й	The cellar was flooded
Избу́ <b>занесло́</b> сне́гом	The hut was snow-bound
Его́ <b>уби́ло</b> электр́ичеством	He was electrocuted

Труп <b>унесло́</b> реко́й	The body was carried away by the river
<b>Засы́пало</b> песко́м сква́жины (Trifonov)	The bore-holes got clogged with sand

*Note*

- (a) The agent of the action is not always indicated: Вчера́ на стрóйке **задави́ло** челове́ка ‘A man was run over at the building-site yesterday’, Лóдку **кача́ло** ‘The boat was pitching and tossing’, За́ борт **смы́ло** судово́го по́вара (Gagarin) ‘The ship’s cook was washed overboard’.
- (b) An alternative construction is also possible, with the natural or other phenomenon in the nominative, as the subject of the action: Егó **уби́ла** мо́лния ‘He was struck by lightning’.

(2) The incidents in this type of construction are **accidental**. Compare:

- (i) Use of the third-person **plural** for **intentional** occurrences:

Егó **уби́ли** в рукопа́шном бою́  
He was killed in hand-to-hand fighting

- (ii) Use of the third-person neuter **singular** for **accidental** occurrences:

Егó **уби́ло** в перестрёлке      He was killed in a skirmish

## 297 Expression of other meanings (chance, sufficiency etc.)

Some impersonal constructions are concerned with chance, success, sufficiency/insufficiency, the person affected appearing in the **dative**:

- (1) The verb denotes chance, luck, success:

Мне **везёт** в ка́рты  
I am lucky at cards

Мне **повезло́**  
I am in luck, have been lucky

Ученику́ **удалось** решíть зада́чу  
The pupil succeeded in solving the problem

Отцу́ **довелось** побыва́ть на собра́нии  
My father had occasion to attend a meeting

Note also **Вы́шло** ина́че ‘It turned out differently’, where no personal

involvement is expressed, and **Что случи́лось/произошлó?** ‘What has happened?’, where the person affected may appear in a prepositional phrase: **Что случи́лось с ним?** ‘What has happened to him?’ (cf. **У вас чтó-то с телефо́ном** ‘Something’s wrong with your telephone’).

(2) The verb denotes sufficiency/insufficiency, the quantifiable item appearing in the **genitive** case:

Бра́ту недостаёт о́пыта	My brother lacks experience
Ему́ всегда́ не хватаёт де́нег	He is always short of money
Хва́тит бензи́ну	There will be enough petrol

#### Note

Этого́ нам ещё не **хвата́ло!** ‘That’s all we need!’

## 298 Constructions with the second-person singular

(1) Impersonal meanings can be expressed using the second-person singular of a verb (the equivalent of English ‘one’ or ‘you’):

Ко все́му **привыка́ешь**  
You/one can get used to anything

Там не **увиди́шь** на́ших фи́льмов, не **прочтёшь** на́ших книг  
(*Russia Today*)  
You won’t see our films or read our books there (in the West)

(2) The second-person singular pronoun may be added for emphasis:

И то́лько при усло́вии, е́сли **ты** бу́дешь кури́ть и пить — **ты** бу́дешь по́льзоваться успе́хом. Е́сли же **ты** не накра́шена и не ра́дуешься плóским шу́точкам, ми́мо **тебя́** прохо́дят, как ми́мо пу́стого ме́ста (*Russia Today*)  
And you’ll only get anywhere if you smoke and drink. But if you don’t wear make-up or laugh at their pathetic jokes, they’ll cut you dead

## 299 Constructions with the third-person plural

(1) The third-person plural is used (*without a pronoun*) to denote action taken by ‘the authorities’ or other third parties:

Гово́рят, что . . .	They say that . . .
Меня́ задержа́ли	I was arrested
Его́ награди́ли	He was decorated

**Прóсят** не ку́рить      You are requested not to smoke

*Note*

Как тебя́ **зову́т**? ‘What is your name?’

(2) Use of the plural may be purely conventional, as in the following examples, in which the subject of the action could be interpreted as singular:

Тебя́ **ждут**  
Someone is/Some people are waiting for you

Вас **про́сят** к телефо́ну  
You are wanted on the phone

Тебя́ **спра́шивают**  
Someone’s asking for you

*Note*

The following example draws a clear distinction between the second-person singular, which identifies with the **individual**, and the third-person plural, which identifies with **authority**:

Са́мое ужа́сное во всех шко́лах, так э́то то, что **сиди́шь** и **трясе́шься**, что **тебя́ спро́сят**, и **поставя́т**, наприме́р, тро́йку или дво́йку (*Russia Today*)

The worst thing in any school is sitting there trembling at the prospect of being asked a question and getting a bare pass or a fail

## The Passive Voice

### 300 The passive voice. Introductory comments

---

(1) In a passive construction, the *natural object* of an action becomes the *grammatical subject*. Compare English:

- (i) ‘They hate *him*’ (active construction, with ‘*him*’ the natural object of the verb).
- (ii) ‘*He* is hated by them’ (passive construction in which ‘*he*’ has become the grammatical subject while remaining the natural object).

(2) Russian expresses passive meaning through reflexive verbs, the third-person plural, participles (see **359** and **360** (2)) and word order (see **478** (2) (i)).

### 301 The passive expressed by imperfective reflexive verbs

---

- (1) The passive may be expressed by an imperfective reflexive verb:

Здесь **лови́лись** (impf.) селёдка и рёдка́я рыба — куту́м  
(Lebedev)

Herring and a rare species, the kutum, **were fished for** here

- (2) The agent of the action may be represented by an **instrumental**

Сме́та составля́ется **бухгалте́ром**

The estimate is being prepared **by an accountant**

or omitted

По ра́дио **передава́лась** но́вая пьеса́

A new play **was being broadcast** on the radio

**Обу́вь** снима́лась у вхо́да в храм (Granin)

**Footwear** was removed at the entrance to the temple

#### *Note*

A reflexive verb with an animate subject is often either a ‘true’ reflexive (Он **мо́ется** ‘He is having a wash’ (not \*‘He is being washed’, which should be rendered as Его́ мо́ют)) or denotes joint action (Пассажи́ры **собира́ются** ‘The passengers congregate’). However, reflexive passives with animate subjects appear in examples such as Герои́ **награжда́ются** госуда́рством ‘Heroes **are rewarded** by the state’.

### 302 Passive meaning expressed by third-person plural verbs

---

The use of a third-person plural instead of a reflexive passive emphasizes the involvement of a human agent. Compare use of the reflexive in

Магази́н **открыва́ется**      The shop opens

with the third-person plural, with its emphasis on human agency:

И вдруг он слы́шит, что **дверь открыва́ют**. Но э́то ещё не па́рень, э́то проводни́ца (Rasputin)

And suddenly he hears the door **being opened**. But it’s not the boy back yet, it’s the guard

### 303 Perfective reflexives with passive meaning

Perfective passives are normally expressed by a participle (see **359** and **360** (2) (ii)). However, passives may also be expressed by perfective reflexives that denote:

(1) Covering:

Вершіны **покрылись** снѣгом  
The peaks became covered in snow

*Note*

This sentence describes an *action*. Compare the use of a participle to describe a *state*: Вершіны **покрыты** снѣгом ‘The peaks **are covered** in snow’.

(2) Filling:

Таз **наполнился** водо́й  
The basin filled with water

(3) Illuminating:

Поля **осветились** по́здним со́лнцем  
The fields were illuminated by the late sun

(4) Others, for example ‘replacing’, ‘creating’, ‘breaking’:

Её прѣжняя ра́дость **сменилась** чу́вством кра́йнего раздра́жения  
Her former joy yielded to a feeling of extreme irritation

**Создалось** сло́жное положѣние  
A complex situation developed

**Разбѣлся** стул  
A chair got smashed

*Note*

Animate instrumentals are excluded from such constructions. They are possible only with a passive participle (see **359**), cf.:

Кружо́к **созда́лся/был со́здан**  
The club was set up

Кружо́к **был со́здан** (but not \*созда́лся) **ученика́ми**  
The club was set up by the **pupils**



## The Conditional and Subjunctive Moods

### 304 The conditional mood. Introductory comments

(1) If we compare the sentences

(i) If he *wakes* his wife she *will be* angry

(ii) If he *woke* his wife she *would be* angry

then it is clear that the situation described in (i) *may* occur, while the situation described in (ii) is *hypothetical*. The implication of statements of type (ii) is that the opposite situation obtains, e.g.

If I *knew* (the implication is that I do *not* know), I *would tell* you

(2) In the above examples, (i) is rendered in Russian by a verb in the future

Если он **разбуди́т** же́ну, о́на рассе́рдится

while the two examples under (ii) are rendered by the **conditional mood**:

Если́ **бы** он **разбуди́л** же́ну, о́на **рассерди́лась бы**

Если́ **бы** я **знал**, я **сказа́л бы** вам

### 305 Formation of the conditional

A conditional construction comprises:

(i) A conditional clause (**если бы** + past tense of the verb).

(ii) A main clause (past tense of the verb + **бы**):

Если́ **бы** о́тец **был** жив, он **пора́довался бы** успе́хам сы́на

If father **were** alive he **would rejoice** at his son's success

*Note*

(a) Alternatively, the main clause may precede the conditional:

Я **пошёл бы**, **если бы** меня́ **пригласи́ли**

I **would go** if they **invited** me

(b) Conditionals can also have **pluperfect** meanings. Thus, the sentence under (a) could also be rendered as 'I **would have gone** if they **had invited** me'.

- (c) In the main clause, **бы** may precede the verb:

**Я бы помо́г** вам, е́сли бы вы меня́ попроси́ли

**I would help** you if you asked me (or **I would have helped** you if you had asked me)

- (d) The conjunction **то** ‘then’ may introduce a main clause that follows the conditional clause:

**Е́сли бы** она́ роди́лась в на́ше вре́мя, **то** ста́ла бы арти́сткой, и́ли ди́ктором, и́ли стюа́рдессой (*Russia Today*)

**If** she had been born in our time **then** she would have become a performer, or an announcer, or an air hostess

- (e) Sometimes the **е́сли** clause is omitted. The implication of such statements is ‘this is what I would do if I had my way’, as in the following example:

**Я бы запрети́л** шко́льникам появля́ться в обще́ственных ме́стах в ка́кой-либо ино́й оде́жде, крòме шко́льной фо́рмы (*Rabotnitsa*)

**I would ban** school-children from appearing in public places other than in school uniform

- (f) The conditional is used with either aspect, but is commoner with the perfective.

---

### 306 Use of (1) the imperative and (2) the preposition **без** to express conditional meanings

---

- (1) The **singular imperative** may be used colloquially with conditional meaning:

**Доведи́сь** мне (= е́сли бы мне довелóсь) встрéтиться с ним ра́ньше, всё **бы́ло бы** ина́че

**If I had chanced** to meet him earlier everything would have been different

#### Note

The singular imperative can also replace **е́сли** + future tense:

**Разгори́сь** (= Е́сли разгори́тся) а́томный пожа́р — и ока́жутся бессмы́сленными у́силия люде́й до́брой во́ли (Lebedev)

**If** an atomic holocaust **breaks out**, the efforts of people of goodwill will be pointless

- (2) A prepositional phrase with **без** ‘without’ may also have conditional meaning:

**Без Любы** (= **Если бы не Люба**), я бы не получил высшего образования (Rybakov)

**Had it not been for Lyuba** I would not have received a higher education

### 307 Use of the particle **бы** to express desire

(1) The past tense + **бы** can be used to express desire on the part of the subject:

Завтра я с удовольствием **пошёл бы** в театр

**I would** very much **like to go** to the theatre tomorrow

(2) The phrase **хотёл бы** 'I would like to' is commonly used in this meaning:

Я **хотёл бы** пойти в кино

**I would like** to go to the cinema

#### *Note*

- (a) Note the expression of desire in constructions of the type **Скорей бы пришло лето!** 'Roll on summer!', **Поехать бы домой!** 'Oh, to go home!'
- (b) Past tense + **бы** is also used to express a mild injunction: **Помогли бы ей** 'You might give her a hand'. This is much less peremptory than the imperative: **Помогите ей!** 'Help her!'

### 308 Use of the subjunctive to express wish or desire

(1) In translating the sentences

(i) **I want to vote**

(ii) **I want you to vote**

the infinitive in (i), in which the subject is the **same** for both verbs, is rendered by a Russian **infinitive**

Я хочу **голосовать**

while the infinitive in (ii), in which the subjects of the two verbs are **different**

*I want*

*you to vote*

is rendered in Russian by a **subjunctive** (**чтобы** + past tense):

**Я хочу, чтобы вы голосовали**

**Мы хотим, чтобы в мире не было ядерного оружия** (B. Yeltsin)  
We want the world to be without nuclear weapons

Compare

**Он не хочет, чтобы я танцевал с Тамарой** (Nikolaev)  
He **does not want me to dance** with Tamara

*Note*

**Чтобы** is *never* used with the present or future tense, only with the *past*.

(2) Other words denoting desirability or undesirability may also appear in the main clause: **важно** ‘it is important’, **желательно** ‘it is desirable’, **за то** ‘in favour of’, **лучше** ‘it is better’, **настаивать/настоять** ‘to insist’, **против того** ‘against’, **требовать/по-** ‘to demand’:

**Главное, чтобы спорт служил делу мира** (Kuleshov)  
**The main thing** is that sport should serve the cause of peace

**Я не против того, чтобы он брал на себя часть хлопот на кухне**  
(*Russia Today*)  
**I do not object to his taking on** some of the kitchen chores

**Никто не требует, чтобы девушка сидела одна взаперти**  
(*Rabotnitsa*)  
No one **demands** that a girl should remain locked up in seclusion

*Note*

- (a) Desirability may also be implied by constructions with **сказать** ‘to tell’ (Мне мой приёмный отец **сказал, чтоб я запомнил** место, где рукописи закопаны (*Izvestiya*) ‘My foster father **told me to remember** where the manuscripts are buried’, **Скажите** вашему Витьке, чтобы он **за мной не ходил** (Rasputin) ‘**Tell** your Vitka **to stop following me around**’) and **предупредить** ‘to warn’ (**Я предупредил** его, чтобы он **не уходил** ‘I warned him **not to go away**’).
- (b) The idiomatic use of **чтобы** + past tense to issue a warning: **Чтобы я этого больше не слышал!** ‘Don’t ever let me hear you say that again!’
- (c) In colloquial contexts, **хотеть** may combine with a future verb: **Хотите, я вам скажу** ‘Would you like me to tell you?’

### 309 The subjunctive of purposeful endeavour

---

(1) If we compare

(i) Я **хочу́**, **чтобы он пришёл**

I want him to come

(ii) Я **добива́юсь то́го**, **чтобы он пришёл**

I am trying to get him to come

then the wish that he should come, expressed in (i) by the verb **хочу́**, finds its counterpart in (ii) in purposeful endeavour (**добива́юсь**) to achieve the desired aim.

(2) Other words involved in this type of construction include **дeлaть всё, чтобы** ‘to do everything to ensure that’, **зaбoтиться o том, чтобы** ‘to take care that’, **слeдить зa тем, чтобы** ‘to see to it that’, **смoтрeть, чтобы** ‘to mind that’, **стрeмиться к томy, чтобы** ‘to strive’:

**Зaбoтиться o том, чтобы** вы не проспaли, бyдет ЭВМ тeлeфoннoй стaнции (*Izvestiya*)

The computer at the telephone exchange **will see to it that** you do not sleep in

**Смoтpи́, чтoб** Кутyзoв тeбя́ не пoймaл (Yakhontov)

**Mind** Kutuzov doesn’t catch you

#### Note

**Дoбивaться/дoбйтcя** is used with the *subjunctive* to denote intent to achieve a purpose (Мы **дoбивaе́мся то́го, чтобы** oнa coглacилacь ‘We are trying to get her to agree’) and with the *indicative* to denote achievement (В кoнцe кoнцoв пpeдceдaтeль **дoбылcя то́го, чтo** oнa **coглacилacь** (Rasputin) ‘The chairman eventually got her to agree’).

### 310 Purpose clauses

---

A purpose clause describes an action which is taken with the aim of achieving a desired result. The result clause is introduced:

(1) By **чтобы + infinitive** if both clauses have the **same** subject:

Он встал, **чтобы oткpыть oкнo**

He got up **in order to open the window**

Я позвоню́ брату, **что́бы** папо́мнить ему́ о веча́ре  
I shall ring my brother **in order to remind him of the party**

(2) By **что́бы** + the **past tense** (the **subjunctive of purpose**) if the two clauses have **different** subjects:

Он встал, **что́бы она́ могла́ сесть**  
He got up **so that she could sit down**

Я позвоню́ брату, **что́бы он знал**, что я прие́хал  
I shall ring my brother, **so that he knows** I have arrived

Челове́к снял лы́жи, **что́бы они́ не меша́ли** ему́ ползти́ (Nagibin)  
The man removed his skis, **so that they should not prevent him** from crawling

---

### 311 The expression of hypothesis

---

(1) If we compare the sentences

- (i) I have not met *the man who swam the Channel*
- (ii) I have never met *a man who has not heard of Leo Tolstoy*

then it is clear that (i) refers to *an actual person* (the man who swam the Channel), while (ii) is dealing with *a hypothetical situation* (an imaginary person who has not heard of Leo Tolstoy).

(i) is expressed in Russian using the **indicative**:

Я не встреча́л челове́ка, **ко́торый пере́плыл** Ла-Ма́нш  
I have not met the man who swam the Channel

(ii) is expressed using the **subjunctive of hypothesis** (past tense + **бы**):

Я не встреча́л челове́ка, **ко́торый бы не слы́хал** о Толсто́м  
I have never met a man who has not heard of Tolstoy

Compare

Нет о́трасли промышле́нности, для ко́торой осво́ение  
космиче́ского простран́ства **не оказа́лось бы** полёзным  
(*Izvestiya*)  
There is no industry which **has not benefited** from the conquest of  
space

(2) A similar distinction is made in constructions with **случа́й** between:

- (i) Incidents which *did* occur, where the indicative is used:

Скóлько у нас бýло слýчаев, когдá снимáли с машин стёкла  
(*Literaturnaya gazeta*)

There have been umpteen **cases of** car wind-screens **being removed**

- (ii) Incidents which did *not* occur, where the subjunctive is used:

Нé было слýчая, чтóбы он заблудíлся (Kazakov)

There was not a single instance **of his getting lost**

- (3) The same principle applies to constructions with verbs of perception and statement: **видеть** 'to see', **замётить** 'to notice', **пóмнить** 'to remember', **сказáть** 'to say', **слýшать** 'to hear' etc.

- (i) The indicative is used to refer to an actual occurrence:

Вíжу, как онí нгрáют в футбóл

I see **them playing** football

- (ii) The subjunctive indicates that the subject did not witness or recall the incident and may doubt whether it in fact occurred:

Не пóмню, чтóбы онá хотъ раз **взялá** кóрку хлéба (Rasputin)

I do not recall **her** even once **taking** a crust of bread

Я не замéнил, чтóбы он упáл в óбморок

I did not notice **him fainting**

Use of the indicative here would constitute an acknowledgement that the incident occurred — but that the subject did not witness it:

Я не замéтил, **что он упáл в óбморок**

I did not notice **that he had fainted**

#### Note

- (a) Hypotheses may also be introduced by the phrase **не то, чтóбы**,

И он **не то чтóбы был** недовóлен жízнью, считáл себя неудáчником (Tendryakov)

**It is not that he was** dissatisfied with life, he just considered himself unlucky

or by negated verbs which imply an unreal situation:

Дня ведъ не проходíло, **чтóбы онá не похвалíла** неvéстку (Zalygin)

Never a day passed **without her praising** her daughter-in-law

- (b) **Бóяться** 'to fear' combines either with the indicative (Бóюсь, **что он провáлится** 'I am afraid he will fail', Бóюсь, **что он не**

**придѣт** ‘I am afraid he won’t come’) or a subjunctive (note ‘illogical’ negative): **Боюсь, чтобы он не провалился** ‘I am afraid he may fail’.

### 312 Concessive constructions

- (1) The particle **бы** also appears in concessive constructions (English ‘whoever’, ‘whatever’ etc.):

**кто/что/как/где/куда/какой/сколько + бы + ни + past tense**

**Чего бы это мне ни стоило, на какие бы жертвы ни пришлось** пойти — а своего добьюсь (*Rabotnitsa*)

**Whatever it costs, whatever sacrifices I may be called upon to make, I shall achieve my goal**

**Я видел, что черепахам плохо в неволе, как бы я ни старался** хорошо за ними ухаживать (*Yunyi naturalist*)

**I saw that the tortoises were ill at ease in captivity, however much I might try to look after them properly**

- (2) **Бы** may be omitted, in reference to an actual incident:

**Сколько Носов ни тряс** приёмник, голос диктора не зазвучал вновь (*Povolyaev*)

**However much Nosov shook** the receiver, the announcer’s voice remained silent

**Как я ни боролся** за её здоровье, всё напрасно (*Yunyi naturalist*)

**No matter how much I fought** to restore her to health, it was all in vain

- (3) The future may be used to denote that all instances are covered:

**Какую газету ни откроешь** — всюду разговор о женщине (*Russia Today*)

**Whichever paper you open, the talk is only of women**

Note the set phrases

**во что бы то ни стало**

at any cost

**как бы то ни было**

however that might be

**как это ни парадоксально**

paradoxical as it may seem

**как это ни странно**

strange as it may seem



ЛЫ́жник во что бы то ни ста́ло хоте́л продо́лжать свой мучи́тельный путь (Nagibin)

The skier was determined to continue his agonizing journey **come what may**

## Constructions Expressing Obligation, Necessity, Possibility or Potential

### 313 The expression of obligation and necessity

Obligation and necessity can be expressed in the following ways:

(1) **До́лжен** + infinitive

(i) **До́лжен, должна́, должно́, должны́** have the endings of short-form adjectives and agree with the subject in gender and number:

я, ты, он <b>до́лжен</b>	‘I, you, he must’ (masculine subject)
я, ты, она́ <b>должна́</b>	‘I, you, she must’ (feminine subject)
оно́ <b>должно́</b>	‘it must’
мы, вы, они́ <b>должны́</b>	‘we, you, they must’

(ii) They also combine with past and future forms of **быть**:

я, ты, он <b>до́лжен был</b>	‘I, you, he had to’ (masculine subject)
я, ты, она́ <b>должна́ была́</b>	‘I, you, she had to’ (feminine subject)
оно́ <b>должно́ было́</b>	‘it had to’
мы, вы, они́ <b>должны́ были́</b>	‘we, you, they had to’

я <b>до́лжен/должна́ бу́ду</b>	‘I shall have to’
ты <b>до́лжен/должна́ бу́дешь</b>	‘you will have to’
он <b>до́лжен бу́дет</b>	‘he will have to’
она́ <b>должна́ бу́дет</b>	‘she will have to’
оно́ <b>должно́ бу́дет</b>	‘it will have to’
мы <b>должны́ бу́дем</b>	‘we shall have to’
вы <b>должны́ бу́дете</b>	‘you will have to’
они́ <b>должны́ бу́дут</b>	‘they will have to’

(iii) **До́лжен** expresses moral necessity:

Ка́ждый челове́к **до́лжен** труди́ться  
Every person must work

(iv) It is also used to express other modal concepts, the equivalents of 'should', 'ought to', 'is supposed to', 'is due to' etc.:

Цены **должны** быть гибкими (*Literaturnaya gazeta*)  
Prices **should** be flexible

В различных странах мира хранятся великолепные памятники культуре, и мы **должны** знать о них (*Nedelya*)  
Splendid monuments to culture are preserved in various countries of the world, and we **ought to** know about them

Пытаюсь бутылки из-под минеральной воды сдать, а пункт хоть и **должен** работать, но не работает (*Nedelya*)  
I try to hand in some empty mineral-water bottles, but the collection point is not working, though it **is supposed to** be

Поезд **должен** прийти в час дня  
The train is **due** in at 1 p.m.

#### Note

(a) Past and future usage:

Сейчас Мансуров **должен был** подойти к ней, обнять её (*Zalygin*)  
Now Mansurov **should have** come up to her and embraced her

Она **должна будет** помочь матери  
She **will have to** help her mother

(b) The use of **должно быть**, in parenthesis, to denote supposition: Она, **должно быть**, заболела 'She must have fallen ill'; Он, **должно быть**, не понял 'He can't have understood'.

(2) **Нужно, надо**

(i) **Нужно, надо** refer to necessity:

Ему **нужно/надо было** преждевременно уйти на пенсию по слабости здоровья  
He **had to** retire early due to ill health

(ii) They can also express the meaning 'ought to':

Больному **надо было** сделать переливание крови  
The patient **ought to have** had a blood transfusion

(iii) Compare **не нужно** 'it is not necessary' and **не надо** 'one should not':

**Не ну́жно** запира́ть дверь  
It is **not necessary** to lock the door

**Не на́до** запира́ть дверь  
You **should not** lock the door

(3) Сто́ит, сле́дует, прійтись, вы́нужден, обяза́н

(i) **Сто́ит** refers to recommended action:

**Сто́ит** посмотре́ть э́тот фильм  
It is worth seeing this film

(ii) **Сле́дует** is more categorical:

**Не сле́дует** так поступи́ть  
One shouldn't behave like that

(iii) **Прійтись** implies reluctant acceptance of necessity:

Ему́ **пришлось** бежа́ть всю доро́гу  
He had to run all the way

(iv) **Вы́нужден** means 'forced', **обяза́н** means 'obliged':

Пилот **был вы́нужден** посади́ть самолёт в пусты́не  
The pilot was forced to land the aircraft in the desert

Врач **обязана** помо́чь больно́му  
The doctor is obliged to help the patient

### 314 The expression of possibility or potential

Possibility or potential may be expressed in the following ways:

(1) Мочь, смочь 'to be able'

**Я могу́/смогу́** приня́ть ва́ше приглаше́ние  
**I can/shall be able** to accept your invitation

#### *Note*

- (a) A distinction is made between **мочь** 'to be (physically) able' and **уме́ть** 'to be able, know how to'. Compare **Я умею** пла́вать 'I can/know how to swim' and **Сего́дня я не могу́** пла́вать: у меня́ рука́ боли́т 'I can't swim today: I have a sore arm'.
- (b) The imperfective future of **мочь** is rarely, if ever, used. Instead, the future of **быть в состоя́нии** + the infinitive is preferred (see 225 (7)).

- (c) **Мочь** can also be the equivalent of English ‘may’, ‘might’, ‘could have’, ‘might have’:

Мне **могут** возразить: лучше по кооперативной цене, чем вообще отсутствие товара в магазине (*Literaturnaya gazeta*)

People **may** object: better at the co-operative price, than the unavailability of the product in the shops

В кассе **могут** быть билеты

There **might be** tickets at the box-office

Как он **мог** ответить иначе?

What other answer **could he have** given?

Если она решилась на это, значит, **могла** решиться и на другое (Zalygin)

If she made this decision, she **might** equally well **have** made a different decision

- (2) **Можно/нельзя**, (не)возможно

- (i) **Можно** and **нельзя** can denote:

- (a) Permission/prohibition:

— **Можно** сюда сесть?

— Нет, **нельзя**

‘May I sit here?’

‘No, you may not’

#### Note

**Нельзя ли** is used to express a very polite request: **Нельзя ли** сюда сесть? ‘Please, may I sit here?’ (cf. ‘neutral’ **Можно ли?**). Conversely, it may express irritation: **Нельзя ли** потише?! ‘Couldn’t you be a little quieter?!’

- (b) Possibility/impossibility:

Кислород **можно** получить из воды

Oxygen can be extracted from water

**Нельзя** согласиться с ним

One cannot agree with him

#### Note

- (a) **Можно** is often used with interrogative words: На каком автобусе **можно** доехать до центра? ‘Which bus do I take for the city centre?’

- (b) See **279** (3) for the aspect of the infinitive with **нельзя́**. Note that the imperfective infinitive may be used with **нельзя́** in the meaning of impossibility in a **frequentative** context: **Нельзя́ мыть машину́ ка́ждый день** ‘It is impossible to wash the car every day’.

- (ii) **Возмо́жно/невозмо́жно** denote only possibility or impossibility (*not* permission/prohibition):

**Возмо́жно/мо́жно** поста́вить то́чный диа́гноз

It is possible to make a precise diagnosis

**Невозмо́жно/нельзя́** реши́ть э́ту зада́чу

It is impossible to solve this problem

## Verbs of Motion

### 315 Unidirectional and multidirectional verbs of motion

Each of fourteen types of motion are represented in Russian by two **imperfective** verbs.

- (1) One denotes **movement in one direction** (unidirectional verbs):

Я и́ду на заво́д      **I am on my way** to the factory

Я шёл на заво́д      **I was on my way** to the factory

- (2) The other denotes **movement in more than one direction, movement in general, habitual action, return journeys** (multi-directional verbs):

Ка́ждый день он хо́дит в шко́лу

He **goes** to school every day

Она́ хо́дит по ко́мнате

She **is walking up and down** the room

Он хо́дит с па́лкой

He **walks** with a stick

Она́ ходи́ла в кино́

She **went** to the cinema

### 316 Conjugation of verbs of motion

The fourteen pairs of imperfective non-prefixed verbs are conjugated as follows (unidirectional first):

(1)	<b>идти</b> <b>ходить</b>	иду́, идёшь, идёт, идём, идёте, идут хожу́, ходишь, ходит etc.	'to go, walk'
(2)	<b>ехать</b> <b>ездить</b>	еду́, едешь, едет, едем, едете, едут эзжу́, эздишь, эздит etc.	'to travel, ride'
(3)	<b>бежать</b>  <b>бегать</b>	бегу́, бежишь, бежит, бежим, бежите, бегут бéгаю, бéгаешь, бéгает etc.	'to run'
(4)	<b>лететь</b> <b>летать</b>	лечу́, ле́тишь, летит etc. лета́ю, лета́ешь, лета́ет etc.	'to fly'
(5)	<b>плыть</b> <b>плавать</b>	плыву́, плывёшь, плывёт etc. пла́ваю, пла́ваешь, пла́вает etc.	'to swim, float'
(6)	<b>нести</b> <b>носить</b>	несу́, несёшь, несёт etc. ношу́, но́сишь, но́сит etc.	'to carry'
(7)	<b>вести</b> <b>водить</b>	веду́, ведёшь, ведёт etc. вожу́, во́дишь, во́дит etc.	'to lead'
(8)	<b>везти</b> <b>возить</b>	везу́, везёшь, везёт etc. вожу́, во́зишь, во́зит etc.	'to convey, transport'
(9)	<b>лезть</b> <b>лазить</b>	лэзу́, лэ́зешь, лэзет etc. ла́жу, ла́зишь, ла́зит etc.	'to climb'
(10)	<b>ползти</b> <b>пóлзать</b>	ползу́, ползёшь, ползёт etc. пóлзаю, пóлзаешь, пóлзает etc.	'to crawl'
(11)	<b>тащить</b> <b>таскать</b>	тащу́, та́щишь, та́щит etc. таска́ю, таска́ешь, таска́ет etc.	'to drag'
(12)	<b>гнать</b> <b>гонять</b>	гоню́, го́нишь, го́нит etc. гоня́ю, гоня́ешь, гоня́ет etc.	'to drive, chase'
(13)	<b>катить</b> <b>катать</b>	качу́, ка́тишь, ка́тит etc. ката́ю, ката́ешь, ката́ет etc.	'to roll'
(14)	<b>брести</b> <b>бродить</b>	бреду́, бредёшь, бредёт etc. брожу́, бро́дишь, бро́дит etc.	'to wander'

#### Note

There are grounds for excluding **брести/бродить** from the series, since the two verbs differ somewhat in meaning: **брести** 'to walk along slowly, with difficulty', **бродить** 'to wander aimlessly'. **Бродить** differs from other multidirectional verbs in that it cannot denote motion towards a destination. However, the two verbs have traditionally been treated as verbs of motion, and are accordingly dealt with in this section.

### 317 Imperatives of verbs of motion

Imperatives of verbs of motion are formed according to the rules

formulated in **227**:

<b>бегí!</b>	run!
<b>ведí!</b>	lead!
<b>идí!</b>	go!
<b>несí!</b>	carry!

*Note*

**Поезжа́й!** ‘Go!’, the imperative of **пое́хать**, is used for single positive commands (**Поезжа́й** по́ездом! ‘Go by train!’), **е́зди!** for frequentative commands and **Не е́зди!** for negative commands (**Не е́зди** авто́бусом! ‘Don’t go by bus, i.e. ‘Never go by bus’).

### 318 Past tense of verbs of motion

(1) Verbs of motion in **-ать/-ять/-еть/-ить** have past tense forms in **-л**: **ходи́л**, **лете́л** etc.

(2) The past tenses of other verbs of motion are as follows:

<b>брести́:</b>	брёл, брела́, брелó, брели́
<b>везти́:</b>	вёз, везла́, везло́, везли́
<b>вести́:</b>	вёл, вела́, вело́, вели́
<b>идти́:</b>	шёл, шла́, шло́, шли́
<b>лезть:</b>	лез, лёзла, лёзло, лёзли
<b>нести́:</b>	нёс, несла́, несло́, несли́

### 319 ‘To go’: **идти/ходить** and **ехать/ездить**

(1) ‘To go’ on foot is rendered in Russian as **идти́/ходи́ть**:

Она́ **идёт** в шко́лу  
She **is going (is walking, is on her way)** to school

Она́ **ходи́т** в шко́лу  
She **goes (walks)** to school

(2) ‘To go’ by some form of transport is rendered as **ехать/ездить**:

Она́ **едет** в шко́лу  
She **is going (is riding, travelling, driving)** to school

Она́ **едит** в шко́лу авто́бусом  
She **goes (travels)** to school by bus

(3) Thus, ‘I am going to town’ can be rendered as

Я **иду́** в го́род  
‘I am going to town’ (on foot)

Я **еду́** в го́род  
‘I am going to town’ (by some form of transport)

Substantial trips normally imply the use of **ехать/ездить**: Я **еду́** во Фра́нцию ‘I am going to France’.

*Note*

**Идти́/ходить** is used with trains (Поезд **идёт** ‘The train is travelling along’), with ships, as an alternative to **плыть** ‘to sail’, and with road vehicles, as an alternative to **ехать** (Машина́ **идёт/едет** по доро́ге ‘The car **is driving** along the road’).

---

## 320 Functions of unidirectional verbs of motion

---

(1) Unidirectional verbs of motion denote movement in one particular direction, usually on one occasion:

В прескве́рном настро́ении шёл я по го́роду (Popov)  
I walked through town in the foulest of moods

Три дня и три но́чи **нас везли́** в ареста́нтском ваго́не (Gagarin)  
For three days and nights **we were transported** in a convict truck

often with a named destination:

Е́дем в го́род  
We are driving to **town**

От пьедеста́ла до **раздева́лки** его́ несу́т на рука́х (Khrutsky)  
They carry him shoulder-high from the rostrum to the changing-room

(2) The movement is not necessarily in a straight line:

Он шёл **зигза́гами** к до́му  
He was **zigzagging** towards the house

but in all instances the verb advances the subject or object along a line of progression:

Он **плыл** прòтив вéтра и был слабéе нас (Nikolaev)  
He **was swimming** against the current and was weaker than we were



Шу́рка до́лго **шёл** ле́сом, уно́ся ежа́ подáльше от жи́лья (Vasilev)  
 Shurka **walked** through the forest for a long while, carrying the  
 hedgehog further and further away from human habitation

(3) The destination or direction of the movement may be:

(i) unspecified, as in the last example,

(ii) specified, as in

**К зали́ву** шли́ через па́рк (Yakhontov)  
 They were walking through the park **towards the bay**

(iii) more generally specified, e.g. in terms of points of the compass:

По́езд шёл **на восток**  
 The train was on its way **east**

#### Note

The future of unidirectional verbs is far less common than the present and past: Когда́ мы **бу́дем и́дти** ми́мо кинотеáтра, мы кúпим билéты на зáвтра ‘When we **are passing** the cinema, we shall buy tickets for tomorrow’, **Бу́дем вести́** по óчере́ди ‘We shall take it in turns to drive’.

### 321 Unidirectional verbs in frequentative contexts

(1) Unidirectional verbs usually describe movement in progress on one occasion:

Он **идёт**, **шёл** в шко́лу      He **is**, **was going** to school

while habitual actions are usually the province of the multidirectional verb (see 322 (3)).

(2) Unidirectional verbs are, however, used to express repeated actions:

(i) Where **movement in one direction** is particularly stressed:

Я **иду́** на рабо́ту це́лых полча́са  
 I **take** a whole half-hour **to get** to work

(Compare Ка́ждый день я **хожу́** на рабо́ту ‘Every day I **go** to work’ (and back).)

Обы́чно я **иду́** с рабо́ты пешко́м, а на рабо́ту **еду́** на авто́бусе  
 I usually **walk home** from work but **go** to work on the bus

Письма 5–6 дней **идут** отсюда в Россию  
Letters **take** 5–6 days **to get** from here to Russia

*Note*

A unidirectional verb is also used in Каждый день **летят** письма из страны в страну ‘Every day letters **wing their way** from country to country’ (since each individual letter progresses *in one direction only*).

Когда я **иду** на работу, я всегда покупаю газету  
When I **am on my way** to work, I always buy a newspaper

Осенью журавли **летят** на юг  
In the autumn the cranes **fly** south (*one-way (though repeated) flight* within the given time-span (осенью))

Каждое утро в 8.45 **иду** на автобусную остановку  
Every morning at 8.45 I **walk** to the bus-stop (but not back again!)

(ii) Where reference is to actions or processes occurring **in sequence**:

Каждое утро встаю, завтракаю и **иду** на автобусную остановку  
Every morning I get up, have breakfast and **go** to the bus-stop

Каждый год, как только наступает лето, я **еду** на море  
Every year, as soon as summer comes, I **am off** to the sea-side

(Compare Каждый год **езжу** на море ‘Every year I go to the seaside’ (and back).)

---

## 322 Functions of multidirectional verbs of motion

---

As their name implies, multidirectional verbs denote **movement in more than one direction**. Meanings may be subdivided as follows:

(1) They denote the action in general, a capacity to perform it, to perform it in a particular way, to know how to perform it, to like performing it and so on:

Я хорошо **бегаю** на коньках  
I **skate** well

Человек **ходит** на двух ногах  
Man **walks** upright

Истребители **летают** быстро  
Fighter-planes **fly** fast

Multidirectional infinitives frequently combine with verbs such as **любить** 'to like', **предпочитать** 'to prefer', **уметь** 'to know how to', **учиться** 'to learn how to' etc.:

Девчата любят **ходить** в рощу за цветами (Nikolaev)  
The girls like **going** to the grove for flowers

Он предпочитает **ходить** пешком, она **ездит** в автобусе или в трамвае (Kovaleva)  
He prefers **to walk**, she **goes** by bus or tram

А ты меня научишь так **лазить**? ...спросил мальчишка (Povolyaev)  
'And will you teach me **to climb** like that?', asked the boy

Я умею **водить** машину  
I know how **to drive** a car

(2) They denote movement **in various directions**, up and down, round and round, to and fro, backwards and forwards, and so on:

Всё своё внимание сосредоточил на противнике, который **гонялся** за ним по рингу (Salnikov)  
He concentrated all his attention on his opponent, who **was chasing him round** the ring

В сарае **летали** белогрудые ласточки (Belov)  
White-breasted swallows **were flying about** in the shed

А старухи до поздней ночи **ползали** по кладбищу, втыкали обратно кресты (Rasputin)  
And the old women **crawled round** the cemetery until late at night, sticking the crosses back into the ground

Николай Иванович стал **ходить** по комнате (Proskurin)  
Nikolai Ivanovich began to **walk up and down** the room

(3) They denote habitual action, expressed as return journeys:

По воскресеньям мы **будем ездить** за город  
On Sundays we shall drive into the country

Автобусы **ходили** в самые дальние сёла (Rybakov)  
The buses **would go** to the most remote villages

Я **хожу** в церковь  
I **go** to church

### 323 Use of the past tense of a multidirectional verb to denote a single return journey

(1) The past tense (but **never** the present or future) of a multidirectional verb can be used to denote a single return journey:

На прошлой неделе она **ездила** в Лондон  
Last week she **went** to London (and back)

Она недавно **возила** детей в Нью-Йорк  
Recently she **took** the children to New York (and back)

(Compare Она **отвезла** детей в Нью-Йорк ‘She took the children to New York’ (and returned alone).)

Не обращайтесь на него внимания, — говорит она Кузьмё. — Он опять в ресторан **ходил** (Rasputin)  
‘Pay no attention to him’, she says to Kuzma. ‘He’s **been** to the restaurant again’

Пока я **бегал** за фотоаппаратом к машине, олень ушёл  
By the time I **had run** to the car for my camera the deer had gone

#### Note

In this example **бегал** denotes running to the car *and back*. The use of the unidirectional **бежал** would imply that the deer escaped while the subject *was still running* towards the car.

(2) Sentences which refer to a return journey may also report what happened at the point of destination, between the outward and return legs of the trip:

**Ходил** с отцом в зоопарк и там **катался** на маленькой лошадке  
(Belov)  
I **went** with my father to the zoo, where I **had a ride** on a little horse

#### Note

This sentence comprises three actions: (a) went to the zoo, (b) rode on a little horse while there (c) came home again, (a) and (c) being represented by the verb **ходил**.

(3) The multidirectional verb is also used in interrogative and negative sentences which refer to return trips:

**Ты ходил** в школу сегодня?  
**Have you been/Did you go** to school today?

Сегодня я **не ходил** в школу  
**I haven’t been/I didn’t go** to school today

### 324 The verbs нести́, носить́; вести́, водить́; везти́, возить́

Нести́, носить́; вести́, водить́; везти́, возить́ may all mean 'to take':

- (1) **Нести́, носить́** means 'to take (on foot), carry':

Он **несёт** кни́гу в библиотéку

He **is taking** the book to the library (on foot)

Она́ **носи́ла** малю́тку по ко́мнате

She **was carrying** the baby up and down the room

- (2) **Вести́, водить́** means 'to take, lead' (persons or animals):

Она́ **вела́** дете́й в шко́лу

She **was taking** the children to school (on foot)

Она́ **води́ла** дете́й в цирк

She **took** the children to the circus

#### Note

**Вести́/водить́** also means 'to drive' (a vehicle).

- (3) **Везти́, возить́** means 'to take, drive, convey' (in a vehicle):

Авто́бус **вóзит** тури́стов по А́нглии

The bus **is taking** the tourists round England

Она́ **везёт** ребёнка в ко́ляске

She **is wheeling** the child in a pram

#### Note

- (a) While **нести́/носить́**, **вести́/водить́** and **везти́/возить́** denote the *specific* purpose of a journey, **брать/взять** 'to take' does not. Compare **Ведите́** дете́й в зооса́д 'Take the children to the zoo' (the specific reason for the outing) and **Возьми́те** меня́ с собо́й 'Take me with you' (the person addressed is going anyway).
- (b) A similar principle distinguishes **нести́/носить́** from **везти́/возить́** in contexts which involve travelling. Thus, a passenger in a train who is taking a picture to an exhibition may say — **Везу́** карти́ну на вы́ставку в Москвú, while of the briefcase he happens to be carrying he will say — **Несу́** портфе́ль, since it is *not* the object of his journey to transport the briefcase, which is simply an item of personal equipment.

### 325 Translation of ‘to drive’

---

The verb ‘to drive’ can be rendered as follows:

- (1) **Ёхать/ёздить** ‘to drive, travel’:

Я ёду в го́род  
I **am driving** to town

- (2) **Везти́/вози́ть** ‘to drive, convey, transport’:

Я вёз бага́ж на ста́нцию  
I **was taking** (driving) the luggage to the station

- (3) **Вести́/води́ть** ‘to drive’ (a vehicle):

Я учу́сь **води́ть** маши́ну  
I am learning **to drive**

*Note*

**Гнать/гоня́ть** ста́до ‘to drive’ (a herd).

### 326 Perfectives of unidirectional verbs

---

- (1) The perfective infinitives of unidirectional verbs are formed with the prefix **по-**:

идти́/пойти́	‘to go’	ёхать/ <b>по-</b>	‘to travel’
летéть/ <b>по-</b>	‘to fly’	бежа́ть/ <b>по-</b>	‘to run’ etc.

*Note*

Only **идти́** undergoes modification (to **-йти**) in the formation of the perfective.

- (2) The perfectives of unidirectional verbs denote the beginning of movement, setting off for a destination etc.:

Он **пошёл** на по́чту  
He **has gone** to the post office

(Compare Он **ходи́л** на по́чту ‘He went/has been to the post office’ (implying a return journey).)

Она́ **поехала** за гра́ницу  
She **has gone** abroad

(Compare Она́ **ёздила** за гра́ницу ‘She went/has been abroad’ (and has returned).)

Он **понёс** книгу в библиотеку

He **has taken** the book to the library (and is not back yet)

*Note*

- (a) English '**went**' can refer to one-way journeys ('He **went** to China last week'), rendered by the perfective of a unidirectional verb:

На прошлой неделе он **поёхал** в Кита́й

or to return trips ('**I went** on holiday to France last year'), rendered by a Russian multidirectional verb:

В прошлом году́ я **ёздил** на кани́кулы во Фра́нцию

- (b) Note the contrast between durative **шёл** and perfective **пошёл** in the following example: Он **кру́то поверну́лся** и **пошёл** навстрéчу протíвнику, котóрый **шёл** на него́ уже́ без улы́бки (Salnikov) 'He turned sharply and **set off** towards his opponent, who **was bearing down** on him, no longer with a smile on his face'.

- (3) The future of unidirectional perfectives can be used independently (Я **пойду́** с тобо́й 'I will go with you') or with the future perfective of another verb:

— **Пойду́ покурю́**, — говорю́ я (Kazakov)

'I'll go and have a smoke', I say

- (4) The unidirectional perfective may indicate a new phase of an action already in progress (e.g. a change in tempo):

Они́ шли ме́дленно, потóм **пошли́** быстрее́

They were walking along slowly, then **quickened their pace**

Плове́ц почувствовáл устáлость и **поплы́л** ме́дленнее

The swimmer felt tired and **began to swim** more slowly

- (5) An English phrase may translate a unidirectional perfective:

Мы оттолкну́лись от ба́кена и **поплы́ли** к бе́регу (Nikolaev)

We pushed off from the buoy and **struck out** for the shore

Он шёл по бе́регу, но **побежа́л**, уви́дев меня́

He was walking along the shore but **broke into a run** on catching sight of me

### 327 Special meanings of **пойти́**

**Пойти́** can mean:

- (1) ‘To start walking’ of a toddler:

Он **пошёл** с десяти месяцев  
He **started walking** at ten months

- (2) ‘To start school’ of an infant:

Мйша в ётом году **пошёл** в шкóлу  
Misha **started** school this year

Note also the ‘illogical’ use of the past in Я **пошёл!** ‘I’m off!’, Поёхали! ‘Let’s go!’ etc.

---

### 328 He пошёл and не ходйл

---

- (1) **He ходйл** denotes that a journey did not take place:

Вчера мы нйкуда **не ходйл**  
We didn’t go anywhere yesterday

- (2) **He пошёл** implies an intention unfulfilled:

Вчера мы нйкуда **не пошлй**  
We didn’t go anywhere yesterday (though we had planned to)

---

### 329 Perfectives of multidirectional verbs

---

- (1) The perfectives of multidirectional verbs are also formed with the prefix **по-**:

ходить/**по-**      ‘to walk’      ёздить/**по-**      ‘to travel’ etc.

- (2) They denote an action of short duration in the past or future:

Он **полетёл** над гóродом и опустылся  
He **circled** the town **for a while** and then landed

Остáлось два раунда. **Походй** немногó, потóм укрóйся  
полотёнцем и сйдй здесь, ждй меня (Salnikov)  
There are two rounds left. **Walk around for a bit**, then wrap yourself  
in a towel, sit here and wait for me



### 330 Figurative and idiomatic uses of verbs of motion

Verbs of motion have a number of figurative or idiomatic meanings. In most cases only one of a pair (either the unidirectional or the multidirectional) can be used in a particular figurative sense: the usual differential criteria between unidirectional and multidirectional do *not* apply when the verbs are used figuratively.

(1) Only **unidirectional** verbs can be used in the following:

(i) **Идёт** война́, уро́к, филь́м

A war, a lesson, a film **is on**

Эта шля́па вам **идёт**

This hat **suits** you

Страна́ **идёт** к социа́лизму

The country **is moving** towards socialism

**Идти́** прот́ив во́ли больш́инства́

**To go** against the will of the majority

**Идёт** дождь, снег

**It is raining, snowing**

**Идут́** часы́

The clock **is going**

#### Note

Часы́ **хóдят** is possible in certain contexts: Часы́ **давнó** не хóдят  
'The clock has not gone **for a long time**'.

- |       |                               |                                     |
|-------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (ii)  | <b>вести́</b> войну́          | <b>to wage</b> war                  |
|       | <b>вести́</b> дневн́ик        | <b>to keep</b> a diary              |
|       | <b>вести́</b> переп́ску       | <b>to carry on</b> a correspondence |
|       | Доро́га <b>ведёт</b> в лес    | The road <b>leads</b> to the forest |
|       | Ложь к добру́ <b>не ведёт</b> | No good <b>can come of</b> lying    |
| (iii) | <b>нести́</b> отвéтственность | <b>to bear</b> the responsibility   |
|       | <b>нести́</b> поте́ри         | <b>to bear</b> losses               |
|       | <b>нести́</b> нака́зание      | <b>to undergo</b> punishment        |
| (iv)  | А́кции <b>летя́т</b> вниз     | Shares <b>are plummeting</b>        |
|       | Вре́мя <b>летит́</b>          | Time <b>flies</b>                   |
| (v)   | <b>лезть</b> в дра́ку         | <b>to get into</b> a brawl          |
| (vi)  | Ему́ <b>везёт/повезло́</b>    | He <b>is lucky/is in luck</b>       |

**Повезло́**, что отыска́ли льди́ну толщи́ной 47 см. (Lebedev)  
**We were lucky** enough to find an ice-floe 47 cm thick

(vii) Дни **бе́гут**; Кровь **бежи́т** The days **fly past**; Blood **flows**

(viii) Тролле́йбус **ползёт**, как черепа́ха  
 The trolley-bus **is crawling along** at a snail's pace

(2) Only **multidirectional** verbs are used in the following:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) <b>но́сить</b> зва́ние, и́мя       | <b>to bear</b> a title, a name  |
| <b>но́сить</b> отпеча́ток              | <b>to bear</b> the imprint  |
| <b>но́сить</b> оде́жду                 | <b>to wear</b> clothes (habitually: cf.<br>Он <b>но́сит</b> шля́пу 'He wears<br>a hat' and Он <b>в шля́пе</b> 'He is<br>wearing a hat') |
| (ii) <b>води́ть</b> за́ нос            | <b>to lead</b> up the garden path   |
| (iii) <b>хо́дит</b> слух/хо́дят слу́хи | rumour <b>has it</b> /rumours <b>are rife</b> (also, though less commonly, <b>иду́т</b><br>слу́хи)                                      |
| (iv) <b>ката́ться</b> на конька́х      | <b>to skate</b>   |
| <b>ката́ться</b> на велосипе́де        | <b>to go</b> for a cycle ride   |
| <b>ката́ться</b> на ло́дке             | <b>to go</b> for a row  |

### 331 Compound verbs of motion

(1) All simple verbs of motion combine with up to fifteen different prefixes to form compound aspectual pairs, multidirectional verbs forming the basis of the imperfectives and unidirectional verbs the basis of the perfectives (see **332** for modified verb stems).

(2) These prefixed imperfective/perfective aspectual pairs lack the unidirectional/multidirectional dichotomy of the simple verbs.

(3) Most compound verbs of motion are intransitive and are linked to the following noun by a preposition (see (4)).

(4) Prefixed compounds of **-ходи́ть/-йти́**, for example, are as follows:

Imperfective	Perfective	Preposition	Meaning
<b>входи́ть</b>	<b>войти́</b>	<b>в + acc.</b>	to enter
<b>всходи́ть</b>	<b>взойти́</b>	<b>на + acc.</b>	to go up on to
<b>выходи́ть</b>	<b>выйти́</b>	<b>из + gen.</b>	to go out of
<b>доходи́ть</b>	<b>дойти́</b>	<b>до + gen.</b>	to go as far as
<b>заходи́ть</b>	<b>зайти́</b>	<b>к + dat.</b>	to call on someone

заходить	зайти́	в/на + acc.	to call in at a place
находить	найти́	в + acc.	to go a long way into
обходить	обойти́	+ acc.	to find
		вокруг + gen.	to go round
		+ acc.	to inspect/avoid
отходить	отойти́	от + gen.	to move away from
переходить	перейти́	через + acc.	to cross
		+ acc.	
подходить	подойти́	к + dat.	to go up to
приходить	прийти́	к + dat.	to come to see a person
		в/на + acc.	to come to/arrive at a place
проходить	пройти́	мимо + gen.	to pass
		+ acc.	to cover (a distance)
расходиться	разойтись	по + dat.	to disperse to (separate destinations)
сходить	сойти́	с + gen.	to come down from, step off
сходиться	сойтись	с + instr.	to come together with
уходить	уйти́	от + gen.	to leave a person
		из/с + gen.	to leave a place

### Note

- (a) Alternative usage may be determined by context: Она́ **вы́шла в коридо́р/на у́лицу** ‘She came out **into** the corridor/**on to** the street’, Он ушёл **на рабо́ту** ‘He left **for** work’, Они́ **пришли́ от дире́ктора** ‘They have come **from** the manager’, Она́ **сошла́ на перро́н** ‘She got down **on to** the platform’ etc.
- (b) The choice of preposition with **заходить/зайти́** and **приходить/прийти́** depends on the type of location involved: Он **пришёл в шко́лу/на заво́д** ‘He arrived **at the school/factory**’ (cf. Он **ушёл из шко́лы/с рабо́ты** ‘He left **school/work**’). See **408** and **412**.
- (c) Some compounds in **на-** take **на + acc.**: **на́ехать на де́рево** ‘to run into a tree’.
- (d) Prefix and prepositional usage is similar to but not identical with usage with other verbs (see **254**).

## 332 Stems of compound verbs of motion

Prefixes are added to the following stems to make imperfective and perfective compounds. Stems which differ in form from the simple verbs of motion (for meanings, see **316**) are in **bold** type:

Imperfective	Perfective
-ходить	<b>-йти́</b>
<b>-езжа́ть</b>	<b>-еха́ть</b>

<b>-бегáть</b>	-бежа́ть
-летáть	-летéть
<b>-лезáть</b>	-лезть
<b>-плывáть</b>	-плыть
<b>-ползáть</b>	-ползти́
-носíть	-нести́
-водíть	-вести́
-возíть	-везти́
<b>-та́скивать</b>	-тащи́ть
-гоня́ть	-гнать
<b>-ка́тывать</b>	-кати́ть
<b>-бредáть</b>	-брести́

*Note*

The stems **-бегáть** and **-ползáть** differ from the simple verbs of motion **бе́гать** 'to run' and **по́лзать** 'to crawl' only in stress.

### 333 Spelling rules in the formation of compound verbs of motion

---

(1) For **вз/-вс-**, **раз-/рас-**, see 16 (4).

(2) The vowel 'о' is inserted between a consonant and **-йти**:

**войти́** (impf. **входи́ть**)      to enter (future **войду́**; past **вошёл**)

Likewise **взойти́** 'to ascend', **обойти́** 'to go round', **отойти́** 'to move away from', **подойти́** 'to go up to', **разойти́сь** 'to disperse', **сойти́** 'to descend', **сойти́сь** 'to come together'.

(3) A hard sign is inserted between a prefix ending in a consonant and all forms based on the infinitive stems **-езжа́ть/-еха́ть**:

**въезжа́ть, въеха́ть**      to drive in etc.

### 334 Prefixed verbs of motion

---

The following examples illustrate the use of compound verbs of motion (for examples with **-ходи́ть/-йти́** see 331 (4)):

- (1) **К** подно́жью раке́ты **подъезжа́ет** авто́бус (*Russia Today*)  
A bus **draws up to** the base of the rocket

- (2) Дети **выбега́ют из** мо́ря на пляж (Muraveva)  
The children **run out of** the sea on to the beach
- (3) Их объединяет одна о́бщая цель – они́ должны́ **доплы́ть до** бе́рега (*Russia Today*)  
They are united by a common aim – they must **reach** the shore
- (4) Ко́нонов **отпо́лз в** уго́л пала́тки (Belov)  
Kononov **crawled off** into the corner of the tent
- (5) Мяч **залетéл на** кры́шу  
The ball **sailed away on to** the roof
- (6) Она́ **перелéзла через** забо́р  
She **climbed over** the fence
- (7) **Разбреда́лись по** вла́жному ле́су (Vanshenkin)  
They **were wandering off through** the damp forest
- (8) Мяч **перекатíлся через** ли́нию  
The ball **rolled over** the line
- (9) **Вы́тащили** лётчика **из** горя́щего самолёта  
They **dragged** the pilot **out of** the burning aircraft
- (10) Мото́ры их катеро́в свёрхмо́щные, ры́бинспе́кторам не **догна́ть** (*Izvestiya*)  
The engines of their launches are high-powered, the fisheries inspectors haven't a hope of **catching up with** them
- (11) **Перенёс** телефо́н **на** тахту́ (Avdeenko)  
He **carried** the telephone **over** to the divan
- (12) — Вот, матро́са тебе́ **привё́л**, — сказа́л Куту́зов (Yakhontov)  
'Look, I have **brought** you a sailor', said Kutuzov
- (13) Куту́зов сообщíл: яхты́ уже́ **привезли́** (Yakhontov)  
Kutuzov reported that the yachts **had** already **been delivered**

### 335 Use of the imperfective past of a compound verb of motion to denote an action and its reverse

- (1) The past tense of the imperfective aspect of a compound verb of motion can denote the action and its reverse (see also 259): Он **приходи́л** 'He came' (and has now gone away again), Он **уезжа́л** 'He went away' (and has now returned).

(2) The prefixes most frequently involved are **в-/вы-, за-, под-, при-/у-**:

Как-то она **приводила** своих детей на рентгѐн (Aksenov)  
She **had** once **brought** her children for an X-ray

Какие красивые цветы! Кто-то, **должно быть, входил** в комнату без меня  
What beautiful flowers! Someone **must have been** into the room when I was out

Жѐнщина, которая только что **подходила к** киоску за газетой, известная актриса  
The woman who **has just been up to** the kiosk for a newspaper is a famous actress

---

### 336    Figurative and idiomatic uses of compound verbs of motion

---

Many compound verbs of motion have figurative or idiomatic meanings. The following list contains only a representative sample:

(1) Compounds in **-ходить, -йти**

входить/войти в моду	to come into fashion
выходить/выйти из строя	to break down
доходить/дойти до слѐз	to be reduced to tears
заходить/зайти слишком далѐко	to go too far
переходить/перейти к другой темѐ	to switch to a different topic
подходить/подойти	to be suitable
приходить/прийти в голову (кому-нибудь)	to occur (to someone)
проходить/пройти	to pass (e.g. время, боль проходит 'time, pain passes')
расходиться/разойтись во мнѐниях	not to see eye to eye
сходить/сойти с ума	to go mad
сходиться/сойтись во мнѐниях	to see eye to eye

(2) Compounds in **-водить, -вести**

вводить/ввести в обращение	to bring into circulation
----------------------------	---------------------------

выводить/вывести из терпёния	to exasperate
доводить/довести до конца	to put the finishing touches to
заводить/завести часы	to wind up a watch
наводить/навести справки	to make enquiries
отводить/отвести душу	to unburden one's soul
переводить/перевести	to translate
подводить/подвести друга	to let a friend down
приводить/привести к	to lead to
проводить/провести время	to spend time
разводить/развести	to breed (livestock)
разводиться/развестись	to get divorced
сводить/свести к минимуму	to reduce to a minimum

(3) Compounds in -носить, -нести

вносить/внести вклад	to make a contribution
выносить/вынести приговор	to pass sentence
доносить/донести на + асс.	to denounce
зanosить/занести	to record, register
наносить/нанести поражение	to inflict a defeat
переносить/перенести зиму	to survive the winter
приносить/принести пользу	to bring benefit

### 337 Perfectives in c- based on multidirectional verbs

(1) Multidirectional verbs combine with the prefix **c-** to form perfectives: **сбегать, сходить, съездить** etc. They do not have imperfectives.

(2) Such verbs denote the performance of an action and its result, usually within a limited period of time:

Никон **сходил** (pf.) за дровами, затопил маленькую печьку (Abramov)

Nikon **went to fetch** some firewood and lit the small stove

*Note*

Compounds with **c-** are preferred to the simple unprefixated multidirectional verb (e.g. он ходил, он ездил):

(a) where sequential actions are involved:

**Съѣзди́л** (pf.) за кни́гами и **сел** занима́ться  
He **went to fetch** the books and sat down to study

(b) where a time element is involved:

Он **сходи́л** (pf.) за газе́той **за 10 мину́т**  
He **took 10 minutes to fetch** the newspaper

(3) Unlike the simple unprefixated multidirectional verb, which can describe single return journeys in the past tense only (see **323**), perfectives in **с-** can also express this meaning in the future, the infinitive and the imperative:

Да и лёгче, пожа́луй, **на Луну́ слета́ть** (pf.), чем придума́ть  
тако́й вездехо́д (Abramov)  
I do believe it would be easier **to fly to the Moon and back** than devise  
a cross-country vehicle like that

**Сходи́** (pf.) к Ма́йе и переда́й ей, что́бы она́ подошла́ за́втра по́сле  
игры́ к газе́тному кио́ску (Trifonov)  
**Pop over** to Maya's and tell her to come to the newspaper kiosk after  
the game tomorrow

#### *Note*

It is important to distinguish perfectives **сходи́ть**, **слета́ть**, **сбегать** from imperfectives **сходи́ть**/perfective **сойти́** 'to go down', **слета́ть**/perfective **слететь** 'to fly down' and **сбегать**/perfective **сбежать** 'to run down'.

---

### **338 Perfectives in за-, из- and на- based on multidirectional verbs**

---

**За-**, **из-** and **на-** also combine with multidirectional verbs to form compound perfectives (such verbs do not have imperfectives):

(1) **За-** (in the meaning 'beginning of an action')

Он в волне́нии **заходи́л** (pf). по ко́мнате  
He **began walking about** the room in agitation

(2) **Из-** (in the meaning 'to cover the whole area')

Он **изъѣзди́л** (pf). всю страну́  
He **has travelled the length and breadth** of the country



Он **избёгал** (pf). весь сад  
He **covered every inch** of the garden

(3) На- (in the meaning of time or distance covered)

Этот шофёр **наёздил** (pf.) 100 000 км.  
This driver **has clocked** 100,000 km.

Лётчик **налетал** (pf.) 1000 часо́в  
The pilot **has clocked** 1,000 hours

#### *Note*

It is important to distinguish perfective **заходить** from imperfective **заходить**/perfective **зайти** ‘to drop in’ and perfective **избегать** from imperfective **избегать**/perfective **избежать** ‘to avoid’.

## Participles

### 339 Participles. Introductory comments

There are five verbal participles in Russian. The active participles, the imperfective passive and the long-form perfective passive decline like long adjectives and agree in case, gender and number with the nouns they qualify, while the short-form perfective passive functions like a short adjective:

the present active	<b>чита́ющий</b>	‘who is reading’
the past active (imperfective)	<b>чита́вший</b>	‘who was reading’
the past active (perfective)	<b>прочита́вший</b>	‘who read’
the imperfective passive	<b>чита́емый</b>	‘which is read’
the perfective passive (short form)	<b>прочита́н</b>	‘has been read’
the perfective passive (long form)	<b>прочита́нный</b>	‘which has been read’

#### *Note*

The participles are confined mainly to written styles, except for those used as adjectives and nouns and the perfective passive short form.

### 340 Present active participle. Formation

(1) The present active participle is formed by replacing the final **-т** of the third-person plural of the present tense by the endings **-щий** (m.), **-щая** (f.), **-щее** (n.), **-щие** (pl.):

бегу́т	бегу́щий	-ая	-ее	-ие	‘who is, are running’
крича́т	крича́щий	-ая	-ее	-ие	‘who is, are shouting’
танцу́ют	танцу́ющий	-ая	-ее	-ие	‘who is, are dancing’
чита́ют	чита́ющий	-ая	-ее	-ие	‘who is, are reading’

(2) In the case of reflexive verbs, **-ся** is used throughout:

смею́тся	смею́щийся	-аяся	-еися	-ияся	‘who is, are laughing’
----------	------------	-------	-------	-------	------------------------

### 341 Stress in the present active participle

(1) The stress in present active participles formed from **first-conjugation** verbs is usually as in the third-person plural:

понима́ть	понима́ют	пони́мающий	‘who understands’
то́нуть	то́нут	то́нущий	‘who drowns/is drowning’
иска́ть	и́щут	и́щущий	‘who looks for/is looking for’
те́чь	теку́т	теку́щий	‘which flows/is flowing’

#### Note

There are a few exceptions to this rule, e.g. **могу́щий** from **мо́гут**, third-person plural of **мочь** ‘to be able’.

(2) The stress in participles from **second-conjugation** verbs is usually the same as that of the **infinitive**:

буди́ть	бу́дят	будя́щий	‘who wakes, is waking’
води́ть	во́дят	водя́щий	‘who leads’
ката́ть	ка́тят	ката́щий	‘who is rolling’

(3) However, a number of participles from second-conjugation verbs have the same stress as the third-person plural: **ды́шащий** from дыша́ть ‘to breathe’, **ле́чащий** from лечи́ть ‘to treat’ (medically), **лю́бящий** from люби́ть ‘to love’, **ру́бящий** from руби́ть ‘to chop’, **су́шащий** from суши́ть ‘to dry’, **те́рпящий** from терпе́ть ‘to endure’, **ту́шащий** from туши́ть ‘to extinguish’.

(4) A number of participles have alternative stress: **ва́рящий/варя́щий** from вари́ть ‘to boil’, **го́нящий/гоня́щий** from гнать ‘to drive’, **де́лящий/деля́щий** from дели́ть ‘to share’, **су́дящий/судя́щий** from суди́ть ‘to judge’, **уча́щий/уча́щий** from учи́ть ‘to teach’, **хва́лящий/хваля́щий** from хвали́ть ‘to praise’, **шу́тящий/шутя́щий** from шути́ть ‘to joke’.

### 342 The past active participle. Formation

(1) The past active participle is formed from imperfective and perfective verbs by replacing the **-л** of the masculine past tense by **-вший** (m.), **-вшая** (f.), **-вшее** (n.), **-вшие** (pl.):

писáл	писа́вший	-вшая	-вшее	-вшие	‘who was, were writing’
написа́л	написа́вший	-вшая	-вшее	-вшие	‘who wrote’

(2) In reflexive verbs, the suffix **-ся** is used throughout:

смея́вшийся ‘who laughed, was laughing’

(3) If the masculine past does not end in **-л**, the endings **-ший**, **-шая**, **-шее**, **-шие** are added to it to make the participle:

замёрз	замёрзший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘who, which froze’
привы́к	привы́кший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘who got used to’
у́мер	у́мерший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘who died’

#### Note

- (a) Unprefixed verbs with the suffix **-ну-**, e.g. **га́снуть** ‘to go out’ (past гас/га́снул), **ги́бнуть** ‘to perish’, **па́хнуть** ‘to smell’, and the prefixed verb **исчезну́ть** ‘to disappear’ (past исче́з) form the past participle with the suffix **-вш-**: **га́снувший**, **ги́бнувший**, **исчезнувший**, **па́хнувший**.
- (b) **Достигну́ть** ‘to achieve’ (past дости́г) has alternative participles: **дости́гший/дости́гнувший**. Likewise compounds of **-вергнуть**, e.g. **подве́ргший/подве́ргнувший** from **подве́ргнуть** ‘to subject’ (past подве́рг) and **вто́ргшийся/вто́ргнувшийся** from **вто́ргнуться** ‘to invade’ (past вто́ргся). **Воскрéсший** from **воскрéснуть** ‘to rise again’ (past воскрéс) is commoner than **воскрéснувший**.

(4) Verbs in **-ти** with a present-future stem in **-т-** or **-д-** have participles based on stems ending in these consonants:

идти́, past шёл	ше́дший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘who was, were going’
вести́, past вёл	ве́дший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘who was, were leading’
цвести́, past цвёл	цве́тший	-шая	-шее	-шие	‘which was, were blooming’

#### Note

**Произо́йти** ‘to occur’ has alternative participles **происше́дший** and **произоше́дший**.

### 343 Stress in the past active participle

Stress is as in the masculine past, with the exception of **умёрший** ‘who died’ (cf. past **умер**).

### 344 The imperfective passive participle. Formation

(1) The imperfective passive participle is formed by adding adjectival endings to the first-person plural of an imperfective **transitive** verb:

First-person plural	Participle				
лю́бим	лю́бимый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘who, which is, are loved’
це́ним	це́нимый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘who, which is, are valued’
чита́ем	чита́емый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘which is, are read’

(2) Many unprefixed transitive verbs (e.g. **жева́ть** ‘to chew’, **копа́ть** ‘to dig’) do not form the participle. However, participles can be made from most prefixed transitive secondary imperfectives and verbs in **-овать**:

испы́тываемый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘which is, are (being) tested’
сжи́гаемый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘which is, are (being) burnt’
тре́буемый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘which is, are (being) demanded’
устрáиваемый	-ая	-ое	-ые	‘which is, are (being) arranged’

(3) Participles from transitive verbs in **-авать** are as follows: **дава́емый** ‘which is given/being given’, **признава́емый** ‘which is acknowledged’ etc.

#### Note

- (a) The participle is also formed from a limited number of **intransitive** or **semi-transitive** verbs. Some of these take the dative: **предшествова́ть** ‘to precede’ (**предшество́емый**), **угрожа́ть** ‘to threaten’ (**угрожа́емый**). Others take the instrumental: **комáндовать** ‘to command’ (**комáндуемый**), **пренебрега́ть** ‘to scorn, take no heed of’ (**пренебрега́емый**), **руководи́ть** ‘to run’ (**руководи́мый**), **управля́ть** ‘to manage, guide’ (**управля́-**

**емый**). The series also includes **обитаемый** ‘inhabited’ (from intransitive **обитáть**).

- (b) Among verbs in **-ти**, only **вести** ‘to lead’ (**ведóмый** (**ведóмый** самолёт ‘wing-man’ (in an aircraft formation))) and **нести** ‘to carry’ (**несóмый**) form imperfective passive participles (see 346 (2)).

### 345 Stress in the imperfective passive participle

Stress in imperfective passive participles derived from **first-conjugation** verbs is as in the first-person plural: **используемый** ‘which is used’. In participles derived from **second-conjugation** verbs the stress falls on **-и-**: **гонимый** ‘which is driven’, from **гнать** ‘to drive’ (except for verbs with stem stress throughout: **слышимый** from **слы́шать** ‘to hear’).

### 346 Verbs which have no imperfective passive participle

Many verbs have no imperfective passive participle. These include the following:

- (1) Verbs in **-ереть, -зть, -оть, -сть, -уть, -чь**.
- (2) Verbs in **-ти** (except for **вести** ‘to lead’ and **нести** ‘to carry’ (see 344 (3) note (b))).
- (3) Very many monosyllabic verbs, including **бить** ‘to strike’, **брать** ‘to take’, **брить** ‘to shave’, **есть** ‘to eat’, **жать** ‘to press’, **ждать** ‘to wait for’, **звать** ‘to call’, **знать** ‘to know’, **лить** ‘to pour’, **мыть** ‘to wash’, **петь** ‘to sing’, **пить** ‘to drink’, **рвать** ‘to tear’, **ткать** ‘to weave’, **шить** ‘to sew’.
- (4) First-conjugation consonant-stem verbs of the type **вяза́ть** ‘to tie’, **писа́ть** ‘to write’, **пря́тать** ‘to hide’. However, **иска́ть** ‘to seek’ has the participle **иско́мый** (**иско́мая** величина́ ‘unknown quantity’) and **колеба́ть** ‘to shake’ has **колебле́мый** ‘which is being shaken’. See 217.
- (5) Many second-conjugation verbs: **благодаря́ть** ‘to thank’, **будя́ть** ‘to awaken’, **глади́ть** ‘to iron’, **гото́вить** ‘to prepare’, **держа́ть** ‘to hold’, **жа́рить** ‘to fry’, **корми́ть** ‘to feed’, **кра́сить** ‘to paint’, **лечи́ть** ‘to treat’ (medically), **находи́ть** ‘to find’, **плати́ть** ‘to pay’, **по́ртить**

‘to spoil’, **руби́ть** ‘to chop’, **смотре́ть** ‘to watch’, **ста́вить** ‘to stand’, **стро́ить** ‘to build’, **суши́ть** ‘to dry’, **тра́тить** ‘to spend’, **туши́ть** ‘to extinguish’, **учи́ть** ‘to teach, learn’, **чи́стить** ‘to clean’.

### 347 Formation of passive participles from secondary imperfectives whose primaries have no participle

Most imperfective passive participles derive from prefixed verbs. They include synonyms or cognates of a number of unprefixated verbs which have no participle (see 346). Thus, the verb **есть** ‘to eat’ has no participle, whereas its synonym, the secondary imperfective **сьеда́ть**, *does* have a participle: **сьеда́емый** ‘which is eaten’. Compare

жева́ть	=	разже́вывать	<b>разже́ываемый</b>	‘which is chewed’
жечь	=	сжигáть	<b>сжигáемый</b>	‘which is burnt’
пить	=	выпивáть	<b>выпивáемый</b>	‘which is drunk’
плати́ть	=	опла́чивать	<b>опла́чиваемый</b>	‘who is paid’
тере́ть	=	растира́ть	<b>растира́емый</b>	‘which is rubbed’

### 348 The perfective passive participle. Introductory comments

(1) The perfective passive participle has a **short** (predicative) form and a **long** (attributive) form. It is derived only from verbs which are (i) *perfective* and (ii) *transitive*.

(2) Most perfective passive participles contain the suffix **-н/-ен-**, while a minority contain the suffix **-т-**.

### 349 Formation (infinitives in -ать/-ять)

(1) The masculine short form of the participle derives from infinitives in **-ать** and **-ять** (except for a number of monosyllabic roots, see 357 (5)) by replacing **-ть** by **-н**, to give endings **-ан/-ян**. The syllable immediately preceding **-ан**, **-ян** bears the stress:

задержáть	<b>заде́ржан</b>	‘has been arrested’
избра́ть	<b>и́збран</b>	‘has been elected’
написа́ть	<b>напи́сан</b>	‘has been written’

*Note*

The perfective prefix **вы-** is always stressed: **выигран** ‘has been won’.

(2) **-е-** is liable to mutate to **-ё-** under stress:

завоева́ть	<b>завоёван</b>	‘has been conquered’
причеса́ть	<b>причёсан</b>	‘has had his hair done’

(3) The feminine, neuter and plural forms are derived from the masculine by the addition of **-а**, **-о**, **-ы**:

напи́сан	напи́сана	напи́сано	напи́саны
заде́ржан	заде́ржана	заде́ржано	заде́ржаны

### 350 Stress in the participles from **дать** and its compounds

(1) The short forms of the perfective passive participle of the verb **дать** ‘to give’ have end stress in the feminine, neuter and plural:

**дан    дана́    дано́    даны́**

Им **дана́** власть

Authority has been given to them

Similarly **сдать** ‘to hand over’.

(2) The short forms of other compounds of **дать** (e.g. **изда́ть** ‘to publish’) have prefix stress except in the end-stressed feminine (where prefix stress is, however, also allowable):

**и́здан    изда́на    и́здано    и́зданы**      ‘has, have been published’

Similarly **отда́ть** ‘to return’, **переда́ть** ‘to convey’ (**пе́редан, передана́**), **пода́ть** ‘to serve’, **прида́ть** ‘to impart’, **прода́ть** ‘to sell’, **разда́ть** ‘to distribute’ (**ро́здан, раздана́, ро́здано, ро́зданы**), **созда́ть** ‘to create’.

### 351 Formation of the long-form (attributive) participle from verbs in **-ать/-ять**

Long-form participles are made from verbs in **-ать/-ять** by adding **-ный, -ная, -ное, -ные** to the masculine short form:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
напи́сан	<b>напи́санный</b>	<b>напи́санная</b>	<b>напи́санное</b>	<b>напи́санные</b> ‘written’

### 352 Formation of the short-form participle from second-conjugation verbs in -ить/-еть

The masculine short form of the participle is derived from second-conjugation infinitives in **-ить/-еть** by replacing the infinitive ending by **-ен** or **-ён**:

#### (1) -ен

(i) Verbs with **fixed stem stress** or **mobile stress** in conjugation take the ending **-ен**.

(a) Fixed stem stress in conjugation: **заполнить** 'to fill in', **проверить** 'to check':

Бланк <b>заполнен</b>	The form has been filled in
Счёт <b>проверен</b>	The account has been checked

(b) Mobile stress in conjugation: **осмотреть** 'to examine' (**осмотрю**, **осмотришь**), **получить** 'to receive' (**получу**, **получишь**):

Больной <b>осмотрен</b>	The patient has been examined
Доклад <b>получен</b>	The report has been received

(ii) The feminine, neuter and plural forms derive from the masculine by the addition of **-а**, **-о** and **-ы**: **заполнен**, **заполнена**, **заполнено**, **заполнены**.

Анкета <b>заполнена</b>	The questionnaire <b>has been completed</b>
-------------------------	---

*Note*

**Принуждён** from **принудить** 'to compel'.

#### (2) -ён

(i) Verbs with **fixed end stress** in conjugation take the masculine short-form ending **-ён**: **решить** 'to decide' (**решу**, **решишь**), **включить** 'to switch' (**включу**, **включишь**):

Вопрос <b>решён</b>	The question has been decided
Телевизор <b>включён</b>	The TV has been switched on/is on

(ii) The feminine, neuter and plural endings are **end stressed**: **решён**, **решена́**, **решено́**, **решены́**:

Проблема <b>решена́</b>	The problem has been solved
-------------------------	-----------------------------



*Note*

A few verbs with *mobile* stress in conjugation take *end* stress in the participle:

изменить: изменён **-енá** **-енó** **-ены**      ‘has, have been changed’

Likewise **осуждён** from осудить ‘to condemn’, **оценён** from оценить ‘to estimate’, **разделён** from разделить ‘to divide’, **склонён** from склонить ‘to incline’ (cf. **склóнен**, **склóнна** (adjective) ‘is inclined’).

### 353 Consonant mutation in participles from second-conjugation infinitives in **-ить/-еть**

The following consonant changes operate in the formation of perfective passive participles from second-conjugation verbs in **-ить/-еть** (for stress rules see 352):

<b>б : бл</b>	сруб <b>и</b> ть	сру <b>б</b> лен	has been felled
	употреб <b>и</b> ть	употреб <b>л</b> ён	has been used
<b>в : вл</b>	достав <b>и</b> ть	достав <b>л</b> ен	has been delivered
	удив <b>и</b> ть	удив <b>л</b> ён	is surprised

*Note*

Dual mutation in умер**щ**влён from умерт**в**ить ‘to mortify’.

<b>м : мл</b>	офóрмить	офóрмл <b>ен</b>	has been designed
<b>п : пл</b>	куп <b>и</b> ть	ку <b>п</b> лен	has been bought
	прикреп <b>и</b> ть	прикреп <b>л</b> ён	is pinned to
<b>ф : фл</b>	разграф <b>и</b> ть	разграф <b>л</b> ён	is ruled (with lines)
<b>д : ж</b>	заряд <b>и</b> ть	заря <b>ж</b> ен/заря <b>ж</b> ён	is loaded
	обид <b>е</b> ть	оби <b>ж</b> ен	is offended

*Note*

The participle from ув**и**деть ‘to see’ is ув**и**ден.

<b>д : жд</b>	освобод <b>и</b> ть	освобод <b>ж</b> ён	has been liberated
---------------	---------------------	---------------------	--------------------

*Note*

**-жд-** also appears in the imperfective infinitive (**освобождáть**) and the verbal noun (**освобождéние** ‘liberation’). Other verbs which undergo this mutation are mainly abstract and, like **освобод**и**ть**, have fixed end stress in conjugation: **подтверд**и**ть** ‘to confirm’, **убед**и**ть** ‘to convince’ etc.

<b>з : ж</b>	загрузи́ть	загру́жен/загружён	is laden
	изобрази́ть	изображён	is depicted

*Note*

The mutation does not operate in some participles: **вонзён** from вонзи́ть ‘to plunge’, **пронзён** from пронзи́ть ‘to transfix’.

<b>с : ш</b>	пригласи́ть	приглаше́н	has been invited
	ско́сить	ско́шен	has been mown

*Note*

One or two participles do not undergo mutation: **обезле́сен** from обезле́сить ‘to deforest’.

<b>ст : щ</b>	запусти́ть	запу́щен	has been launched
	прости́ть	прощён	has been forgiven
<b>т : ч</b>	оплати́ть	опла́чен	has been paid, settled
<b>т : щ</b>	сократи́ть	сокращён	has been curtailed

*Note*

**-щ-** also appears in the first-person singular (**сокращу́**), the imperfective infinitive (**сокраща́ть**) and the verbal noun (**сокраще́ние** ‘curtailment’). Other verbs of this type, mainly abstract and with fixed end stress in conjugation, include **запрети́ть** ‘to ban’.

---

### 354 Formation of the long-form (attributive) participle from second-conjugation verbs in **-ить/-еть**

---

Long-form participles from second-conjugation verbs in **-ить/-еть** are derived by adding **-ный, -ная, -ное, -ные** to the masculine short form:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural	
запо́лненный	запо́лненная	запо́лненное	запо́лненные	‘completed’
включённый	включённая	включённое	включённые	‘switched on’

---

### 355 Formation of perfective passive participles (short form) from verbs in **-ти, -чь, -зть, -сть**

---

The masculine short form of perfective passive participles from verbs in **-ти, -зть, -сть** and **-чь** is derived by replacing the final **-т** of the third-person singular of the conjugation of the verb by **-н**:

Infinitive		Third-person singular	Participle			
перевести́	to translate	переведе́т	<b>переведён</b>	<b>-ена́</b>	<b>-ено́</b>	<b>-ены́</b>
подмести́	to sweep	подметё́т	<b>подметён</b>	<b>-ена́</b>	<b>-ено́</b>	<b>-ены́</b>
спасти́	to save	спасе́т	<b>спасён</b>	<b>-ена́</b>	<b>-ено́</b>	<b>-ены́</b>
испечь	to bake	испече́т	<b>испечён</b>	<b>-ена́</b>	<b>-ено́</b>	<b>-ены́</b>
обжечь	to scorch	обо́жжёт	<b>обо́жжён</b>	<b>-ена́</b>	<b>-ено́</b>	<b>-ены́</b>
разгрызть	to gnaw	разгрызе́т	<b>разгры́зен</b>	<b>-ена</b>	<b>-ено</b>	<b>-ены</b>
украсть	to steal	украде́т	<b>укра́ден</b>	<b>-ена</b>	<b>-ено</b>	<b>-ены</b>

*Note*

- (a) The participles from *найти́* ‘to find’ and *пройти́* ‘to cover’ (a distance) are, respectively, **на́йден** and **про́йден**.
- (b) *Дости́чь* ‘to achieve’ has no participle. However, a participle is formed from its synonym *достигну́ть*: **достигну́т**. See 357 (2).
- (c) Stem stress in participles from some verbs in **-зть/-сть**.
- (d) For participles formed from compounds of **-клясть**, see 357 (5) note (a).
- (e) *Съе́сть* ‘to eat’ has the participle **съе́ден**.

**356 Long-form participles from verbs in -ти, -чь, зть, -сть**

The long form of participles from verbs in **-ти, -чь, -зть** and **-сть** is made by adding **-ный, -ная, -ное, -ные** to the short-form masculine, e.g. **переведён**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
<b>переведённый</b>	<b>переведённая</b>	<b>переведённое</b>	<b>переведённые</b> ‘translated’

**357 Perfective passive participles in -т**

The masculine short form of the participle of certain categories of verb is made by removing the soft sign of the infinitive: *откры́ть* ‘to open’, participle **откры́т**. The feminine, neuter and plural forms derive from the masculine by the addition of the endings **-а, -о, -ы**. The following types of verb are involved:

- (1) Verbs in **-отъ** (note stress change in participle):

смоло́ть ‘to grind’

**смо́лот, -а, -о, -ы**

(2) Verbs in **-уть** (note stress change in participle):

протяну́ть 'to stretch out'      **протя́нут, -а, -о, -ы**

*Note*

**е** is liable to mutate to **ё** under stress: заверну́ть 'to wrap', **заве́рнут**; застегну́ть 'to fasten', **засте́гнут**.

(3) Verbs in **-ыть**:

забы́ть 'to forget'      **забы́т, -а, -о, -ы**

(4) Compounds of **бить, вить, лить, пить, шить**:

вы́шить 'to embroider'      **вы́шит, -а, -о, -ы**  
разби́ть 'to smash'      **разби́т, -а, -о, -ы**

*Note*

(a) Зали́ть 'to flood': **за́лит, залита́, за́лито, за́литы** (likewise **проли́ть** 'to spill': **про́лит** etc.).

(b) Разви́ть 'to develop': **ра́звит/разви́т, развита́, ра́звито/разви́то, ра́звиты/разви́ты**

(5) Verbs which introduce '**н**' or '**м**' in conjugation (**взять** 'to take', compounds of **деть** 'to put', **жать** 'to press', **клясть** 'to curse' and **-нять**, **начать** 'to begin', **распять** 'to crucify'):

Infinitive		First-person singular	Participle
взять	'to take'	возьму́	<b>взя́т, -а́, -о, -ы</b>
занять	'to occupy'	займу́	<b>за́нят, -а́, -о, -ы</b>
начать	'to begin'	начну́	<b>нача́т, -а́, -о, -ы</b>
одеть	'to dress'	оде́ну	<b>оде́т, -а, -о, -ы</b>
распять	'to crucify'	распну́	<b>распы́т, -а, -о, -ы</b>
сжать	'to compress'	сожму́	<b>сжа́т, -а, -о, -ы</b>
сжать	'to reap'	сожну́	<b>сжа́т, -а, -о, -ы</b>
смять	'to crumple'	сомну́	<b>смя́т, -а, -о, -ы</b>

*Note*

(a) Прокля́сть 'to curse', first-person singular прокляну́, participle **про́клят, -а́, -о, -ы**. Compare *stem* stress in the adjective **прокля́тый** 'wretched'.

(b) Participles from all compounds of **-нять** have the same stress pattern as **за́нят** (except **сня́т, снята́, сня́то, сня́ты** from **снять** 'to take off').

(6) Verbs in **-ереть** (note loss of second **-е-** in formation of participle):

заперётъ	‘to lock’	<b>за́перт, -а́, -о, -ы</b>
стерётъ	‘to erase’	<b>сте́рт, -а, -о, -ы</b>
(7) Others:		
вы́брить	‘to shave’	<b>вы́брит, -а, -о, -ы</b>
спеть	‘to sing’	<b>спет, -а, -о, -ы</b>
прож́ить	‘to spend’ (time)	<b>про́жит, прожита́, про́жито, про́житы</b>

### 358 The long form of participles in -т

The long-form participle is formed by adding full adjectival endings to the masculine short form in **-т**, e.g. **оде́т**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural	
<b>оде́тый</b>	<b>оде́тая</b>	<b>оде́тое</b>	<b>оде́тые</b>	‘dressed’

#### Note

Compare the participles **ра́звитый** (скóрость, **ра́звитая** тепловóзом ‘speed developed by a diesel locomotive’) and **разв́итый** (**разв́итая** пруж́ина ‘uncoiled spring’), and the adjective **разв́итой** (**разв́итая** промýшленность ‘highly-developed industry’).

### 359 Functions of short-form participles

(1) Only passive participles have short forms. Active participles have long forms only.

(2) The short form of the imperfective passive participle is rarely used:

Э́тот писа́тель все́ми **лю́бим, уважа́ем**

This writer is loved and respected by everyone

A reflexive verb or third-person plural is preferred instead:

Про́екты **финанси́руются** госуда́рством

Projects are financed by the state

Э́того писа́теля **лю́бят и уважа́ют**

This writer is loved and respected

(3) The short form of the **perfective** passive participle is very much used. It functions as predicate to the noun, with which it agrees in gender and number, and denotes:

## (i) The completion of an action:

Война́ <b>объявлена́</b>	War has been declared
Флаг <b>по́днят</b>	The flag has been hoisted
Письмо́ <b>подпи́сано</b>	The letter has been signed

## (ii) The existence of a state:

Дверь <b>заперта́</b>	The door is locked
Телеви́зор <b>включён</b>	The television is on

*Note*

## (a) The participle may precede or follow the noun:

**Укро́щенны́** не́которые опа́сные боле́зни (*Russia Today*)  
Certain dangerous diseases **have been curbed**

О́стров **превращён** в за́казник (Lebedev)  
The island **has been converted** into a nature reserve

(b) It may also combine with forms of the verb **быть**:

Он то́лько что **был разбу́жен** гро́мким го́лосом Солоу́хи  
(Povolyaev)  
He **had** just been **awakened** by Soloukha's loud voice

(Likewise Он **бу́дет разбу́жен** 'He will be awakened', Он **был бы разбу́жен** 'He would be/would have been awakened', Рабо́ты должны́ **быть напеча́таны** 'The essays have to be typed'.)

## (c) The agent of the action may be rendered by an instrumental:

Письмо́ подпи́сано **мини́стром**  
The letter is signed by a minister

---

## 360 Functions of long-form participles

---

Long-form participles, both active and passive, replace relative clauses beginning with **ко́торый** 'who', 'which'.

## (1) Active participles

Active participles relate to and qualify nouns which are the subject of an action or state. A comma appears between the noun and the following participle which qualifies it.

(i) The **present** active participle denotes an action which is simultaneous with the action or state denoted by the main verb:

ВЫставки, **рассказывающие** о предупреждении несчастных случаев, всегда вызывают большой интерес  
 Exhibitions **which describe** accident prevention always arouse great interest

*Note*

The main verb may denote present *or* past action: **Я видел/вижу** собаку, бегущую по берегу 'I saw/see a dog running along the shore'.

(ii) The **imperfective past** active participle denotes an action simultaneous with the action of a main verb in the *past tense*:

Женщина, **продававшая** яблоки, подошла к прохожему  
 The woman **who was selling** apples approached a passer-by

(iii) The **perfective past** active participle denotes an action completed *prior* to the action of the main verb:

Медведя прогнал рабочий, **прибежавший** на берег с заряженным ружьём  
 The bear was chased off by a worker **who had come running** on to the shore with a loaded gun

(2) Passive participles

Passive participles relate to and qualify nouns which are the natural **object** of the action denoted by the participle.

(i) The **imperfective** passive denotes an action which is simultaneous with the action of the main verb. The main verb may be in the present, past or future tense of either aspect. A *comma* appears between the noun and the participle which qualifies it:

Он писал статью	о предмете,	} изучаемом всеми учениками
Он написал статью	о предмете,	
Он пишет статью	о предмете,	
Он будет писать статью	о предмете,	
Он напишет статью	о предмете,	

(‘He was writing/wrote/is writing/will be writing/will write an article about a subject **studied** by all pupils’.)

*Note*

The meaning expressed by the participle may be durative:

программа, **передаваемая** по радио  
 a programme **being broadcast** on the radio

or habitual:

пéсни, **любíмые** наро́дом  
songs **loved** by the people

(ii) The **perfective** passive participle denotes an action completed prior to the action of the main verb. A *comma* appears between the noun and the following participle which qualifies it:

Пересма́тривается програ́мма, **одо́бренная** ми́ни́страми  
A programme **approved** by the ministers is being revised

В прода́жу поступи́ла ма́рка, **вы́пущенная** в Финля́ндии  
A stamp **issued** in Finland has gone on sale

---

### 361 Agreement of long-form participle and noun

---

(1) The long-form participle agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender, number and case. It differs in this respect from the relative pronoun **ко́торый**, which agrees with the noun in gender and number but *not* in case (the case of **ко́торый** being determined by the function it fulfils in the relative clause it introduces. See 123 (1) (ii).).

#### (i) Present active participle

Я зна́ю ма́льчика, **пи́шущего** пи́сьмо  
I know **the boy (who is) writing** the letter

#### (ii) Past active participle

Я помога́ю учени́ка́м, **провали́вшимся** на экза́мене  
I am helping **the pupils who failed** the examination

#### (iii) Imperfective passive participle

Э́то — де́вочка, **любима́я** все́ми  
That is **the girl liked** by everyone

#### (iv) Perfective passive

Он пи́шет ста́тью о **юно́шах, нака́занных** за хулига́нство  
He is writing an article about **the youths punished** for hooliganism

(2) Long participles may *precede* the noun:

(i) If the participle is the noun's only qualifier and functions as an adjective:

<b>спя́щий</b> ребёнок	a sleeping child
<b>Спя́щая</b> краса́вица	Sleeping Beauty



замёрзшее озеро	a frozen lake
Разва́лины <b>разбомблённых</b> городо́в (Granin)	The ruins of bombed towns

*Note*

In some cases the participle may be qualified by an adverb:

**хорошо́** опла́чиваемые рабо́чие  
well-paid workers

**вновь** вы́шедший ромáн  
a novel which has been republished

(ii) A pronoun or noun may appear between the participle and the noun it qualifies:

спасённые **им** де́вочки                      the girls rescued **by him**

(iii) It is also possible, especially in literary and journalistic styles, for circumstantial detail to appear between the participle and the noun:

Соше́дшие **с по́езда** немно́гие пасса́жиры разош́лись (Nosov)  
The few passengers who had alighted **from the train** dispersed

переда́ваемые **по телеви́зору** прогнóзы пого́ды  
weather forecasts transmitted **on TV**

Дви́гался конве́йер уви́денных **в ра́зное вре́мя** люде́й (Gagarin)  
A panorama of people he had seen **at various times** passed before him

## 362 Participial synonymy

(1) The imperfective passive participle may be synonymous with the present active participle of the corresponding reflexive verb:

слова́, **употребля́емые/употребля́ющиеся** в ре́чи  
the words **used** in a speech

(2) The active participle is used if the verb (e.g. **стро́ить** ‘to build’) has no passive participle:

**стро́ящееся** зда́ние                      a building **under construction**

(3) A ‘true’ reflexive cannot be used with passive meaning, however. Thus, одева́ющийся can only mean ‘who is dressing’ (but not \*‘who is being dressed’).

(4) Where both types of participle are available, the passive participle is used when the *agent* is named:

слова́, **употребляемые** (not \*употребляющиеся) ора́тором в  
публи́чной ре́чи  
words **used** by an orator in a public speech

---

### 363      Participles as adjectives and nouns

---

Many participles are also used as adjectives or nouns.

(1) Present active

(i) Adjectives:

<b>блестя́щий</b>	brilliant
<b>веду́щий</b>	leading
<b>выдаю́щийся</b>	outstanding
<b>далеко́ идущий</b>	far-reaching
<b>подходя́щий</b>	suitable
<b>сле́дующий</b>	next, following
<b>соотве́тствующий</b>	appropriate
<b>теку́щий</b>	current

(ii) Nouns:

<b>куря́щий</b>	smoker
<b>начина́ющий</b>	beginner
<b>непы́ющий</b>	tee-totaller
<b>трудя́щийся</b>	worker
<b>уча́щийся</b>	pupil, student

(2) Past active

(i) Adjective:

<b>бы́вший</b>	former
----------------	--------

(ii) Nouns:

<b>пострада́вший</b>	a casualty
<b>сумасше́дший</b>	a madman
<b>уме́рший</b>	the deceased
<b>уцеле́вший</b>	a survivor

## (3) Imperfective passive

<b>вообража́емый</b>	imaginary
<b>люби́мый</b>	favourite
<b>терпи́мый</b>	tolerable
<b>уважа́емый</b>	respected

*Note*

Many have negative prefixes, cf. English equivalents in -ble:

<b>невыно́симый</b>	unbearable
<b>незабы́ваемый</b>	unforgettable
<b>необходи́мый</b>	indispensable

A number derive from perfective stems

<b>незаменíмый</b>	irreplaceable
<b>(не)излечи́мый</b>	(in)curable
<b>неоспори́мый</b>	indisputable
<b>непобеди́мый</b>	invincible
<b>(не)совмести́мый</b>	(in)compatible

or intransitive verbs

<b>незави́симый</b>	independent
---------------------	-------------

A few are used as nouns:

<b>обвиня́емый</b>	the accused
<b>содержи́мое</b>	contents (of a receptacle)

## (4) Perfective passive

<b>заклучённый</b>	convict
--------------------	---------

**364 Participial adjectives**

(1) A number of long adjectives of participial origin differ from long-form participles:

(i) In having no prefix.

(ii) In having one **-н-** instead of two:

<b>варёное</b> яйцо	a boiled egg
<b>жа́ренная</b> карто́шка	fried potatoes
<b>кра́шенный</b> пол	a painted floor

<b>(не)пи́санный</b> за́кон	a(n) (un)written law
<b>суше́ные</b> фру́кты	dried fruit

*Note*

- (a) Adjectives based on second-conjugation verbs in **-ить** with mobile stress in conjugation tend to have suffix **-ён-**.
- (b) If circumstantial detail is added, *participles* must be used: **ра́ненный** в но́гу солда́т ‘a soldier wounded in the leg’ (cf. ра́ненный солда́т ‘wounded soldier’), **сва́ренное** в кастрю́льке яйцо́ ‘an egg boiled in a saucepan’ (cf. варе́ное яйцо́ ‘boiled egg’).
- (2) Some of the adjectives have the suffix **-т-**:

<b>кры́тый</b> ры́нок	covered market
<b>небри́тое</b> лицо́	unshaven face

К обе́ду мы яви́лись в **мя́той** оде́жде (Nikolaev)  
We appeared for lunch in crumpled clothing

- (3) Others function as adjectival nouns: **кра́деное** ‘stolen goods’.

### 365 Distinction between short-form adjectives and short-form participles

Certain short adjectives differ from short-form participles in having the suffix **-нн-** in their feminine, neuter and plural forms by contrast with **-н-** in the participle:

озабо́чен, озабо́ченна, озабо́ченно, озабо́ченны (adjective)
озабо́чен, озабо́чена, озабо́чено, озабо́чены (participle)

Compare

Глаза́ егó бы́ли **озабо́ченны** (adj.)  
His eyes were troubled

and

Она́ бы́ла **озабо́чена** (part.) отъё́здом ма́тери  
She was upset by her mother’s departure

Likewise Егó речь бы́ла **сде́ржанна** (adj.) ‘His speech was restrained’, but Вода́ бы́ла **сде́ржана** (part.) плоти́ной ‘The water was contained by a dam’. A similar distinction is made between **образо́ван**, **-а**, **-о**, **-ы** ‘has been formed’ (part.) and **образо́ван**, **-нна**, **-нно**, **-нны** ‘educated’ (adj.), **ограни́чен**, **-а**, **-о**, **-ы** ‘limited’ (part.) and **ограни́чен**, **-нна**,

**-нно, -нны** ‘hide-bound’ (adj.), **рассеян, -а, -о, -ы** ‘dispersed’ (part.) and **рассеян, -нна, -нно, -нны** ‘absent-minded’ (adj.).

### 366 Impersonal function of short-form participles

(1) The neuter short forms of the perfective passive participles of certain verbs can be used impersonally:

— Здесь <b>зáнято</b>	Is this place occupied?
За всё <b>запла́чено</b>	Everything has been paid for
В вагоне было битком <b>наби́то</b>	The carriage was packed
В зале <b>наку́рено</b>	The hall is smoke-filled
Ку́шать <b>по́дано</b>	Dinner is served
С доски́ <b>сте́рто</b>	The board has been cleaned
С веча́ра не <b>у́брано</b> было со стола́ (Rasputin)	The table had not been cleared since the previous evening
Вам <b>отка́зано</b> в про́сьбе	Your request has been refused

(2) Imperfective participles of this type are found in colloquial speech (mainly in the negative):

Давно́ **не то́плено**  
The heating has not been on for a long time

Compare Пол **не мыт** ‘The floor has not been washed’, Бельё **не гла́жено** ‘The washing has not been ironed’.

#### Note

Impersonal usage in **Прика́зано** оста́ться ‘We have been instructed to stay’, **Кому́́ это сказа́но?** ‘How many times do I have to tell you?’, and the phrase **Сказа́но — сде́лано** ‘No sooner said than done’.

## Gerunds

### 367 The gerund. Introductory comments

(1) Gerunds (or ‘verbal adverbs’) are *indeclinable* forms of the verb that substitute for co-ordinate or adverbial clauses in ‘and’, ‘when’, ‘since’, ‘by’, ‘without’ etc.

(2) Gerunds, like active participles, have English equivalents in ‘-ing’, but participles are adjectival in form, agree in gender, case and number with the noun they qualify and replace relative clauses in **котóрый** (see 360), while gerunds are invariable. Compare the use of the *participle* in

the **weeping** boy (= the boy **who is weeping**): **пла́чущий** ма́льчик  
with the use of the *gerund* in

he sits **weeping** (= **and weeps**): он сиди́т, **пла́ча**

(3) There are imperfective and perfective gerunds.

### 368 Formation of the imperfective gerund

Most imperfective gerunds are formed by adding **-я** (**-а** after **ж, ч, ш** or **щ**) to the present-tense stem of the verb (see 212):

говоря́т	говор-	<b>говоря́</b>	‘speaking’
дышат	дыш-	<b>дыша́</b>	‘breathing’
несу́т	нес-	<b>неся́</b>	‘carrying’
пла́чут	плач-	<b>пла́ча</b>	‘weeping’
тре́буют	требу-	<b>тре́буя</b>	‘demanding’
чита́ют	чита-	<b>чита́я</b>	‘reading’

#### Note

(a) **Давать** and compounds, compounds of **-знава́ть**, **-ставать** form gerunds as follows: **встава́я** ‘rising’, **дава́я** ‘giving’:

— Извини́те, у меня́ дела́, — сказа́л Неша́тов, **встава́я** со сту́ла (Greko<sup>va</sup>)

‘Excuse me, I have something to attend to’, said Neshatov, **getting up** from his chair

(b) The gerund from **махать** ‘to wave’ has alternative forms: **махая́** and **маша́**. Similarly **брызгать**, **брызжа́** ‘playing’ (of a fountain), **брызгая́** ‘sprinkling’ (water on ironing etc.). **Капать** ‘to drip’ has **ка́пая**, **сы́пать** ‘to strew’ has **сы́пя**.

(c) **Быть** has the gerund **бу́дучи** ‘being’:

Он прие́хал в Ло́ндон да́вно, ещё́ **бу́дучи** солда́том  
He arrived in London long ago **when he was** still a soldier

(d) **Е́дучи** from **еха́ть** ‘to travel’ is sometimes found in poetic or folk speech; **припева́ючи** is used in the phrase **жить припева́ючи** ‘to live in clover’.

- (e) Imperfective gerunds from reflexive verbs take the ending **-сь**: **жа́луясь** from **жа́ловаться** ‘to complain’.

### 369 Stress in the imperfective gerund

Stress in the gerund is normally as in the first-person singular:

голосова́ть	‘to vote’	голосу́ю	‘I vote’	голосу́я	‘voting’
держа́ть	‘to hold’	держу́	‘I hold’	держа́	‘holding’
кури́ть	‘to smoke’	курю́	‘I smoke’	кура́	‘smoking’
смотре́ть	‘to look’	смотрю́	‘I look’	смотре́я	‘looking’
шепта́ть	‘to whisper’	шепчу́	‘I whisper’	шепча́	‘whispering’

#### Note

**Глядя́** ‘looking’, **ле́жа** ‘lying’, **си́дя** ‘sitting’ and **сто́я** ‘standing’ have *stem* stress despite *end* stress in conjugation: Бараба́нов, **сто́я** на одно́м коле́не, дошнуро́вывал бу́тсы (Vanshenkin) ‘Barabanov was kneeling to finish lacing his boots’.

### 370 Verbs with no imperfective gerund

Many verbs have no imperfective gerund. These include the following:

(1) **Бежа́ть** ‘to run’, **бита́** ‘to strike’, **вита́** ‘to twine’, **врата́** ‘to lie’, **гни́ть** ‘to rot’, **дра́ть** ‘to flay’, **е́сть** ‘to eat’, **е́хать** ‘to travel’ (see, however, 368 note (d)), **жа́ждать** ‘to hunger for’, **жа́ть** ‘to press’, **жда́ть** ‘to wait’, **лгáть** ‘to lie’, **лезéть** ‘to climb’, **лита́** ‘to pour’, **мита́** ‘to crumple’, **пе́ть** ‘to sing’, **пита́** ‘to drink’, **рвáть** ‘to tear’, **слáть** ‘to send’, **стона́ть** ‘to groan’, **тка́ть** ‘to weave’, **хотéть** ‘to want’, **шита́** ‘to sew’.

#### Note

Gerunds from some other verbs are rarely used: **бера́** from **брати́** ‘to take’, **гона́** from **гнати́** ‘to drive’, **зова́** from **звати́** ‘to call’, **плыви́я** from **плыти́** ‘to swim’. **Носи́я** from **носи́ть** ‘to carry’ and **ходи́я** from **ходи́ть** ‘to go’ are rarely found; cf., however, compound **прино́ся** ‘bringing’ etc.

(2) First-conjugation consonant-stem verbs with **с:ш**, **з:ж** mutation (e.g. **писа́ть** ‘to write’, **рэза́ть** ‘to cut’, see 217 (2)).

(3) Verbs in **-чь**.

(4) Verbs in **-ереть**.

(5) Verbs with the suffix **-ну-** (**гáснуть** ‘to go out’ etc.).

### 371 Compensation for the lack of an imperfective gerund

(1) If a primary verb has no imperfective gerund it is often possible to form one from its synonym. Thus, **мочь** ‘to be able’ has no gerund, but **быть в состоянии** ‘to be capable of’ does: **бúдучи в состоянии** ‘being able to’. Likewise, **хотéть** ‘to want’ has no gerund, but **желáть** ‘to wish’ does (**желáя** ‘wishing, wanting’):

**Желáя** скорéе уéхать, он торопíлся закóнчить рабóту

**Wishing** to get away as soon as possible he hastened to finish his work

(2) Other primaries with no gerund have a synonymous secondary imperfective from which a gerund may be formed:

Primary verb	Secondary imperfective	Gerund	
есть	сýедáть	<b>сýедáя</b>	‘eating’
éхать	проезжáть	<b>проезжáя</b>	‘travelling’
ждать	ожидáть	<b>ожидáя</b>	‘waiting’
жечь	сжигáть	<b>сжигáя</b>	‘burning’
петь	распевáть	<b>распевáя</b>	‘singing’
пить	выпивáть	<b>выпивáя</b>	‘drinking’
рвать	разрывáть	<b>разрывáя</b>	‘tearing up’
слать	посылáть	<b>посылáя</b>	‘sending’
тереть	вытирáть	<b>вытирáя</b>	‘wiping’

Кóстя Пимурзýя весь извёлся, **ожидáя** нас (Nikolaev)

Kostya Pimurzya suffered agonies waiting for us

### 372 The perfective gerund: formation (verbs in **-ть**, **-сть** (д-stems))

(1) The perfective gerund is formed from verbs in **-ть** by replacing the perfective infinitive ending by **-в**:

<b>написáв</b>	having written
<b>пострóив</b>	having built



**промо́кнув** having got soaked

(2) Likewise gerunds from verbs in **-сть** (д-stems only: **присе́сть** ‘to sit down for a while’, **укра́сть** ‘to steal’, **упа́сть** ‘to fall’):

**присе́в** having sat down for a while

### 373 Reflexive perfective gerunds

Reflexive perfective gerunds have the ending **-вшись**:

**верну́вшись** having returned

**умы́вшись** having washed

*Note*

**Оперши́сь** from **опере́ться** ‘to lean on’ (cf. figurative usage: **опере́вшись** на инициати́ву масс ‘relying on the initiative of the masses’); similarly **вто́ргшись** ‘having invaded’ from **вто́ргнуться**, **вы́тершись** ‘having dried oneself’, **заперши́сь** ‘having locked oneself in’.

### 374 Perfective gerunds with alternative forms in **-я/-а**

(1) Some perfective gerunds have alternative forms in **-в** and **-я/-а**, the forms in **-в** generally being preferred in written styles:

**заме́тив/заме́тя** having noticed

**увиде́в/увидя́** having seen

(2) The forms in **-я/-а** are common with reflexive verbs: **возврати́ться/возврати́вшись** (**верну́вшись**) ‘having returned’, **встре́ться/встре́тившись** ‘having met’, **прищу́рясь/прищу́рившись** ‘screwing up one’s eyes’:

Я ждал, **прислоня́сь** к стене́ (Granin)

I waited, **leaning** against a wall

**Возврати́вшись** к себе́ на кварти́ру, она́ се́ла в своё́ люби́мое кресло́ у окна́. (Litvinova)

Returning to her flat, she sat in her favourite armchair by the window

### 375 Gerunds from perfective verbs in **-ти** and **-сть**

Gerunds from most perfective verbs in **-ти** and (except for д-stems, see 372) **-сть** are formed by replacing the final two letters of the third-person plural of the verb by **-я**:

пройд-ут	<b>пройд-я</b>	‘having passed’
сойд-ут	<b>сойд-я</b>	‘having descended’

Likewise **изобретя** ‘having invented’ from изобрести, **подметя** ‘having swept’ from подмести, **принеся** ‘having brought’ from принести, **разбредясь** ‘having wandered off in different directions’ from разбредтись (cf. also **учтя** ‘having taken into consideration’ from учесть):

**Принеся** самовар и заварив чай, Дарья наконец заговорила (Rasputin)

**Having brought in** the samovar and made the tea Darya finally began to speak

#### *Note*

Compounds of грести, пасты, расты and цвести have perfective gerunds in **-ши**: **выросши** ‘having grown up’ from вырасти, **расцвётши** ‘having blossomed’ from расцвести, **сгрёбши** ‘having raked together’ from сгрести, **спасши** ‘having saved’ from спасти.

### **376 Gerunds from perfective verbs in -чь and -зть**

Gerunds from perfective verbs in **-чь** and **-зть** are formed by adding **-ши** to the masculine past tense of the verb: **вылезши** ‘having climbed out’ from вылезть, **испёкши** ‘having baked’ from испечь, **сжёгши** ‘having burnt’ from сжечь.

### **377 Functions of the gerunds**

Gerunds replace co-ordinate clauses or adverbial clauses of time, manner, cause, condition etc. They are found mainly in written Russian, co-ordinate or adverbial clauses (English equivalents enclosed in parentheses) being preferred in speech.

#### (1) Imperfective gerunds

The imperfective gerund denotes an action which is simultaneous to the action of the main verb. Either the two actions run in parallel or one interrupts the other. The following meanings are conveyed by the gerund:

Он сидит, **читая**  
He sits **reading** (= and reads)

Он бежит, тяжело дыша́

He is running along, **breathing** (= and breathes) heavily.

**Читая́**, записы́ваю незнако́мые слова́

**When reading** (= when I read) I make a note of words I do not know

**Поднима́ясь** по ле́стнице, она́ упала́

**While going up** (= when/while/as she was going up) the stairs, she fell

**Занима́ясь** аэро́бикой, укреплю́ здоро́вье

**By doing** aerobics (= if I do) I shall improve my fitness

**Боя́сь** грозы́, я поспеши́л домо́й

**Fearing** (= since I feared) a thunderstorm I hurried home

На ста́нции, ко́гда двéри раскрýлись, она́ вы́скочила́ и побежа́ла по платфо́рме, **не переставая́** крича́ть (Litvinova)

At the station, when the doors opened, she jumped out and ran along the platform, shouting all the time

## (2) Perfective gerunds

(i) The perfective gerund describes an action which is completed prior to the action denoted by the main verb:

**Написа́в** письмо́, он лёг спать

**Having written** (= when, after he had written) the letter he went to bed

**Не поня́в** вопро́са, она́ растеря́лась

**Not having understood** (= since she had not understood) the question she got confused

**Примени́в** но́вый ме́тод, брига́да смо́жет перевы́полнить но́рму

**By using** (= if it uses) the new method, the work-team will be able to over-fulfil its norm

(ii) The perfective gerund may also denote a state resulting from the completion of an action:

Он сиде́л, **вытяну́в** но́ги

He sat, **stretching out** (= having stretched out) his legs

## Note

Care must be taken to resolve English ambiguity in rendering verb forms in -ing. Compare

**Stepping** (= as she was stepping) off the pavement she tripped and fell

**Сходя́** (imperfective gerund) с тротуа́ра, она́ споткну́лась и упала́

and

**Stepping** (= **having** stepped) off the pavement she crossed the road  
**Сойдя́** (perfective gerund) с троту́ара, она́ перешла́ доро́гу

---

### 378 Special features of constructions with gerunds

---

Certain features are characteristic of constructions with gerunds:

(1) The subject of the gerund and the subject of the main clause are the same:

**Верну́вшись** домо́й, **он** поста́вил самова́р  
Having returned home he put on the samovar

**Возвраща́ясь** домо́й, **я** попа́л под дождь  
While returning home I got caught in the rain

*Note*

- (a) In this example the main clause could *not* be replaced by the synonymous Меня́ засти́г дождь 'I got caught in the rain', since this would involve a change in subject.
- (b) The gerund is not normally used in conjunction with an impersonal phrase; thus one should write *not* \*Подходя́ к ле́су, мне ста́ло хо́лодно, but Когда́ я подходи́л к ле́су, мне ста́ло хо́лодно 'As I approached the forest I felt cold'. Impersonal constructions involving *infinitives* may, however, sometimes combine with gerunds: Выполня́я э́то упражне́ние, **мо́жно по́льзоваться** словарём 'When doing this exercise you may use a dictionary'. (Note, however, that an alternative rendering: Выполня́я э́то упражне́ние, обраща́йтесь к словарю́ 'When doing this exercise, consult the dictionary' observes the principle of identity of subject in both clauses.)
- (c) A gerund should be avoided when the subject of the main clause appears in a passive construction, since in such cases the *grammatical* subject of the main clause is not the *logical* subject. Thus После́ того́ как он переле́з (rather than Переле́зши) через забо́р, он был заде́ржан сторожа́ми 'Having climbed over the fence, he was detained by guards'.

(2) A comma separates the main clause from the clause in which the gerund appears:

Он **говори́л, стара́ясь** сохра́нять хладнокро́вие  
He spoke, trying to retain his composure

**Прочита́в** письмо́, он **спря́тал** его́ в ящик  
Having read the letter he hid it in a drawer

(3) The verb in the main clause may be in any tense and either aspect:

Возвраща́ясь с заво́да, я **встреча́л/встрети́л/встреча́ю/бúду**  
(ча́сто) **встреча́ть/встрéчу** Ёру  
When returning from the factory **I used to meet/met/meet/will** (often)  
**meet/will meet** Ira

Верну́вшись домо́й, он **ста́вил/постáвил/ста́вит/бúдет ста́вить/**  
**постáвит** самовáр  
Returning home, **he used to put on/put on/puts on/will put on the**  
**samovar**

Compare

Он **просыпа́лся** по утра́м и, **откры́в** фо́рточку, **начина́л** в рíтме  
разма́хивать рука́ми (Trofimov)  
He **would wake up** in the morning and, **opening** the casement window,  
**begin** rhythmically to swing his arms

#### Note

The use of the perfective gerund **откры́в** shows that the actions of opening the window and swinging the arms were sequential (imperfective **открыва́я** would suggest that they were simultaneous).

### 379 Reversal of the sequence of actions expressed by main verb and gerund

Occasionally the action denoted by the verb in the main clause *precedes* that denoted by the gerund:

Он **вы́шел, хлопну́в** двéрью He went out, slamming the door

This construction should *not*, however, be regarded as the norm.

### 380 Gerunds as other parts of speech

Some gerunds or former gerunds also function as other parts of speech, in particular prepositions and adverbs.

(1) **Imperfective:**

<b>благодаря́</b>	thanks to (+ dat.; cf. <b>благодаря́</b> as gerund + acc.)
<b>исключая́</b>	excluding, except for
<b>кра́дучись</b>	stealthily
<b>мо́лча</b>	silently
<b>не счита́я</b>	not counting
<b>не теря́я вре́мени</b>	without delay
<b>судя́ по</b>	judging by (cf. gerund <b>судя́</b> )

*Note*

- (a) Some phrases are compounded with the gerund **говоря́: откровенно говоря́** ‘frankly speaking’, **строго говоря́** ‘strictly speaking’, **не говоря́ уже́** ‘let alone, to say nothing of’ etc.:

Общество предоставляет им библиоте́ки, музе́и, **не говоря́ уже́** о теа́трах и кино́ (Kovaleva)

Society puts at their disposal libraries and museums, to say nothing of theatres and cinemas

- (b) Other phrases include **отвеча́ть не задумы́ваясь** ‘to answer without hesitation’, **говори́ть заика́ясь** ‘to stammer’, **не покладáя рук** ‘tirelessly’, **не спешá** ‘unhurriedly’, **не́хотя** ‘reluctantly’.

(2) **Perfective** (mainly in set phrases involving gerunds in **-я/-а**; see 374):

слу́шать <b>рази́ня</b> рот	to listen open-mouthed
сказа́ть <b>положа́</b> ру́ку на́ сердце	to say hand on heart
рабо́тать <b>спустя́</b> рукава́	to work in a slipshod fashion
согласи́ться <b>скрепи́</b> се́рдце	to agree reluctantly
сиде́ть <b>сложá</b> ру́ки	to sit twiddling one’s thumbs

Note also the preposition **спустя́: неде́лю спустя́** ‘a week later’. See 439 (2)(i).

---

# The Adverb

---

## 381 Introductory comments

---

(1) Adverbs are indeclinable forms that modify verbs ('he writes *well*'), adjectives ('*surprisingly* good'), other adverbs ('*extremely* quickly') or nouns ('reading *aloud*').

(2) They answer questions such as '**where?**', '**when?**', '**how?**', '**why?**', '**for what purpose?**', '**to what extent?**'

(3) A feature of Russian adverbs is that they all derive from other parts of speech (though in the case of most primary adverbs (**так** 'thus', там 'there', **тогда́** 'then' etc.) the principle of their formation is no longer clear).

(4) The most productive types of adverb are those which derive from **adjectives**. They also derive from **nouns**, **verbs**, **numerals** and **pronouns**.

## 382 Adverbs derived from adjectives

---

(1) Adverbs in -o/-e

(i) Most adverbs derived from descriptive adjectives are identical with the neuter adjectival short form in **-o/-e** (see **159, 161, 164**):

Long adjective

Adverb

**высо́кий** 'high'

**высоко́** 'high up'

<b>гладкий</b> 'smooth'	<b>гладко</b> 'smoothly'
<b>красивый</b> 'beautiful'	<b>красиво</b> 'beautifully'
<b>внешний</b> 'external'	<b>внешне</b> 'externally'
<b>искренний</b> 'sincere'	<b>искренне</b> 'sincerely'
<b>крайний</b> 'extreme'	<b>крайне</b> 'extremely'

(ii) In some cases, however, there is a difference in stress, cf. **больно́** (neuter short adjective) 'is sick' and **бо́льно** (adverb) 'painfully, it hurts'; **мало́** (neuter short adjective) 'too small' and **ма́ло** (adverb) 'not much'.

#### Note

- (a) Soft-ending adjectives **да́вний** 'long-standing', **по́здний** 'late' and **ра́нный** 'early' have hard-ending adverbs **давно́** 'long ago', **по́здно** 'late, it is (too) late', **ра́но** 'early, it is (too) early'. Note that whereas **ра́нный** has double **н**, **ра́но** has only one.
- (b) Adverbs in **-о/-е** also derive from participles: **неожи́данно** 'unexpectedly' from **неожи́данный**, **угрожа́юще** 'threateningly' from **угрожа́ющий**.

#### (2) Adverbs based on по- + dative singular of the adjective

Adverbs of manner of the type **по-** + the dative masculine/neuter singular of the adjective derive from adjectives in **-ый/-ий/-ой** which have no adverb in **-о/-е** (e.g. **друго́й** 'different', **но́вый** 'new', **пре́жний** 'former'):

<b>по-друго́му</b>	in a different way
<b>по-настоя́щему</b>	in a proper fashion
<b>по-но́вому</b>	in a new way
<b>по-пре́жнему</b>	as before
<b>по-ра́зному</b>	in various ways

#### (3) Adverbs in -и

(i) Adverbs from adjectives in **-ский/-цкий** (mostly adverbs of manner) take the ending **-и**: thus **бра́тски** 'fraternally', **дура́цки** 'foolishly, in a foolish way', **логи́чески** 'logically' etc.

(ii) Those with animate connotations, including all which denote nationality, may take the prefix **по-**: **ко́фе по-ту́ре́цки** 'coffee Turkish style', **по-ле́нински** 'after the style of Lenin', **по-ру́сски** 'in Russian, in the Russian style'.

(iii) In some contexts, prefixed and unprefixed variants are synonymous: **бра́тски/по-бра́тски** **похло́пать по плечу́** 'to slap on



the shoulder in a brotherly fashion', **герóйски/по-герóйски** вести́ себя 'to behave in a heroic way', **дéтски/по-дéтски** доверчивый 'as trusting as a child':

В Но́вый год о́собенно се́рдечно и **по-дру́жески/дру́жески** мы вспоми́наем со́тни имéи знако́мых люде́й

At New Year we recall, in a particularly cordial and friendly way, the names of hundreds of acquaintances

(iv) In most cases, however, choice is dictated by usage: **дру́жески** подмигну́ть 'to wink in a friendly manner', **звéрски** голо́дный 'ravenously hungry', **по-дéтски** обиде́лся 'he took childish offence'.

#### Note

- (a) While forms with **по-** answer the implied question **подобно кому́/чему́?** 'similar to whom/what?', forms without **по-** answer the questions **как/каким óбразом?** 'how/in what way?'
- (b) Adverbs in **-ически** cannot combine with **по-**.

#### (4) Adverbs in -ьи

Adverbs from adjectives of the type **во́лчий** 'wolf's' (see 151 (1)) take the ending **-ьи**, and are prefixed **по-**: Он **по-медвѣ́жьи** неуклю́ж 'He is as clumsy as a bear', Он **по-соба́чьи** пре́дан своему́ хозя́ину 'He displays a dog-like devotion to his master'.

#### (5) Adverbs based on preposition + the oblique case of an adjective

(i) Most adverbs of this type consist of a preposition + the fossilized oblique case of a short adjective, run together to form a single word (e.g. **с** + old genitive \***права** = **спра́ва** 'on, from the right'). The adverbs denote variously location, time, manner and extent:

<b>вскóре</b>	soon
(раздева́ться) <b>догола́</b>	(to strip oneself) naked
(вытира́ть) <b>до́суха</b>	(to rub) dry
<b>издалека́</b>	from a distance
<b>сле́ва</b>	on, from the left
<b>сно́ва</b>	again

(ii) A smaller number of adverbs consist of the preposition **в** + the feminine accusative of a long adjective:

<b>вплотну́ю</b>	right up close to
<b>вру́чну́ю</b>	by hand
(летéть) <b>вслепу́ю</b>	(to fly) blind

### 383 Adverbs derived from nouns

(1) Adverbs based on the oblique cases of nouns

(i) Many adverbs have the form of the **instrumental singular** of a noun. The adverbs denote location or manner:

<b>верхом</b>	on horseback
<b>даром</b>	free, for nothing
<b>рядом</b>	next door, adjacent
<b>шёпотом</b>	in a whisper

*Note*

- (a) End stress in the adverb **кругом** ‘around’ and stem stress in the instrumental of the noun **круг (крúгом)** and in the phrase **голова идёт крúгом** ‘my head is spinning’.
- (b) Some adverbs derive from no-longer extant nouns: **оптом** ‘wholesale’, **ощупью** ‘gropingly’, **пешком** ‘on foot’, **украдкой** ‘furtively’.
- (c) Instrumentals are also used to denote the time of day and the season of the year (see **97** (2) (i), (ii)).

(ii) Other adverbs derived from nouns include **вчера** ‘yesterday’ (also **позавчера** ‘the day before yesterday’), **дома** ‘at home’, **домой** ‘home(wards)’, **завтра** ‘tomorrow’ (also **послезавтра** ‘the day after tomorrow’), **очень** ‘very, very much’ (**Я очень** люблю мороженое ‘I am very fond of ice-cream’), **сегодня** ‘today’.

(2) Adverbs based on preposition-noun phrases

(i) The preposition appears as a separate word in some phrases (**в придачу** ‘into the bargain’, **на днях** ‘the other day’, **на ходу** ‘while on the move’), but in most cases preposition and noun are run together. The prepositions **в**, **на**, **по** + dative, **с** + genitive are particularly common in this type of formation. All oblique cases are represented:

(a) Accusative:

<b>вслух</b>	aloud
<b>наоборот</b>	on the contrary

(b) Genitive:

<b>издали</b>	from afar
<b>сверху</b>	from above

(c) Dative:

<b>кста́ти</b>	apropos
<b>побли́зости</b>	in the vicinity

(d) Instrumental:

<b>сли́шком</b>	too
-----------------	-----

(e) Prepositional:

<b>вме́сте</b>	together
----------------	----------

(ii) Some adverbs appear in pairs, one denoting location and the other destination or goal:

<b>вдали́/вдаль</b>	in/into the distance
<b>внизú/вниз</b>	downstairs (location/direction)
<b>внутри́/внутри</b>	inside (location/direction)
<b>впередí/вперёд</b>	in front/forwards
<b>за гра́ницей/за гра́нцу</b>	abroad (location/direction)
<b>наверхú/наверх</b>	upstairs (location/direction)

#### Note

Compare **за́мужем за** + instrumental ‘married to’ and **выхо́дить/вы́йти за́муж за** + accusative ‘to get married’ (of a woman).

(iii) Some prepositional phrases involve *two* nouns:

<b>бо́к ó бок</b>	cheek by jowl
<b>вре́мя от вре́мени</b>	from time to time
<b>лицо́м к лицу́</b>	face to face

### 384 Adverbs derived from verbs

Some adverbs are based on imperfective gerunds (see also **380** (1)):

<b>кра́дучись</b>	stealthily
<b>не́хотя</b>	reluctantly

Others are based on perfective gerunds, often as part of an adverbial phrase:

<b>сломя́</b> го́лову	at breakneck speed
-----------------------	--------------------

See also **380** (2).

### 385 Adverbs derived from numerals

Adverbs derived from numerals include the series

**вдвоём/втроём/вчетверём . . .**

two/three/four together . . .

**во-пéрвых/во-вторы́х/в-трéтых . . .**

in the first/second/third place . . .

**одна́жды/два́жды/три́жды . . .**

once/twice/thrice . . .

as well as **впервые** ‘for the first time’, **наедине́** ‘in private, alone (with)’, and the phrase **один на один** ‘tête-à-tête’.

### 386 Adverbs derived from pronouns

A number of adverbs are based on:

- (i) The demonstrative pronouns **этот** ‘this’, **тот** ‘that’, **сей** ‘this’:

<b>затём</b>	afterwards
<b>потом</b>	then, afterwards
<b>по́тому</b>	for that reason, therefore
<b>сейча́с</b>	now
<b>с тех пор/до тех пор/до сих пор</b>	since then/until then/hitherto

#### *Note*

- (a) **Потом** and **затём** are synonymous in referring to sequential actions, though **потом** is commoner: **Куплю́ билёт, потом/затём зайду́ к приятелю** ‘I shall buy a ticket, **then** call on a friend’. **Потом** is also used in the meaning ‘afterwards, in a little while’: **Я сде́лаю это́ потом** ‘I’ll do that later’. In colloquial registers it can be governed by a preposition (отложить́ **на потом** ‘to put off until afterwards’) and can also be used colloquially in the meaning ‘besides’: **Не хочу́ я е́хать, а потом у меня́ и вре́мени нет** ‘I don’t want to go, and besides I don’t have any time’. **Затём** can also denote purpose: **Поговори́м, ведь я затём и пришёл** ‘Let’s talk, after all that’s the reason I have come’, **Я пришёл (затём), что́бы погово́рить** ‘I have come (in order) to have a chat’.
- (b) **Тепе́рь** ‘now’ is more limited in meaning and usage than **сейча́с**, which can refer to the past and future, as well as to the present: **О**

чѐм онѝ говорѝли **сейчас**? ‘What were they talking about **just now**?’, Я бѹду с ва́ми **сейчас** ‘I’ll be with you **in a minute**’, Чтo вы дѣлаете **сейчас/теперь**? ‘What are you doing **now**?’

- (ii) The pronoun **что** ‘what’: **зачѐм**? ‘for what purpose?’, **почему́**? ‘why?’ Compare

**Зачѐм** включѝли свет? — Чтoбы́ мо́жно бы́ло чита́ть  
Why have you switched on the light? So as to be able to read (purpose)

and

**Почему́** включѝли свет? — У́же темнó  
Why have you switched on the light? Because it’s dark (cause)

- (iii) The possessive pronouns **мой, твой, свой, наш, ваш**:

<b>по-мо́ему/по-тво́ему</b>	in my opinion/in your opinion (familiar)
<b>по-на́шему/по-ва́шему</b>	in our opinion/in your opinion (formal)

*Note*

- (a) The difference in stress between **по-мо́ему, по-тво́ему**, and the dative case of the possessive pronouns (**моему́, тво́ему**).  
(b) ‘In his/her/their opinion’ are rendered as **по егó/еѝ/их мнѐнию**.  
(c) **По-сво́ему** means ‘in one’s own way’: Он всё дѣлает **по-сво́ему** ‘He does everything in his own way’.

- (iv) **Весь** ‘all’:

<b>вездé/всю́ду; отовсю́ду</b>	everywhere; from everywhere
<b>весьма́</b>	extremely
<b>совсе́м</b>	quite

*Note*

Compare Это **не совсем** правда ‘That’s **not quite** true’ and Это **совсе́м не** правда ‘That’s **not at all** true’.

### 387 Primary spatial adverbs

- (1) Где ‘where’, **здесь** ‘here’ and **там** ‘there’ denote location:

Где вы рабóтаете?	Where do you work?
Я рабóтаю <b>здесь</b> ; Он рабóтает <b>там</b>	I work here; He works there

*Note*

**Тут** ‘here’ is more colloquial than **здесь** and can also have a temporal meaning, e.g. **Тут** рассказчик замолчал ‘Here the narrator fell silent’.

(2) **Куда** ‘where’ (to), **сюда** ‘here’ and **туда** ‘there’ indicate direction:

<b>Куда</b> вы идёте?	Where are you going?
Идите <b>сюда</b> !	Come here!
<b>Туда</b> идёт автобус нóмер пять	The number 5 bus goes there

(3) **Откуда** ‘from where’, **отсюда** ‘from here’ and **оттуда** ‘from there’ indicate withdrawal:

<b>Откуда</b> он пришёл?	Where has he come from?
--------------------------	-------------------------

*Note*

**Откуда** вы знаёте? ‘**How** do you know?’

---

**388 Primary adverbs of time**

---

(1) **Тогда** ‘then’

**Тогда** ‘then, at that time’ must be differentiated from **потом/затем** ‘then, afterwards’. Compare

**Тогда** я жил на сéвере  
I lived in the north **then**/at that time

and

Сначала думай, **потом** говори  
First think, **then** speak

(2) **Когда/как** ‘when/as’

(i) **Когда** or **в то время как** are preferred to **как** in rendering ‘as’ (= ‘when’) in clauses of time:

**Когда/в то время как** я шёл по доро́ге, я встретил ста́рого знако́мого  
**As** I was walking down the road I met an old acquaintance

(ii) However, **как** is used with verbs of perception (**ви́деть** ‘to see’, **слу́шать** ‘to listen’, **слы́шать** ‘to hear’, **смотре́ть** ‘to watch’):

Смо́трим, **как** де́ти игра́ют  
We watch the children playing

Я слýшаю, **как** она поёт  
I listen to her singing

(iii) **Ждать** ‘to wait’ and **любить** ‘to like’ govern object clauses introduced by **когда́**:

Жду, **когда́** вы ко́нчите  
I am waiting for you to finish

Люблю, **когда́** ты поёшь наро́дные пёсны  
I like you to sing folk songs

*Note*

For constructions with **слýчай** ‘case’ see 311 (2).

(3) Как/как вдруг ‘when suddenly/than’

(i) **Как** (or **как вдруг**) is used to introduce a sudden or unexpected action, often interrupting another action:

Я как раз гла́дил брю́ки, **как вдруг** погас свет  
I was just ironing my trousers **when suddenly** the light went out

(ii) The main clause in such constructions is often introduced by a negative:

Не прошёл он и десяти́ шаго́в, **как** разда́лся вы́стрел  
He had not taken ten paces **when** a shot rang out

(iii) Frequently the verb (**не**) **успе́ть** or the conjunction **едва́** is involved in such constructions:

**Не** (or **Едва́**) **успе́л** я нажа́ть кно́пку, **как** дверь распахну́лась  
I had not had time (had hardly had time) to press the button when the door flew open

**Едва́** я вы́шел на у́лицу, **как** пошёл си́льный дождь  
**Hardly** had I gone out on to the street **than** it began raining heavily

*Note*

See also 466–467 for further examples of adverbial clauses of time.

### 389 Уже́, уже́ не

(1) **Уже́** ‘already’ is far commoner in Russian than ‘already’ in English, which often has no equivalent in indicating the early implementation or completion of an action:

Он пришёл **уже** вчера  
He arrived yesterday/as early as yesterday

(2) **Уже** is particularly important in clarifying tense sequence:

Демонстранты **уже** разбежались, когда приехала оперативная машина  
The demonstrators **had already** dispersed when the squad car arrived

*Note*

Without **уже** the above sentence means ‘The demonstrators dispersed **when** the squad car arrived’.

(3) **Уже не** (or **больше не**) means ‘no longer, not any more’: Он **уже не/больше не** работает здесь ‘He doesn’t work here any more’.

*Note*

**Уже нет** replaces **уже не** in the absence of a predicate: Он работает здесь? **Уже нет** ‘Does he work here? Not any more’.

---

### 390    **Ещё, ещё не**

---

(1) **Ещё** ‘still/yet’, **ещё не** ‘not yet’ can be used with temporal meaning:

Ребёнок **ещё** (or **всё ещё**) спит  
The child is still asleep

**Ещё** девочкой она лишилась матери  
She lost her mother when she was only a little girl

Она **ещё не** пришла  
She hasn’t arrived yet

*Note*

**Ещё нет** replaces **ещё не** in the absence of a predicate: Она пришла? **Ещё нет** ‘Has she arrived?’ ‘Not yet’.

(2) **Ещё** can also mean ‘additional’, compare:

Дай **ещё** чашку чаю  
Give me another (= an additional) cup of tea

and

Дай **другую** чашку  
Give me another (= a different) cup



- (3) It can also be synonymous with **уже́** in a temporal context:

Он у́ехал **ещё/уже́** на про́шлой неде́ле  
He left last week

*Note*

- (a) The use of **ещё** with comparatives, as an adverb of degree: **ещё** лу́чше ‘still/even better’.
- (b) **Ещё́ раз** ‘once more’, referring to a repeated action (but not a repeated state): Я позво́ню **ещё́ раз** ‘I’ll ring again’. Compare **снова́**, which may denote resumption rather than repetition: По́сле боле́зни он **снова́** стал хо́дить в кино́ ‘After his illness he has begun going to the cinema again’. **Опять** may be used as a synonym of **снова́** (**Снова́/опять** пошёл дождь ‘It began raining again’), but may also have emotional overtones, sometimes expressing irritation (**Опять** по́езд опáздывает! ‘The train is late again!’).

### 391 The temporal adverbs **долго́**, **давно́** and **неда́вно**

- (1) **Долго́** denotes a definite but unspecified period of time:

Он **долго́** одева́ется  
He takes a long time to dress

- (2) **Давно́** ‘for a long time’ (it also means ‘a long time ago’) implies an unfinished action or process:

Он **давно́** рабо́тает здесь  
He has been working here for a long time (and still is)

Он **давно́** жил там  
He **had** been living there for a long time

*Note*

- (a) Cf. **256** (2) (vii).
- (b) Cf. tense usage in *negative* contexts: Я давно́ не **курю́** ‘I haven’t smoked for some time’ (have given it up) and Я давно́ не **кури́л** ‘I haven’t smoked for some time’ (but may do so again).
- (3) **Неда́вно** refers to a recent event

Он у́мер **неда́вно**  
He died **recently**

while (**в/за**) **последнее́ вре́мя** ‘recently, of late’ refers to a process or

state extending over a period of time. Absence of a preposition represents more colloquial usage:

**Последнее время** не было дождя  
There hasn't been any rain **recently**

### 392 Primary adverbs of manner and extent

(1) **Как** and **так** may denote:

(i) Manner:

Вот <b>как</b> надо писать!	That's <b>how</b> to write!
Надо вести себя <b>так</b>	You should behave <b>like that</b>

*Note*

(a) **Как** also combines with the verb **любить** 'to like' in expressing manner: Люблю, **как** ты готовишь еду 'I like the way you cook'.

(b) **Не так** may mean 'wrongly': Вы **не так** меняете пробку 'You're not changing the fuse the right way' (cf. неправильно 'incorrectly').

(ii) Degree or extent:

<b>Как</b> хорошо она играет!	How well she plays!
<b>Я так</b> много ходил, что устал	I have walked so much that I am tired

(2) In comparisons, the particle **же** usually follows **так**:

Он <b>так же</b> умён, <b>как</b> я	He is just as clever as I am
-------------------------------------	------------------------------

but this does not occur in a negative comparison

Он <b>не так</b> умён, <b>как</b> я	He is not as clever as I am
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------

When two qualities relate to the same person, the particle **и** is used for emphasis:

Он <b>так же</b> умён, <b>как и</b> добр	He is as clever as he is kind
--	-------------------------------

(3) **Как?** is used as the equivalent of English 'what?' in establishing personal and other details:

**Как** твоё имя?/твоё отчество?/твоя фамилия?  
What is your first name?/your patronymic?/your surname?

**Как** тебя зовут?  
What is your name?

**Как** ваш адрес?  
What is your address?

Note also the phrase **Как** это по-ру́сски? ‘What is the Russian for that?’

### 393 Interrelating adverbs

Interrelating adverbs

**там, где**  
**туда́, куда́**  
**туда́, отку́да**  
**тогда́, когда́**  
**так, как** etc.

may be used when no specific referent of place, time or manner is named:

Я рабо́таю **там, где** он рабо́тал ра́ньше  
I work **where** (lit. ‘**there, where**’) he used to work

По́мню, как побежа́ли мы **туда́, куда́** нас ве́ла гу́стая то́лпа́  
люде́й (Grekova)  
I recall how we ran **to where** a dense crowd of people led us

Люба́я рабо́та то́лько **тогда́** увлека́ет, **когда́** ты в ней уже́  
какие-то та́йны откры́л (*Yunyi naturalist*)  
A job only becomes absorbing **when** you have discovered some of  
its secrets

Он поступи́л **так, как** я ему́ велéл  
He acted **as** I told him to

### 394 То́же, та́кже

(1) Both **то́же** and **та́кже** mean ‘also, as well, too’. **То́же** may be regarded as the more colloquial variant, **та́кже** as the more official:

Он <b>то́же/та́кже</b> поéдет	He will go <b>too</b>
Мы <b>то́же/та́кже</b> согла́сны	We <b>also</b> agree

*Note*

(a) **Тóже/тáкже не** means ‘not . . . either’: Он **тóже/тáкже** не поёдет ‘He won’t go **either**’.

(b) See 472 (9) for **тóже** as a particle.

(2) **Тóже** is preferred in contexts which express identification with an action, state or attribute already referred to:

Вы зáняты? Я **тóже**  
Are you busy? **So** am I

— Я óчень хочú пойтí на концéрт  
‘I am very keen to go to the concert’

— Она́ **тóже** хочéт пойтí  
‘She wants to go **too**’

У стенý стоял бéлый стол и четы́ре стúла, **тóже** бéлых  
A white table and four chairs, **also** white, stood by the wall

(3) **Тáкже** is preferred when providing additional or supplementary information (in the meaning **крóме тогó, ещё и** ‘apart from that, in addition’):

Я нáчал, крóме книг, читáть **тáкже** и журнáльные стáтьи  
I began to read magazine articles **as well as** books

Он óчень хитёр, не хúже брáта; но он **тáкже** óчень талáнтлив  
He is very cunning, no less so than his brother; but he is **also** very talented

Существúют **тáкже** стереотíпы маскулíнности и феминíнности  
(*Nedelya*)  
There **also** exist stereotypes of masculinity and femininity

(4) **Тáкже** is particularly common with the conjunction **а**:

Речь шла в основнóм о проблемáх двусторóнних отношéний,  
**а тáкже** о положéнии в Ливáне  
It was basically a question of problems of bilateral relations, **and also** the situation in the Lebanon

*Note*

**А** never combines with **тóже**.

(5) Compare the contrasting usage of **тóже** and **тáкже** in the following:

Он **тóже** вы́разил готóвность помóчь  
He **also** expressed his willingness to help (emulating **someone else’s** willingness to help)

Он **та́кже** вы́разил гото́вность помо́чь  
 He **also** expressed his willingness to help (in addition to **other action** he had agreed to take)

### 395 Indefinite adverbs (adverbs in -то, -нибудь, -либо and кое-)

Adverbs in -то, -нибудь and -либо are adverbial counterparts to the indefinite pronouns (see 138). They include:

где-то	somewhere	где-нибудь	somewhere, anywhere
куда-то	somewhere (direction)	куда-нибудь	somewhere, anywhere (direction)
как-то	somehow	как-нибудь	somehow, anyhow
когда-то	once, at one time	когда-нибудь	at any time, ever
почему-то	for some reason	почему-нибудь	for some, any reason

All the adverbs can also combine with -либо. Кое- combines with где, как, когда and куда.

#### (1) Adverbs in -то

Где-то/куда-то denote a particular but unidentified place, когда-то a particular but unidentified time, почему-то a particular but unidentified cause. The adverbs relate predominantly to the past or present tense:

Вор прячется где-то поблизости  
 The thief is hiding **somewhere** nearby

Он как-то справился с задачей  
**Somehow** he coped with the task

— Это мой друг, играли когда-то в футбол (Vanshenkin)  
 ‘That is my friend, we used to play football **at one time**’

Третьй пассажир тоже есть, но, видно, куда-то вышел (Rasputin)  
 There is a third passenger too, but he must have gone out **somewhere**

Он почему-то недоволен нашим решением  
**For some reason** he is displeased with our decision

#### (2) Adverbs in -нибудь

Adverbs in -нибудь are used:

(i) In **questions**:

Вы **когда-нибудь** отдыхали на Чёрном море?  
Have you **ever** holidayed on the Black Sea?

(ii) In the **future**, implying a choice still to be made:

Через годик **куда-нибудь** переберусь: в Харьков, Киев,  
Днепропетровск (Rybakov)  
In a year or so I shall move **somewhere**: to Kharkov, Kiev,  
Dnepropetrovsk

(iii) After **imperatives**:

Загляни ко мне **когда-нибудь**  
Pop in to see me **some time**

(iv) In referring to **different** circumstances on different occasions, irrespective of tense:

По воскресеньям мы всегда ездим **куда-нибудь** на машине  
We always go for a drive somewhere on Sundays (different places on  
different occasions)

## (v) In contexts where the adverb implies inferior quality:

Я стал коммунистом. И не **где-нибудь**, а в Средиземном море  
(*Russia Today*)  
I have become a Communist. And not **any old where**, but in the  
Mediterranean

(3) Adverbs in **-либо**

Adverbs in **-либо** express an even greater degree of indefiniteness than  
adverbs in **-нибудь**. They denote 'anywhere' (at any place you like to  
name), 'ever' (at any time you like to name) etc.:

Это была сильнейшая команда, которая **когда-либо** выигрывала  
чемпионаты мира (*Sputnik*)  
It was the strongest team that had **ever** won world championships

(4) Adverbs in **кõе-**(i) **Кõе-где** means 'in various places':

**Кõе-где** в нашем городе проводились демонстрации  
Demonstrations were held **at various localities** in our town

(ii) **Кõе-как** means 'with great difficulty'

Мы **кòе-как** добрались домо́й  
**Somehow** we struggled home

or ‘carelessly’

Рабо́та сде́лана **кòе-как**  
 The work has been done **any old how**

*Note*

**Кòе-когда́** means ‘occasionally’, **кòе-куда́** ‘to a particular place’.

### 396 The negative adverbs **нигде́, никуда́, ниотку́да, никогда́, никаќ, ниско́лько**

(1) Negative adverbs are formed by affixing **ни-** to the adverbs **где** ‘where’, **как** ‘how’, **когда́** ‘when’, **куда́** ‘where to’, **отку́да** ‘from where’, **ско́лько** ‘how much’:

<b>нигде́</b>	‘nowhere’	<b>никуда́</b>	‘nowhere’ (direction)
<b>ника́к</b>	‘in no way’	<b>ниотку́да</b>	‘from nowhere’
<b>никогда́</b>	‘never’	<b>ниско́лько</b>	‘not at all’

*Note*

‘Hardly ever’ is rendered as **почти́ никогда́**, ‘hardly anywhere’ as **почти́ нигде́** etc.

(2) Like negative pronouns (see 133), negative adverbs combine with the particles **не/нет**:

Он <b>нигде́ не</b> рабо́тает	He does not work anywhere
Он <b>никуда́ не</b> иде́т	He isn’t going anywhere
<b>Ниотку́да нет</b> пи́сем	There are no letters from anywhere
Она́ <b>никогда́ не</b> лже́т	She never tells lies
Она́ <b>ника́к не</b> реагиро́вала	She did not react at all
Я <b>ниско́лько не</b> оби́делся	I wasn’t at all offended

*Note*

**Нельзя́** also combines directly with a negative adverb: **Ника́к нельзя́ согласи́ться с ним** ‘One can in no way agree with him’.

(3) It is possible to accumulate negatives within one sentence:

**Никто́ никогда́ никуда́ не** е́здит  
 No one ever goes anywhere

Де́ти **никогда́ ниче́го не** узна́ют о них (Zalygin)  
 The children will never learn anything about them

*Note*

**Ни разу** ‘not once’ and **не раз** ‘more than once’. Compare:

Он **ни разу** не прибрал в комнате у Άндерсена (Paustovsky)  
**Not once** did he tidy Andersen’s room

and

О недостатках **не раз** уже писалось  
These shortcomings have been written about **more than once**

---

### 397 The negative adverbs **нигде, некуда, некогда, неоткуда, незачем**

---

(1) Like the ‘potential’ negative pronouns (see **137**), the ‘potential’ negative adverbs appear in infinitive constructions: (**Нам**) **нигде** жить ‘There is nowhere (for us) to live’. The series comprises

<b>нигде</b>	‘there is nowhere to’
<b>незачем</b>	‘there is no point’
<b>некогда</b>	‘there is no time to’
<b>некуда</b>	‘there is nowhere to’ (direction)
<b>неоткуда</b>	‘there is no place from where’

*Note*

**Некогда** can also mean ‘once, at one time’.

(2) There are two variants of the construction:

(i) The **impersonal**:

Утерётся было нечем, переодеться **нигде** (Vanshenkin)  
There was nothing to dry oneself on and nowhere to change

Копать могилу было **некогда** и **незачем** (Rybakov)  
There was no time to dig a grave and no point in doing so

(ii) The **personal**, with the logical subject appearing in the dative case (see **93**):

<b>Ему</b> негде работать	He has nowhere to work
<b>Ей</b> некогда было разговаривать	She had no time to converse
<b>Нам</b> некуда будет ехать	We shall have nowhere to go



*Note*

As with the ‘potential’ negative pronouns, there is a positive counterpart to this construction involving **е́сть** (present tense), **бы́ло** (past) and **бу́дет** (future), e.g.

**Е́сть/бы́ло/бу́дет** куда́ пойти́

There is/was/will be somewhere to go

### 398 Comparative adverbs

(1) The comparatives of adverbs in **-o/-e** are identical with short-form comparative adjectives (see **179** and **180**):

**Всё сильнее и глубже** осознаём духо́вное родство́ с други́ми наро́дами (Kostomarov)

We are **more and more intensively** and **profoundly** conscious of our spiritual kinship with other nations

*Note*

Adverbs with more than two syllables have an alternative comparative in **бо́лее: вы́годнее/бо́лее вы́годно** ‘more beneficially’, cf. **ме́нее вы́годно** ‘less beneficially’. The form with **бо́лее** is the *norm* for comparatives of adverbs other than those in **-o/-e**: **бо́лее логи́чески** ‘more logically’ (cf. **ме́нее логи́чески** ‘less logically’).

(2) Comparative adverbs appear in the same types of construction as comparative adjectives (see **182**), i.e. constructions:

(i) With **чем** ‘than’:

Но сильне́й, **чем** заво́д, любил Пётр Телепнёв свой сад (Trifonov)

But Petr Telepnev loved his garden more **than** the factory

(ii) With the **genitive**:

Трени́р ча́ще **други́х слов** употребле́ляет сло́во «рабо́та» (Salnikov)

The trainer uses the word ‘work’ more often **than other words**

(iii) With **гора́здо** ‘much’ (also **мно́го, намно́го, куда́**):

Он верну́лся домо́й **гора́здо** по́зже

He returned home **much** later

(iv) With **чем . . . тем** ‘the . . . the’:

**Чем** больше я отдыхал от футбола, **тем** сильнее хотелось играть

**The** more I rested from football **the** more I wanted to play

(v) With the prefix **по-** ‘a little’:

Ночью капитан **потуже** затягивался ремнём (Gagarin)

At night the captain would tighten his belt **a little**

(vi) With instrumental or **на** + accusative in quantifying a difference:

Я верну́лся **на пять минут/пятью минутами** раньше, чем ожидал

I arrived **five minutes** earlier than I had expected

(vii) With **как можно** ‘as . . . as possible’:

Мы е́хали **как можно** ме́дленнее

We were driving **as slowly as possible**

---

### 399 Variant forms of some comparative adverbs

---

Some comparative adverbs have variant forms:

(1) Бо́льше/бо́лее ‘more’; ме́ньше/ме́нее ‘less’

(i) These may be differentiated stylistically, the comparatives in **-ше** belonging to the ‘neutral’ register and those in **-ее** to a more ‘bookish’ style (**бо́льше/бо́лее тридцати́** ‘more than thirty’).

(ii) Only **бо́льше/ме́ньше** are used to denote extent or degree: Он лю́бит дочь **бо́льше** (*not* бо́лее), чем сына́ ‘He loves his daughter more than (he loves) his son’.

(iii) **Бо́лее** and **ме́нее** are mainly used in the formation of long comparative adjectives and adverbs (see **177** and **398** (1) note), and in a number of set phrases: **бо́лее и́ли ме́нее** ‘more or less’, **бо́лее того́** ‘furthermore’ etc.

(2) Да́льше/да́лее ‘further’

Apart from its spatial meaning, **да́льше** ‘further’ also implies subsequent action (А **да́льше** что случи́лось? ‘And what happened next?’) or encouragement (Ну — **да́льше!** ‘Well, go on!’). **Да́лее** is limited mainly to the phrase **и так да́лее (и т.д.)** ‘and so on’.

## 400 The superlative adverb

(1) A superlative adverb consists of a comparative adverb in **-е** or **-ее** + **всего́** (for **internal** comparison) or **всех** (for **external** comparison):

Я рабо́таю лу́чше **всего́** ве́чером

I work best of all in the evening (i.e. compared with other times)

Я рабо́таю лу́чше **всех** ве́чером

I work best in the evening (i.e. compared with other people)

Compare

Мы все старе́ли, А́да Ефи́мовна — **ме́ньше всех** (Greko<sup>va</sup>)

We were all ageing, Ada Efimovna **least of all** (= **less than anyone**)

(2) **Наибо́лее** can also be used in the formation of superlative adverbs (**наибо́лее свобо́дно** 'most freely, fluently' (cf. **наиме́нее свобо́дно** 'least fluently'), and this is the *norm* with adverbs which do not end in **-о/-е**, e.g. **наибо́лее логи́чески** 'most logically'.

---

# The Preposition

---

## 401 Introductory comments

---

(1) A preposition is a part of speech which expresses the relationship of one word to another: колодец **без** воды 'a well without water', добр **к** детям 'kind to children', прыгнуть **через** забор 'to jump over the fence'.

(2) Each Russian preposition governs a noun or pronoun in an oblique case. Some prepositions govern two or even three cases.

(3) Prepositions may be subdivided as follows:

(i) Primary: **в** 'in', **до** 'as far as', **на** 'on' etc.

(ii) Adverbial: **близ** 'near', **вдоль** 'along' etc.

(iii) Prepositions derived from nouns (e.g. **в пользу** 'in favour of', **насчёт** 'on account of') and from verbs (**благодаря** 'thanks to' etc.).

## 402 Primary prepositions and cases

---

The primaries (central meanings only) can be arranged in a grid, as follows.

Preposition	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
(1) <b>без</b>		'without'			
(2) <b>в</b>	'into'				'in'

Preposition	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Instr.	Prep.
(3) <b>для</b>		‘for’			
(4) <b>до</b>		‘as far as’			
(5) <b>за</b>	‘behind’ (motion)				‘behind’
(6) <b>из</b>		‘out of’			
(7) <b>из-за</b>		‘from behind’			
(8) <b>из-под</b>		‘from under’			
(9) <b>к</b>			‘towards’		
(10) <b>кро́ме</b>		‘except for’			
(11) <b>между</b>				‘between’	
(12) <b>на</b>	‘on to’				‘on’
(13) <b>над</b>				‘above’	
(14) <b>о</b>	‘against’				‘about’
(15) <b>от</b>		‘from’			
(16) <b>перед</b>				‘in front of’	
(17) <b>по</b>	‘up to’		‘along’		‘after’
(18) <b>под</b>	‘under’ (motion)			‘under’	
(19) <b>при</b>					‘in the presence of’
(20) <b>про</b>	‘about’				
(21) <b>ра́ди</b>		‘for the sake of’			
(22) <b>с</b>	‘approximately’	‘down from’		‘with’	
(23) <b>у</b>		‘at’			
(24) <b>через</b>	‘across’				

### Note

- Though not strictly speaking primary prepositions, **из-за** and **из-под** are usually included in the series.
- See 419 (1) (i) *Note* for **между** + *genitive* case.
- о** is written as **об** before words beginning with **а, э, и, о** or **у** (e.g. **об А́нглии** ‘about England’) and as **обо** in combinations such as **обо всём** ‘about everything’ and **обо мне** ‘about me’.

### 403 Repetition of prepositions

---

The repetition of prepositions is optional, compare:

**В** Москвѣ и нѣкоторых другіх городѣх . . . (*Izvestiya*)  
In Moscow and certain other cities . . .

and

Он был **в** пижаме и **в** домашних туфлях (*Zalygin*)  
He was wearing pyjamas and slippers

except where two or more items governed by the same preposition appear in different clauses, when repetition is mandatory:

Я надеялся не только **на** неё, **но** и **на** него  
I relied not only on her, but also on him

### 404 The buffer vowel -o

---

Primary prepositions which end in a consonant acquire a final **-o** when followed by certain clusters of consonants. These subdivide as follows:

(1) Clusters which affect many prepositions:

(i) **Вр-** (mainly *время* ‘time’): *во время* ‘during’, *ко времени* ‘by the time’, *со времени* ‘since the time’.

(ii) **Вс-** (mainly declined forms of *весь* ‘all’): *во всѣм* ‘in everything’, *изо всех сил* ‘with all one’s might’ (but *из всех моих друзей* ‘of all my friends’), *обо всѣм* ‘about everything’, *со всех концов* ‘from all parts’ (*над*, *перед*, *от* are not affected).

(iii) **Вт-** (mainly *вторник* ‘Tuesday’ and *второй* ‘second’): *во вторник* ‘on Tuesday’, *ко вторнику* ‘by Tuesday’, *со вторника* ‘since Tuesday’; *во втором* ‘in the second’, *со второго* ‘since the second’.

(iv) **Дн-** (mainly oblique cases of *день* ‘day’ and *дно* ‘bottom’): *ко дню* ‘for the day’, *со/с днём* ‘with the day’, *со дня* ‘since the day’, *изо дня в день* ‘daily, constantly’; *ко дну* ‘to the bottom’.

(v) **Мн-** (mainly oblique cases of *я* ‘I’ and *многое/многие* ‘many’): *во мне* ‘in me’, *ко мне* ‘to me’, *надо мной* ‘above me’, *передо мной* ‘in front of me’, *подо мной* ‘below me’, *со мной* ‘with me’, *обо мне*

‘about me’; во мнóгом ‘in many ways’, со мнóгими ‘with many people’ (*but* из мнóгих ‘of many people’, от мнóгих ‘from many people’).

(2) Clusters that affect only certain prepositions; the cluster often repeats the final consonant of the preposition or its unvoiced/voiced/mutated counterpart: во Владивостóке ‘in Vladivostok’, во МХА́Те ‘in the Moscow Art Theatre’, во Пскóве ‘in Pskov’, во флóте ‘in the navy’, во Фрáнции ‘in France’; со злóсти ‘out of malice’, со скóростью ‘at a speed’, со среды́ ‘since Wednesday’, со стáнции ‘from the station’, со стeны́ ‘from the wall’, со столá ‘from the table’, со штáтом ‘with a staff’; подо льдом ‘under the ice’, etc.

#### Note

Also во Вьетна́ме ‘in Vietnam’, во двoре́ ‘in the yard’, во избежа́ние ‘in avoidance of, во и́мя ‘in the name of’, во ско́лько? ‘at what time?’ and clusters in monosyllabic oblique case forms whose nominatives contain a fleeting vowel: во рту́ ‘in the mouth’ (from рот ‘mouth’), со лба́ ‘from the forehead’ (from лоб ‘forehead’), со льдом ‘with ice’ (from лёд ‘ice’).

### 405 Stress in primary prepositions

(1) Prepositions are usually unstressed; however, some primaries, in particular **за**, **на**, **по**, **под** and, to a lesser extent, **до**, **из** and **о/об**, take the stress when combined with certain nouns and numerals. Many such combinations are characteristic of colloquial registers.

(2) The types of noun involved include parts of the body (e.g. голова́ ‘head’), geographical features (бе́рег ‘shore’), other locations (го́род ‘town’), time words (год ‘year’) and some others (вид ‘view’). All nouns and numerals involved are monosyllables or have *initial* stress in the declined form.

(3) The commonest case involved is the accusative, but others are also found.

(4) Among the commonest combinations are the following:

(i) **До** + genitive: до́ дому ‘as far as home’, (с ут́ра) до́ ночи (from morning) ‘till night’, до́ смерти (испу́гáлся) (was scared) ‘to death’.

(ii) **За** + accusative: за́ бoрт ‘overboard’ (direction), за́ волосы ‘by the hair’, за́ год ‘in a year’, за́ голову́ ‘by the head’, за́ город ‘into the

country', за горы 'beyond the mountain' (direction), за два (го́да), две (неде́ли), три (го́да), пять, шесть, семь, восемь, девять, десять, сто (лет) 'in two (years/weeks), three, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, a hundred' (years), за день 'in a day', за зиму 'during the winter', за косу/косы 'by the plait/plaits', за лето 'during the summer', за море 'beyond the sea' (direction), за ногу/ноги 'by the leg/legs', за нос 'by the nose', за ночь 'during the night', за плечи 'by the shoulders', за полночь 'beyond midnight', за реку 'beyond the river' (direction), за руку/руки 'by the hand/hands', за спину 'behind the back' (direction), (держаться) за стену (to hold) 'on to the wall', за угол 'round the corner' (direction), за ухо/уши 'by the ear/ears', (ущипну́ть) за щеку (to pinch) 'on the cheek'.

#### *Note*

Alternative noun/numeral stress is found in за во́лосы, го́лову, два/две, три, пять, шесть, семь, во́семь, де́вять, де́сять, сто, ле́то, мо́ре, плéчи.

(iii) **За** + instrumental: за городом 'in the country' (cf. за го́родом 'beyond the town'), за морем (ог за мо́рем) 'overseas', за ухом 'behind the ear'.

(iv) **Из** + genitive: из виду 'from sight', из дому 'out of the house' (one's own house, cf. из до́ма 'out of someone else's house', e.g. из до́ма Са́ши 'from Sasha's house'), из лесу 'from the forest' (also из ле́са), из носу 'from the nose' (also из но́са).

(v) **На** + accusative: на берег 'on to the shore', на бок 'on to one's side', на борт 'on board' (direction), (спустить) на воду (to launch) 'on to the water' (cf. смотре́ть на во́ду/на воду 'to look at the water'), на год 'for a year', на голову 'on to the head', на гору 'onto the hill', на два (numerals behave as with за + accusative (see (ii) above)), на день 'for a day', на дом 'to the premises' (but смотре́ть на дом 'to look at the house'), на зиму 'for the winter', на лето 'for the summer', на море 'to the sea', на ногу/ноги 'on to the leg/legs, foot/feet', на нос 'on to the nose', на ночь 'for the night', на пол 'on to the floor', на реку 'to the river', на руку 'onto the hand'/на руки 'into the arms', на спину 'on to the back', на стену 'on to the wall', (шепта́ть) на ухо (to whisper) 'into the ear' (cf. нацепи́ть на у́хо 'to attach to the ear').

#### *Note*

The following take alternative noun/numeral stress: на бе́рег, го́лову, два (and other numerals), ле́то, мо́ре, ре́ку, сте́ну.

(vi) **На** + prepositional: на море/на мо́ре 'on the sea, at the seaside'.



(vii) **О/об** + accusative: (бо́к) о́ бок ‘(side) by side’, о́б пол/об по́л ‘against the floor’, (рука́) о́б руку (hand) ‘in hand’.

(viii) **По** + accusative: по́ два/две, двое, три, трое, сто ‘two, three, a hundred each’ (with alternative numeral stress: по два ‘two each’ etc.).

(ix) **По** + dative: по́ лесу/по ле́су ‘through the forest’, по́ морю/по мо́рю ‘over the sea’, по́ полю/по по́лю ‘over the field’.

(x) **Под** + accusative: по́д воду/под во́ду ‘under the water’ (direction), по́д гору ‘downhill’, по́д ноги ‘under one’s feet’ (direction), по́д руку/руки ‘by the arm/arms’.

(xi) **Под** + instrumental: по́д боком/под бо́ком ‘close at hand’.

(xii) **Прі** смерти ‘at death’s door’.

### Note

Alternative stress is possible in many literal contexts, while idioms retain prepositional stress: лезть на́ стену/на стéну ‘to climb up on to the wall’, but лезть на́ стену (fig.) ‘to go berserk’. Compare по́ложá руку на́ сердце ‘hand on heart’ and жа́ловаться на се́рдце ‘to complain of heart trouble’.

## 406 Adverbial prepositions

Adverbial prepositions take the following forms.

(1) One-word prepositions (all + genitive unless otherwise indicated): бли́з ‘near’, вбли́зй ‘close to’, вглубь ‘into the depths of’, вдо́ль ‘along’, взаме́н ‘in exchange for’, вме́сто ‘instead of’, вне́ ‘outside’, внут́ри ‘inside’ (location), вну́тръ ‘inside’ (direction), во́зле ‘close to’, вокру́г ‘around’, вопреки́ + dative ‘contrary to’, впереди́ ‘in front of’, врòде ‘like’, мй́мо ‘past’, навстрéчу + dative ‘towards’, наканúне ‘on the eve of’, напереко́р + dative ‘counter to’, напрóтив ‘opposite’, о́коло ‘near’, отно́сительно ‘with regard to’, по́дле ‘by the side of’, подо́бно + dative ‘similar to’, по́зadı ‘behind’, попере́к ‘across, athwart’, по́сле ‘after’, посре́дй ‘in the midst of’, прóтив ‘opposite’, свéрх ‘above’, свýше ‘more than’, сза́ди ‘behind’, скво́зь + accusative ‘through’, со́гласно + dative ‘according to’, сре́дй ‘among’.

(2) Compounds involving a primary preposition: вбли́зй от ‘close to’, вдалі́ от ‘far from’, вме́сте с + instrumental ‘together with’, вплóть до ‘right up to’, вслед за + instrumental ‘after’, незаві́симо от

‘irrespective of’, рядом с + instrumental ‘next to’, согласно с + instrumental ‘in accordance with’.

#### **407 Prepositions derived from nouns and verbs**

---

(1) Compound prepositions derived from nouns comprise:

(i) One-word prepositions (all + genitive): порядка ‘of the order of’, посредством ‘by means of’, путём ‘by dint of’.

(ii) Those that combine with one primary preposition (all + genitive): в виде ‘in the form of’, ввиду ‘in view of’, в интересах ‘in the interests of’, в качестве ‘in the capacity of’, в направлении ‘in the direction of’, во время ‘during’, в пользу ‘in favour of’, в продолжение ‘in the course of’, в результате ‘as a result of’, в силу ‘on the strength of’, вследствие ‘in consequence of’, в сторону ‘in the direction of’, в течение ‘during the course of’, в ходе ‘during the course of’, в целях ‘for the purpose of’, за счёт ‘at the expense of’, на протяжении ‘during’, с целью ‘with the object of’.

(iii) Those that combine with two primaries: в зависимости от ‘depending on’, в отличие от ‘unlike’, в связи с + instrumental ‘in connection with’, по направлению к ‘in the direction of’, по отношению к ‘in relation to’, по сравнению с + instrumental ‘by comparison with’.

(2) Most prepositions derived from verbs are based on gerunds: благодаря + dative ‘thanks to’, включая + accusative ‘including’, начиная с + genitive ‘beginning with’, несмотря на + accusative ‘despite’, не считая + genitive ‘not counting’, спустя + accusative ‘after’, судя по + dative ‘judging by’. See also 380.

#### *Note*

**Спустя** may follow or precede the noun: две недели **спустя/спустя** две недели ‘two weeks later’.

### **Spatial Prepositions**

#### **408 В and на + prepositional/accusative, из/с + genitive**

---

(1) В/на + prepositional

- (i) The central meaning of **в** + prepositional is ‘in, inside’:

Игрушки **в** ящике

The toys are **in the drawer**

- (ii) The central meaning of **на** + prepositional is ‘on, on top of’:

Книги **на** полке

The books are **on the shelf**

- (2) **В/на** + accusative

**В** and **на** + accusative are used to denote, respectively, direction **into** or **on to**:

Я кладу игрушки **в** ящик

I put the toys **in(to) the drawer**

Я ставлю книги **на** полку

I stand the books **on(to) the shelf**

- (3) **Из/с** + genitive

**Из** ‘out of’ and **с** ‘down from’ + genitive denote withdrawal. They are the ‘opposites’, respectively, of **в** and **на**:

Я вынимаю игрушки  
**из** ящика

I take the toys **out of the drawer**

Я беру книги **с** полки

I take the books **off the shelf**

### *Note*

- (a) The oppositions **в/из** and **на/с** are consistently observed, though there are exceptions: Я лежу **в** постели ‘I am lying in bed’ but Я встаю **с** постели ‘I get out of bed’ (**из** постели is used with verbs prefixed **вы-**: Он **выскочил из** постели ‘He leapt out of bed’). For other exceptions, see **411** (2).
- (b) Nouns which normally combine with **из**, e.g. **из города** ‘from the town’, combine with **с** when qualified by **весь**: **со всего города** ‘from all over the town’ (the meaning is ‘from the whole area’ not ‘from inside’, cf. **со всех концов** ‘from all parts’, **со всех сторон** ‘from all sides’).
- (c) **В** also combines with the prepositional case of nouns denoting articles of clothing etc.: Он **в ботинках** ‘He is wearing shoes’, Она **в белом платье** ‘She is wearing a white dress’, Он **в очках** ‘He is wearing glasses’ (cf. **носить** ‘to wear habitually’).
- (d) **В** and **на** + accusative are used after nouns such as билет and дверь: билет **в театр/на оперу/на поезд** ‘a theatre/opera/train ticket’, дверь **в комнату** ‘the door to the room’. Compare вид **на море** ‘a view of the sea’.

## 409 The use of **в** and **на** with geographical terminology and the names of organizations, buildings and parts of buildings

With certain categories of noun the distinction between **в** and **на** is not always clear cut.

### (1) Countries

(i) **В** is used for almost all countries: **в Великобритáнии** ‘in Great Britain’, **в Росси́и** ‘in Russia’.

(ii) **На** is used with some states which are also islands: **на Кубе** ‘in Cuba’. Note also **на ро́дине** ‘in the homeland’, **на Руси́** ‘in Rus’ (but **в дре́вней Руси́** ‘in ancient Rus’) and **на чужби́не** ‘in a foreign land’.

### (2) Republics and other territories in the former USSR

(i) The names of former Soviet Republics and other major territories take **в**: **в Арме́нии** ‘in Armenia’, **в Сиби́ри** ‘in Siberia’.

(ii) Note **на (в) Укра́ине** ‘in Ukraine’ (but **в За́падной Укра́ине** ‘in Western Ukraine’) and the use of **на** with areas ending in **-щина**: **на Днепрóвщине** ‘in the area of the Dnieper’. **В Укра́ине** is becoming increasingly acceptable.

### (3) Natural features and climatic zones

(i) **В А́рктике** ‘in the Arctic’, **в пу́стыне** ‘in the desert’, **в степи́** ‘in the steppe’, **в тайге́** ‘in the taiga’.

(ii) **На возвы́шенности** ‘in the highlands’, **на лу́гу** ‘in a meadow’, **на низменности́** ‘in the lowlands’, **на по́люсе** ‘at the Pole’, **на поля́не** ‘in a glade’, **на про́секе** ‘in a forest cutting’, **на равни́не** ‘in the plain’, **на цели́не** ‘in the virgin soil’.

### (4) Mountain ranges

(i) **В** is used with plural **го́ры** ‘mountains’ (**в го́рах** ‘in the mountains’) and with ranges that have plural names: **в А́льпах** ‘in the Alps’, **в А́ндах** ‘in the Andes’, **в Карпа́тах** ‘in the Carpathians’ etc. (Exceptions include **на Балка́нах** ‘in the Balkans’ and **на Воро́бьевых го́рах** ‘on the Sparrow Hills’.)

(ii) **На** is used with ranges that have singular names: **на Алта́е/Кавка́зе/Пами́ре/Ура́ле** ‘in the Altai/Caucasus/Pamirs/Urals’. (**Тянь-Ша́нь** ‘Tien-Shan’ is used with either **в** or **на**: **в/на Тянь-Ша́не**.)

*Note*

**В** replaces **на** when the noun is qualified by an adjective: **в Восточном Памире** ‘in the Eastern Pamirs’ (except for **Кавказ** **Caucasus**): **на Восточном Кавказе** ‘in the Eastern Caucasus’).

## (5) Islands, archipelagoes, peninsulas

(i) **На** is the norm: **на Аляске** ‘in Alaska’, **на Гавайях** ‘in Hawaii’, **на Кипре** ‘in Cyprus’, **на Корсике** ‘in Corsica’, **на Крите** ‘on Crete’, **на Мальте** ‘in Malta’, **на Таймыре** ‘on the Taimyr peninsula’, **на Яве** ‘in Java’.

(ii) However, **в** is used in **в Крыму** ‘in the Crimea’ and with islands ending in **-ия**: **в Гренландии** ‘in Greenland’, **в Сардинии** ‘in Sardinia’, **в Сицилии** ‘in Sicily’ (cf. **на острове Сардиния/Сицилия** ‘on the island of Sardinia, Sicily’ etc).

## (6) Points of the compass

**На** is used with points of the compass: **на востоке/западе/юге/севере** ‘in the east/west/south/north’, **на юго-востоке/северо-западе** ‘in the south-east/north-west’. Political **на Западе** ‘in the West’ (i.e. ‘in Western countries’) is distinguished from geographical **на западе** ‘in the west’. Compare **на Ближнем/Дальнем Востоке** ‘in the Near/Far East’.

## (7) Towns

(i) Town names, many parts of towns and most regions of Moscow combine with **в**: **в Москвѣ** ‘in Moscow’, **в переулке** ‘in a side-street’, **в пригороде** ‘in a suburb’, **в Останкино** ‘in Ostankino’, **в Черёмушках** ‘in Cheremushki’.

(ii) **На** is used as follows:

(a) **На окраине** ‘in the outskirts’, **на площади** ‘in the square’, **на улице** ‘in the street’ (**в** is possible only when narrowness is emphasized: **в узких улицах** ‘in the narrow streets’). Note **в/на сквере** ‘in the small public garden’.

(b) With some Moscow regions: **на Арбате** ‘in the Arbat’, **на Пресне** ‘in Presnya’, **на Сокеле** ‘in Sokol’.

## (8) Buildings (and parts of buildings), areas and workplaces

(i) Most names of buildings and organizations take **в**: **в апте́ке** ‘at the chemist’s shop’, **в аэропорту́** ‘at the airport’, **в колхо́зе** ‘at the collective farm’, **в цирке́** ‘at the circus’, **в шко́ле** ‘at the school’ etc.

(ii) Combinations with **на** relate especially to areas historically associated with open spaces or complexes of buildings rather than single structures. Thus, both **по́чта** ‘post office’ and **ста́нция** ‘station’ take **на** by association with the pre-Revolutionary **почто́вая ста́нция** ‘relay station’, an area with stables, administrative offices and sleeping accommodation, where travellers could obtain fresh horses. Combinations with **на** include the following:

(a) **На аэродро́ме** ‘at the aerodrome’, **на ба́зе** ‘at the base’, **на вокза́ле** ‘at the main station’, **на вы́ставке** ‘at the exhibition’, **на да́че** ‘at the country cottage’, **на заво́де** ‘at the plant’, **на по́чте** ‘at the post office’, **на почта́мте** ‘at the main post office’, **на предпри́ятии** ‘at the enterprise’, **на ры́нке** ‘at the market’, **на скла́де** ‘at the warehouse’, **на спорти́вной пло́щадке** ‘at the sports ground’, **на стадио́не** ‘at the stadium’, **на ста́нции** ‘at the station’, **на строи́тельстве/стро́йке** ‘at the building site’, **на фа́брике** ‘at the factory’, **на фе́рме** ‘at the farm’, **на ярма́рке** ‘at the trade fair’.

(b) Certain parts of buildings and organizations: **на балко́не** ‘on (theatr. ‘in’) the balcony’, **на гале́рке** ‘in the gallery’ (theatr.), **на ка́федре** ‘in the (university) department’, **на факульте́те** ‘in the faculty’, **на чердаке́** ‘in the attic’, **на я́русе** ‘in the circle’ (theatr.).

#### *Note*

**В до́ме** ‘in the house’, but **на домо́у** ‘on the premises, at home’: Он зарабо́тывает и **на домо́у** ‘He earns extra money at home’ (cf. Зака́з доста́влен **на́ дом** ‘The order has been delivered to the door’). Compare also **в теа́тре** ‘in the theatre’ and Рабо́таю **на теа́тре/ра́дио/телеви́дении** ‘I work in the theatre/in radio/on TV’ (professional parlance).

#### (9) Miscellaneous

**На де́реве** ‘in a tree’, **на корме́** ‘in the stern’, **на носу́** ‘in the prow’, **на ре́йде** ‘in the roads’ (of a harbour), **на сковоро́де** ‘in a frying-pan’.

### **410 Nouns which may be used with **в** and **на**, but with different meanings**

Many nouns may be used with either **в** or **на**, with negligible difference

in meaning: **в/на кварти́ре** ‘in the flat’, **в/на коню́шне** ‘in the stable’, **в/на кúхне** ‘in the kitchen’, **в/на флóте** ‘in the navy’ etc.

Other nouns combine with **в** and **на**, but with a *difference* in meaning.

### (1) Авто́бус (and other vehicles)

(i) **В авто́бусе** ‘in the bus’ is used if there is emphasis on the vehicle as a scene of activity: Уро́ки я в́ыучила **в авто́бусе/в по́езде/в метро́** ‘I did my homework in the bus/the train/on the underground’.

(ii) **На** is preferred when emphasis is on travel (though either preposition *may* be used): две останóвки **на метро́** до Арба́та ‘two stops on the underground to the Arbat’. Only **на** is possible with the names of ships: **на пароходе́** ‘on the steamer’. Public transport vehicles may appear in the instrumental case, as an alternative to a prepositional construction: до́ехать **трамва́ем** ‘to get there by tram’, до́стáвить груз **самолётом/парохо́дом** ‘to deliver a load by aircraft/by steamer’. However, this does not apply to **велосипе́д** ‘bicycle’, **ло́дка** ‘boat’, **метро́** ‘underground’, **мотоци́кл** ‘motorcycle’, **такси́** ‘taxi’, which appear only with prepositions (éхать **на велосипе́де/на такси́** ‘to ride a bicycle/go by taxi’ etc.).

### (2) Во́здух

(i) **В во́здухе** means ‘up in the air, pervading the air’: Самолёт **в во́здухе** ‘The aircraft is up in the air’, **В во́здухе** повис запа́х табака́ ‘The smell of tobacco hung in the air’.

(ii) **На во́здухе** means ‘out in the open air’: **на све́жем/откры́том во́здухе** ‘in the fresh/the open air’. Compare the use of **на** in other outdoor contexts: Зна́мя колы́шется **на ветру́** ‘The flag flutters in the breeze’, сиде́ть **на со́лнце** ‘to sit in the sun’ etc.

### (3) Высотá/глубина́

(i) **В** is used in the absence of quantification: **в прозра́чной высотé** ‘in the translucent heights’, **в морско́й глубинé/в океа́нских глубина́х** ‘in the ocean depths’. Note also **в глубинé** за́ла ‘at the back of the hall’, **в глубинé** ле́са ‘in the depths of the forest’, **в глубинé** са́да ‘at the bottom of the garden’.

(ii) **На** is used when quantification is stated or implied: **на высотé** двух киломе́тров/**на** э́той **высотé** ‘at a height of two kilometres/at this height’, **на глубинé** трёх сантимéтров ‘at a depth of three centimetres’.

## (4) Глаза́

(i) **В** is used in contexts of emotion or opinion: выражение страдания **в глазах** ‘an expression of suffering in the eyes’, Каким болваном я выглядел **в её глазах** ‘What an idiot I appeared in her eyes’.

(ii) **На** denotes:

(a) ‘On the surface’: Контактные линзы остаются **на глазах** месяцами ‘Contact lenses stay in the eyes for months on end’.

(b) ‘Swiftly/in the presence of’: Города рождаются **на наших глазах** ‘Towns spring up before our very eyes’.

*Note*

Either preposition may be used in the context of tears: **В/на глазах** показались слёзы ‘Tears appeared in her eyes’.

## (5) Горá

**В гóру** means ‘uphill’: идти **в гóру** ‘to go uphill’. **На гору** refers to a specific hill or mountain: забраться **на гору** ‘to climb a mountain’.

Note the mining term **на-горá** ‘to the surface’.

## (6) Двор

(i) **Во дворе́** ‘in the yard’ refers to an area surrounded by houses or a fence: **Во дворе́** было две покрышки ‘There were two tyre covers in the yard’.

(ii) **На дворе́** denotes:

(a) A specific kind of yard: **на ко́нном дворе́** ‘in the stable yard’.

(b) ‘Outside’: **На дворе́** зима́ ‘It is winter outside’.

## (7) Мéсто

(i) **В мéсте** is used to denote:

(a) Part of a whole: Книга порвана **в однё́м мéсте** ‘The book is torn in one place’.

(b) A three-dimensional area: **в тёмном мéсте** ‘in a dark place’.

(c) ‘Together’: всё собрать **в однё́м мéсте** ‘to collect everything in one place’.

(d) ‘The same’: Мы всегда́ встречáлись **в однё́м мéсте** ‘We always met in the same place’.



(e) A locality: **в чудёсном месте** ‘in a delightful spot’.

*Note*

**В** is also used in certain adjectival combinations: **в другом месте** ‘somewhere else’, **в разных местах** ‘in various places’.

(ii) **На месте** is used to denote:

(a) ‘The proper place’: Все вещи **на месте** ‘Everything is in its proper place’.

(b) Immobility: стоять **на месте** ‘to stand still’.

(c) Possession: Я сижу **на твоём месте** ‘I am sitting in your place’.

(d) Former whereabouts: Деньги лежат **на прежнем месте** ‘The money is lying where it was’.

(e) Replacement: **На месте** пустырей выросли жилые кварталы ‘Blocks of flats have sprung up in place of waste ground’.

(f) Flat areas: **на ровном месте** ‘on a level stretch of ground’.

(g) Preferred conduct: **на вашем месте** ‘if I were you’.

(h) Scale of priorities: **На втором месте** — жилищные условия ‘Housing conditions are in second place’.

*Note*

**На местах** ‘in the provinces’: Пёрвый тур проводится **на местах** ‘The first round is being held in the provinces’.

(8) Море

(i) **В море** denotes:

(a) Activity or location beneath the surface: Эти рыбы водятся **в Чёрном море** ‘These fish are found in the Black Sea’.

(b) Out at sea, on a voyage etc.: Корабль уже давно **в море** ‘The ship has been under way for some time’; compare also **в открытом море** ‘in the open sea’.

(ii) **На море** denotes activity or location on the surface of the sea (приключения на суше и **на море** ‘adventures on land and sea’) or on the seashore (Ялта находится **на Чёрном море** ‘Yalta is on the Black Sea’).

(9) Небо

Either preposition is used to denote the location of natural phenomena

(огро́мное со́лнце **в/на** **чи́стом** **не́бе** ‘an enormous sun in the clear sky’), while **в** is preferred for birds, aircraft, sounds etc. (**Ва́ря** уви́дела **в** **не́бе** два вертолётa ‘Varya saw two helicopters in the sky’, **В** **не́бе** слы́шался ро́кот ‘A low rumble was heard in the sky’).

(10) Окно́

(i) **В** **окне́** means ‘visible at the window’: **В** **окне́** показáлась его́ голова́ ‘His head appeared at the window’.

(ii) **На** **окне́** means ‘on the window/the window-sill’: **На** **окне́** сто́яли цветы́ ‘There were flowers on the window-sill’. Note also **На** **о́кнах** ро́зовые занавёски ‘There are pink curtains at the windows’.

(11) По́ле

(i) **В** **по́ле** means ‘out in the fields’: **В** дере́вне пу́сто, все **в** **по́ле** ‘The village is deserted, everyone is out in the fields’.

(ii) **На** **по́ле** denotes a specific area or plot: **На** **по́ле** сто́ял тра́ктор ‘In the field stood a tractor’, **На** **поля́х** рабо́тали лю́ди ‘People were working in the fields’, **на** **карто́фельном** **по́ле** ‘in a potato field’, **на** **по́ле** **бо́я** ‘on the battle field’, **на** **лётном** **по́ле** ‘on the flying field’, **на** **футбо́льном** **по́ле** ‘on the football field’.

*Note*

**На** **поля́х** also means ‘in the margin’.

(12) Развёдка

**В** **развёдке** refers to military intelligence, **на** **развёдке** to prospecting: Он рабо́тает **на** **развёдке** не́фти ‘He works in oil prospecting’.

(13) Рука́/ру́ки

(i) **В** **руке́/рука́х** means ‘in the hand/hands’: У Арсе́ния **в** **рука́х** аво́ська ‘Arseny is holding a string-bag’.

(ii) **На** **руке́/рука́х** means ‘in the arm(s)’: **На** **одной** **руке́** у неё ребёнок ‘She has a child in one arm’, Она́ подошла́ с Ви́ткой **на** **рука́х** ‘She came up with Vitka in her arms’.

*Note*

Кни́га **на** **рука́х** ‘The (library) book is out’, У него́ семья́ **на** **рука́х** ‘He has a family to support’.

## (14) Свет

(i) **В свете** means ‘in the light/bathed in light’: **В жёлтом свете** фонарём толпились девушки ‘The girls crowded in the yellow light of the lanterns’. Note also figurative usage: **в свете** новых открытий ‘in the light of recent discoveries’.

(ii) **На свете** means ‘in the world’: Сколько видов слонов **на свете**? ‘How many species of elephant are there in the world?’. **На свету** is used when something is examined: Она осматривала одежду **на свету** ‘She was examining the clothes in the light’.

## (15) Селó

**В селё** means ‘in a village’, **на селё** ‘in country areas’: роль интеллигенции **на селё** ‘the intelligentsia’s role in country areas’.

## (16) Середи́на

**В** or **на** are used to denote the centre of an area: Трактор **в/на середине** поля ‘The tractor is in the middle of the field’. **В середине** denotes enclosure, ‘in between’: **в середине** толпы ‘in the middle of a crowd’.

## (17) Стúдия

**В** is used for an artist’s studio, and for radio and recording studios (**в радио́стúдии/в стúдии** звукозаписи), whereas **на** is used with film studios (фильм дублирован **на кино́стúдии** ‘The film has been dubbed at the film studio’).

## (18) Суд

**В суде́** means ‘in the court-room’: **В суде́** сегодня́ многолю́дно ‘The court-room is crowded today’; **в/на суде́** ‘at the trial’.

## (19) У́хо

**На́ ухо** is the norm: шепну́ть **на́ ухо** ‘to whisper in someone’s ear’. **В у́хо** may be used to emphasize directed sound: шепну́ть прямо́ **в у́хо** ‘to whisper directly into someone’s ear’.

## (20) Ша́хта

**В ша́хте** means ‘down the mine’, **на ша́хте** ‘at the mine/colliery’.

**411 Special uses of с + genitive**

---

(1) The nouns enumerated in **410** combine with:

(i) **В/на** + accusative to denote direction:

Шахтёр спусти́лся **в** ша́хту  
The miner went down the mine

Она́ подхвати́ла ребё́нка **на́** руки  
She gathered the child up in her arms

(ii) **Из/с** + genitive to denote withdrawal:

Моне́та вы́пала **из** её рук  
The coin fell from her hands

Он упáл **с** большо́й вы́соты  
He fell from a great height

(2) Some nouns combine only with **с** + genitive to denote withdrawal, even where location is expressed by **в** + prepositional: cf.

Самолёт **в** во́здухе  
The aircraft is in the air

Самолёт **с** (*not* из!) во́здуха заме́тил те́рпящих бе́дствие  
The aircraft spotted the victims of the disaster from the air

Compare also

<b>с</b> горы́	downhill
<b>со</b> двора́	from the yard
<b>с</b> мо́ря	from the sea
<b>с</b> не́ба	from the sky
<b>с</b> по́ля/поле́й	from the field/fields

**412 Uses of в and на when the dependent noun denotes an activity, event**

---

(1) **На** combines with the prepositional of nouns which denote activities or events: **на** война́ ‘at the war’, **на** конце́рте ‘at a concert’, **на** ма́тче ‘at a match’, **на** рабо́те ‘at work’, **на** сва́дьбе ‘at a wedding’, **на** собра́нии ‘at a meeting’, **на** уро́ке ‘at the lesson’.

(2) **На** + accusative/**с** + genitive denote, respectively, movement towards and withdrawal from these activities, thus

Идú <b>на рабóту</b>	I am going to work
Идú домóй <b>с рабóты</b>	I am going home from work

*Note*

**В** combines with nouns that denote a performance (a) if the performer is the subject of the verb (петь **в óпере** ‘to sing in an opera’) and (b) in references to the *content* of a work (**В éтой óпере** мно́го краси́вых áрий ‘There are many beautiful arias in this opera’).

### 413 **В and На: extension of the spatial meanings**

A number of meanings of **в** and **на** can be regarded as extensions of the spatial meanings.

(1) **В** + prepositional

(i) ‘Covered in’:

Па́льцы у меня́ <b>в цара́пинах</b>
My fingers are covered in scratches

(ii) Distance:

<b>В киломе́тре</b> от ГЭС — большо́е о́зеро
A large lake is situated a kilometre from the power station

Он живёт <b>в пяти́ мину́тах ходьбы́</b> от ста́нции
He lives five minutes’ walk from the station

*Note*

‘At what distance?’ is rendered as **на ка́ком рассто́йнии?** (See 415 (2) for **за** + accusative in the meaning of distance.)

(iii) A group to which the subject belongs:

Он <b>в гостя́х</b>	He is on a visit
остава́ться <b>в живы́х</b>	to survive

*Note*

The idea of plurality in phrases of this type is often an abstraction, since **в гостя́х**, for example, can be used even if the subject is the only guest (cf. also идти́ **в го́сти** ‘to go visiting’).

## (iv) Various physical states:

<b>в её прису́тствии</b>	in her presence (cf. в её <b>отсу́тствии</b> 'in her absence')
<b>в пу́ти</b>	<i>en route</i>
<b>в хоро́шем состоя́нии</b>	in good condition

## (v) Various mental states:

<b>Он в востóрге</b>	He is delighted
<b>Она́ в хоро́шем настро́ении</b>	She is in a good mood

*Note*

The phrase **в са́мом де́ле** implies confirmation (Он говори́т, что он кита́ец, и **в са́мом де́ле** он кита́ец 'He says he is Chinese, and he **really is** Chinese'), while **на са́мом де́ле** implies contrast (на вид такие ми́лые, а **на са́мом де́ле** злые 'seemingly so nice, but **in fact** spiteful').

## (2) На + prepositional

**На** + prepositional is used in a number of phrases:

ката́ться <b>на конька́х</b>	to skate
ходи́ть <b>на лы́жах</b>	to ski
рука́ <b>на пе́ревязи</b>	an arm in a sling

including some which denote state:

<b>на во́ле/свобо́де</b>	at liberty
<b>быть на пен́сии</b>	to be on a pension, retired
<b>на второ́й/тре́тьей ско́рости</b>	in second, third gear
<b>на ра́нней ста́дии</b>	at an early stage

### **Prepositions that Denote the Position of an Object in Relation to Another Object (Behind, in Front of, Below, on Top of etc.), or Movement to or from that Position**

---

#### **414    3а + instrumental/accusative, из-за + genitive**

---

## (1) 3а + instrumental

(i) **3а** + instrumental means 'behind, on the other side of, beyond' etc.:

<b>за до́мом</b>	behind the house
<b>за мосто́м</b>	on the other side of the bridge
<b>за реко́й</b>	beyond the river

### Note

**Сза́ди** and **позади́** + genitive are synonymous with **за** + instrumental in the meaning ‘behind’: **сза́ди, позади́** до́ма ‘behind the house’. **Сза́ди меня́** ‘behind me’ lacks the idea of close proximity that adheres to **за мной**.

(ii) The following phrases are particularly common:

<b>за бо́ртом</b>	overboard
<b>за́ городом</b>	in the suburbs, in the country
<b>за гра́ницей</b>	abroad
<b>за две́рью</b>	behind, outside the door
<b>за окно́м</b>	outside the window (from the inside), inside the window (from the outside)
<b>за руле́м</b>	at the wheel
<b>за сто́лом</b>	at the table (also <b>за обе́дом</b> ‘at lunch’ etc.)
<b>за у́гло́м</b>	round the corner

Note also **за́мужем** ‘married’ (of a woman): Она́ **за́мужем** за ру́сским ‘She is married to a Russian’.

### (2) За + accusative

**За** + accusative is used to denote movement to these positions:

по́ехать	<b>за́ город</b>	to drive out of town
е́хать	<b>за гра́ницу</b>	to go abroad
спря́таться	<b>за дверь</b>	to hide behind the door
сесть	<b>за стол</b>	to sit down at the table
зайти́	<b>за́ угол</b>	to go round the corner

Note also **за́муж**: Она́ вы́шла **за́муж** за актёра ‘She married an actor’.

### (3) Из-за + genitive

**Из-за** + genitive denotes withdrawal from these positions:

Он верну́лся	<b>из-за гра́ницы</b>	He returned from abroad
Она́ вста́ла	<b>из-за сто́ла</b>	She got up from the table
Они́ показа́лись	<b>из-за у́гла</b>	They appeared round the corner

## 415    **За + instrumental/accusative: extension of the spatial meanings**

Other spatial meanings of **за** are as follows:

(1) **за + instrumental**

(i) Sequence:

Самолёты взлетели **один за другим**  
The aircraft took off one after the other

(ii) An object followed or pursued:

гнаться	<b>за мячом</b>	to chase the ball
охотиться	<b>за тигром</b>	to hunt a tiger (for the zoo, cf. охотиться <b>на</b> тигра 'to hunt (to kill) a tiger')
следовать	<b>за экскурсоводом</b>	to follow the guide

(iii) Occupation with an activity:

проводить вечер **за игрой** to spend the evening playing

(2) **За + accusative**

**За** + accusative may denote distance from a point:

**За пять** километров отсюда сегодня свадьба  
There is a wedding today five kilometres from here

*Note*

**В пяти километрах** could also be used here (see **413** (1) (ii)), but only **за** is possible:

(a) When movement to a goal is implied:

бежать **за восемь километров** домой  
to run eight kilometres home

(b) When **за** combines with **до** to distinguish two spatial points:

**За** пятьсот метров **до** финиша подтянулся англичанин  
Five hundred metres from the finish the Englishman rallied

(c) When distance is expressed in terms of **дверь** 'door', **дом** 'house', **квартал** 'block':



За два дома до этого угла в 20-е годы было общежитие  
(Рапова)

There was a hostel two doors down from this corner in the 1920s

#### 416 Перед + instrumental, впереди + genitive

(1) **Перед** means ‘in front of’:

**перед домом**                      in front of the house

*Note*

(a) Unlike **за**, **перед** cannot take the accusative to denote movement to a position, cf. Он повёсил пальто **за дверь** ‘He hung the coat behind the door’, but Он поставил миску **перед собой** ‘He put the bowl in front of him’.

(b) Note figurative usage: **Перед нами** большая задача ‘A major task faces us’.

(2) **Впереди** + genitive ‘in front of, ahead of’ is usually associated with animate nouns or moving objects: ехать **впереди автобуса** ‘to drive ahead of the bus’. Unlike **перед**, it does not imply closeness: Дети бежали **далеко впереди взрослых** ‘The children were running far ahead of the adults’.

#### 417 Под + instrumental/accusative, из-под + genitive

(1) **Под** + instrumental

(i) The central meaning of **под** is ‘under’:

плавать <b>под водой</b>	to swim under water
стоять <b>под мостом</b>	to stand under the bridge
<b>под мышкой</b>	under one’s arm
поле <b>под рожью</b>	a field under rye

Note the phrases

<b>под носом, под рукой</b>	near by, close at hand
<b>под горой</b>	at the bottom of the hill
<b>под дождём</b>	in the rain
<b>под потолком</b>	from the ceiling (Лампы висят <b>под потолком</b> ‘The lamps hang from the ceiling’)

(ii) **Под** also denotes proximity to towns:

бои **под Москвой**      the battles near Moscow

(iii) **Под углом** means ‘at an angle’:

Улица выходила **под углом** к трамвайной остановке  
The street went off at an angle to the tram stop

(iv) **Под** is also used figuratively: **под арестом, влиянием, давлением, контролем, угрозой** ‘under arrest, the influence, pressure, control, threat’, cf.:

Эксперименты проводятся **под руководством** учёных  
The experiments are carried out under the guidance of scientists

*Note*

**Что вы понимаете под этим словом?** ‘What do you understand **by this** word?’

(2) **Под** + accusative

**Под** + the accusative denotes:

(i) Movement to a position underneath something:

Они сели <b>под дерево</b>	They sat down under a tree
Он спрятал руки <b>под стол</b>	He hid his hands under the table

Compare also the phrases

спускаться <b>под гору</b> (= с горы)	to go downhill
Она попала <b>под дождь</b>	She got caught in the rain
обработать поле <b>под пшеницу</b>	to put a field under wheat

(ii) Movement to a position near (a town):

Мы переехали <b>под</b>	We moved to near
<b>Санкт-Петербург</b>	St Petersburg

(iii) Transfer to a state:

ставить <b>под угрозу</b>	to place under threat
---------------------------	-----------------------

(3) **Из-под** + genitive

(i) **Из-под** means ‘from underneath, from near’ (a town):

Он вь́лез **из-под** сто́ла

He climbed out from under the table

Он верну́лся **из-под** Ростóва

He has returned from near Rostov

(ii) It is also used figuratively:

Маши́на вь́шла **из-под** контрóля

The car went out of control

Она́ вь́шла **из-под** егó влия́ния

She escaped from his influence

## 418 Над + instrumental, пове́рх + genitive

(1) **Над** means ‘over, above’:

**над** голово́й  
overhead

Самолёт летит **над** го́родом  
The aircraft is flying over the town

**над** у́ровнем мо́ря  
above sea level

*Note*

- (a) Unlike **под** (see 417 (2)(i)), **над** does *not* take the accusative to denote movement to a position: Повеси́ли ла́мпу **над** сто́лом ‘They hung the lamp over the table’.
- (b) **Над** is also used figuratively: побе́да **над** фаши́змом ‘victory over Fascism’, рабо́тать **над** рома́ном ‘to work on a novel’, сжа́литься **над** сиротóй ‘to take pity on an orphan’, смея́ться **над** дурако́м ‘to laugh at a fool’, суд **над** Э́йхманом ‘the trial of Eichmann’.

(2) **Пове́рх** means ‘over, over the top of, on top of’: смотре́ть **пове́рх** очко́в ‘to look over the top of one’s spectacles’, Он надел свите́р **пове́рх** руба́шки ‘He put his sweater on over his shirt’.

## 419 Ме́жду + instrumental, среди́, посреди́, напро́тив, прòтив, вдóль, вне́, внут́ри, вну́тръ, вокру́г, мй́мо + genitive

(1) Ме́жду/среди́

- (i) **Между** means ‘between’

**между магази́ном и доро́гой**  
between the shop and the road

**Между дома́ми** есть забо́р  
There is a fence between the houses

**между на́ми**  
between you and me

*Note*

**Между** governs the instrumental singular and the instrumental or (less frequently) *genitive* plural (**между дере́вьями/деревье́в** ‘between the trees’); the *genitive* is found mainly in poetic speech and idiomatic phrases (**между двух огне́й** ‘between the devil and the deep blue sea’, **чита́ть между стро́к** ‘to read between the lines’).

- (ii) **Среди́/посреди́** means ‘in the middle’ (of an area):

**Среди́/посреди́** по́ля сто́яло не́сколько кусто́в  
In the middle of the field stood several bushes

*Note*

**Среди́** (but *not* **посреди́**) can also mean ‘among, surrounded by’:

**Среди́ дере́вьев** сто́ит до́м A house stands among the trees

- (2) **Напро́тив/проти́в**

**Напро́тив/проти́в** mean ‘opposite’, combining with verbs of state *and* movement:

**Я живу́ напро́тив/проти́в заво́да**  
I live opposite the factory

**Кре́сло поста́влю напро́тив/проти́в телеви́зора**  
I shall put the chair opposite the TV set

*Note*

**Проти́в** (but not **напро́тив**) also has the meaning ‘against, opposed to’: **идти́ проти́в ве́тра** ‘to walk into the wind’, **плыть проти́в тече́ния** ‘to swim against the current’, **проти́в часовой́ стрелки́** ‘anti-clockwise’.

- (3) **Вдо́ль, вне́, внутри́, вну́тръ, вокру́г, мимо́**

- (i) **Вдо́ль** means ‘along, alongside’:

идти **вдоль шоссе**

to walk alongside the highway (cf. ехать **по шоссе** ‘to drive **along** the highway’)

**Вдоль забора** посажены деревья

Trees are planted along(side) the fence

*Note*

See also **424** (1) (d) for **вдоль** in the meaning ‘along the surface of’.

(ii) **Вне** means ‘outside’:

Часть дня он проводит **вне дома**

He spends part of the day outside the house

*Note*

Figurative usage: **вне опасности, очереди** ‘out of danger, out of turn’.

(iii) **Внутри** and its directional counterpart **внутрь** mean ‘inside’:

**внутри города**

inside the town

проникать **внутрь помещения**

to penetrate inside the building

(iv) **Вокруг** means ‘round’:

Земля вращается **вокруг**  
**своей оси**

the Earth rotates round its axis

Они сидели **вокруг стола**

They sat round the table

(v) **Мимо** means ‘past’:

идти **мимо дома**

to go past the house

## Prepositions that Denote Spatial Closeness to an Object, Movement Towards or Away from an Object, or Distance from an Object

### **420 У + genitive, к + dative, от + genitive**

(1) **У** + genitive case

(i) The central meaning of **у** + genitive is ‘at, by, near’ an object:

остановиться **у самой двери**

to stop right by the door

сидеть **у окна**

to sit by the window

*Note*

- (a) For prepositions denoting proximity to a *person*, see **421**.  
(b) Figurative usage: **быть у власти** 'to be in power'.

(ii) **У** also means 'at the house of, with, at' (the doctor's etc.):

Она отдыхает **у сестры** в деревне  
She is relaxing at her sister's place in the country

Сегодня Саша был **у врача**  
Today Sasha was at the doctor's

**у нас**  
at our place, in our country

(2) **К** + dative case

(i) **К** is used in the meaning 'towards' (a place), 'to see' (a person):

Я побежал <b>к выходу</b>	I ran towards the exit
Она идёт <b>к городу</b>	She is going towards the town
	(cf. идти <b>по направлению к</b>
	<b>городу, в направлении</b> города/к
	городу 'to walk in the direction
	of the town')
Он пошёл <b>к врачу</b>	He has gone to see the doctor

*Note*

- (a) Он пришёл **к власти** 'He came to power', путь **к счастью** 'the path to happiness'.  
(b) Идти **навстречу другу** 'to go to meet a friend', and figurative usage: идти **навстречу всем опасностям** 'to face up to all kinds of dangers'.  
(ii) **К** can also denote bodily attitude:

Я стоял боком <b>к мосту</b>	I stood sideways on to the bridge
Он сидел спиной <b>ко мне</b>	He sat with his back to me

(3) **От** + genitive case

The central meaning of **от** is 'away from':

Он шёл <b>от реки</b>	He was walking away from the river
	(cf. Он шёл <b>со стороны</b> реки
	'He was walking from the direction
	of the river')
Она ушла <b>от мужа</b>	She left her husband

## 421 Близ, близко от, возле, недалёко от, неподалёку от, около, подле + genitive; близко к, ближе к + dative; рядом с + instrumental

Of these prepositions, *подле* ‘beside’ is rarely used, while **близ**, **возле** and **около** ‘near, close to’ are commonly used to denote proximity to a person or an object:

**близ/возле/около** дома      near the house

### Note

- (a) **Возле** may imply *greater* proximity: Он живёт **возле нас** ‘He lives very near us’. Additional emphasis may be imparted by the pronoun **самый**: **возле самого леса** ‘hard by the forest’.
- (b) **Около** ‘near’ expresses a greater degree of proximity than **недалёко от** ‘not far from’. **Неподалёку** is more colloquial than **недалёко**.
- (c) **Близко от** ‘close to’ is used to denote passage at close quarters, as well as close location: Птица пролетела **близко от него** ‘The bird flew past very close to him’.
- (d) **Рядом с** means ‘next to, next door to’: Дом **рядом с парком** ‘The house is next to the park’.
- (e) **Близко/ближе к** denote direction towards: Он подошёл **близко/ближе к дому** ‘He went up close/closer to the house’.
- (f) For **под** + instrumental/accusative and **из-под** + genitive in meaning of proximity see **417** (1) (ii), (2) (ii), (3) (i).

## 422 При + prepositional

**При** + prepositional:

- (i) combines with the following nouns in the meaning of proximity: **вход/въезд** ‘entrance’, **выход** ‘exit’, **дорога** ‘road’:

Дача стояла **при дороге**  
The country cottage stood at the roadside

повесить объявление **при входе**  
to hang a notice at the entrance

поставить часовых **при въезде** в туннель  
to post sentries at the entrance to the tunnel

(ii) combines with the names of the sites of battles: **б́йтва при Ста́лингра́де** ‘the battle of Stalingrad’ (cf. **бой за Ве́ликобрита́нию** ‘the Battle of Britain’).

(iii) denotes attachment: **При университе́те** есть поликли́ника ‘There is a polyclinic attached to the university’, **пра́чечная при общежи́тии** ‘a laundry attached to the residence’.

---

### 423    **Вда́ли от, далеко́ от, пода́льше от + genitive**

---

Both **вда́ли от** and **далеко́ от** mean ‘far from’: **вда́ли/далеко́ от родно́го го́рода** ‘far from one’s home town’. However, **вда́ли от** never denotes movement: Он отоше́л **далеко́ от** (but not **вда́ли от**) дере́вни ‘He moved far away from the village’. ((**По**)**да́льше от**, however, is used in such contexts: Сел **пода́льше от** окна́ ‘He sat down a little further away from the window’.)

See also **413** (1) (ii) and **415** (2) (**в** + prepositional, **за** + accusative, **на** + prepositional in the meaning of distance).

## Prepositions that Denote Along, Across, Through a Spatial Area

---

### 424    **По + dative; через, скво́зь + accusative; попере́к, вглубь, вдо́ль + genitive**

---

(1) **По** means ‘over the surface/along/up/down’ etc.:

идти́ **по бе́регу**  
to walk along the shore

плыть́ вверх **по течéнию**  
to sail upstream

Ка́пли дождя́ стека́ют **по стеклу́**  
Raindrops stream down the pane

**По коридору́** ма́ть прошла́ на ку́хню  
Mother proceeded down the corridor to the kitchen

#### *Note*

(a) Movement may be in more than one direction: катáться **по кру́гу**



‘to skate in a circle’, **Меня возили по всей Болгарии** ‘I was driven all over Bulgaria’.

- (b) The distinction between **идти по улице** ‘to walk down the street’ and **ходить по улице** ‘to walk up and down the street’ (see also 320 and 322 (2)).
- (c) **По** may also denote location at or movement to various points in space: **Перепись населения провели по всем населённым пунктам** ‘The census was carried out throughout all populated areas’, **Весь день я ходил по магазинам** ‘I spent all day walking round the shops’.
- (d) In combination with **дорога** ‘road’, **улица** ‘street’ and nouns that denote other lines of progress (**берег** ‘shore’, **опушка** ‘outskirts’ etc.), **по** + dative is synonymous with the instrumental or **вдоль** + genitive: **идти по берегу/берегом/вдоль берега**.
- (e) Either **по** or **через** may be used to denote movement across an inhabited area: **проехать по всей Москвѣ/через всю Москвѣ** ‘to travel right across Moscow’ (**через** implies crossing and emerging from the other side of the city).

(2) The central meaning of **через** is ‘through’, ‘across’, ‘from one side to the other’ (often with a verb prefixed **пере-**: **перебежать** **через** **дорогу** ‘to run across the road’), ‘over’, ‘via’:

**В школу мы ходили через лес**

We used to go to school through the forest

**Он перелѣз через забор**

He climbed over the fence

**ѐхать в Киев через Москвѣ**

to travel to Kiev via Moscow

**мост через реку**

a bridge over the river

#### *Note*

- (a) **Через** implies a direction or destination and therefore does not combine with verbs such as **бродить** ‘to roam’, **гулять** ‘to stroll’, **по** + dative being preferred: **мы гуляли по лесу** ‘we were strolling through the forest’.
- (b) **Через** in the meaning ‘across’ is not normally repeated within a sentence, thus: **Машины переезжают через реку, по красивому мосту** ‘The cars drive across the river over a handsome bridge’

(cf., used in isolation, synonymous идти **через мост** and идти **по мосту́** ‘to walk across a bridge’)

(c) **Через** may also denote:

- (i) A spatial interval: **Через два дома** живёт её дочь ‘Her daughter lives two doors down’, Километров **через пять** нашли скалу́ ‘Some five kilometres on they found the rock’.
- (ii) A recurrent interval: **через правильные промежутки** ‘at regular intervals’, спотыкаться **через каждые два шага́** ‘to stumble at every two paces’, печатать **через строчку** ‘to type double-spaced’.
- (iii) An intermediary: разговари́вать **через переводчика́** ‘to converse through an interpreter’.

(3) **Сквозь** implies difficulty of accomplishment, resistance etc.:

смотре́ть **сквозь щель**  
to peer through a crack

**Сквозь кры́шу** протека́ла вода́  
Water was leaking through the roof

пробира́ться **сквозь толпу́**  
to push one’s way through the crowd

*Note*

- (a) **Через** in such contexts implies less resistance in passing through: Лучи́ со́лнца проника́ли **сквозь/через** листьё́ ‘The rays of the sun were penetrating/passing through the foliage’.
- (b) Only **сквозь** (*not* через) is possible with a noun that denotes a climatic feature: Со́лнце пробива́лось **сквозь метель/туман/тучу́** ‘The sun was forcing its way through the snow storm/mist/cloud’.
- (c) Figurative usage: смотре́ть **сквозь па́льцы** на что́-нибудь ‘to turn a blind eye to something’.

(4) **Поперёк** means ‘transversely across, athwart, crosswise’:

лечь **поперёк посте́ли**  
to lie across the bed

Грузови́к сто́ял **поперёк доро́ги** и тормо́зил движе́ние  
The lorry was blocking the road, impeding the traffic

(5) **Вглубь** means ‘deep into’:

**вглубь лесов**                      into the heart of the forest

**вглубь материка́** inland

## Prepositions that Denote Spatial Limit

### 425 До + genitive, по + accusative

(1) **До** + genitive means ‘as far as’: Автобус идёт только **до Арбата́** ‘The bus only goes as far as the Arbat’.

(2) **По** + accusative denotes the limit of an action or process, up to and including a point in space represented by:

(i) A part of the body:

обнажённая **по локоть** рука́  
an arm bared to the elbow

Он вошёл в воду **по пояс**  
He waded into the water up to his waist

(ii) Other spatial points:

дома́, **по окна́** занесённые снегом  
houses buried up to the windows in snow

Note the idioms **занят по горло́** ‘up to one’s eyes in work’, **сыт по горло́** ‘fed up to the back teeth’, **влюбляться по уши́** ‘to fall madly in love’, **по уши́** в долгах ‘up to the ears in debt’.

## Temporal Prepositions

### 426 Telling the time

The question **В котором часу́?/Во сколько?** ‘At what time?’ is answered as follows:

(1) **By в** + accusative on the hour and up to the half-hour:

<b>в час/два часа́ . . .</b>	at one o’clock/two o’clock . . .
<b>в пять мину́т шестого́</b>	at five past five
<b>в полдень/в полночь</b>	at midday/midnight

(2) **By в** + prepositional on the half-hour:

**в половине первого**                      at half past twelve (colloquially  
**в полпервого**)

(3) By **без** + genitive after the half-hour:

**без пяти пять**                              at five to five

#### *Note*

- (a) **В** + prepositional and **около** are used to denote approximate time: **в восьмом часу** ‘between seven and eight’, **в начале девятого** ‘just after eight’, **около двух часов** ‘at about two o’clock’.
- (b) In colloquial Russian, prepositions may be juxtaposed: **До какого часа вы работаете сегодня? До без четверти восемь** ‘What time do you work until today?’ ‘Until a quarter to eight’.
- (c) **В** + accusative is usual in phrases with **миг/мгновение** (**в последний миг/в последнее мгновение** ‘at the last instant’), **минута** (**в последнюю минуту** ‘at the last minute’, **в последние минуты** ‘in the final minutes’), **момент** (**в последний момент** ‘at the last moment’) and **час** (**в поздний час** ‘at a late hour’).
- (d) However, **на** + prepositional is used in sporting contexts: **На шестой минуте** польская команда открыла счёт ‘The Polish team opened the score in the sixth minute’, **на первых/последних минутах** матча ‘in the opening, closing minutes of the match’. Compare similar usage in chess: **Партия завершилась на 16-м ходу** ‘The game finished at the 16th move’.

See 206 for a detailed account of how to tell the time.

## 427 Days

(1) **В** combines with the accusative of **день** and the days of the week:

<b>в какой день/в какие дни?</b>	on what day/on what days?
<b>в понедельник, во вторник</b>	on Monday, on Tuesday
<b>в среду, в четверг, в пятницу</b>	on Wednesday, Thursday, Friday
<b>в субботу, в воскресенье</b>	on Saturday, Sunday
<b>в этот, прошлый, будущий понедельник</b>	this, last, next Monday

(2) While **в** is used with days qualified by **первый** (**в первый день/в первые сутки** ‘on the first day’), **на** + accusative is used with ordinal numerals above **первый** (**на третий день/третьи сутки** ‘on the third day’, **на второй день** после отъезда ‘on the second day after

leaving’), and with **друго́й, сле́дующий**: **на друго́й/сле́дующий** день ‘on the next day’ (cf. **в друго́й** день ‘on **another** day’).

(3) **По** combines with the dative plural to denote recurrent points in time: **по среда́м** ‘on Wednesdays’, **по суббо́там у́тром** ‘on Saturday mornings’.

#### *Note*

- (a) **День** itself is used in this meaning only in certain phrases: **по чётным/нечётным дням** ‘on even/odd days’ etc.
- (b) An alternative construction with **в** + accusative plural is possible in certain combinations: **по будням/в будни** ‘on weekdays’, **по выходным дням/в выходные дни** ‘on days off’ **по праздни-кам/в праздники** ‘on holidays’. In some expressions only **в** + accusative is possible: **в обычные дни** ‘on normal days’.
- (c) **По** + dative plural also indicates temporal continuity: **по целым часам/дням** ‘for hours/days on end’ (also **целыми днями/часами**).

## 428 Parts of a day

(1) Nouns that denote part of a day (**у́тро** ‘morning’ etc.) usually appear in the instrumental: **у́тром** ‘in the morning’ etc. (but **пять часо́в утра́** ‘five o’clock in the morning’; see **97** (2) (i)) and **206** (1) (ii).

(2) However, **в** + accusative is used with nouns denoting parts of a day which are qualified by pronouns or adjectives (including **пе́рвый** ‘first’): **в пе́рвый/последний ве́чер** ‘on the first/the last evening’, **в ту ночь** ‘that night’, **в э́то воскресе́ное у́тро** ‘on that Sunday morning’.

(3) When nouns which denote part of a day are qualified by **друго́й/сле́дующий** or ordinals above **пе́рвый**, however, they combine with **на** + accusative: **на сле́дующий ве́чер/сле́дующую ночь/друго́е у́тро/тре́тье у́тро** ‘on the next evening/the next night/the next morning/the third morning’.

(4) **По** + dative plural denotes recurrent points in time: **по вече́рам/ноча́м/утра́м** ‘in the evenings/at nights/in the mornings’; **по нача́м он не спит** ‘he doesn’t sleep at nights’.

#### *Note*

**В сýмки/сýмерках** ‘at dusk’, but **на восхо́де** ‘at sunrise’, **на заката́** ‘at sunset’, **на за́ре/рассвете́** ‘at dawn’.

## 429 Weeks, months, years and centuries

(1) **На** combines with the prepositional of **неделя** ‘week’:

<b>на этой, прошлой,</b>	this, last, next week
<b>будущей неделе</b>	

(2) **В** combines with the prepositional of:

(i) **Месяц** ‘month’ and the names of calendar months:

<b>в январé, февралé мартé . . .</b>	in January, February, March . . .
<b>в этом, прошлом,</b>	this, last, next month
<b>будущем мeсяцe</b>	

### Note

- (a) All names of months are masculine and are spelt with a small letter. The six months from **сентябрь** ‘September’ through to **февраль** ‘February’ take end stress in declension: **в сентябрé** ‘in September’ etc. The other six, from **март** to **август**, have fixed stress in declension.
- (b) ‘This March, last April, next December’ are rendered as **в мартe этого гóда, в апрéле прошлoгo гóда, в декабрé будущeгo гóда**.
- (c) The use of **на** + prepositional in contexts relating to pregnancy: Он оставил её **на седьмóм мeсяцe** беременности ‘He abandoned her in the seventh month of her pregnancy’.
- (d) The use of consecutive dates in **ночь с 11-го на 12-е января** ‘the night of 11 January’.

(ii) **Год** ‘year’:

<b>в этом, прошлом, будущем</b>	this, last, next year
<b>годý</b>	
<b>в тýсяча девятьсóт</b>	in 1998
<b>девяно́сто восьмóм годý</b>	
<b>в двухтýсячном годý</b>	in the year 2000

### Note

- (a) **В слéдующем годý** is also used, especially with a reference point in the past: **В слéдующем годý** овладéли частью Финля́ндии ‘In

the following year they captured part of Finland’.

- (b) The prepositional case is also used with years in the plural: **в 1920–1921 года́х** ‘in 1920–1921’.
- (c) With decades, the accusative is preferred for processes extending over a period: **В 1960-е го́ды** здесь продава́лись ру́сские кнй́ги ‘Russian books were sold here in the 1960s’. The prepositional is preferred for an event occurring at a point within a decade: Магази́н закры́лся **в 1970-х года́х** ‘The shop closed in the 1970s’.

(iii) **Век/столе́тие** ‘century’ and **ты́сячелё́тие** ‘millennium’:

<b>в э́том, про́шлом,</b>	this, last, next century
<b>бу́дущем ве́ке/столе́тии</b>	
<b>в XX (двадцáтом) ве́ке</b>	in the twentieth century
<b>в тре́тьем ты́сячелё́тии</b>	in the third millennium

#### Note

- (a) When qualified by modifiers other than **э́тот, про́шлый, бу́дущий**, **в** combines with the accusative of **неде́ля, ме́сяц, год**: **в пе́рвую, после́днюю неде́лю** ‘in the first, the last week’, **в пе́рвые неде́ли о́сени** ‘in the first weeks of autumn’, **в пе́рвый ме́сяц ку́рса** ‘in the first month of the course’, **в пе́рвый/после́дний год войны́** ‘in the first/last year of the war’, **в год рожде́ния** ‘in the year of my birth’, **в послево́енные го́ды** ‘in the post-war years’. (This also applies to the seasons, cf. **о́сенью, зимо́й** ‘in the autumn, winter’ but **в ту о́сень** ‘that autumn’, **в тру́дную зиму́** ‘in a difficult winter’.)
- (b) With ordinal numerals above **пе́рвый**, **на** + accusative is the norm: **на четве́ртый ме́сяц** ‘in the fourth month’, **на второ́ую неде́лю** ‘in the second week’, **на четве́ртый год** ‘in the fourth year’ (but **на четве́ртом году́** *перестро́йки* ‘in the fourth year of restructuring’, where reference is to a stage in a process).

## 430 General time words

**В** governs the accusative case of nouns which denote time in general or an indefinite period of time (**век** ‘age’, **вре́мя** ‘time’, **эпо́ха** ‘epoch’ etc.):

<b>в а́томный век/сре́дние ве́ка</b>	in the atomic age/the middle ages
<b>в ми́рное вре́мя</b>	in peace time
<b>во вре́мена́ Петра́ I</b>	during the time of Peter I
<b>в пе́риод социализма́</b>	under socialism
<b>в зи́мнюю по́ру</b>	in winter time
<b>в зи́мний сезо́н</b>	in the winter season (also <b>в зи́мнем сезо́не</b> )
<b>в стари́ну</b>	in the old days
<b>в те́чение</b>	during the course of
<b>в на́шу э́поху</b>	in our era

*Note*

- (a) **Во вре́мя** is used with activities/events (**во вре́мя у́рока** ‘during the lesson’), but *not* with words of time. **В те́чение** can be used with either, thus: Репорта́жи бу́дем передава́ть **в те́чение** всей конфе́ренции ‘We shall be transmitting reports **throughout** the whole conference’, **в те́чение** сле́дующих не́скольких неде́ль ‘during the next few weeks’.
- (b) **Во вре́мена́** is used for the distant past: **во вре́мена́** крепо́стного пра́ва ‘during serfdom’, **во вре́мена́** Шекспі́ра (= **при** Шекспі́ре/**при** жи́зни Шекспі́ра) ‘in Shakespeare’s time’ (see 442 (2) for **при** in temporal meaning). **Во вре́мена́** is preferred to **при** when the events are distant in time *and* (from a Russian viewpoint) location. Compare Росси́я европеизи́ровалась **при** **Петре́ Пётрвом/во вре́мена́ Петра́ Пётрвого** ‘Russia was Europeanized in the reign of Peter the First’ (an event distant in time) and **Во вре́мена́ Петра́ Пётрвого** А́нглия была́ вели́кой морско́й держа́вой ‘Britain was a great naval power during the time of Peter the First’ (a historical fact distant in time *and* location).
- (c) **В хо́де** is common in scientific and journalistic literature, combining with a noun that denotes a process: **в хо́де обсу́ждения** (= **в проце́ссе обсу́ждения/при обсу́ждении**) ‘during the discussion’.
- (d) **За** + accusative denotes the period during which an event occurs or events occur: Он встре́чал **за э́то вре́мя** не бо́лее 60 други́х автомоби́лей ‘During this period he encountered no more than 60 other cars’.
- (e) **На проте́жении** is used with longish periods of time: **на проте́жении не́скольких веко́в** ‘over the course of several centuries’.



### 431 Nouns that denote stages in a process

**В** is used in temporal meaning with the prepositional case of:

- (1) The nouns **про́шлое** ‘past’, **насто́ящее** ‘present’, **бу́дущее** ‘future’:

**в про́шлом, насто́ящем, бу́дущем**      in the past, present, future

- (2) The nouns **ко́нec** ‘end’, **нача́ло** ‘beginning’, **сере́дина** ‘middle’:

**в нача́ле, сере́дине, ко́нцe**      at the beginning, in the middle,  
at the end

Note the phrase **в ко́нцe ко́нцо́в** ‘eventually/in the end’.

- (3) Nouns that denote stages in life:

**в младе́нчестве, де́тстве**      in babyhood, childhood  
**в мо́лодости, ста́рости**      in youth, old age  
**в глубо́кой ста́рости**      at a ripe old age (but **на ста́рости лет** ‘in old age’)

#### Note

- (a) **В во́зрасте** ‘at an age’: Приуча́ться к ко́фе **в её во́зрасте** нежелáтельно ‘It is undesirable to get used to drinking coffee at her age’. ‘At my age’ may be rendered as **в моём во́зрасте/в мои́ го́ды**. ‘At the age of seven’ is expressed as follows: **в во́зрасте семи́ лет/в семи́летнем во́зрасте/в семь лет/семи́ лет**.  
(b) Use of **на** in Он **на 76-м годú** потеря́л зрéние ‘He lost his sight in his 76th year’, **на 6-м де́сятке** ‘in one’s fifties’, **на моём ве́ку** ‘in my lifetime’.

- (4) Nouns that denote a stage in an activity or event:

**в антра́кте, в перерыве**      in the interval, at break-time  
**в тре́тьем пери́оде**      in the third period (ice-hockey)  
**во второ́м тайме**      in the second half  
**в послéднем ту́ре**      in the final round of a competition  
соре́вновáния

### 432 The weather

**В** + accusative is used to describe the weather:

**в плохую погоду**  
in bad weather

Самолёты **в туман** прикованы к земле  
In fog the aircraft are grounded

*Note*

**Во время** can also be used in more general meanings (**во время метели** ‘during the snowstorm’), cf. **в** + accusative with its implications of time and circumstance (**В метель** они сбились с пути ‘They lost their way in the snowstorm’). Nouns such as **жара** ‘heat’, **погода** ‘weather’, **холод** ‘cold’ combine only with **в** + accusative.

---

### 433 Festivals

---

The names of some festivals combine with **в** or **на** + accusative: **в/на Новый год** ‘at New Year’. **В** is commoner (**в Праздник Победы** ‘at the Victory Festival’, **в новогодний праздник** ‘at the new year festival’, **в майские праздники** ‘at the May festivities’), but **на** persists with religious festivals (**на Пасху** ‘at Easter’, **на Рождество** ‘at Christmas’).

## The Use of Prepositions to Denote Action in Relation to Various Time Limits

---

### 434 The use of **с** + genitive, **до** + genitive/**по** + accusative to denote terminal points in time

---

(1) **С** + genitive denotes ‘since/from’ a point in time:

<b>С субботы</b> мы вместе	We have been together since Saturday
<b>с давних пор</b>	since time immemorial
<b>с тех пор</b>	since then

(Начиная) **с апреля** Венгрия перейдёт на летнее время  
(With effect) from April Hungary will switch to summer time

*Note*

**Со времени, со дня, с момента** etc. combine with nouns that denote the names of activities or events:

Два десятилѣтія прошлѡ **со врѣмени побѣды**  
Two decades have passed **since the victory**

**со дня новосѣлья**  
**since the house-warming**

**с момѣнта получѣнія** вѣшего писъмѧ  
**since receipt** of your letter

Note also **со времѣн**: **со времѣн Ивѧна III** ‘since the time of Ivan III’.

(2) **До** means ‘until’:

ждать <b>до вѣчера</b>	to wait until evening
Я бѹду здѣсь (вплѡтъ)	I shall be here (right up) until
<b>до пятѣ часѡв</b>	five o’clock
<b>до сих пор</b>	up till now, hitherto

#### Note

‘Not until’ is rendered by **тѡлько** ‘only’: **тѡлько** пѡсле полѹночи ‘not until after midnight’.

(3) **По** + accusative means ‘up to and including’: **по шестѡе мѧя** (or **до шестѡго мѧя вклучѣтельно**) ‘up to and including 6 May’; **по сѣй дѣнь** ‘up to the present day’.

**С** and **до/по** denote the terminal limits of an action:

Он отдыхѧет **с 26 мѧрта до пѣрвого апрѣля**  
He is on holiday from 26 March to 1 April (reporting back on 1 April)

Он отдыхѧет **с 26 мѧрта по пѣрвое апрѣля**  
He is on holiday from 26 March to 1 April inclusive (reporting back on 2 April)

Note the phrases **со дня нѧ дѣнь** ‘any day now’, **с минѹты на минѹту** ‘any minute now’, **с чѧсу на чѧс** ‘any time now’.

### 435 Use of **к** + dative and **под** + accusative to denote temporal approach

(1) **К** + dative means ‘by’:

<b>к концѹ</b> недѣли	by the end of the week
<b>к понедѣльнику</b>	by Monday

(2) **Под** + accusative denotes:

(i) ‘Towards, approaching’ a time, in combination with **вечер** ‘evening’, **воскресенье** ‘Sunday’, **праздник** ‘festival’, **старость** ‘old age’, **утро** ‘morning’ etc.:

Он верну́лся <b>под ве́чер</b>	He returned towards evening
<b>под ко́нec</b> сентя́бря	towards the end of September
Я встал <b>под у́тро</b>	I got up in the early hours

(ii) ‘On the eve of’ a holiday or festival (a synonym of **накануне** + genitive):

<b>под Но́вый год</b>	on New Year’s Eve
-----------------------	-------------------

---

### 436 Use of **в/за** + accusative to denote the time taken to complete an action

---

Both **в** and **за** + accusative denote the time taken to complete an action:

Сме́на парово́зов была́ произведе́на **в две–три мину́ты** (Бек)  
The switch of locomotives was carried out in 2–3 minutes

Он окра́сил кúхню **за четы́ре дня**  
He painted the kitchen in four days

#### *Note*

- (a) If the *duration* of an action is emphasized, *not* its completion, the accusative is used *without* a preposition: Он чита́л рома́н **четы́ре часа́** ‘He read the novel for four hours’. Compare Он прочита́л рома́н **за/в четы́ре дня** ‘He read the novel in four days’.
- (b) **За** is sometimes preferred to **в** in order to avoid possible ambiguity: Он соста́вил докла́д **за три часа́** ‘He compiled the report in three hours’ (**в три часа́** could mean ‘at three o’clock’).
- (c) **За** is also usually preferred when the time appears excessive in relation to the task: В элэ́ктросва́рке **и за полго́да** не разберёшься! (Kochetov) ‘You won’t get the hang of arc-welding even in six months!’.
- (d) **В** appears in the phrases: **в два счёта** ‘in two shakes’, **в мгнове́ние о́ка** ‘in the twinkling of an eye’, **в счита́нные мину́ты** ‘in a few brief minutes’.

### 437 Use of **в** + accusative to denote the period during which an action occurs a stated number of times

---

**В** combines with the accusative of a time word to denote the period during which an action occurs a stated number of times:

Он ѐздит на Кўбу  
4 рáза в год

He goes to Cuba 4 times a year

### 438 Use of **на** + accusative to denote the time for which something has been arranged

---

**На** + accusative denotes the time for which an event has been arranged:

Собрáние назнáчено **на седьмóе мáрта**  
The meeting has been arranged for 7 March

Отложíть **на б́удущую недéлю**  
To postpone to next week

#### *Note*

- (a) Other verbs which appear in the construction include **заказáть (на срéду)** ‘to order’ (for Wednesday), **перенесíть (на четвéрг)** ‘to carry over’ (till Thursday).
- (b) The elliptical construction **На деся́тое** билéтов ужé нет ‘There are no tickets left for the tenth’.

### 439 Use of prepositions to denote sequence in time (before, after etc.)

---

(1) Prepositions denoting precedence in time

- (i) **До** means (any time) ‘before’:

**до войн́ы** before the war

- (ii) **До** also combines with **за** + accusative where one event precedes another by a stated time interval:

Провéрили мото́ры **за час до вы́лета**  
They checked the engines an hour before take-off

Note also the adverb **задо́лго**: **задо́лго до войны́** 'long before the war'.

(iii) **Перед** means 'just before':

<b>перед сном</b>	before going to bed
переоде́ться <b>перед ужином</b>	to change for (just before) dinner

*Note*

- (a) The noun can be qualified by **са́мый**: **перед са́мым отъёздом** 'just prior to departure'.
- (b) The comparative **ра́ньше** is restricted to usage with animate nouns and nouns that denote deadlines: **Он пришёл ра́ньше меня́, ра́ньше вре́мени** 'He arrived before me, ahead of time'.

(iv) **Наза́д** + accusative 'ago' is now more commonly used than the pronoun + adverb formation **тому́ наза́д**: **неде́лю (тому́) наза́д** 'a week ago'.

(2) Prepositions denoting subsequent action

(i) **Пос́ле, чере́з**

**Пос́ле** means 'after' an event (**пос́ле заня́тий** 'after lessons'), while **чере́з** is used with words of **time** to denote 'after the expiry of/in/after', with reference to the past, present or future:

Начне́м <b>чере́з час</b>	We shall begin in an hour's time
Мы нача́ли <b>чере́з час</b>	We began an hour later

*Note*

- (a) The preposition must not be separated from its noun: **ме́нее, че́м чере́з час** 'in less than an hour's time' (or 'less than an hour later').
- (b) **По исте́чении** 'on expiry of' is synonymous with **чере́з** in this meaning. Compare **спустя́**, which combines mainly with past tense verbs: **Он у́мер спустя́ ме́сяц/ме́сяц спустя́** 'He died a month later'.
- (c) **Пос́ле** replaces **чере́з** when the time word is extended by a genitive: **чере́з год** 'after a year', but **пос́ле го́да разлу́ки** 'after a year's separation'.

Both **чере́з** and **пос́ле** are used in constructions which denote the temporal relationship of sequential events:

**Через восемь дней после Рождества** наши начали наступление  
Our lads went on the offensive eight days after Christmas

*Note*

- (a) **Через** is *optional* in such contexts (cf. **за . . . до** (1) (ii) above, where **за** is *compulsory*).  
(b) **Спустя** may replace **через** in such constructions: **спустя 8 дней/8 дней спустя после Рождества**.

**Через** is also used to denote a recurrent temporal interval:

Пароход останавливается здесь **через раз**  
The steamer stops here every other time

Автобусы ходят **через каждые десять минут**  
The buses run every ten minutes

(ii) **По + prepositional**

**По** + prepositional is synonymous with **после** in official and scientific styles, in combination with verbal and some other abstract nouns:

<b>по возвращении (= после возвращения) домой</b>	on returning home
<b>по окончании университета</b>	on graduating
<b>по получении письма</b>	on receipt of the letter
<b>по приезде</b>	on arrival
<b>по его смерти</b>	on his death

(iii) **За + instrumental**

**За** + instrumental denotes sequence in time:

**год за годом, день за днём** year after year, day after day

(iv) **В + accusative**

**В** + ordinal numeral + **раз** defines an event's place in a series:

Она голосует **в первый раз**  
She is voting for the first time

(v) **На + accusative**

**На** + accusative is used to denote the time subsequent to the **completion** of an action:

Он **на́ год** поёхал за гра́ницу  
He has gone abroad for a year

Она́ прятала **на ле́то** зи́мние ве́щи  
She would put her winter things away for the summer

Он встал с постёли **на 5 ми́нут**  
He got out of bed for 5 minutes

*Note*

- (a) The accusative *without* a preposition denotes the time spent *performing* an action. Compare:

Он шёл в шко́лу **10 ми́нут**  
He took 10 minutes to get to school

and

Он выключа́ет свет **на 10 ми́нут**  
He puts the light out for 10 minutes

where the 10 minutes *follow the completion* of the action of putting out the light, and the result (darkness) is effective throughout that time. Intention is implied.

- (b) The accusative without a preposition is therefore used with durative verbs (**Я три неде́ли отды́хал в Я́лте** ‘I holidayed in Yalta for three weeks’ (time and action coincide)), while **на** + accusative is used with verbs that denote completed actions (**Пья́ниц сажа́ют в ка́меру на́ ночь** ‘Drunks are put in a cell for the night’ (the time is subsequent to the completion of the action)).

Note also the adverb **надо́лго**: Она́ у́ехала **надо́лго** ‘She went away for a long time’.

---

#### **440 Temporal prepositional phrases as attributes to nouns: за + accusative, от + genitive**

---

- (1) **За** + accusative is used to denote a journal publication date:

«Ме́талл» **за а́прель э́того го́да**      the journal *Metall* for this  
April

- (2) **От** + genitive denotes the date of a document:

пи́сьмо́ **от пе́рвого а́вгуста**      a letter of 1 August



#### 441 Positioning an event within a time span: **среди** + genitive, **между** + instrumental

**Среди** denotes ‘in the middle of’: **среди но́чи** ‘in the middle of the night’ (note also **среди́ бе́ла дня́** ‘in broad daylight’). **Между** positions an event between two other events: **между двумя́ война́ми** ‘between two wars’, он отды́хал **между обе́дом и у́жином** ‘he relaxed between lunch and dinner’.

#### 442 Coincidence in time: **при** + prepositional

**При** is used in a number of contexts denoting coincidence in time:

- (1) ‘In the presence of’:

**при свиде́телях** in the presence of witnesses

- (2) ‘In the (life-)time of’, ‘during’ (see **430** note (b)):

**при жи́зни А́ни** in Anya’s lifetime

**при Ста́лине** in Stalin’s time, under Stalin

- (3) It governs:

- (i) The nouns **вид**, **звук**, **мысль**, **сло́во/слова́**:

**при ви́де** Петро́ва (= **когда́** я уви́дел Петро́ва)  
at the sight of Petrov (= **when** I saw Petrov)

**при зву́ке** звонка́  
at the sound of the bell

Он содро́гнулся **при одно́й мы́сли** о пораже́нии  
He shuddered at the mere thought of defeat

**При э́тих слова́х** она́ побледне́ла  
She grew pale at these words

- (ii) Nouns that denote a source of light:

Он чита́л **при све́те ла́мпы/при ла́мпе**  
He was reading by the light of a lamp

- (iii) The noun **возмо́жность** ‘opportunity’:

**при ка́ждой/пе́рвой возмо́жности**  
at every/the first opportunity

- (iv) Nouns denoting various types of state or circumstance:

**при таких обстоятельствах**  
in the circumstances

**при температурѣ** тридцать градусов  
at a temperature of thirty degrees

(v) Verbal and some other abstract nouns:

**При взлёте** уровень шумов достигал 112 децибел  
On (= during) take-off engine noise reached 112 decibels

**При перевозке** мебели было разбито несколько стульев  
Several chairs were broken during the move

(vi) Nouns that denote a social order:

<b>при социализме</b>	under socialism
<b>при советской власти</b>	under Soviet power
<b>при этом режиме</b>	under this regime

*Note*

**При смерти** ‘at death’s door’.

## Other Meanings

### 443 Prepositions with causal meaning

---

The following prepositions are used to denote the cause of an action or state:

(1) **Из-за** + genitive/**благодаря** + dative

**Из-за** and **благодаря** are used when the cause of an action is *external* to the subject, **из-за** being preferred when the outcome is unfavourable and **благодаря** when it is favourable:

Поезд опоздал **из-за тумана**  
The train was late because of the fog

Я провалился **из-за тебя**  
I failed because of you

**Благодаря вам** я выжил  
Thanks to you I survived

*Note*

The distinction between **из-за** and **благодаря** is sometimes blurred, **благодаря** being used on occasion as a synonym of **из-за**, in particular when the outcome is neutral from the subject's point of view.

(2) **От** + genitive in the meaning 'physical cause'

Phrases with **от** + genitive denote the physical cause of a state or process:

доро́га, мо́края <b>от</b> дождя́	a road wet with rain
боль <b>от</b> ожо́га	pain from a burn
Он у́мер <b>от</b> ра́ка	He died of cancer

(3) **От/из** + genitive in the meaning 'emotional cause'

Both **от** and **из** combine with nouns of feeling which provoke a reaction on the part of the subject:

(i) Phrases with **от** imply an **involuntary or spontaneous reaction**:

Он запла́кал <b>от</b> ра́дости	He wept <b>with</b> joy
Она́ дрожи́т <b>от</b> стра́ха	She is trembling <b>with</b> fear
Он покрасне́л <b>от</b> стыда́	He blushed <b>with</b> shame

(ii) Phrases with **из** denote that the feeling experienced motivates a **deliberate action** on the part of the subject:

уби́йство <b>из</b> ре́вности	murder <b>motivated by</b> jealousy
Он солга́л <b>из</b> стра́ха	He lied <b>out of</b> fear
Он отказа́лся <b>из</b> упря́мства	He refused <b>out of</b> obstinacy

(4) **От/с** + genitive

(i) **С** + genitive expresses causal meanings similar to those expressed by **от**. Often the prepositions are interchangeable when the dependent noun denotes:

(a) A feeling: пла́кать **от** стра́ха/**со** стра́ха/**со** стра́ху 'to weep with fear'.

(b) A physical sensation or state: умере́ть **от** го́лода/**с** го́лоду 'to starve to death'.

*Note*

In such examples the phrases in **с** incline towards the *colloquial*.

(ii) **С** + genitive is common in figurative usage: умирать **со скуки/сó смеху** 'to die of boredom/laughing'.

(iii) It also appears in certain set expressions:

устать <b>с дороги</b>	to get tired from the journey
<b>с непривычки</b>	due to lack of practice
<b>ни с того ни с сего</b>	for no particular reason

(5) По + dative

Phrases with **по** + dative case express causal meaning:

(i) When the dependent noun itself is causal (**причина** 'cause' etc.):

<b>По какому поводу</b> вы об этом вспомнили?	What made you think of that?
<b>по какой причине?</b>	for what reason?
<b>по финансовым соображениям</b>	for financial considerations

(ii) When the dependent noun denotes handicaps or drawbacks associated with:

(a) Ill-health:

**по болезни**  
due to sickness

**По слабости здоровья** он почти не покидает города  
Because of poor health he hardly leaves the town

(b) Age or inexperience:

Сын **по молодости** не понимает её  
Her son does not understand her because of his youth

Нигде уже не работал **по старости**  
He had stopped working altogether due to old age

(c) Negative character traits:

Мальчик это сделал **по глупости**  
The boy did this out of stupidity

*Note*

**Из-за** would be used, however, if there was a change in subject:

**Из-за его глупости** пострадали его друзья  
His friends suffered because of his stupidity

(d) Error, ignorance:

<b>По винé</b> водителя́ происходит	Eight out of ten road accidents
8 из 10 ава́рий	are caused by driver error
<b>по оши́бке, недосмо́тру</b>	by mistake, due to an oversight

Note also брак **по расчёту** ‘marriage of convenience’.

(6) За + instrumental

(i) The spatial origins of the causal meanings of **за** + instrumental are evident in examples such as **За стено́й** не ви́дно ‘You can see nothing for the wall’ (lit. ‘behind the wall’).

(ii) **За** also combines with nouns that denote:

(a) Absence:

Лабо́рато́рия не рабо́тает **за неимéнием** лаборáнта  
The laboratory is not functioning for want of a laboratory assistant

Его́ оправда́ли **за отсу́тствием** ули́к  
He was acquitted for lack of evidence

(b) Worthlessness:

бро́сить **за него́дностью**  
to discard as worthless

Прóдали **за ненáдобностью**  
It was sold as surplus to requirements

Note also the compound causal prepositions **в результа́те** ‘as a result of’ and **всле́дствие** ‘in consequence of’. Both take the genitive case.

#### 444 Prepositions that denote the object of feelings and attitudes

(1) К + dative

**К** is used to denote the object of many feelings and attitudes:

Она́ ве́жлива	ко всем	She is <b>polite</b>	<b>to</b> everyone
Он добр	к живóтным	He is <b>kind</b>	<b>to</b> animals
интерéс	к эти́мологии	<b>interest</b>	<b>in</b> etymology
любо́вь	к ро́дине	<b>love</b>	<b>for</b> the homeland
отно́ситься	к	<b>to relate to, to</b>	<b>treat</b> (someone)
презréние	к врагу́	<b>scorn</b>	<b>for</b> an enemy

*Note*

**С** + instrumental is used in certain combinations: Лára **вэжлива со всі́ми** 'Lara is polite to everyone' (cf. вэжлива ко всі́м, above), Я **была́ с ва́ми груба́** 'I was rude to you', Суд **был строг с** подсуді́мыми 'The court was hard on the defendants'. Compare **обра́щаться с** + instrumental 'to treat'.

## (2) На + accusative

**На** + accusative denotes the object of anger and similar emotions:

Он <b>негова́л</b>	<b>на</b> неё	He was indignant	with her
Я <b>оби́делся</b>	<b>на</b> егó слова́	I took offence	at his words
Он <b>серди́т/зол</b>	<b>на</b> меня́	He is angry	with me
Я <b>та́йла</b>	<b>на</b> неё мно́го оби́д	I nursed many grudges	against her

## (3) Перед + instrumental

Phrases with **перед** denote the object of feelings of guilt, duty, responsibility, fear, embarrassment, ingratiating, defiance etc.:

Я <b>виновáт</b>	<b>перед</b> ва́ми	I owe you an apology
<b>долг</b>	<b>перед</b> ро́диной	duty to the homeland
<b>за́йскивать</b>	<b>перед</b> нача́льником	to ingratiate oneself with the boss
Он <b>извини́лся</b>	<b>перед</b> ни́ми	He apologized to them
<b>Отвеча́ю</b>	<b>перед</b> роди́телями	I am responsible to the parents
<b>страх</b>	<b>перед</b> сме́ртью	fear of death
Ему́ <b>сты́дно</b>	<b>перед</b> са́мим собо́й	He is ashamed of himself

## (4) По + dative

Phrases in **по** + dative denote the object of yearning, grieving etc.:

<b>скупа́ть</b>	<b>по</b> де́тям	to miss the children
<b>тоска́</b>	<b>по</b> ро́дине	homesickness
Она́ <b>в тра́уре</b>	<b>по</b> му́жу	She is in mourning for her husband

(First- and second-person pronouns appear in the *prepositional* case after such verbs: **скупа́ли по нас, вас** 'they missed us, you'. Third-person pronouns appear in the dative or prepositional.)

*Note*

The compound prepositions **в отноше́нии** + genitive, **по отноше́нию к:** щепети́льный **в отноше́нии** сво́их обяза́нностей/**по отноше́нию к** сво́им обяза́ностям 'punctilious **with respect to** his obligations'.

## 445 Prepositions that denote extent

Some prepositions denote extent in its various forms: the dimensions of an object, quantitative difference and so on.

### (1) В + accusative

**В** + accusative is used to quantify a dimension:

#### (i) In terms of objects:

ка́бели толщи́ной **в ру́ку**      cables the thickness of one's arm

#### (ii) In terms of conventional units of measurement:

река́ глуби́ной	<b>в три ме́тра</b>	a river	three metres deep
гора́ высотóй	<b>в ты́сячу ме́тров</b>	a mountain	1,000 metres high
пло́щадь шири́ной	<b>в пятьдеся́т ме́тров</b>	a square	50 metres wide

### Note

- (a) The dimension word appears in the instrumental in such constructions, but questions about dimension are posed in the genitive: **Како́го он ро́ста?** 'How tall is he?'
- (b) The dimension word can be omitted altogether where it is obvious which dimension is meant: турби́на (мо́щностью) **в двести ты́сяч ки́ловатт** 'a 200,000-kilowatt turbine', места́ (сто́имостью) **в се́мьдесят ру́блей** '70-rouble seats'.
- (c) Conversely, **в** may be omitted where the dimension word is retained, especially in journalistic, colloquial and technical styles: гора́ высотóй (**в**) **пять ты́сяч ме́тров** 'a mountain 5,000 metres high'.

**В** + accusative is also used in comparative constructions with **раз**:

Его́ дом **в три ра́за** бо́льше моего́  
His house is three times bigger than mine

### (2) В + prepositional

#### (i) **В** governs the prepositional of nouns that denote extent, scale etc.:

**в крúпном масшта́бе**      on a large scale  
**в како́й-то ме́ре**      in some measure

Приро́да изу́чена **в тако́й стéпени**, что неожíданности вря́д ли возмо́жны

Nature has been studied to such a degree that surprises are hardly possible

(ii) In some constructions with **стéпень**, **в** and **до** are synonymous: **в/до некоторой стéпени** 'to a certain extent', **в/до такой стéпени** 'to such a degree', but **в** is preferred in the lower and comparative ranges: **в малóй стéпени** 'to a small extent', **в бóльшей стéпени** 'to a greater extent', **в рáзной стéпени** 'to varying degrees'.

(3) До + genitive

(i) The central meaning of **до** is 'limit' or 'extent':

родители, имеющие <b>человéк детéй</b>	<b>до пяти</b>	parents having up to five children
наку́риваться	<b>до тошноты</b>	to smoke to the point of nausea
доводить	<b>до слёз</b>	to reduce to tears

Note also the set expressions

Он промóк <b>ни́тки</b>	<b>до костéй/до послéдней</b>	He got soaked to the skin
Он эго́ист	<b>до мóзга костéй</b>	He is an egoist to the core
в́ыпить всё	<b>до послéдней кáпли</b>	to drain to the last drop
танцевáть	<b>до упáду</b>	to dance till you drop

(ii) **До** also combines with **стéпень** (see (2) (ii) above).

(4) За + accusative

The preposition is used in constructions that denote excess:

Морóз ужé	<b>за три́дцать</b>	There are already over thirty degrees of frost
Бы́ло	<b>за́ полночь</b>	It was past midnight
Ему́	<b>за sóрок</b>	He is over forty
Давлéние перевали́ло атмосфéр	<b>за сто</b>	The pressure exceeded 100 atmospheres

(5) На + accusative

**На** + accusative case denotes quantification:

(i) With comparatives (see also **182** (2) (i)):



He is three years older than me

(ii) In terms of:

(a) Percentages and fractions:

The Earth is three-quarters  
ocean

to fulfil one's norm by 105%

(b) Ratio/distribution:

There should be two telephones to every three apartments

(c) Monetary value:

to fine 500 roubles

300 roubles' worth of stamps

(d) Scholastic achievement:

to get straight As

(e) Projection through space:

бег

## 1,000 metres race

на полторáста

The pines extend for  
150 kilometres

# Кричѣт

**на весь двор**

He shouts so loud as  
to be heard over the  
whole yard

(6) О́коло + genitive

Около denotes approximation:

about a metre

about an hour

about two weeks

### Note

Unlike **с** + accusative (see (8)), **около** combines only with nouns that denote units of measurement.

(7) Порядка + genitive

**Порядка** + genitive denotes approximate numerical quantity:

Цены **порядка двадцати–тридцати долларов**

Prices of the order of 20–30 dollars

До ближайшей деревни **порядка пятидесяти километров**

(*Moskovskii komsomolets*)

It is about fifty kilometres to the nearest village

(8) **С** + accusative

**С** + accusative expresses many types of approximation (cf. (6)):

Он прожил там **с месяц**      He spent about a month there

Он ростом **с сестрой**      He is about the same height as  
his sister

Мина величиной **с тарелку**      a mine about the size of a plate

---

#### 446 Prepositions that denote purpose

---

Many prepositional phrases denote the purpose for which an action is performed or for which an object is designed:

(1) **В** + accusative

**В** + accusative appears in a number of phrases which denote the purpose of an action:

Он выступил **в защиту** своих      He spoke up in defence  
прав      of his rights

Я поднял обе руки **в знак**      I raised both arms  
примирения      as a token of  
reconciliation

Посадили дерево **в память о**      They planted a tree in  
павших воинах      memory of soldiers  
who fell in battle

Устроили приём **в честь** отца      They arranged a  
reception in honour  
of father

(2) **Для** + genitive ‘meant for/designed for’

папка **для бумаг**      a file for documents

общежитие **для студентов**      a residence for students

*Note*

(a) **Для** can also govern a verbal noun: Учёные собрались **для**

**обсуждения** ряда вопросов (= чтобы обсудить ряд вопросов)  
 'The scientists gathered for a discussion of a number of questions'.

- (b) The set phrases **для верности** 'just to make sure', **для вида** 'for the sake of appearances', **для разнообразия** 'for a change'.

(3) За + accusative

**За** + accusative denotes the object of struggle, competition etc.:

<b>бороться</b>	<b>за независимость</b>	to struggle for independence
<b>соревноваться</b> урожаи	<b>за высокие</b>	to compete for high-yield harvests

(4) За + instrumental in the meaning 'for/to fetch'

идти	<b>за водой</b>	to go	for water
Я зашёл	<b>за своим другом</b>	I called	for my friend
очередь	<b>за хлебом</b>	a queue	for bread

Note usage in abstract contexts: Он обратился ко мне **за советом/помощью** 'He turned to me for advice/help'.

(5) На + accusative

**На** + accusative denotes:

- (i) A profession aspired to (constructions with **учиться**):

**учиться на инженера**      to study to be an engineer

- (ii) A quality, the presence/evaluation of which is the object of testing:

испытывать новый шлем **на прочность**  
 to test a new helmet for strength

- (iii) The purpose of a precautionary measure (constructions with **случай**):

Она взяла с собой зонтик **на случай дождя**  
 She took an umbrella with her in case of rain

*Note*

**На всякий случай** 'just in case/to be on the safe side':

Спустился в овраг, **на всякий случай** с ножом в руке (Aitmatov)  
 He descended into the gully with a knife in his hand, just to be on the safe side

## (6) О + prepositional

**О** + prepositional can denote the purpose of a request or plea:

<b>крик, призыв</b> о помощи	a cry, an appeal for help
<b>про́сьба</b> о деньга́х	a request for money

(7) По + dative (constructions with **дело/дела́** ‘business’)

Ёду в го́род **по делу/делам** I am going to town on business

## (8) Под + accusative

**Под** + accusative denotes the function for which an area is designated:

Да́ли зе́млю **под огоро́ды**  
They allocated land for market gardens

ко́мнаты, отве́дённые **под музéй**  
rooms ear-marked for a museum

Note also **в интере́сах** ‘in the interests of’ and **в це́лях** ‘for the purpose of’ (both + genitive): **в це́лях** повыше́ния произво́дительно́сти тру́да ‘for the purpose of increasing labour productivity’ (cf. **с це́лью** ‘with the aim of’, which normally combines with a verbal noun or an infinitive).

---

## 447 Concessive meanings expressed by prepositions

---

(1) **Несмотря́ на** + accusative ‘despite’ is the commonest of the concessive prepositions:

**Несмотря́ на** плоху́ю погóду, о́ни игра́ли в те́ннис  
Despite the bad weather, they played tennis

(2) **Вопреки́** + dative ‘contrary to’, **невзирая́ на** + accusative ‘despite, regardless of’, **напереко́р** + dative ‘in defiance of’ relate to more official styles: **вопреки́ прика́зу** ‘contrary to orders’.

(3) **При** may also be used with concessive meaning, especially in combination with **весь** ‘all’:

**При всём своём тала́нте** он не годи́тся в ми́нистры  
For all his talent he is not cut out to be a minister

**При всём жела́нии** не могу́ вам помо́чь  
Much as I would like to I cannot help you

## 448 По + dative/accusative in distributive meaning

In distributive meanings **по** combines:

(1) With the dative of singular nouns:

Он дал ученика́м **по учебнику́**

He gave the pupils a book each

В 25% семе́й бы́ло **по одному́** ребёнку

25% of families had one child each

(2) With the accusative of two, three and four (also 200, 300 and 400):

Мы выпили **по две ча́шки** We drank two cups each

(3) With the dative *or* accusative of other numerals, the dependent noun appearing in the *genitive plural*:

Нам да́ли **по пяти́/по пять тетра́дей**

They gave us five exercise books each

### Note

The accusative, formerly confined mainly to colloquial styles, is now freely used in written styles also:

За стола́ми сиде́ло **по де́сять студе́нтов**

At each of the tables sat ten students

Рабо́тают **по семь часо́в** в день

They work seven hours a day

Тро́им из них бы́ло **по трина́дцать** (Marinina)

Three of them were thirteen years old

(4) Indefinite numerals are found in either case:

Э́ти слова́ име́ют **по не́сколько/не́скольку** значе́ний

These words have several meanings each

### Note

A distributive phrase in **по** may function as:

(a) The subject

По обе́ стороны пара́дной име́лось **по балко́ну**

There was a balcony at either side of the main entrance

(b) The object:

Сжимáл в кáждой рукé **по** пистолéту  
He gripped a pistol in each hand

(c) A temporal expression:

Останáвливаются два пóезда в сýтки, кáждый **стоит по три минúты**  
Two trains a day stop here, each for three minutes at a time

(d) An attribute:

Четы́ре билéта **по двáдцать** рублéй  
Four tickets at twenty roubles each

Note the colloquial phrase **По чéм?** ‘how much?’ (each): По чéм я́блоки?  
‘How much are apples?’ (each).

## Other Important Meanings Expressed by Prepositions

### 449 Prepositions that take the accusative

---

(1) **В**

**В** + accusative denotes:

(i) The target of throwing, knocking, shooting etc. (see also **451** (2) (iv)):

Он брóсил	<b>в меня́</b>	поду́шку	He threw a pillow	<b>at me</b>
Он вы́стрелил	<b>в цель</b>		He fired	<b>at the target</b>
Он рáнен	<b>в гóлову</b>		He is wounded	<b>in the head</b>
стучáть	<b>в дверь</b>		to knock	<b>on/at the door</b>
Он удáрил меня́	<b>в чéлюсть</b>		He punched me	<b>on the jaw</b>

(ii) A game (constructions with **игрáть**; see also **453** (2) (i)):

игрáть **в футбол/прятки**      to play football/hide and seek

(iii) The object of belief/infatuation:

вéрить <b>в социáлизм</b>	to believe in socialism
Он влюбíлся <b>в медсестрú</b>	He fell in love with a nurse

(iv) An object looked/shouted into or through:

Он **в бино́кль** рассмáтривает рéку  
He examines the river through binoculars

смотре́ть на себя́	<b>в зéркало</b>	to look at oneself in the mirror
смотре́ть	<b>в окно́</b>	to look out of the window
кри́кнуть	<b>в мегафо́н</b>	to shout through a megaphone

(v) A professional or other group (note that what appears to be the nominative plural in these constructions is historically an *accusative*):

Он не годи́тся	<b>в музыканты́</b>	He is not cut out to be a musician
идти́	<b>в го́сти</b>	to go visiting
произвести́	<b>в офице́ры</b>	to commission

Note that the idea of plurality is lost in many such expressions: Он годи́тся ей в отцы́ 'He is old enough to be her father'.

## (2) За

Constructions with **за** involve:

(i) Thanking, paying, rewarding, punishing for:

меда́ль	<b>за отва́гу</b>	a medal	<b>for bravery</b>
Его́ наказа́ли	<b>за оши́бку</b>	He was punished	<b>for the mistake</b>
Она́ пла́тит ему́	<b>за молоко́</b>	She pays him	<b>for the milk</b>
продава́ть	<b>за 1000 рубле́й</b>	to sell	<b>for 1,000 roubles</b>
спаси́бо	<b>за сове́т</b>	thanks	<b>for the advice</b>

(ii) Identifying, evaluating as:

Он вы́дал себя́ **за специа́листа**  
He passed himself off **as an expert**

Принимáли её **за мою́ де́вушку**  
They took her **for my girl friend**

Он слы́вет **за знатока́**  
He passes **for a connoisseur**

(iii) Seizing, holding, leading by:

Я взял Ё́нку **за руку́**                      I took Inka **by the hand**  
Он схвати́лся **за голо́ву**                He clutched **his head**

(iv) Feelings experienced on behalf of someone else:

Она́ бо́ится **за меня́**                      She is afraid **for me**  
Я рад **за тебя́**                                I am glad **for you**

(v) The meaning 'in favour of':

**Я** голосовал **за вас**  
пить **за здоровье** отца

I voted for you  
to drink to father's health

*Note*

**Что за** in the meaning **какой** does not affect the case of the dependent noun: **Что за мұка!** 'What torment!', **Что это за друзья?** 'What kind of friends are those?', **Что за книгу** она купила? 'What kind of book did she buy?'

(3) На

(i) **На** has many literal and figurative meanings which denote various forms of direction, allocation, expenditure etc.:

<b>жаловаться на</b> питание	to complain about the food
<b>заказ на</b> платье	an order for a dress
<b>лес на</b> постройку	timber for building
<b>мода/спрос на</b> иностранные машинны	fashion/demand for foreign cars
<b>надяться на</b> успех/на брата	to hope for success/rely on one's brother
<b>обменять</b> квартиру <b>на</b> дачу	to exchange a flat for a country cottage
<b>обращать внимание на</b> совет	to pay attention to advice
<b>оказывать давление на</b> кого-нибудь	to put pressure on someone
<b>охотиться на</b> волка	to hunt a wolf
<b>право на</b> отдых	the right to relaxation
<b>производить впечатление</b> <b>на</b> друга	to make an impression on a friend
<b>работать на</b> семью	to work for one's family
<b>рецепт на</b> лекарство	a prescription for medicine
<b>смотреть на</b> карту	to look at a map
<b>тратить время на</b> пустяки/ деньги <b>на</b> конфеты	to spend time on trifles/money on sweets
<b>что на</b> обед?	what's for lunch?

(ii) The main verb or adjective may denote resolve:

**Он готов на** всё  
**идти на** риск

He is prepared to go to any lengths  
to take a risk



*Note*

**Готóв на** implies desperate resolve, **готóв к** only preparedness.

(iii) The main verb, adjective or noun may express reaction:

<b>отвечáть на</b> вопрóс	to answer a question
<b>реáкция на</b> крítiку	reaction to criticism

(4) **О**

**О** + accusative denotes the object of collision, friction, pressure etc.:

Вóлны <b>разбивáются о</b> рíфы	The waves smash against the reefs
Она́ <b>споткну́лась о</b> кáмень	She tripped over a stone
Он <b>удáрился ногóй о</b> стул	He struck his leg against a chair

(5) **Под**

**Под** + accusative implies:

(i) ‘Support’ for the dependent noun (usually **рукá** or **ру́ки**):

Егó поддérживали **пóд руки**  
They were supporting him by the arms

Онi прогóуливаются **пóд руку**  
They are strolling about arm in arm

(ii) ‘Accompaniment’:

танцевáть <b>под оркéстр</b>	to dance to an orchestra
Она́ сéла <b>под бýрные</b> <b>аплодисмéнты</b>	She sat down to tumultuous applause

(iii) ‘Imitation’, ‘adaptation to style’ etc.:

Он пел **под Шалéпина**  
He sang in imitation of Shalyapin

комóд **под крáсное дéрево**  
an imitation mahogany sideboard

стрéчься **под мáльчика**  
to have one’s hair cut like a boy’s

## 450 Prepositions that take the genitive

(1) **Для**

**Для** can have a comparative/relative meaning:

Тепло́ для **нояб́ря**

It is warm for November

## (2) Из

**Из** denotes source:

Э́то я узна́л

**из газе́т**

I learnt that from the papers

Он

**из рабо́чей семье́**

He is from a working-class family

посу́да

**из гли́ны**

crockery made of clay

Оди́н

**из нас** помо́жет

One of us will help

Со́лнце состо́ит

**из водо́рода и ге́лия**

The sun consists of hydrogen and helium

## (3) Из-под

**Из-под** denotes the former content of a container:буты́лка **из-под** **молока́**

a milk bottle/empty milk bottle

Compare буты́лка **молока́** 'a bottle of milk'.

## (4) От

(i) **От** appears in contexts involving protection, evasion, riddance etc.:**возде́рживаться****от** голосова́ния

to abstain from voting

**защища́ть го́род****от** врага́

to defend the town against an enemy

**избавля́ться****от** приви́чки

to get rid of a habit

Она́ **отказа́лась****от** обе́да

She refused lunch

(ii) This also applies in curative contexts:

лека́рство

**от ка́шля**

cough medicine

лечи́ть ма́льчика

**от дифте́рия**

to treat the boy for diphtheria

## (5) С

**С** + genitive is used:

(i) With verbs of beginning:

Их дру́жба **нача́лась с дра́ки**

Their friendship began with a fight

(ii) To indicate the spelling of initial letters:

писа́ть сло́во **с большо́й/мáлой бу́квы**  
to spell a word with a capital/a small letter

*Note*

**Через** is used with *non*-initial letters: Сло́во ‘пара́шют’ пи́шется **через ю** ‘The word пара́шют is spelt with a ю’.

(iii) To denote ‘permission’:

Приезжа́йте ещё — то́лько **с разреше́ния роди́телей**  
Come again, but with your parents’ permission

(6) У

**У** denotes the person from whom something is bought, borrowed, stolen, from whom lessons are taken, of whom a request is made etc.:

Беру́	у него́ уро́ки	I take lessons from him
заказа́ть костю́м	у портно́го	to order a suit from a tailor
Он занима́ет	у них де́ньги	He borrows money from them
Я купи́л дом	у дяди	I bought the house from my uncle
Я мно́гому научи́лся	у э́того па́рня	I learnt a lot from this chap
Я попро́сил	у него́ ру́чку	I asked him for a pen
Спроси́те доро́гу	у милицио́нера	Ask a policeman the way
У меня́ укра́ли часы́		I had my watch stolen

*Note*

- (a) **От** is used, however, when the subject is a passive recipient (Я получи́л письмо́ **от отца́** ‘I received a letter from my father’) and **с** + genitive in contexts denoting the exaction of due payment, tax etc. (собира́ть нало́г **с ча́стников** ‘to collect tax from private owners’, Ско́лько **с меня́**? ‘How much do I owe you?’).
- (b) **Узна́ть** ‘to learn, find out’ combines with either **от** or **у**, **от** implying passive, **у** active participation: Э́то я узна́л **от неё** ‘I heard that from her’, Э́то я узна́л **у неё** ‘I found that out from her’.

## 451 Prepositions that take the dative

(1) К

**К** is used:

(i) To relate a part, component or supplement to the whole:

уверту́ра **к** «Пи́ковой да́ме» the overture to *Queen of Spades*

(ii) With **готов** 'ready', **готовиться** 'to prepare', **готовность** 'readiness':

**готов к** труду и обороне      ready for labour and defence

(iii) With nouns that denote emotional reaction to an event or impression:

**к сожалению**      unfortunately  
**к счастью**      fortunately  
**к моему удивлению**      to my surprise

(2) По

**По** is used:

(i) With nouns that denote means of communication:

**по железной дороге**      by rail  
**по (авиа)почте**      by (air)mail  
**по второй программе**      on channel two  
**по радио, по телевизору/телевидению**      on the radio, on TV  
 (also **на телевидении**)

Разговор на эту тему состоится **по городскому кабельному телевидению** (*Argumenty i fakty*)

A conversation on this subject will take place on municipal cable television

**по телефону**      on the telephone  
**по мобильному**      on a mobile  
**по факсу**      by fax

*Note*

**бродить по Интернету** 'to surf the Internet', but **в Интернете** 'on the Internet', **на Интернет-сайте** 'at a web-site'.

(ii) In the meaning 'according to', 'by' etc.:

**по приглашению**      by invitation  
**по просьбе**      at the request of  
**по расписанию, плану**      according to the timetable, the plan  
**По моим часам** (or на моих часах) уже полночь      By my watch it's already midnight

(iii) To denote a criterion for judgment:

Врач судит о здоровье ребёнка **по цвету** его лица  
A doctor judges the health of a child by its complexion

- (iv) To denote a target, especially a moving or diffuse target (cf. **449** (1) (i)):

Открыли огонь	<b>по врагу</b>	They opened fire on the enemy
стрелять	<b>по демонстрантам</b>	to fire on the demonstrators

Compare also **стучать по столу** ‘to bang on the table’ and **стучать в дверь** ‘to knock at the door’ (see **449** (1) (i)).

- (v) To define the ‘frame of reference’ of persons, groups, objects etc.:

инженёр	<b>по профессии</b>	engineer by profession
чемпион	<b>по боксу</b>	boxing champion
экзамен	<b>по истории</b>	history examination

- (vi) With ordinal numerals, to denote position in a scale of dimensions or priorities:

Африка — **второй по величине** материк  
Africa is the second largest continent

## 452 Prepositions that take the instrumental

### (1) За

**За** links verbs of observation, supervision to their objects:

Кошка наблюдала	<b>за собакой</b>	The cat was observing the dog
Он следил	<b>за развитием техники</b>	He was following the development of technology

### (2) С

- (i) The central meaning of **с** is ‘with/together with/accompanied by’ etc.:

мальчик	<b>с удочкой в руке</b>	a boy with a rod in his hand
человек	<b>с красивым лицом</b>	a man with a handsome face

Я согла́сен	с ва́ми	I agree with you
Он говори́т	с акце́нтом	He speaks with an accent
Она́ слу́шала	с интере́сом	She listened with interest
Он реши́л зада́чу	с трудо́м	He had difficulty in solving the problem

*Note*

- (a) **Со ско́ростью** ‘at a speed’: Он е́хал **со ско́ростью** пятьдеся́т киломе́тров в час ‘He was driving at a speed of fifty kilometres per hour’.
- (b) **Развести́сь с** ‘to divorce’, **расста́ться с** ‘to part with’, while denoting separation, retain the meaning of joint involvement.
- (c) Nouns and pronouns can be linked by **с**: **мы с ва́ми** ‘you and I’, **они́ с сестро́й** ‘he and his sister’, **оте́ц с ма́терью** ‘father and mother’. Note also **хлеб с ма́слом** ‘bread and butter’. A plural verb is used if the nouns are of equal status: Оте́ц с ма́терью **отказа́лись** помо́чь ‘Father and mother refused to help’. Otherwise a singular verb is used: Ма́ть с ребё́нком **пошла́** в больни́цу ‘The mother went to the hospital with the child’.
- (d) A nuance of purpose: **обра́щаться к кому́-нибудь с про́сьбой** ‘to make a request of somebody’, Пре́мьер-мини́стр **прие́хал** в Герма́нию **с визи́том** ‘The prime minister arrived in Germany on a visit’.
- (e) See **94** for constructions in which ‘with’ is rendered by a simple instrumental (писа́ть **карандашо́м** ‘to write with a pencil’).
- (ii) **С** is used with the names of public service vehicles when these are qualified by adjectives:

прие́хать **с ра́нним, с двухчасовы́м** по́ездом  
to arrive on the early, the two o’clock train (cf. **прие́хать по́ездом**  
‘to arrive by train’)

---

**453 Prepositions that take the prepositional**

---

**(1) В**

- (i) **В** links verbs, adjectives, nouns denoting ‘guilt’, ‘suspicion’, ‘confession’, ‘certainty’, ‘doubt’, ‘reproach’ to their objects:

Всех шесте́рых **обвиня́ли во взры́ве коменда́туры**  
All six were accused of blowing up the commandant’s office

Он бы́л аресто́ван **по подо́зрению в кра́же**  
He was arrested on suspicion of theft

Он <b>призна́лся</b>	<b>в уби́йстве</b>	He confessed to the murder
Я <b>сомнева́юсь</b>	<b>в э́том</b>	I doubt that
Она́ <b>уве́рена</b>	<b>в себе́</b>	She is sure of herself
Его́ <b>упрека́ют</b>	<b>в ле́ни</b>	He is reproached with laziness

(ii) The dependent noun may also define the context of forms such as **беда́** ‘trouble’, **де́ло** ‘matter, fact’, **причи́на** ‘cause’ etc.:

**Беда́ в том**, что он её **лю́бит**  
The trouble is that he loves her

**Де́ло в том**, что он **ненаде́жный**  
The fact is that he is unreliable

(2) На

The dependent noun may denote:

(i) A musical instrument:

игра́ть **на скри́пке**      to play the violin

(ii) A language:

Он **говори́т на трёх язы́ках**      He speaks three languages

(3) О

The central meaning of **о** + prepositional is ‘concerning’, ‘about’:

ду́мать	<b>о пла́не</b>	to think about the plan
зако́н	<b>о разво́де</b>	divorce law
напомина́ть	<b>о до́лге</b>	to remind someone of their duty
кому́-нибудь		
мысль	<b>о сча́стье</b>	the thought of happiness

*Note*

**Про** + accusative is a colloquial synonym of **о** ‘about’.

(4) При

**При** can mean ‘in view of’, ‘thanks to’, ‘with’, ‘given’:

**При тако́м тала́нте** он ста́нет знаменито́стью  
With talent like that he will become a celebrity

**При её оба́янии** не ка́ждая же́нщина помеша́ла бы ей блиста́ть  
With her charm not every woman would be able to prevent her from standing out

---

# The Conjunction

---

## 454 Introductory comments

---

(1) Conjunctions fulfil a cohesive function in linking words and concepts to create connected speech.

(2) They fall into the following broad categories:

(i) **Co-ordinating conjunctions** link words and clauses of comparable status (bread *and* butter, young *but* experienced etc.). They subdivide into connective, adversative and disjunctive.

(ii) **Subordinating conjunctions** introduce statements that are dependent on the main clause (he said *that* he had no objection; I called the doctor, *because* I felt unwell; I want to play tennis, *if* the weather improves etc.). They subdivide into explanatory, causal, conditional, concessive, comparative and temporal conjunctions, and conjunctions of purpose and result.

Many compound conjunctions, traditionally separated by a comma, can now also be written without: *ввиду того (,) что* 'in view of the fact that'; *до того (,) как* 'before'; *из-за того (,) что* 'because of the fact that'; *после того (,) как* 'after'; *с тех пор (,) как* 'since' etc. The use of a comma throws the meaning expressed by the subordinate clause into greater relief.



## Co-ordinating Conjunctions

### 455 Connective conjunctions

(1) **И** 'and'

**И** links:

(i) Like parts of speech:

Брат <b>и</b> сестра	Brother and sister
Она́ поёт <b>и</b> игра́ет	She sings and plays

(ii) Compatible ideas:

Свети́ло со́лнце, **и** бы́ло жа́рко  
The sun was shining and it was hot

(2) **И . . . и** 'both . . . and'

(i) **И . . . и** lend greater emphasis than **и**:

Он **и** спосо́бный, **и** трудолю́бный  
He is both capable and industrious

(ii) The same meaning may be expressed:

(a) By **как . . . так и** (a mark of a more literary style):

Такие вопро́сы интересу́ют мно́гих специа́листов **как** в Росси́и,  
**так и** в зарубе́жных стра́нах  
Such questions interest many specialists both in Russia and abroad

(b) With still greater emphasis, by **не то́лько . . . но и** (also characteristic of a bookish style): Он говори́т **не то́лько** по-кита́йски, **но и** по-япо́нски  
'He speaks not only Chinese but also Japanese'.

(3) **Ни . . . ни** 'neither . . . nor'

У люде́й не́ было **ни** отча́яния, **ни** стра́ха (V. Putin)  
People had neither despair nor fear

#### Note

(a) The second **ни** ('nor') is preceded by a comma.

- (b) **He** is normally required only when there is a single predicate: Ни он, ни она́ **не игра́ет** (single predicate) на флэ́йте ‘Neither he nor she plays the flute’. Compare the absence of **не** in Она́ ни игра́ет, ни поёт ‘She neither plays nor sings’ and Он ни ру́сский, ни поля́к ‘He is neither a Russian nor a Pole’, where there are two predicates (**игра́ет/поёт; ру́сский/поля́к**). **He** is retained, however, in constructions involving the past or future of **быть** ‘to be’ (or other copula): Вчера́ **не́ было́**/за́втра **не бу́дет** ни хо́лодно, ни жа́рко ‘Yesterday it was not/tomorrow it will neither be cold nor hot’. Note also usage with **нельзя́**: С ним **нельзя́** ни хитри́ть, ни шути́ть (Zalygin) ‘With him you can neither pretend nor joke’.
- (c) If there are two subjects, the predicate must be compatible with both: Ни он, ни она́ не **зна́ет** ‘Neither he nor she knows’ (зна́ет agrees with он and with она́), but Ни он, ни она́ не **зна́ли** ‘Neither he nor she knew’, Ни он, ни она́ не **дово́льны** ‘Neither he nor she is pleased’, Ни он, ни я не **говори́м** по-по́льски ‘Neither he nor I speak Polish’.

## 456 Adversative conjunctions

- (1) A ‘and, but, whereas’

The conjunction **а**:

- (i) links ideas which contrast without conflicting. The same parts of speech usually appear on either side of the conjunction:

Он сиди́т,	<b>а</b> я стою́	He sits and I stand
Э́то ко́шка,	<b>а</b> э́то соба́ка	That is a cat and that is a dog

- (ii) introduces a positive statement via a preceding negative:

Приро́да <b>не</b> храм,	<b>а</b> масте́рская	Nature is not a temple, but a workshop
Он <b>не</b> пи́шет,	<b>а</b> чита́ет	He is not writing but reading
Кни́га <b>не</b> бе́лая,	<b>а</b> кра́сная	The book is not white, but red

*Note*

The order of the clauses may be reversed:

Астрахань, Сара́тов — города́ на Во́лге, **а не** на До́ну  
(Vvedenskaya)  
Astrakhan and Saratov are towns on the Volga and not on the Don

(iii) introduces a supplementary statement or question:

**А** где другіе гости? And where are the other guests?

Note the phrase **а вдруг**?: **А вдруг** он не вóвремя придёт? ‘Suppose/What if he doesn’t get here in time?’

(iv) introduces parenthetical statements:

Появлéние зрítелей, **а** их бýло человек 80, снóва мобилизовáло актёров (Garin)

The appearance of the audience, and they were about 80 in number, again stirred the actors into action

(2) Но ‘but’

(i) **Но** links clauses which express incompatible ideas, e.g.

Машина старáя, **но** хоро́шая

The car is old *but* good (an arguably unexpected combination)

(ii) The conjunction is often close in meaning to **одна́ко** ‘however’, **несмотря на это́** ‘despite this’ (note, however, that **одна́ко** can *replace* **но**, while **несмотря на это́** *combines* with it, except when it appears at the beginning of a new sentence):

Емý захотéлось позвонít в больнícу, **но** (= **одна́ко/но несмотря на это́**) он сдержáл себя́ и позвонíл то́лько ўтром (Panova)

He was tempted to ring the hospital **but** (= despite this) restrained himself and didn’t ring until morning

Мы овладéли сложнéйшими мéтодами познáния, **но** ещё плóхо понима́ем другíх людéй и самíх себя́ (Kron)

We have mastered the most complex methods of cognition, **yet** still have an imperfect understanding of other people and ourselves

*Note*

**Всё же** means ‘all the same’, **зато́** ‘on the other hand’:

Дóрого, **зато́** хоро́шая вещь

It’s expensive, **but then** it is a quality article

(3) И, а and ио

Learners sometimes experience difficulty in selecting the appropriate conjunction, especially where **а** and **но** are concerned. The following examples, each of which begins in the same way, illustrate their usage:

(i) **И** introduces additional information:

Он молодой **и** энергичный  
He is young and (he is also) energetic

Она любит кошек **и** собак  
She likes cats and (she also likes) dogs

(ii) **А** introduces information which contrasts with but does not conflict with the first statement:

Он молодой, **а** она старая  
He is young, and (= whereas) she is old

Она любит кошек, **а** он любит собак  
She likes cats, and he likes dogs

(iii) **Но** introduces information which is in antithesis to the first statement:

Он молодой, **но** опытный  
He is young, but (i.e. despite this, nevertheless) experienced

Она любит кошек, **но** не любит собак  
She likes cats, but she does not like dogs

*Note*

**А** and **но** sometimes appear in the same context, **но** expressing a stronger antithesis than **а**: Он хочет, **а** я не хочу 'He wants to, and I don't'; Он хочет, **но** я не хочу 'He wants to, but I don't'.

---

## 457 Disjunctive conjunctions

---

(1) **Или** 'or'

**Или** presents alternatives:

Это собака **или** волк?      Is that a dog or a wolf?

*Note*

(a) **Или** does not normally appear in negative contexts. Thus, 'He doesn't like football or tennis' is rendered as Он не любит **ни** футбола, **ни** тенниса (or ни футбол, ни теннис).

- (b) ‘Or’ (= ‘or else’, ‘otherwise’) may be rendered as **а то/а не то/иначе**:

На останóвках не выходíte, **а (не) то** загуля́етесь  
 Don’t get out at the stops **or** you’ll get lost

- (2) **И́ли** . . . **и́ли** (less commonly **ли́бо** . . . **ли́бо**) ‘either . . . or’

**И́ли** я пойду́ к нему́, **и́ли** он приде́т ко мне  
 Either I will go to him or he will come to me

#### Note

As in constructions with **ни** . . . **ни** ‘neither . . . nor’ (see **455** (3) note (c)), a compatible predicate must be found for subjects of different gender: Сёмьи, где **появи́лись** и́ли но́вая ма́ма и́ли но́вый па́па (*Semya*) ‘Families in which a new mummy or a new daddy has appeared’.

- (3) **Не то** . . . **не то** ‘either . . . or’

**Не то** . . . **не то** may imply difficulty of identification:

Ма́ть её, Наде́жда, по фами́лии не́ то Куку́шкина, не́ то Хри́станю́к (Роров)  
 Her mother, Nadezhda, has the surname Kukushkina, or it could be Khristaniuk

- (4) **То** . . . **то** ‘now . . . now’

Он **то** красне́ет, **то** бледне́ет  
 Now he blushes, now he grows pale

- (5) **То ли** . . . **то ли** ‘maybe . . . maybe’

**То ли** . . . **то ли** implies an element of conjecture:

И ско́лько лет ему́, сказа́ть бы́ло невозмо́жно — **то ли** под три́дцать, **то ли** за со́рок (Trifonov)  
 And it was impossible to say how old he was – **maybe** getting on for thirty, **maybe** in his forties

## Subordinating Conjunctions

### 458 Explanatory conjunctions

- (1) **Что** ‘that’

- (i) **Что** is used after verbs of saying, thinking etc.:

Он сказа́л, **что** он мне помо́жет  
He said (**that**) he would help me

*Note*

**Что** should *not* be omitted in such contexts, cf. English: ‘I think (that) he’s out’ and Russian Я ду́маю, **что** его́ нет до́ма.

- (ii) (**То**), **что** also renders the English (**preposition** +) ‘-ing’:

- (a) **Извёстен** + instrumental:

Она́ извёстна **тем, что** переплыла́ проли́в Ла-Ма́нш  
She is famous **for having** swum the Channel

- (b) **Наказа́ть за** + accusative ‘to punish for’:

Ма́льчика наказа́ли **за то, что** разби́л окно́  
The boy was punished **for breaking** the window

- (c) **Нача́ть с** + genitive ‘to begin by’:

Она́ начала́ **с того́, что** привётствовала́ госте́й  
She began **by welcoming** the guests

- (d) **Обвини́ть в** + prepositional ‘to accuse of’:

Его́ обвини́ли **в том, что** он укра́л часы́  
They accused him **of stealing** the watch

- (e) **Поздра́вить с** + instrumental ‘to congratulate on’:

Я поздра́вил его́ **с тем, что** он сдал экза́мен  
I congratulated him **on passing** the examination

- (f) **Привы́кнуть к** ‘to get used to’:

Он привы́к **к тому́, что** его́ уважа́ют  
He is accustomed **to being** respected

*Note*

**То, как; то, где; то, когда́** etc. are also possible with some verbs, e.g. **зави́сеть**: это́ зави́сит **от того́, что** он ска́жет/где он живё́т/**как** он себя́ чу́вствует/**когда́** он ко́нчит, ‘it **depends what** he says/**where** he lives/**how** he feels/**when** he finishes’.

- (2) **Что́бы**

**Чтобы** + past tense is used after verbs of request, command or warning:

Скажи́ ему́, **чтобы** он не уходил  
Tell him not to leave

Она́ предупреди́ла его́, **чтобы** он не купался в о́зере  
She warned him not to bathe in the lake

Она́ проси́ла, **чтобы** все вытира́ли но́ги у двéри  
She asked that everyone should wipe their feet at the door

Он приказáл, **чтобы** нас пусти́ли во дворéц  
He ordered that we should be admitted to the palace

See also **308** (2) note (a).

#### Note

Проси́ть, по-/прика́зывать, приказáть, **чтобы** are preferred in impersonal constructions. Compare use of the **infinitive** when the verbs take a direct or indirect object: Он попроси́л меня́ **откры́ть** дверь 'He asked me to open the door', Он приказáл солдáтам **стреля́ть** 'He ordered the soldiers to shoot'.

(3) Бúдто/бúдто бы 'as if, that', я́кобы 'allegedly, supposedly'

**Бúдто, бúдто бы, я́кобы** question the truth of a statement: Он уверя́ет, **бúдто** сам ви́дел 'He alleges that he saw it with his own eyes'. Compare:

Арти́сты, ты́сячный раз игра́я пьёсу, де́лают вид, **бúдто** им неизвёстно — чем ко́нчится (Zalygin)  
Actors performing a play for the thousandth time pretend they do not know how it will end

Он её убежда́л, **бúдто бы** её но́вая физионо́мия лу́чше ста́рой (Zalygin)  
He tried to convince her that her new face was better than her old one

Он утвержда́ет, **я́кобы** прика́з отменён  
He alleges that the order has been rescinded

See **464** (2) (i) for **бúдто** as a comparative conjunction.

## 459 Causal conjunctions

### (1) Благодаря тому́ что

**Благодаря́ тому́ что** is associated with favourable circumstances (see 443 (1)):

Она́ сдала́ экза́мен **благодаря́ тому́ что** рабо́тала усер́дно  
She passed the examination **thanks to having** worked industriously

### (2) Ввиду́ того́ что

**Ввиду́ того́, что** ‘in view of the fact that’, like **всле́дствие того́, что** ‘in consequence of the fact that’ and **в си́лу того́, что** ‘on account of the fact that’, belongs to official styles:

**Ввиду́ того́, что** я во вре́мя о́тпуска был бо́лен, прошу́ продли́ть мне о́тпуск  
**In view of the fact that** I was ill while on holiday I request an extension of leave

### (3) Из-за того́ что

**Из-за того́ что**, like **из-за** (see 443 (1)), is often associated with unfavourable circumstances:

**Из-за того́ что** я в ука́занный срок не верну́л книг в библиотéку, у меня́ были неприятности́  
I got into trouble **for not returning** the library books on time

### (4) Оттого́ что

Like **от** (see 443 (3) (i)), **оттого́ что** is associated with involuntary cause:

Бы́ло нелóвко **оттого́, что** его́ заподо́зрили в жела́нии порисова́ться (Granin)  
He felt awkward **at being suspected** of wishing to show off

### (5) Поско́льку ‘as long as’

**Поско́льку** ты согла́сен, я не бу́ду возража́ть  
As long as you agree I won’t object

### (6) Поско́му́ что ‘because’



Его исключили из команды, **потому́ что** он не присутствовал на тренировках

He was left out of the team because he had not attended training sessions

*Note*

- (a) A comma separates **потому́** and **что** when the cause is emphasized, usually by the addition of **бúдто бы** ‘as if’, **ещё и** ‘also’, **мóжет быть** ‘perhaps’, **тóлько** ‘only’ etc. (see also 454 (2) (ii)):

**ещё и потому́, что**

also because

**мóжет быть потому́, что**

maybe because

**потому́ бúдто бы, что**

seemingly because

**тóлько потому́ (or потому́ тóлько), что**

only because

Его пригласили **потому́ тóлько, что** он племянник режиссёра

They **only** invited him **because** he is the producer’s nephew

- (b) Emphasis may also be expressed by distancing **потому́** from **что**:

**Потому́ бúдто бы** его́ и пригласили, **что** он племянник режиссёра

The reason why they seem to have invited him is that he is the producer’s nephew

- (7) Так как ‘because, since’

Америкáнский учёный встрéтился с учёными университета, **так как** круг проблем, над решéнием котóрых онí рабóтают, сроднй тéмам его́ рабóт

The American scientist met scientists in the university since the problems they are working on are akin to his own areas of interest

*Note*

- (a) **Потому́ что** and **так как** are virtually identical in meaning. However, clauses beginning with **потому́ что** always *follow* the main clause, while clauses in **так как** can precede or follow: Мы устáли, **так как** рабóтали без перерýва ‘We were tired since we had worked without a break’ or **Так как** рабóтали без перерýва, мы устáли ‘Since we had worked without a break we were tired’.
- (b) **Под предлóгом что/под тем предлóгом что/под предлóгом тогó что** ‘on the pretext that’ denote pretended cause; **и́бо** ‘for’ relates mainly to high style or scientific contexts.

## 460 Conjunctions of purpose

**Чтобы** 'in order to/in order that'

See also **309–310**.

(i) **Чтобы** is used:

(a) With an **infinitive** if the subject of both clauses is the same:

Я взял ведро́, **чтобы набрать** в родникé воды́ (Kazakov)  
I took a bucket **in order to** draw some water from the spring

(b) With the **past tense** if there is a change in subject:

Я дал ей ведро́, **чтобы она́ могла́** набрать в родникé воды́  
I gave her the bucket **so that she could** draw water from the spring

(ii) **Для того́/с тем чтобы** throw the meaning of purpose into greater relief:

Грузы перетаскивались в склады, . . . **для того́, чтобы (с тем, чтобы)** на товары не лил дождь (Semushkin)  
The freight was dragged over to the warehouses **so that** the merchandise should not get rained on

(iii) **Чтобы** combines with prepositional phrases and verbs which denote purpose or desire: **добиваться/добиться** + genitive 'to achieve', **заботиться о** + prepositional 'to be concerned about', **за то** 'in favour of', **настаивать/настоять на** + prepositional 'to insist on', **против того́** 'against', **стремиться к** 'to strive for':

Мы **добиваемся того́, чтобы** все голосовали на выборах  
We are trying to get everyone to vote at the election

Я **за то (против того́), чтобы** все учились русскому языку́  
I am in favour of (against) everyone learning Russian

Государство **заботится о том, чтобы** граждане не голодали  
The state is concerned that its citizens should not go hungry

Он **настаивает (на том), чтобы** я остался ночевать  
He insists I should stay the night

Мы **стремимся к тому́, чтобы** кит был объявлен видом, находящимся под угрозой исчезновения  
We are striving to get the whale declared an endangered species

(iv) **Чтобы** is normally *omitted* after verbs of motion and their equivalents if there is no change in subject: Он пришёл поговорить ‘He came to have a chat’. However, **чтобы** is *retained* after verbs of motion:

(a) When the action expressed by the **чтобы** clause represents the purpose expressed by the main clause *but is not subsequent to it in time*:

Я вышел из комнаты, **чтобы** доказать своё безразличие к разговору

I left the room in order to show my indifference to the conversation

(b) When the **чтобы** clause contains a negative subordinate infinitive:

Я вышел из комнаты, **чтобы не разбудить** ребёнка

I left the room so as not to awaken the child

(c) When the subordinate infinitive is accompanied by adverbial modifiers:

Я забрался на гору, **чтобы оттуда как следует** оглядеть окрестность

I climbed the hill so as to survey the surrounding district properly

(v) **Вместо того чтобы** ‘instead of’ implies choice of a preferred alternative:

**Вместо того, чтобы** отдыхать на пляже, он пошёл на концерт

Instead of relaxing on the beach he went to a concert

#### Note

**Чтобы** does not *always* denote purpose:

Посетители уехали с тем, **чтобы** через час явиться ещё раз

The visitors left, only **to turn up again** an hour later

## 461 Conjunctions of result

Так что ‘so/so that’

Он провалился, **так что** ему пришлось пересдавать экзамен

He failed, so he had to resit the examination

The conjunctions **вследствие чего** ‘in consequence of which’ and **в результате чего** ‘as a result of which’ are used in official registers.

## 462 Conditional conjunctions

(1) Если ‘if’

**Если (бы)** is dealt with in 304–305.

Note also the precautionary **на слýчай если** ‘just in case’:

Она мне дала свой телефон, **на слýчай если** придётся чтó-нибудь передать

She gave me her telephone number **just in case** a message needed to be passed on

See also 446 (5) (iii).

(2) Если не ‘unless’

Он уйдёт, **если** вы **не** помешаете ему

He’ll go away unless you stop him

(3) При услóвии что ‘on condition that’

Она выйдет замуж за него **при услóвии, что** он уедет из Англии

She will marry him on condition that he leaves England

(4) Раз ‘if, since, now that’

**Раз** has passed from conversational into literary style:

**Раз** дал слóво, надо его сдержать

Now that he’s given his word he should keep it

(5) Кóли/кóль; кóль скóро ‘if’

**Кóли/кóль** is a colloquial and obsolescent synonym of **если** (**кóли** на то пошлó ‘for that matter/if that’s the way it is’) and is rarely found in written styles. **Кóль скóро** may be used in polemic, where it raises the emotional tension:

И уж **кóль скóро** люди дёржат живóтных, **то** несовершенство слýжбы ветерина́рной пóмощи «бьёт» прёжде всего по владельцам (*Semya*)

And since people keep animals, imperfections in the veterinary service hit their owners hardest

(6) Достáточно (it is) ‘sufficient/all it needs’

**Достаточно** ‘it is sufficient’ may acquire a conditional nuance:

**Достаточно** было одной из пуль попасть в мину, **и** (or **как**) она взлетела бы на воздух (Stepanov)

All it needed was for one of the bullets to hit the mine and it would have exploded

## 463 Concessive conjunctions

(1) **Хотя/хоть** ‘although’

**Хотя** (= **несмотря на то, что**) он такой молодой, его избрали депутатом Государственной Думы

Although (= ‘despite the fact that’) he is so young he was elected a member of the State Duma

The main clause may be introduced by **а** ‘but’, **зато** ‘on the other hand’, **но** ‘but’, **однако** ‘however’:

Фёдор **хоть и** начальник, **но** всё-таки сосед (Zhukhovitsky)

Although Fedor is the boss, he is a neighbour just the same

(2) **Пусть** ‘even if, albeit’

**Пусть** (**пускай**) is characterized by colloquial or emotive nuances:

Люди всегда будут стремиться к вершинам, **пусть** даже с риском для жизни

People will always aim for the heights, albeit at risk to their lives

For concessive constructions with **ни** see **312**.

## 464 Comparative conjunctions

(1) **Как** ‘as, like’

(i) **Как** can be used to introduce a comparison:

Вершины колыхались, **как** гребни волн

The summits swayed **like** the crests of waves

(ii) For additional emphasis, **так же как** or **точно так же как** is used:

Их надо обучать этому, **так же как** их учат читать и писать

They have to be taught this, **just as** they are taught to read and write

(2) Бúдто/как бúдто/слóвно/тóчно ‘as if’

(i) Бúдто introduces statements which are seemingly at variance with reality:

Вцепи́лся гла́зами, бúдто следи́л за раздúмьями Дрóбышева (Granin)

He fastened his eyes on him as if he were following Drobyshev’s meditations

See 458 (3) for бúдто as an explanatory conjunction.

(ii) Как бúдто (бы)/слóвно/тóчно are used to compare similar situations:

Он перецелова́лся со все́ми, как бúдто уезжа́л на не́сколько лет

He exchanged kisses with everyone, as if he were going away for several years

Усну́ла так, как бúдто бы она́ что́-то соверши́ла (Zalygin)

She fell asleep as if she had accomplished something

Слу́шать его́ бы́ло тя́гостно, тóчно больно́го, кото́рый не жела́ет сознава́ть безнаде́жность сво́его поло́жения (Granin)

It was distressing to listen to him, like listening to a sick person who is reluctant to acknowledge the hopelessness of his situation

---

## 465 Temporal conjunctions. Introductory comments

---

(1) Some English temporal prepositions, e.g. ‘before’, ‘after’, ‘until’, ‘since’ etc., also function as conjunctions:

Preposition	Conjunction
<b>before</b> dinner	<b>before</b> he arrived
<b>after</b> the lesson	<b>after</b> the lesson finished
<b>until</b> Thursday	<b>until</b> we turned the corner
<b>since</b> May	<b>since</b> he left

(2) This does *not* apply, however, to their counterparts in Russian.

(i) The temporal prepositions are dealt with in 434 and 439:

## English

## Russian

**before** dinner**до** у́жина, **перед** ужи́ном**after** the lesson**после** уро́ка**until** Thursday**до** четве́ргá**since** May**с** ма́я

(ii) The equivalent conjunctions are as follows:

before

**до того́ как/пре́жде чем**

just before

**перед тем как**

after

**после того́ как**

until

**(до тех пор) по́ка . . . не**

since

**с тех пор как***Note*

English conjunctions such as ‘when’, ‘if’, ‘until’, ‘as soon as’ do not normally combine with the future tense, even when reference is to the future: ‘when he *arrives*’, ‘if he *gets* here in time’, ‘I’ll wait until you *finish/have finished*’, ‘I’ll leave as soon as the clock *strikes* 12’ etc. In Russian, however, future *meaning* is expressed by the future of the verb in such contexts: когдá он **приде́т** ‘when he arrives’, Подожду́, по́ка вы не **кóнчите** ‘I’ll wait until you finish’. (See also 264.)

#### 466 Temporal conjunctions which render ‘before’, ‘after’, ‘by the time that’, ‘until’, ‘since’

(1) До того́ как ‘before’

**До того́, как** мы вам рассказáли о Венесу́эле, вы, веро́ятно, и не подозрева́ли, что её назва́ние связа́но с назва́нием Вене́ции (Vvedenskaya)

Before we told you about Venezuela you probably had no idea its name was associated with that of Venice

*Note*

**Задóлго до того́ как** ‘long before’, **ещё до того́ как** ‘even before’.

(2) Перед тем как ‘just before’

Она зажгла свечи **перед тем как** гости сели за стол  
She lit the candles just before the guests sat down to table

*Note*

- (a) An *infinitive* may be used in the time clause if the subject of both clauses is the same: Она надела новое платье **перед тем как** спуститься на встречу с гостями 'She put on a new dress before going down to meet the guests'.
- (b) **Перед тем как** retains the meaning of close proximity to the event which is expressed by the preposition **перед** (see 439 (1) (iii)), and can combine with adverbs and adverbial phrases which stress immediacy: **в последний момент перед тем как** 'in the final moment before', **как раз перед тем как** 'just before', **непосредственно перед тем как** 'immediately before' etc.

(3) Прежде чем 'before'

**Прежде чем** is a synonym of **до того как** in strictly temporal meanings. However, *only* прежде чем may be used in contexts that denote:

(i) Precaution:

Каждый раз птицы улетают, **прежде чем** я успею подойти к ним  
(Aramilev)  
Every time the birds fly away before I have time to approach them

(ii) Inexpediency:

**Прежде чем** осуждать соседа, надо присмотреться к самому себе  
Before condemning one's neighbour, one should take a hard look at oneself

(iii) The dependence of the time clause on the main clause:

Надо самому что-то знать, **прежде чем** учить других  
You must know something yourself before teaching others

(4) После того как 'after'

**После того как** дети легли спать, она поставила самовар  
After the children had gone to bed she put on the samovar



Однажды **после того, как** отчим очень сильно его ударил, Володя даже обратился в милицию (*Semya*)

Once, after his stepfather had hit him with particular force, Volodya even went to the police

A perfective gerund may be used instead of a conjunction if the subject of the temporal clause is the same as that of the main clause: **Сдав (= после того как она сдала)** приёмные экзамены, она поступила в МГУ ‘Having passed the entrance examinations she enrolled at Moscow University’.

### (5) Пока́

**Пока́** means:

(i) ‘By the time’: **Пока́** приехали пожарные, пла́мя удало́сь потуши́ть ‘By the time the fire brigade arrived the fire had been put out’.

(ii) ‘While’:

(a) When two actions or processes are running parallel:

**Пока́** я занима́юсь, де́ти игра́ют в саду́  
While I am studying the children play in the garden

**Пока́** вы в пу́ти, помеще́ние прогре́ется (*Izvestiya*)  
While you are on your way the building will warm up

(b) When one action or process interrupts another:

**Пока́** мы собира́лись в доро́гу, ста́ло темно́  
While we were getting ready for the journey it grew dark

### Note

**Пока́** may be replaced by **в то вре́мя как** in these meanings. ‘While’ (= ‘whereas’) is rendered by **в то вре́мя как/тогда́ как**: Он за но́вый реж́им, **в то вре́мя как/тогда́ как** я решите́льно прòтив ‘He is in favour of the new regime, while I am emphatically against it’. **Пока́** is also used in ‘opportunist’ contexts: Переидём доро́гу, **пока́** маши́н нет ‘We’ll cross the road while it’s clear’.

### (6) Пока́ . . . не ‘until’

**Пока́ . . . не** can be used with future and past tense forms:

Я подожду́, пока́ он не **вернётся**  
I shall wait until he returns

Я подожда́л, пока́ маши́на не **вышла** на пло́щадь  
I waited until the car came out on to the square

*Note*

(a) The conventional negative in **пока́ . . . не**.

(b) Compare Жду, **когда́** вы ко́нчите ‘I am waiting for you to finish’.

(7) С тех пор как ‘since’

**С тех пор как** он живёт в но́вом до́ме, мы ни ра́зу не встреча́лись  
Since he has been living in his new house, we haven’t once met

---

## 467 Other conjunctions of time

---

(1) **Когда́** ‘when, as, whenever, after’

**Когда́** вы ко́нчите, бу́дем чай пить  
**When (after)** you have finished we shall drink tea

**Когда́** я возвра́щался до́мой, я встре́тил свое́го бы́вшего  
учи́теля  
**As I** was returning home I met my former teacher

(**Ка́ждый раз**), **когда́** маши́на оста́навливается, ребёнок  
просыпа́ется  
**Whenever** the car stops the baby wakes up

*Note*

(a) For English present tense rendered by a Russian future, see **264** and **465 Note**.

(b) A gerund may be used instead of **когда́** + finite verb if the subject of both clauses is the same: **Возвраща́ясь** до́мой, я встре́тил свое́го бы́вшего учи́теля ‘While returning home I met my former teacher’.

(c) **Когда́** is also used with **ждать** and **люби́ть**: Мы жда́ли, **когда́** кто́-нибудь из девча́т появи́тся на доро́ге (Nikolaev) ‘We were waiting for one of the girls to appear on the road’; — А тво́я-то, зна́чит, не о́чень люби́т, **когда́** ты пьёшь? (Rasputin) ‘So your old woman isn’t very keen on you drinking?’

(d) Constructions with **случай** 'case':

Иногда сообщают **о случаях, когда** водители нарушают правила из-за того, что дорожные знаки плохо видны (*Nedelya*)

Sometimes there are reports of drivers committing an offence because road signs are not easily visible

## (2) Как 'as, when'

(i) **Как** 'as, when' is not used independently in temporal meaning, **когда** being preferred (see above). Alternatively, **как** may be modified to **в то время как** 'while': **В то время как** докладчик говорил, я делал записки 'While the speaker was giving his talk I made notes'. The addition of **как раз** lends a sense of immediacy: Он резко обернулся **как раз в то время как** она открыла дверь (German) 'He turned abruptly just as she opened the door'.

(ii) **Как** is also used to denote suddenness/unexpectedness:

(a) A negative verb often appears in the main clause:

Не прожили и двух лет, **как** получили квартиру

They had spent less than two years there **when** they received a flat

in particular **не успеть** 'not to have time to, not to manage':

**Не успел** я добраться до двери, **как** свет погас

I hadn't managed to reach the door **when** the light went out

(b) The conjunction **едва** 'hardly' may also appear in the main clause:

**Едва** мы добрались до леса, как пошёл дождь

Hardly had we reached the forest **than** it began raining

(c) **Стоит, стоило** 'hardly, no sooner than' also appear:

**Стоило** ему свернуть на просёлочную дорогу, **как** мотор заглох

**No sooner** had he turned on to a country road **than** the engine cut out

*Note*

**Стоит/стоило** combine only with *perfective* infinitives.

## (3) Как вдруг 'when suddenly'

**Как вдруг** introduces an action which interrupts the action of the main clause:

Он застёгивал воротник, **как вдруг** оторвалась пуговица  
He was fastening his collar when suddenly a button came off

(4) Как только ‘as soon as’

**Как только** он вернётся, будем проверять работы  
As soon as he returns we shall correct the papers

**Как только** поблизости появляется враг, пингвины выскакивают из воды  
As soon as an enemy appears in the vicinity the penguins jump out of the water

(5) По мере того как ‘as, in proportion as’

The conjunction **по мере того как** ‘(in proportion) as’ links two actions or processes advancing in parallel (‘gradational’ meaning):

**По мере того как** поднималось солнце, день теплел (Bunin)  
As the sun rose the day was becoming warm

---

# The Particle

---

## 468 The particle. Introductory comments

---

(1) Particles are parts of speech which impart additional semantic nuances to other words, phrases or sentences, in most cases having no independent meanings of their own. Some, however, are polysemantic (see 473), precise translation often being possible only within a wider context.

(2) Particles are, in the main, a feature of colloquial Russian, where they are used to express a variety of emotions, subjective attitudes and assessments, imbuing individual speech with emotive colour and expressive spontaneity, sometimes in combination with other emotional intensifiers such as diminutives: **Ну, давайте, мужички́,** поднимем за сча́тье молодых (Shcherbakov) ‘Come on, chaps, let’s raise our glasses to the happiness of the young couple’.

(3) The effect of a particle may be varied or intensified by intonation. Thus, for example, **Петь так петь** ‘If we’re going to sing, let’s sing’ can, depending on the intonational pattern with which the phrase is uttered, denote an eagerness to sing or a reluctant acceptance of the inevitable.

(4) Some particles are formally identical with conjunctions (e.g. **а, да, же**), others with adverbs (e.g. **ещё, то́лько, уже́**) or pronouns (e.g. **то**). Some are of verbal origin (e.g. **ведь, мол, пусть, хоть**). There is considerable overlap between particles and certain interjections: **Ох уж** э́ти мне ро́дственники! ‘Oh, these relations!’, **Ну и** моро́з! ‘Quite a frost!’

**469 The position of the particle in the sentence**

---

- (1) Some particles always *precede* the word they qualify:

Да здравствует мир!	Long live peace!
Ну, поехали!	Right, let's go!
Пусть скажет	Let him tell us
Что за безобразие!	How disgraceful!

- (2) Others always *follow* the word they qualify:

Расскажи же	Come on, tell us all about it
Помолчи-ка	Do be quiet
Ты ли это сделал?	Was it you who did that?

Теперь-то я понял весь ужас своего положения  
It was now that I realized the full horror of my situation

- (3) Others still may stand at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence (or occasionally at the end of a sentence):

**Ведь** он ошибается *or* Он **ведь** ошибается  
He is wrong, you know

- (4) Some, e.g. **так**, may occupy a central position between two forms:

Пить **так** пить, — тихо сказала Галка (Gagarin)  
'If we're drinking, let's drink', said Galka softly

**470 The use of particles to impart different nuances of meaning**

---

A phrase such as, for example, 'Это не подлежит сомнению' 'That's not open to doubt', can combine with a number of different particles, each of which imparts to it a different emphasis. Thus:

- (1) **Ведь** may be used to introduce a self-evident fact or to issue a gentle reminder:

**Ведь** это не подлежит сомнению  
You know, that's not open to doubt

- (2) **Вот** cites the statement as an example:

**Вот** это не подлежит сомнению  
Now this, for instance, is beyond doubt

- (3) **Да** implies that the statement can be taken for granted:

**Да** это не подлежит сомнению  
Of course that is beyond doubt

- (4) **Же** introduces a more categorical emphasis:

Это **же** не подлежит сомнению  
Now that really isn't open to doubt

- (5) **-то** indicates that the subject has been referred to before:

Это-**то** не подлежит сомнению  
Now there's something that is beyond doubt

- (6) **Уж** rules out any possibility of contradiction:

**Уж** это не подлежит сомнению  
That is definitely not open to doubt

#### 471 Some of the principal meanings expressed by particles

Particles are used:

- (1) To **point out**:

<b>Вот</b> дом	Here is/There is the house
Дом <b>вон</b> там	The house is over yonder

- (2) To **define or make more precise**:

Почему <b>именно</b> он протестует?	Why <b>exactly</b> is he protesting?
<b>Ровно</b> в час	<b>Exactly</b> at one
Эти ботинки ему <b>как раз</b> впору	These shoes are <b>exactly</b> the right size for him

- (3) To **express approximation**:

Я <b>почти</b> готов	I am <b>almost</b> ready
Он <b>едва не</b> помешался	He <b>almost</b> went out of his mind
Она <b>чуть не</b> умерла с горя	She <b>very nearly</b> died of grief

*Note*

**Чуть не/едва не** combine mainly with verbs.

- (4) To **restrict or exclude**:

**Только он** смóжет решить эту проблему  
**Only he** will be able to solve this problem

*Note*

- (a) **Только** immediately precedes the word it qualifies: Он смóжет решить **только** эту проблему 'He will be able to solve only **this** problem'.  
(b) It may also be used idiomatically: А он **только** знает, что посмéивается 'All he can do is keep sniggering'.

---

## 472 Modal functions of particles

---

Particles also fulfil modal functions:

(1) **Desirability:**

Отдохну́ть <b>бы</b> !	<b>Oh for</b> a rest!
<b>Лишь бы</b> побóльше времени	<b>If only</b> there were more time

(2) **Command or exhortation:**

<b>Дава́й</b> остано́вимся!	<b>Let's</b> make a halt!
-----------------------------	---------------------------

(3) **Confirmation:**

— Ты лю́бишь о́перу?	'Do you like opera?'
— <b>Ещё бы!</b>	'I'll say!'

(4) **Negation:**

<b>Нет</b> , он <b>не</b> чита́ет кн́игу	<b>No</b> , he is <b>not</b> reading the book
Нет <b>ни</b> мину́ты вре́мени	There's <b>not</b> a spare moment

*Note*

- (a) The particle **не** 'not' *precedes* the word it qualifies, thus:

**Не он** чита́ет кн́игу  
**He is not the one** who is reading a book

**Не кн́игу** он чита́ет  
**It's not a book** he's reading

- (b) If the negated form is *not* a verb, the negative/genitive rule does *not* apply: cf. Я не ви́жу **стола́** 'I don't see a table' and Не **стол** я ви́жу 'It's not a table I see'. The negated word in such constructions (here, **стол**) bears the logical stress and is



pronounced with rising intonation.

- (c) ‘Yes’ is rendered as **нет** in a positive answer to a negative question: **Вы не любите кошек? Нет**, люблю! ‘Don’t you like cats?’ ‘Yes, I do!’

(5) **Interrogative:**

<b>Давно́ ли</b> он у́мер?	Is it <b>long</b> since he died?
Не <b>о́н ли</b> опозда́л?	Wasn’t it <b>he</b> who was late?
<b>Много́ ли</b> там было́ наро́ду?	Were there a <b>lot</b> of people there?
<b>Разве́</b> вы не зна́ете?	<b>Surely</b> you know?
<b>Неужели́</b> он прав?	<b>Surely</b> he can’t be right?

*Note*

- (a) **Ли** follows the emphasized word, which bears the logical stress. This also applies in reported questions, where **ли** follows the ‘operative’ element:

Он спроси́л, <b>знаю́ ли я</b>	He asked if I knew
<b>Я</b> не по́мню, <b>хоро́шая ли</b> это кни́га	I don’t remember if that is a good book

- (b) **Ли** may also express uncertainty (Не оши́бся **ли** он? ‘Could he have made a mistake?’) and may appear in rhetorical questions (Не сты́дно **ли** тебе́? ‘Aren’t you ashamed of yourself?’).
- (c) If **ли** is omitted from a question, the word order is *not* inverted: ‘Is he working?’ is rendered either as Рабо́тает **ли** он? or Он рабо́тает? (no inversion, and with rising intonation on the stressed syllable).
- (d) Both **разве́** and **неужели́** ‘really/surely not’ imply doubt in the reliability of a statement, or a conviction that the opposite is true. **Неужели́** is much more emphatic than **разве́**, and is commoner in spoken Russian. **Разве́** can also denote hesitancy: **Разве́** в кино́ сходи́ть? ‘**I wonder if** I should go to the cinema?’

- (6) **Direct speech:** the particles **де/дёска́ть/мол** indicate that direct speech is being quoted:

Пётр снисходи́тельно пожа́л плеча́ми: чего́, **мол**, морочи́ть го́лову (Abramov)  
Peter shrugged his shoulders in a condescending way, **as if to say**, ‘Pull the other one’

(7) **Probability or improbability:**

Ты, пожа́луй, прав                      You **may well** be right

<b>Вряд ли</b> он придёт	He's <b>hardly likely</b> to come
<b>Едва ли</b> можно согласиться с ним	One can <b>hardly</b> agree with him

(8) **Comparison or similarity:** **бúдто/как бúдто/как бы/слóвно** are used to compare similar events, actions etc.:

Мóжет быть, пыль пусти́л в глаза́? — Нет, **как бúдто** и взапра́вду у́ехал (Azhaev)

Maybe he was having us on? No, he **really does seem** to have gone

(9) **Emotional nuances:** **пря́мо, то́-то, так, уж** render emotional and expressive nuances (enthusiasm, resignation, determination, irony etc.):

<b>Пря́мо</b> стра́шно!	Simply terrifying!
<b>То́-то</b> были ра́дости!	We were <b>over the moon!</b>
Е́хать <b>так</b> е́хать!	If we're going, <b>let's</b> go!
<b>То́же</b> у́мник нашёлся!	<b>Some</b> genius we have here!
<b>Вот</b> онí, рабо́тники!	<b>Some</b> workers!

### 473 The meanings of individual particles

While some particles convey one meaning only, others are polysemantic.

(1) A

A is used:

(i) In prompting an answer:

Яблоко дать, <b>а</b> ?	I'll give you an apple, <b>shall I</b> ?
-------------------------	--

(ii) In making a request:

Помоги́ мне немно́жко, <b>а</b> ?	Give us a hand, <b>would you</b> ?
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

(iii) In stating the apparently obvious:

— Что же мне те́перь де́лать?	Whatever should I do now?
— <b>А</b> о́чень прóсто	<b>Why</b> , it's very simple

(iv) In a conversational exchange:

— Ми́тю мо́жно?	'Can I speak to Mitya?'
— <b>А</b> он на рабо́те	' <b>I'm afraid</b> he's at work'
— <b>А</b> когда́ он бу́дет?	' <b>And</b> when will he be in?'
— <b>А</b> кто его́ спра́шивает?	' <b>Now</b> , who is this asking for him?'

## (2) Было

**Было** is used to denote:

## (i) The immediate cancellation or reversal of an action:

Пёс поднял **было** голову и снова опустил (Abramov)  
The hound raised its head and lowered it again

## (ii) The reversal or abandonment, often through interruption, of an action or process which has just begun:

«Скóрая пóмощь» трóнулась **было** вперёд, но вахтёр вдруг суетливо замахал шофёру, и машина остановилась (Tendryakov)  
The ambulance **had begun** to move off, but the porter suddenly began waving to the driver in agitation and the vehicle stopped

## (iii) The abandonment of a projected action:

Он пóдьял **было** стакáн, но раздúмал  
He **was about** to pick up the glass, but changed his mind

*Note*

- (a) The verb in such constructions is almost invariably perfective. The only imperfective forms commonly found are **собирáться** and **хотéть**, which are followed by a *perfective* infinitive: Он собирáлся/хотéл **было** попросíть разрешéния вýйти, но испугáлся 'He was **on the point** of asking permission to go out, but took fright'.

- (b) **Было** also combines with perfective participles and gerunds:

У Тихоокеáнского побере́жья вно́вь наблюда́ют **исчезнувших было** се́рых кито́в (*Selskaya zhizn*)  
Grey whales, which **had been on the verge of extinction**, are again being sighted off the Pacific coast

**Останови́вшись было** у перекрёстка, шофёр всё-таки поёхал на красны́й свет  
**Having been on the point of stopping** at the crossroads, the driver jumped the lights instead

## (3) Ведь

**Ведь** is used:

## (i) To explain or justify:

Конéчно, уме́ю стреля́ть из винто́вки, служи́л **ведь** в а́рмии

Of course I can fire a rifle, **after all** I did do my army service

(ii) To prompt a desired answer:

**Ведь** ты пойдёшь в магази́н?

Now you are going to the shop, **aren't you**?

(iii) To issue a gentle reminder:

Ты **ведь** обеща́л

You did promise, **you know**

(iv) To administer a mild reproof:

— Кто́ это, «мы»?

— Но́вые ру́сские!

— Но **ведь** я — евре́йка, — засмеялась она́. (Popov)

‘Who do you mean, “us”?’

‘New Russians.

‘But I’m Jewish,’ she laughed.

(4) Вот

See also **471** (1). **Вот** can be used:

(i) In combination with interrogative words:

**Вот** где я живу́

**That's** where I live

**Вот** почему́ он ушёл

**That's** why he left

(ii) For contrast:

С Ва́ней я дружу́, а **вот** с Ни́ной ника́к не ла́жу

I'm friends with Vanya, but I **just** can't get on with Nina

(iii) In warnings:

**Вот** всем расскажу́ об э́том

**Now** I'm going to tell everyone about this

(iv) In expressing feelings such as amazement, indignation etc.:

**Вот** дура́к!

**What** an idiot!

(5) Да

**Да** is used:

(i) In self-exoneration:

**Да** я молчу́!

But I am being quiet!

(ii) In consolation:

**Да** ты не расстра́ивайся!

**Now** don't upset yourself!

(iii) In indefinite answers:

Да я не знаю!

Oh, I don't know!

(6) Ещё

**Ещё** is used to express:

(i) Outrage or indignation:

**Ещё** учёным назывáется!

And he calls himself a **scholar**!

(ii) Emphatic affirmation:

— Брат играёт в шахматы?

'Does your brother play chess?'

— **Ещё** как!

'**I'll say** he does!'

(iii) Emphatic denial:

— Вы голодны?

'Are you hungry?'

— **Ещё** чего́! Я то́лько  
что позавтракала!

'**Hungry**! I've only just  
had breakfast!

(iv) A warning or threat:

**Ещё** уволят!

You'll get the sack (**if you don't  
watch out**)!

(7) Же

(i) **Же** denotes categorical, insistent affirmation, often stressing the indisputability of a statement:

Ты **же** обеща́л!

But you promised!

(ii) When qualifying interrogative words, **же** imparts a peremptory nuance, implying astonishment, indignation, disapproval etc.:

Куда **же** ты идёшь?

Where do you think **you're** going?

Кто **же** так поступаёт?

Now whoever behaves like **that**?

(iii) The particle can also specify precisely a place or time denoted by an adverb or adverbial phrase, e.g. здесь **же** 'at this very spot':

Приеду́ сегодня **же**

I shall come **straightaway**

Там **же** живёт мой брат

**That's** where my brother lives

Тогда́ **же** было́ произнесено́ главно́е сло́во совреме́нной биоло́гии  
— ген (*Russia Today*)

It was precisely at **that** point that the most important word in modern biology was uttered — gene

(iv) With demonstrative pronouns **же** conveys meanings of identity or similarity:

Мы идём по **той же** улице  
We are walking down **the same** street

Он одёт в **такой же** пиджак  
He is dressed in the **same kind of** jacket

(v) **Же** imparts an insistent or impatient nuance to imperatives:

Стой **же** спокойно, наконец!      Now, **will** you stand still!

(vi) The set phrase **надо же!** expresses extreme indignation:

— Это он так написёл?! — громко возмущилась Попова. —  
Нахалюга! **Надо же!** . . . Ну **надо же!** (Shukshin)  
'He wrote that?!', shouted Popova indignantly. 'The impudent puppy!  
**What a nerve! What a confounded nerve!**

(8) И

(i) **И** may lend emphasis to the word which *follows* it:

Я **и** стараюсь!      I **am** trying!

(ii) It can also mean 'even/also/too/as well':

Он говорит **и** по-китайски      He speaks Chinese **as well**

(iii) In negative statements it means 'either':

**И** я не знаю      I don't know **either**

(9) -ка

(i) **-ка** may combine with the first-person perfective future of a verb to denote mild resolve:

Пойдú-**ка** домой      I **think I might** go home

(ii) It softens the force of an imperative, expressing:

(a) Gentle exhortation:

Дай-**ка** спички, Стас (Gagarin)  
'**Do** give me the matches, Stas'

- (b) Feelings of admiration, scorn etc.:

Смотрí-**ка**, какие кнѣжки он читáет!

**Just** look what books he is reading!

- (iii) Alternatively, it may contain a note of indignant challenge:

Постóй-**ка** под холóдным дúшем!

**Just you try** standing under a cold shower!

# (10) Ну

**Ну** is used:

- (i) In exclamations:

**Ну**, устáл!

**Am I** tired!

**Ну** и ну!

**Well, well!**

- (ii) In emphasis:

**Ну**, морóз!

**Quite** a frost!

## *Note*

Sometimes there is an element of sarcasm:

**Ну**, герóй!

**Some** hero!

- (iii) With the perfective future to denote grudging consent:

**Ну** пойдём, ёсли ты так хóчешь!

**All right**, let's go, if you are so keen!

- (iv) To express impatience:

**Ну**, хвáтит!

That's enough of **that!**

- (v) To express a peremptory imperative:

**Ну**, говорѣ!

**All right**, out with it!

# (11) -то

- (i) **-то** may be used to express diffidence, a reluctance to be categorical:

— Тут у вас вѣпить-**то** мóжно?

'Are you allowed to have a **drink** here?'

— Вообщѣ-**то** не полóжено

'**Actually** it's not normally allowed'

- (ii) It is frequently used to refer to something already mentioned:

'Yesterday I wasn't even **in** the shop . . .'

(iii) It may be the equivalent of English ‘I mean’:

'Is he registered as an alcoholic? Korolev, **I mean?**'

(iv) Emphatic use is common with adverbs:

**It was now** that I realized what was bothering him

The most terrible things are mines. **That's why** the look-outs are on 24-hour watch

(v) The particle may also be used to strengthen a negative:

It's not so simple **at that**

(12)  $Y_{\text{Ж}}$

**Y<sub>J</sub>** emphasizes the main emotive content of a statement, ranging from:

(i) **Confident assertion:**

**Now** there haven't been any wild deer in these parts for many years

(ii) Resigned acceptance of the inevitable:

**‘Oh let them play’**

(iii) Reassurance:

Don't worry, I won't forget!

(iv) **Condensation:**

That's a tall story!

(13) ХОТЬ

**Хоть** can denote:

(i) A minimum requirement or expectation:



**At least** comb your hair!

- Взять **хоть** тебя; ты ведь ни разу не пожаловался  
Take you, **for example**; now you haven't once complained

- По́едем **хоть** за́втра!      Let's go tomorrow, **for all**  
  **I care!**

- Рабо́ты у него́ **хоть отбавля́й!**      He's **up to his eyes** in work!

- А я **что**, возража́ю?                    I'm not objecting, **am I**?  
Ты́ **что**, с ума́ сошла́?                    Are you mad, **or what**?

- Ну **что́** вы! Я **вполнѣ**  
здорова!
- Now **come off it!** I'm perfectly fit!

(1) Particles may be aggregated to heighten emphasis:

- А ведь** Алексáндр считáлся одн́им из сильнѐйших игроко́в  
(*Russia Today*)

**And yet, you know,** Aleksandr was considered to be one of the very best players

- Сам не учился, **а ещё** специалистов критикует!  
He hasn't studied himself, **yet has the nerve** to criticize the experts!

- О гóсподи, — перекрестілась ба́ба, — молча́л **бы уж** (Belov)  
'Oh, my God', the woman said, crossing herself, 'you **really ought**

**to have** kept your mouth shut'

(iv) **Вот ещё/вот уж:**

— Надо бы его разыскать — сказа́л Пётр.

— **Вот ещё.** — нахму́рилась Лёля. — Бо́льше тебе де́лать не́чего? (Uvarova)

'I suppose we ought to go looking for him', said Petr.

'**Come off it**', said Lelya with a frown. 'Have you nothing better to do with your time?'

**Вот уж** не зна́ю.

I haven't the **foggiest**

(v) **Да и/да уж:**

А костёр горёл-горёл **да и** спали́л 1 700 гекта́ров ле́са (*Russia Today*)

And the bonfire burnt on and on and **went and** destroyed 1,700 hectares of woodland

**Да уж и** сама́-то хороша́! (Shcherbakov)

She's a fine one to talk!

(vi) **Ещё бы/ещё как:**

Весело на душе́! **Ещё бы:** сбы́лась мечта́ (Sobolev)

I'm overjoyed! **You bet**, my dream has come true

Согласи́тся? **Ещё как согласи́тся!**

Will he agree? **I'll say he will!**

(vii) **Как это:**

Оби́дится? **Как это** оби́дится!

Take offence? **Not a chance!**

(viii) **Не то что́бы уж:**

А Кла́вдия была́ **не то что́бы уж** краса́вица . . . (Shcherbakov)

And Claudia was **not exactly** what you might call a raving beauty . . .

(ix) **Ну и; ну уж; ну уж и; ну-ка; ну что ж:**

**Ну и** ба́ба! — бормота́л он (Grekoва)

'**What a** woman!', he murmured

**Ну уж** не сердись, я не хотела тебя обидеть  
**Come on**, don't get angry, I didn't mean to offend you

Ну уж и придумал!  
That's a tall story **if you like!**

**Ну-ка**, попробуй мою похідку, — сказав Кондрат (Shukshin)  
**‘Go on then, do my walk’**, said Kondrat

Правда, не стали ни поэтом, ни певцом . . . Ну что ж, не всем быть поэтами! (Kazakov)  
It's true I became neither a poet nor a singer . . . Oh well, not everybody can be a poet!

**(х) Так и; так уж:**

Я так и не по́нял                      I simply didn't understand

Не буду я **так уж** расхваливать эти фíльмы (*Russia Today*)  
I'm not **exactly** going to give these films rave notices

(xi) **Хоть бы/хотя бы/лишь бы:**

**Хоть бы** кто-нибудь мимо прошёл . . . (Gagarin)  
**If only** someone passed this way . . .

Она́ рада́ была́ бы́ любóму попу́тчику, **хотя́ бы** те́хнику Мишэ́лю (Zalygin)  
She would have been glad of any travelling companion, **even if** it was only the technician Michel

(xii) **Что же, что ж:**

**Что же** ты не целуешь меня? — сла́бо шéпчет она́ (Kazakov)  
'**Why ever** don't you kiss me?', she whispers faintly

(2) Particles may appear separately, at different points in the statement:

(i) **Ведь . . . же:**

Знаменитые спортсмены: боксёр Геннадий Шатков, конькобежец Борис Стенин — кандидаты наук. Но ведь это же единичны. Исключение (*Russia Today*)

There are famous sportsmen who have doctorates: the boxer Gennady Shatkov, the skater Boris Stenin. **But you know**, these are isolated exceptions

(ii) **Ведь . . . -то:**

Опозда́ем **ведь** на по́езд-**то**

**You know**, we're **going to go and** miss that train

(iii) **Ну . . . же:**

**Ну, ну**, — серди́то доба́вил он. — **Я же** сказа́л, что иду́  
(Proskurin)

'**All right**', he added angrily, 'I said I was coming, **didn't I?**'

— **Ну**, обнима́йтесь **же**

— **Come on then**, give each other a hug

(iv) **Уж . . . -то:**

Уйде́т. **Уж** о́н-**то** её зна́ет! (Koluntsev)

He'll leave. **After all**, he knows her **if anyone does!**

## (3) Feelings such as indignation can generate whole strings of particles:

**Ну да ведь и** дура́к **же** он!

**Well, really, you know**, the man is a complete idiot!

(4) The phrase **куда́ там** can appear either with or without **уж**:

Про́бовали её учи́ть программи́рованию — **куда́ там**. Си́нус  
пу́тала с интегрáлом (Grekoval)

They tried to teach her programming. **Some hope**. She confused sines  
with integrals

— Тепе́рь та́ких мужико́в и нет, как мой стари́к, — говори́т  
стару́ха.

— **Куда́ уж там!** (Rasputin)

'They don't make them like my old man any more', says the old woman.

'**No way!**'

---

# Word Order

---

## 475 Introductory comments

---

(1) The inflected nature of Russian allows greater flexibility of word order than is possible in English, where only rigid order of words differentiates the meaning of sentences such as ‘Ivan loves Masha’ and ‘Masha loves Ivan’.

(2) In Russian, by contrast, inflexional endings indicate the functions of words irrespective of their position in the sentence. Thus, the feminine noun accusative ending **-y** in **Мáшу** identifies Masha as the object of the verb both in **Ива́н лю́бит Ма́шу** ‘Ivan loves Masha’ and **Ма́шу лю́бит Ива́н** ‘It is Ivan who loves Masha’, the difference between the two sentences being one of emphasis rather than meaning.

(3) Word order in Russian, though flexible, is by no means arbitrary, however; any disruption of the accepted or ‘neutral’ order throws the displaced elements into sharp relief.

(4) Questions of word order are ideally considered within the wider context of a narrative, since the order of elements in a sentence is often determined by what has gone before (see **476**) (3) (ii)).

## 476 ‘New’ and ‘given’ information

---

(1) ‘New’ information

Each statement contains *new* information. Except in emotionally charged language, where different criteria apply (see 484), this *new* information appears at or towards the *end* of a statement in Russian, in contrast with English, where it usually appears at or near the *beginning*. Thus, in the sentence

**В Женёве состоялся фестиваль**                      A festival took place in Geneva

the festival (**фестиваль**), as the nucleus of the new information, occupies the *final* position, while the verb **состоялся** 'took place' is also new but of secondary significance. **В Женёве** 'in Geneva', as incidental or '*given*' information (see (2)), appears in *initial* position.

#### Note

- (a) The reverse order: **Фестиваль состоялся в Женёве** answers the question **Где состоялся фестиваль?** '**Where** did the festival take place?' and can be rendered as 'The festival took place in Geneva'.
- (b) In English, nouns which are the subject of *new* information are usually preceded by '*a*': 'There is **a** dog in the garden' (**В саду есть собака**). Nouns which are the subject of *given* information are usually preceded by '*the*': '**The** dog is in the garden' (**Собака в саду**).

#### (2) 'Given' information

Most statements contain an item or items of '*given*' information, that is, information which is either known or presumed to be known to the reader, has been mentioned before, can be assumed from the context, or is entirely incidental to the event being described. *Given* information is never the point of the utterance. It is often circumstantial, taking the form of an adverb of time, place or manner:

**Здесь удобно**                      It's comfortable **here**

**5 октября в Женёве в непринуждённой обстановке** начались переговоры по разоружению  
Disarmament talks began **in a relaxed atmosphere in Geneva on 5 October**

#### (3) 'Given' and 'new' information

- (i) The order 'given' information + 'new' information (with less essential preceding essential new items) is standard in a Russian sentence:

**От реформы цен никто не пострадает** (*Ogonek*)

No one will suffer from the price reform

In this example, price reform (**реформа цен**), as a matter of common knowledge ('given' information), occupies initial position, while **никто не пострадает** 'no one will suffer' is *new* information and appears in final position.

(ii) An utterance must be considered within its overall context. Thus, in the following extracts, the *new* information at the end of each successive sentence becomes the *given* information at the start of the next:

В то время я жил в маленьком северном городе. Город стоял на берегу реки. По реке плыли белые пароходы (Kazakov)  
At that time I lived in a small northern town. The town stood on the bank of a river. Down the river sailed white steamers

На площади возле решётки стоят столбы. К столбам прикреплены железные таблички. Возле этих табличек останавливаются автобусы (Soloukhin)

On the square close to the railing stand pillars. To these pillars are attached iron plaques. Buses stop close to these plaques

*Note*

The principle that 'given' information precedes 'new' allows the differentiation of ostensibly synonymous statements such as На столе ваза 'There is a vase on the table' (answering the question Что на столе? 'What is on the table?') and Ваза на столе 'The vase is on the table' (answering the question Где ваза? 'Where is the vase?').

(iii) Sometimes the relative status of items is implied by context. Thus, in

Я включил радио и услышал знакомую балладу. Пела Алла Пугачёва

I switched on the radio and heard a well-known ballad. It was being sung by Alla Pugacheva

the reference in the first sentence to a well-known ballad (*new* information) determines the status of **пела** 'it was being sung' as *given* information at the start of the second. **Алла Пугачёва**, as new information, appears in final position, since the point of the statement is to establish, not that someone was singing a ballad (that is known from the first sentence), but *who* was singing it.

## 477 Relative position of subject and verb

The order of the items in an utterance containing a subject and a verb depends on which is *new* information and which is *given*.

### (1) Subject + verb

In the following example the subject (**отец**) represents *given* information and precedes the verb (**умер**), which reports *new* information:

Отец умер	Father has died
-----------	-----------------

### (2) Verb + subject

The reverse order (verb + subject) is found in the following contexts; in each of them the *new* information is represented by the *noun*, which accordingly occupies *final* position:

#### (i) Impersonal statements, statements about the weather etc.:

Идёт дождь	It is raining
Дул свежий ветер	A fresh breeze was blowing

#### (ii) Statements in which the verb denotes existence, non-existence, coming into existence, beginning, continuing, finishing etc.:

<b>Наступила</b> осень	Autumn arrived
<b>Идёт</b> фильм	A film is on

**Проходит** день, **начинается** другой — ни звука (*Literaturnaya gazeta*)  
One day passes, another dawns; not a sound is heard

#### (iii) Statements in which the verb denotes occurrence, state, process etc.:

<b>Произошёл</b> несчастный случай	An accident happened
<b>Родилась</b> дочь	They have had a daughter
<b>У меня болит</b> горло	I have a sore throat
<b>Зазвонил</b> телефон	The phone began to ring

#### (iv) Constructions which involve the quotation of direct speech:

— Кто такая? — **спросил он** вполголоса (Grekoва)  
'Who is she?', he asked *sotto voce*



*Note*

This also applies to statements which indicate a **source of information**:  
 Как **сообщает ИТАР-ТАСС** . . . ‘As **ITAR-TASS reports** . . .’.

(v) Questions introduced by an interrogative word:

Где <b>живёт</b> <b>ва́ша</b> <b>до́чь</b> ?	Where does your daughter live?
Когда <b>открыва́ется</b> <b>магази́н</b> ?	When does the shop open?

*Note*

- (a) The order interrogative word + subject + predicate is compulsory with a *pronoun* subject (Почему́ **он** **пришёл**? ‘Why has he come?’), but optional with a *noun* subject (Куда́ **лети́т** **самолёт**/Куда́ **самолёт** **лети́т**? ‘Where is the aircraft flying to?’).
- (b) Questions which are *not* introduced by an interrogative word have the same order as a direct statement. Compare Она́ передала́ вам **письмо́** ‘**She** passed the letter to you’ and Она́ передала́ вам **письмо́**? ‘**Did she** pass the letter to you?’ Alternatively, **ли** may appear as second element after the operative word (or words) in the question: Передала́ **ли** она́ вам **письмо́**? ‘Did she pass the letter to you?’ Compare **Она́** **ли** вам передала́ **письмо́**? ‘Was it **she** who passed the letter to you?’, **Письмо́** **ли** она́ вам передала́? ‘Was it a **letter** she passed to you?’ The order operative word + **ли** is also used in reported questions: Он спроси́л, **передала́** **ли** она́ вам **письмо́** ‘He asked if she had passed the letter to you’.

## 478 Subject, verb, object

### (1) Subject + verb + object

The order subject + verb + object is encountered in the vast majority of sentences which contain these three elements:

<b>Пётр</b> <b>купи́л</b> <b>кни́гу</b>	Peter has bought a book
---	-------------------------

*Note*

- (a) A *pronoun* object may precede (or follow) the verb: — Я **вас** не понима́ю, товарищ генера́л (Grekoва) ‘I don’t understand you, comrade general’; Он **ниче́го** не ест ‘He isn’t eating anything’.
- (b) The order *subject* + *object noun* + *verb* places unusual emphasis on the verb (or object noun): Пётр Ната́шу **уважа́ет** ‘Peter **respects**

Natasha' (even though he may not, for example, **like** her); Мы **дом** купили 'We have bought a **house**'. This order is found predominantly in spoken Russian.

- (c) The order *subject + verb + object* is virtually mandatory when the accusative case of subject noun and object noun is the same as the nominative, since a reversal of the order would change the meaning, cf. Клімат **меняет** растительность 'The climate alters vegetation' and Растительность **меняет** климат 'Vegetation alters the climate', Мать **любит** дочь 'The mother loves her daughter' and Дочь **любит** мать 'The daughter loves her mother'.

(2) Object + verb + subject:

- (i) The order object + verb + subject

**Книгу купил Пётр**

in which the subject (**Пётр**) is central to the *new* information, is rendered in English by a passive construction ('The book **was bought** by Peter') or by a construction introduced by 'It is ...' ('**It is Peter** (and not someone else) who bought the book').

- (ii) This order is also common:

- (a) With an **inanimate** subject:

Меня разбудила **гроза́**  
I was awakened by a thunderstorm

А́нну Карéнину задави́л **пóезд**  
Anna Karenina was crushed by a train

- (b) In sentences which contain set phrases in which the noun component is **qualified**:

**Большо́е** значéние имéет учéбный процéсс  
The teaching process is of great significance

**Сущéственную** роль игра́ли профсою́зы  
A significant role was played by the unions

- (c) In impersonal constructions involving the third-person plural: Овощи уже **выгружа́ют** 'The vegetables are already being unloaded', Вас **прóсят** к телефо́ну 'You are wanted on the phone', Её **зову́т** Ната́лья 'She is called Natalya'.

(3) Object + subject + verb

Other variants in word order depend on the relative weighting of elements in a particular context. Thus, in the example

Эту работу Генеральный секретарь хорошо понимал (*Literaturnaya gazeta*)

This was work the General Secretary understood well

the *subject* (Генеральный секретарь) and *object* (эту работу) are *given* information, while *adverb* + *verb* (хорошо понимал) are *new* information and appear in final position.

## 479 The position of the adjective

### (1) The long (attributive) adjective

#### (i) An attributive adjective normally precedes the noun it qualifies:

И вот — один из **солнечных июньских дней** (Tokareva)

And now it was one of those sunny June days

#### Note

- (a) See **484** (1) for stylistic variants.
- (b) The attributive adjective may follow the noun in menus, stock lists etc. (кофе натуральный ‘real coffee’, ромашка садовая ‘garden camomile’) and where the noun is generic (Елена — девушка умная ‘Elena is an intelligent girl’).
- (c) The long adjective follows the noun when used in **predicative** meaning: Он очень **молодой** (or **молод**) ‘he is very young’.

#### (ii) Contrary to English practice, circumstantial information may be placed in parenthesis between the attributive adjective and the noun:

Они жили в большóm, с тремя этажами и со многими окнами, особняке

They lived in a large detached house **with three floors and many windows**

#### (iii) As in English, the adjective may follow the noun, standing in apposition to it and separated from it by a comma:

На náрах лежал полушубок, **новенький**, очень **нарядный** (Bogomolov)

On the bunk lay a sheepskin coat, brand-new, very smart

### (2) The short adjective

A short adjective normally follows the noun, as its predicate.

*Note*

See **484** (1) (i) for stylistic variants and **359** (3) (ii) note (a) for the position of short-form perfective passive participles.

---

## **480 The position of the adverb**

---

As a class which tends to convey *less essential* rather than *new* information, adverbs more often than not *precede* the verb. The adverb is usually positioned next to the verb it qualifies; in other positions it is thrown into sharp relief, since it then normally conveys new, not given, information and moves towards the end of the statement.

(1) Adverbs and adverbial phrases of time

(i) Adverbs of time usually *precede* the verb:

Он **всегда́** ошиба́ется      He always gets it wrong  
Он **ещё не** просну́лся      He has not woken up yet

Вы **долго́** жда́ли? — спроси́л Кривору́чко (Rybakov)  
‘Did you have long to wait?’, asked Krivoruchko

(ii) In descriptions of incidents and events, the adverb of time is usually in initial position, followed by verb + subject, which jointly convey the *new* information:

**Вдруг** разда́лся вы́стрел (Rybakov)  
Suddenly a shot rang out

(iii) However, adverbs and adverbial phrases that convey essential *new* information appear in *final* position: e.g. the question **Когда́** экипа́жи соверши́ли пе́рвый совме́стный полёт? ‘**When** did the crews make the first joint flight?’ can be answered as follows:

Экипа́жи соверши́ли пе́рвый совме́стный полёт **в ию́ле 1975 го́да**  
The crews carried out the first joint flight in July 1975

(2) Adverbs and adverbial phrases of place

(i) Adverbs and adverbial phrases of place also normally appear in initial position as incidental or *given* information, preceding the *new* information conveyed either by the subject alone or by the verb +

subject:

**В городе** два театра

There are two theatres **in the town**

**Из служёбного здания** вышел вы́сокий вя́лый челове́к (Grekoва)

A tall sluggish-looking man left **the service building**

(ii) However, adverbs of place that report *new* information appear in *final* position: e.g. the question **Где** располо́жена Кра́сная пло́щадь? ‘Where is Red Square situated?’ can be answered as follows:

Кра́сная пло́щадь располо́жена **в це́нтре Москвы́**

Red Square is situated in the centre of Moscow

(3) Adverbs and adverbial phrases of manner and degree

(i) Adverbs of manner and degree in **-о/-е** usually precede the verb or adjective:

Он **хорошо́** говори́т

He speaks well

— А вы отку́да? — **дружелю́бно** спроси́л Тёткин (Grekoва)

‘And where are you from?’, asked Tetkin amicably

Она́ **и́скренне** ра́да нам

She is genuinely glad to see us

Compare also adverbs of the type по-дру́жески: Он **по-дру́жески** пожа́л мне ру́ку ‘He shook my hand in a friendly manner’. However, adverbs of nationality and language normally *follow* the verb: Он понима́ет **по-ру́сски** ‘He understands Russian’.

(ii) A number of other adverbs of manner and degree, e.g. **во́все не** ‘not at all’, **едва́** ‘barely’, and analogous prepositional phrases also precede the verb, cf.:

Она́ **в спёшке** забы́ла подня́ть кни́гу

In her haste she forgot to pick up the book

## 481 Sentences that contain more than one adverb or adverbial phrase

The normal sequence for different types of adverb and adverbial phrase

appearing within the same sentence is as follows:

- 1 adverbs/adverbial phrases of *time*
- 2 adverbs/adverbial phrases of *place*
- 3 other types of adverb/adverbial phrase (*manner, cause* etc.):

**Среди но́чи к передне́му кра́ю оборо́ны тайко́м** подкра́лся  
солда́т-разве́дчик

In the middle of the night a reconnaissance scout stealthily crept up  
to the front line

**Ка́ждый час в на́шей стране́ от боле́зни се́рдца** умира́ет 80 челове́к  
(*Ogonek*)

Every hour 80 people in our country die of heart disease

**Неда́вно в Москве́** проводи́лся кинофестива́ль  
A film festival was held recently in Moscow

**В Росси́и бы́стро** вы́росли города́ и се́ла  
Towns and villages sprang up quickly in Russia

---

## 482 The position of the noun or pronoun in impersonal constructions

---

The accusative or dative noun or pronoun normally occupies initial position in impersonal expressions, with *new* information in final position:

<b>Бра́та</b> лихора́дит	My brother is feverish
<b>Дом</b> зажгло́	The house caught fire
<b>Та́нюшке</b> во́семь лет	Tanyushka is eight years old
<b>Мне</b> хо́лодно	I feel cold
<b>Ей</b> пришло́сь бежа́ть	She had to run
<b>Нам</b> нельзя́ бы́ло кури́ть	We were not allowed to smoke

### Note

The same order applies to constructions with **пра́виться/по-** and with **ну́жен, нужна́, ну́жно, нужны́**: **Взро́слым** понравился фильм ‘The adults liked the film’, **Студе́нту** нужны́ де́ньги ‘The student needs money’. Reversal of this order throws the noun or pronoun into sharp relief: Фильм понравился **взро́слым** (, **но не де́тям**) ‘The **adults** liked the film (, but the **children** didn’t)’; Де́ньги нужны́ **мне** (, **а не ей**) ‘I need the money (, and she **doesn’t**)’.

### 483 The position of particles in the sentence

For the position of particles see 469.

### 484 Word order in expressive styles

A departure from neutral word order may create an expressive, emotionally charged style which is particularly characteristic of *spoken* Russian. Most parts of speech are involved:

#### (1) Adjectives

(i) In expressive styles short predicative adjectives may *precede* the noun, while in neutral style they *follow* the noun:

**Лёгок** вопрос, **незначительна** фигура студента (Rybakov)

The question is simple, the figure of the student insignificant (cf. neutral word order Вопрос лёгкий, фигура студента незначительна)

(ii) This also applies to short-form participles:

**Решён** вопрос о выходе диспетчеров на пенсию в возрасте 55 лет (*Literaturnaya gazeta*)

The question of retirement for air traffic controllers at age 55 has been resolved (cf. neutral order Вопрос решён)

(iii) Conversely, attributive adjectives may *follow* the noun in expressive styles, whereas in neutral style they precede it:

В те дни жара в Москвѣ стояла **невероятная** (V. Voinovich)

At the time the heat in Moscow was unbelievable

Compare also displacement of the adjective in:

— Да, **комфортабельной** эту машину не назовёшь (Grekoval)

‘No, you wouldn’t exactly call this vehicle comfortable’

(iv) Another expressive device is to place the verb between the attributive adjective and the noun:

**Удачная** была охота! That **was** a successful hunt!

## (2) Verb + subject

In expressive styles, *new* information may precede *given*, a reversal of neutral order:

У меня **голова́ бо́лит**

I have a headache (cf. neutral У меня бо́лит голова́)

Кто звони́л? **Ма́рина звони́ла**

Who rang? Marina rang (cf. neutral Звони́ла Ма́рина)

## (3) Adverbs

(i) The order of adverbs/adverbial phrases may be reversed in expressive styles:

Хо́лодно се́годня

It is cold today (cf. neutral Се́годня хо́лодно)

Ста́льной зу́б сверка́л у него́ во рту (Rybakov)

A steel tooth glittered in his mouth (cf. neutral У него́ во рту сверка́л ста́льной зу́б)

(ii) Compare also the displacement of adverbs in their function as introductory words:

Смотре́ть э́тот филь́м **стра́шно и сты́дно** (*Ekran detyam*)

It is terrible and embarrassing to see this film (cf. neutral Стра́шно и сты́дно смотре́ть э́тот филь́м)

## (4) Pronouns

The pronoun may *follow* the predicate in expressive styles, often with a concomitant change of emphasis:

— Хоро́шая пе́сня, — сказа́л Ма́рк.

— То́лько **поёте вы́** её пло́хо, заме́тила Со́фья Алекса́ндровна (Rybakov)

‘Nice song’, said Mark.

‘Except that **you** don’t sing it very well’, remarked Sofia Aleksandrovna (cf. neutral вы пло́хо её поёте)

Что сде́лал **ты́**?

What did **you** do? (cf. neutral Что ты сде́лал?)



---

# Glossary

---

The glossary contains brief definitions of the most important grammatical terms used in the book. Additional information may be obtained through the subject index.

**Acronyms** — words formed from the initial letters of other words: **вуз** from **вы́сшее уче́бное заведе́ние** ‘higher educational institution’ (HEI).

**Adjectival nouns** — words that have the form of adjectives but function as nouns: **сто́ловая** ‘dining room’.

**Adjectives** — parts of speech that qualify or describe a noun or pronoun: **большо́й** дом ‘a large house’ (long, attributive, form), она́ **голо́дна́** ‘she is **hungry**’ (short, predicative, form).

**Adverbs** — parts of speech that modify a verb: он бежа́л **бы́стро** ‘he ran **quickly**’, an adjective: **неожи́данно** хоро́ший ‘**unexpectedly** good’, or another adverb: **кра́йне** ме́дленно ‘**extremely** slowly’.

**Agent nouns** — nouns denoting persons who perform an action: **писа́тель** ‘a writer’.

**Agreement** — convention that (a) adjectives, pronouns and numerals should be in the same *case* as the noun they qualify: они живу́т в **двух большо́их пала́тках** ‘they live in two large tents’; (b) adjectives, nouns, pronouns and verbs should share the same *gender*: **ста́рая соба́ка спала́** ‘the old dog was asleep’, and *number* (singular or plural): **э́тот ма́льчик бы́л до́ма** ‘**this boy was** at home’, **э́ти ма́льчики бы́ли до́ма** ‘**these boys were** at home’.

**Alphabetisms** — words comprising initial capital letters which are pronounced as letters of the alphabet: РФ [эр-эф] (Российская Федерация) ‘RF’ (Russian Federation) or as words: ВИЧ [вич] (вирус иммунодефицита человека) ‘HIV’.

**Apposition** — a situation in which a series of nouns or noun phrases denote the same object or person and thus share the same grammatical case: она замужем за моим братом Иваном ‘she is married to my brother Ivan’.

**Aspect** — a grammatical feature of the Russian verb that distinguishes repeated or durative actions (expressed by the **imperfective** aspect: он пьёт ‘he drinks’, она писала ‘she was writing’) from actions that denote initiation (он заплакал ‘he began weeping’), conclusion or result (она заведёт часы ‘she will wind up the clock’), or short duration (дети поспали ‘the children had a nap’).

**Attributive adjective** — the full (long) form of an adjective, usually appearing before the noun, qualifying it and agreeing with it in gender, case and number: она добра к младшему брату ‘she is kind to her younger brother’, она довольна прилежными учениками ‘she is pleased with the diligent pupils’.

**Augmentative nouns** — suffixed nouns that denote largeness: рыб-ина ‘a large fish’.

**Cardinal numerals** — the basic numbers denoting quantity: один дом ‘one house’, два карандаша ‘two pencils’, etc.

**Case** — the form of a noun, pronoun or adjective that shows its grammatical relationship to other words in the sentence: он смотрит на мою сестру ‘he is looking at my sister’ (accusative case), она сидела в самом удобном кресле (prepositional/locative case) ‘she was sitting in the most comfortable armchair’, etc.

**Collective nouns** — nouns that denote a collection or group of beings or things: скот ‘cattle’, листва ‘foliage’.

**Comparative degree** — the second degree of comparison in the series ‘positive’ (e.g. умный ‘clever’), ‘comparative’ (e.g. более умный ‘cleverer’) and ‘superlative’ (e.g. самый умный ‘cleverest’).

**Compound** — a word created by joining together two or more other words or forms: книголюб ‘book-lover’, виноградосоковыжималка ‘grape-juice squeezer’.

**Conditionals** — verb forms that express conditions or hypotheses: если бы я знал, я сказал бы вам ‘if I knew, I would tell you’.

**Conjunctions** — parts of speech that join words, phrases or clauses: собаки **и** кошки ‘dogs **and** cats’, молодой, **но** опытный ‘young **but** experienced’, голоден, **потому что** не завтракал ‘hungry **because** he hasn’t had breakfast’, etc.

**Declension** — the process of adding endings to the stems of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals to indicate their grammatical relationship to other words in the sentence: цвет кров-**и** ‘the colour of blood’, разошлись по разн-**ым** причин-**ам** ‘separated for various reasons’, обедал с пять-**ю** друзь-**ями** ‘dined with five friends’.

**Diminutives** — suffixed forms of nouns and adjectives that denote smallness: бледн-**енькое** лич-**ико** ‘a pale little face’.

**Direct object** — noun or pronoun that denotes the person or thing affected by the action of a verb: она показывает **его** ‘she punishes **him**’, он читает **книгу** ‘he is reading **a book**’.

**Fleeting vowels** — vowels that interrupt a sequence of consonants but are lost in declension: рын**о**к ‘market’ (genitive рын**ка**).

**Gender** — the classification of words, in accordance with their endings, as masculine (дом ‘house’, музей ‘museum’ [zero endings]), feminine (машин-**а** ‘car’, недел-**я** ‘week’) or neuter (окн-**о** ‘window’, пол-**е** ‘field’).

**Gerund (verbal adverb)** — indeclinable verb form that fulfils an adverbial function, replacing a co-ordinate or adverbial clause: он сидит, чит**ая** ‘he sits **reading**’ (= and reads), прочит**ав** книгу, я поставил её на полку ‘**having read** (= after I had read) the book I put it on the shelf’.

**Imperative** — verb form used to express commands: Слу**шай!** ‘**Listen!**’

**Imperfective verb** — a verb that denotes a past, present or future action (a) in progress: она вел**а** машину ‘she **was driving** a car’, я б**у**ду отды**х**ать ‘I **will be relaxing**’ or (b) repeated: он звон**и**т ей раз в недел**ю** ‘he **rings** her once a week’.

**Impersonal constructions** — constructions that have no subject: х**о**лод**но** ‘it is cold’, ему повезл**о** ‘he is in **luck**’, говор**я**т, что ‘**it is said** that’, etc.

**Indefinite numerals** — numerals that denote an imprecise quantity: мн**о**го денег ‘**a lot of** money’, н**е**сколь**к**о человек ‘**a few** people’.

**Indefinite pronouns** — pronouns that refer to unspecified persons or things: **кто-то** ‘someone’, **что-нибудь** ‘something, anything’.

**Indirect object** — person or object indirectly affected by an action, e.g. benefiting from it: он подарил куклу девочке ‘he gave the doll [direct object] **to the little girl** [indirect object]’.

**Infinitive** — the basic form of a verb: **читать/прочитать** ‘to read’.

**Intransitive verbs** — verbs that do not require an object in order to express their meaning: он лежал на полу ‘he **was lying** on the floor’.

**Modals** — forms that denote necessity, possibility or impossibility: он должен работать ‘he **must** work’, ей нужно отдыхать ‘she **needs** to relax’, он не мог ответить на вопрос ‘he **could not** answer the question’.

**Mood** — the manner in which the action of a verb expresses itself, allowing the action to be judged as real or unreal. Of the four moods, the **indicative** states a fact: он копал в саду ‘he **was digging** in the garden’, the **imperative** expresses a command: **Сотри** с доски! ‘**Clean** the board!’, the **conditional/subjunctive** expresses a state, event or action as possible, conditional or desirable: **скорее бы лето** ‘roll on summer’, and the **infinitive** denotes the action of the verb in its most abstract form, without relation to person, time or number: **читать** ‘to read’.

**Morphology** — the study of linguistic forms: the declension of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals, the conjugation of verbs, etc.

**Mutation** — sound changes caused by adjacent morphemes or words: **т:ч** in лететь ‘to fly’/лечу ‘I am flying’.

**Nouns** — words that name a person, thing or quality: **отец** ‘father’, **стол** ‘table’, **любовь** ‘love’.

**Number** — grammatical category that distinguishes whether a noun is singular (**книга** ‘book’) or plural (**книги** ‘books’).

**Numerals** — figures or words used to represent numbers, e.g. **три (3)** ‘three’.

**Oblique case** — any case form of a noun, pronoun or adjective except for the nominative.

**Ordinal numerals** — numerals that express order or position in a series and are adjectival in form: **третий** урок ‘**the third** lesson’.

**Palatalization** — the softening of a consonant by raising the centre of the tongue towards the hard palate during pronunciation. A palatalized or soft consonant is indicated by a following soft sign (ь), я, е, и, ё or ю: мать ‘mother’, пятёрка ‘a five’, люди ‘people’.

**Particles** — indeclinable words that impart emotive or expressive nuances of meaning to other words, phrases or whole sentences: Что же ты делаешь? ‘whatever are you doing?’, Уж придумал! ‘Now pull the other one!’.

**Participles** — verb forms that take the form of adjectives and (a) replace relative clauses: Мальчик, пишущий письмо (= который пишет письмо) ‘A boy writing a letter (= who is writing a letter)’, Дача, построенная соседями (= которую соседи построили) ‘A country cottage built by the neighbours’ (= which the neighbours built), or (b) function as predicates: Вопрос решён ‘The question has been solved’.

**Partitive genitive** — a genitive that indicates that only part of a substance is involved in an action or state: она выпила молока ‘she drank some milk’.

**Passive constructions** — constructions in which the grammatical subject is the object of the action: водка делается из картофеля ‘vodka is made from potatoes’, он был спасён пожарником ‘he was saved by a fireman’.

**Perfective verb** — verb that describes a completed action in the past (она подписала письмо ‘she signed the letter’) or anticipates its completion in the future (я закрою окно ‘I will close the window’).

**Possessive pronouns** — pronouns that denote possession: мой телефон ‘my telephone number’, её компьютер ‘her computer’.

**Predicate** — that part of a sentence or phrase that conveys information about the subject: отец болен ‘father is ill’, дети пели песню ‘the children were singing a song’, мой брат стал солдатом ‘my brother became a soldier’.

**Prefix** — form added to the beginning of a word to create a new word with a different meaning: перечитать ‘to reread’, спуск ‘descent’ or a different aspect: написать ‘to write’.

**Prepositions** — words that precede a noun (or pronoun), expressing its relation to another word in the sentence: она из России ‘she is from Russia’, я разговаривал с гостями ‘I was conversing with the guests’.

**Pronouns** — words used instead of nouns, to avoid repetition: где Пётр? Вот **он** ‘Where is Peter? There **he** is’.

**Reflexive constructions** — constructions in which subject and object refer to the same person or thing: он **моётся** ‘he **washes (himself)**’.

**Reflexive pronouns** — pronouns that refer to the same person as the subject of the sentence: он доволен **собой** ‘he is pleased with **himself**’, она **смóтрит** на **себя** в зёркало ‘she looks at **herself** in the mirror’.

**Relative pronouns** — pronouns that refer back to a preceding noun (the antecedent): де́вочка, **ко́торая** сдала́ экза́мен ‘the girl **who** passed the examination’, кнѝга, **ко́торую** все чита́ют ‘a book (**that**) everyone is reading’.

**Root** — an irreducible element of language from which other words are formed: **-да-** as in **да́ть** ‘to give’, **изда́тель** ‘publisher’, **прода́жа** ‘sale’, etc.

**Semantics** — the study of the meanings of words, morphemes, word groups, etc.

**Stem** — the root of a word, to which prefixes, suffixes and endings may be added: **-сух-** as in **за́суха** ‘drought’, or the root and its variants: **-зр-** as in **зрѝтельный** ‘visual’/**-зер-** as in **зе́ркало** ‘mirror’/**-зор-** as in **обзо́р** ‘survey’, etc.

**Stump compounds** — abbreviations based on the abridged form of one or more words: **драгмета́лл** (from **драгоце́нный мета́лл**) ‘precious metal’, **спецхра́н** (from **специа́льное храни́лище**) ‘special storage area’.

**Subject** — the person about whom or the thing about which the sentence conveys information: **пóезд** остано́вился ‘**the train** stopped’, **её́ сестра́** вы́шла за́муж ‘**his sister** got married’, **мы** гото́вы ‘**we** are ready’.

**Subjunctive mood** — a verb structure that presents a state, event or act as something desired: он **хо́чет, что́бы я голосо́вал** ‘he wants **me to vote**’, or hypothetical: я не по́мню, **что́бы он** хоть раз **оши́бся** ‘I don’t remember **him** even once **making a mistake**’.

**Suffixes** — forms added to the end of a word or stem to create a new word: социа́ли́зм ‘socialism’.

**Superlative degree** — *see* Comparative degree

**Syntax** — the set of rules that determines the grammatical arrangement of words in a sentence to show their relationship to each other (e.g. the

relationship of verbs, adjectives and prepositions to the case of the noun they govern: **подражать** ‘to imitate’ + dative, **довóлен** ‘satisfied’ + instrumental, **из** ‘from’ + genitive, etc.).

**Tense** — verb form that denotes the time of an action (past, present or future): онѝ **выиграли** ‘they won’, я **слу́шаю** ‘I am listening’, мы **начнём** ‘we will begin’.

**Transitive verbs** — verbs which can express their meaning only through government of a direct object: он **снимáет пальтó** ‘he takes off his coat’.

**Transliteration** — representation of the spelling of a word using the letters of a different alphabet: **perestroika** (transliteration of перестрóйка ‘restructuring’), **Solzhenitsyn** (transliteration of Солжени́цын).

**Unvoiced (voiceless) consonants** — consonants pronounced without vibration of the vocal cords: **п, к, с, т, ф, ш** and others.

**Verbs** — parts of speech that denote an action (он **печа́тает** ‘he is typing’) or state (она́ **жи́ла** на ю́ге ‘she lived in the south’).

**Voiced consonants** — consonants pronounced with vibration of the vocal cords: **б, г, з, д, в, ж** and others.

---

# Bibliography

---

## Dictionaries

---

### *Russian monolingual*

Chernyshev, V. I. et al. (eds), *Словарь современного русского языка*, 17 vols, Академия наук, Moscow, 1950–65.

Evgen'eva, A. P. et al. (eds), *Словарь русского языка*, 4 vols, 2nd edn, Русский язык, Moscow, 1983.

Ledenev, S. D., et al., *Большой словарь русского языка*, Дрофа, Moscow, 1998.

Levashov, E. A., (ed.), *Новые слова и значения. Словарь-справочник по материалам прессы и литературы 80-х годов*, Дмитрий Буланин, St Petersburg, 1997.

Ozhegov, S. I., Shvedova, N. Yu., *Толковый словарь русского языка*, 4th edn, Азбуковник, Moscow, 1997.

Sklyarevskaya, G. N. (ed.), *Толковый словарь русского языка конца XX века*, Фолио-Пресс, St Petersburg, 1998.

### *Russian–English/English–Russian*

Ozieva, A. et al., *Russian–English, English–Russian Dictionary*, HarperCollins, Glasgow, 1994.

Wheeler, M., Unbegaun, B. and Falla, P., eds, *The Oxford Russian Dictionary: Russian–English, English–Russian*, further rev. edn, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1986.



*Special-purpose*

- Avanesov, R. I. (ed.), *Орфоэтический словарь русского языка*, 3rd edn, Русский язык, Moscow, 1987.
- Efremov, T. F. and Kostomarov, V. G., *Словарь грамматических трудностей русского языка*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1986.
- Kovalenko, E. G. (ed.), *Новый словарь сокращений русского языка*, ЭТС, Moscow, 1995.
- Ledenev, S. D. et al., *Большой словарь русского языка*, Дрофа/Русский язык, Moscow, 1998.
- Lopatin, V. V. et al., *Орфографический словарь русского языка*, 36th edn, Русский язык, Moscow, 1996.
- Treshnikov, A. F. (principal ed.), *Географический энциклопедический словарь*, Советская энциклопедия, Moscow, 1983.
- Tsyganenko, G. P., *Словарь служебных морфем русского языка*, Радянська школа, Kiev, 1982.
- Zaliznyak, A. A., *Грамматический словарь русского языка*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1977.

---

**Grammars**

---

- Dunn, John, and Khairov, Shamil, *Modern Russian Grammar*, Taylor and Francis, 2009.
- Harrison, W., and le Fleming, S., *Intermediate Russian Grammar*, University of Wales Press, Cardiff, 2000.
- Miloslavsky, I. G., *Краткая практическая грамматика русского языка*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1987.
- Murray, John, and Smyth, Sarah, *Intermediate Russian: A Grammar and Workbook*, Routledge, London, 2001.
- Shvedova, N. Yu. and Lopatin, V. V., *Краткая русская грамматика*, 2nd rev. edn, Русский язык, Moscow, 1990.
- Shvedova, N. Yu. et al. (eds), *Русская грамматика*, 2 vols, Наука, Moscow, 1982.
- Timberlake, Alan, *A Reference Grammar of Russian*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2004.

**Other books on language**

---

- Amiantova, E. I. et al., *Сборник упражнений по лексике русского языка*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1989.
- Barykina, A. N., Dobrovol'skaya, V. V. and Merzon, S. N., *Изучение глагольных приставок*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1979.
- Barykina, A. N., and Dobrovol'skaya, V. V., *Как образуются прилагательные*, Златоуст, St Petersburg, 2002.
- Bel'dyushkin, V. S. et al., *Adverbial Relations in Russian and Their English Equivalents*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1988.
- Belyakova, N. N., *Как строится русский глагол?*, Златоуст, St Petersburg, 2000.
- Bivon, R., *Element Order* (Studies in the Modern Russian Language 7), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1971.
- Borras, F. M. and Christian, R. F., *Russian Syntax*, 2nd edn, The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1979.
- Bratus, B. V., *The Formation and Expressive Use of Diminutives* (Studies in the Modern Russian Language 6), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1969.
- Comrie, B., Stone, G. and Polinsky, M., *The Russian Language in the 20th Century* (2nd rev. edn of Comrie, B. and Stone, G., *The Russian Language Since the Revolution*), Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1996.
- Cubberley, P., *Handbook of Russian Affixes*, Slavica Publishers, Columbus, Ohio, 1994.
- Dulichenko, A. D., *Русский язык конца XX столетия*, Otto Sagner, Munich, 1994.
- Gorshkov, M., and Tikhonova, N. (eds), *Россия: Новая социальная реальность*, Наука, Moscow, 2004.
- Graudina, L. K., *Вопросы нормализации русского языка*, Наука, Moscow, 1980.
- Graudina, L. K., Itskovich, V. A. and Katlinskaya, L. P., *Грамматическая правильность русской речи*, Наука, Moscow, 1976.
- Harrison, W., *Expression of the Passive Voice* (Studies in the Modern Russian Language 4, in one volume with J. Mullen, *Agreement of the Verb-Predicate with a Collective Subject*), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1967.

- Kaidalova, A. I. and Kalinina, I. K., *Современная русская орфография*, Высшая школа, Moscow, 1983.
- Karaulov, Yu. N. (ed.), *Русистика сегодня, функционирование в языке: лексика и грамматика*, Наука, Moscow, 1993.
- Klepko, V., *A Practical Handbook on Stress in Russian*, Dover Publications, New York, 1977.
- Kokhtev, N. N. and Rozental', D. E., *Популярная стилистика русского языка*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1984.
- Kostomarov, V. G., *Языковой вкус эпохи*, 3rd edn, Златоуст, St Petersburg, 1999.
- Kovalenko, A. G., et al., (eds), *Новые сокращения в русском языке*, ЭТС, Moscow, 1999.
- Kovalenko, B., Egorova, I., and Goreichuk, L., *Учить и выучить*, 4th edn, Златоуст, St Petersburg, 2002.
- Krylova, O. and Khavronina, S., *Word Order in Russian Sentences*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1976.
- Lopatin, V. V. (ed.), *Правила русской орфографии и пунктуации: полный академический справочник*, ЭКСМО, Moscow, 2007.
- Miloslavsky, I. G., *Зачем нужна грамматика?*, Просвещение, Moscow, 1988.
- Murav'eva, L. S., *Verbs of Motion in Russian*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1975.
- Mustajoki, A., Heino, H., *Case Selection for the Direct Object in Russian Negative Clauses*, University of Helsinki Press, Helsinki, 1991.
- Offord, D., *Using Russian: A Guide to Contemporary Usage*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1996.
- Panov, M. V. (ed.), *Русский язык и советское общество. Социологолингвистическое исследование* (monograph comprising four books), Наука, Moscow, 1968.
- Press, I., *Learn Russian*, 2nd edn, Duckworth, London, 2002.
- Rakhmanova, L. and Suzdal'tseva, V. N., *Современный русский язык*, ЧеРо, Moscow, 1997.
- Rassudova, O. P., *Aspectual Usage in Modern Russian*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1984.

- Rozental', D. E., *А как лучше сказать?*, Просвещение, Moscow, 1979.
- Rozental', D. E., *Прописная или строчная?*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1984.
- Rozental', D. E., *Управление в русском языке*, Книга, Moscow, 1986.
- Rozental', D. E., *Русский язык: справочник-практикум*, Оникс, Moscow, 2007.
- Rozental', D. E., *Стилистика и культура речи*, Оникс, Moscow, 2009.
- Ryazanova-Clarke, L. and Wade, T., *The Russian Language Today*, Routledge, London, 1999.
- Shapiro, A. B., *Пунктуация*, 2nd edn, Просвещение, Moscow, 1974.
- Shaposhnikov, V. N., *Русская речь 90-х. Современная Россия в языковом отражении*, МАЛП, Moscow, 1998.
- Shilova, K. A. and Usmanova, E. E., *100 диалогов по телефону*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1988.
- Sklyarevskaya, G. N., and Tkacheva, I. O., *Давайте говорить правильно! Политический язык современной России*, Филфак СПбГУ, St Petersburg, 2003.
- Sklyarevskaya, G. N., and Vaulina, E. Yu., *Новейшие и наиболее распространенные заимствования в современном русском языке*, Филфак СПбГУ, St Petersburg, 2004.
- Sklyarevskaya, G. N., and Vaulina, E. Yu., *Давайте говорить правильно! Трудности грамматического управления в современном русском языке*, Филфак СПбГУ, St Petersburg; Академия, Moscow, 2004.
- Skvortsov, L. I. (principal ed.), Itskovich, V. A. and Mis'kevich, G. I., *Грамматика и норма*, Наука, Moscow, 1977.
- Vakurov, V. N., et al., *Трудности русского языка*, 2 vols., МГУ, Moscow, 1993–4.
- Vasilenko, E., Egorova, A. and Lamm, E., *Russian Verb Aspects*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1988.
- Vasil'eva, A. N., *Particles in Colloquial Russian*, Progress Publishers, Moscow, undated.
- Vaulina, E. Ts., and Rychkov, V. N., *Термины современной информатики*, ЭКСМО, Moscow, 2004.

- Verbitskaya, L. A., et al, *Давайте говорить правильно! Трудности современного русского произношения и ударения*, Филфак СПбГУ, St Petersburg, 2003.
- Vinogradov, V. V., *Русский язык*, Высшая школа, Moscow, 1972.
- Vsevolodova, M. V. and Parshukova, Z. G., *Способы выражения пространственных отношений*, МГУ, Moscow, 1968.
- Wade, T., *The Gender of Soft-Sign Nouns in Russian*, Collets International, London, 1988.
- Wade, T., *Prepositions in Modern Russian*, Durham Modern Language Series, 1983.
- Ward, D., *Russian Pronunciation*, Oliver and Boyd, Edinburgh and London, 1958.
- Ward, D., *The Russian Language Today. System and Anomaly*, Hutchinson, London, 1965.
- White, N., *The New Russia: Readings on Russian Culture*, Bristol Classical Press, Bristol, 2000.
- Zemskaya, E. A., *Словообразование как деятельность*, Наука, Moscow, 1992.
- Zemskaya, E. A. (ed.), *Русский язык конца XX столетия (1985–1995)*, Языки русской культуры, Moscow, 1996.

## Language journals

---

### *Russian-language*

*Вопросы языкознания*

*Русистика сегодня*

*Русская речь*

*Русский язык за рубежом*

*Русский язык в СНГ*

*Русский язык в школе*

*Филологические науки*

### *Others*

*Journal of Russian Studies*

*Rusistika*

*Russistik*

**Newspapers and magazines**

---

*Аргументы и факты*

*Известия*

*Итоги*

*Комсомольская правда*

*Литературная газета*

*Московский комсомолец*

*Московские новости*

*Неделя*

*Независимая газета*

*Огонек*

*Правда*

*Работница*

*Сельская жизнь*

*Семья*

*Спутник*

*Экран детям*

*Юный натуралист*

Wade, T. and White, N., *Russia Today*, 2 vols and glossary, University of Strathclyde, Glasgow, 1985 (press extracts).

**Compact disc**

---

Ransome, Michael, *Навигатор* (Russian language course designed for AS and A2 level students), Bramcote Press, Ilkeston, 2009.

**Literary and other sources**

---

*By individual or joint authors*

Abramov, F., *Дом*, Советский писатель, Leningrad, 1980.

Belyakova, E., *В семье растут дети*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1983.

Dovlatov, S., *Заповедник*, Новый Геликон, St Petersburg, 1996.

Dovlatov, S., *Зона*, Новый Геликон, St Petersburg, 1996.

Gagarin, S., *Возвращение в Итаку*, Молодая гвардия, Moscow, 1972.

Granin, D., *Сад камней*, Современник, Moscow, 1972.

Grekova, I., *Пороги*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1986.

- Kazakov, Yu., *Selected Short Stories*, Pergamon, Oxford, 1963.
- Koluntsev, F., *Ожидание*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1969.
- Kovaleva, L., *Создана семья . . .*, Лениздат, Leningrad, 1982.
- Kunin, V., *Иванов и Рабинович*, Новый Геликон/Интерспект, St Petersburg, 1994.
- Litvinova, Renata, *Обладать и принадлежать: Новеллы и киносценарии*, Сеанс, Амфора, St Petersburg, 2007.
- Marinina, A., *Убийца поневоле*, Вече, Moscow, 1997.
- Nabokov, V., *Защита Лужина*, Фолио, Kharkov/АСТ, Moscow, 1997.
- Nikolaev, V., *Не один в пути*, Молодая гвардия, Moscow, 1974.
- Orlov, V., *Серый парус карбаса*, Знание, Moscow, 1984.
- Popov, Evgenii, *Опера нищих: Рассказы о непонятном*, Вагриус, Moscow, 2006.
- Propp, V., *Русская сказка*, Издательство Ленинградского университета, Leningrad, 1984.
- Rasputin, V., *Последний срок. Прощание с Матерой*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1985.
- Rubina, D., 'Завтра, как обычно . . .', *Юность*, July 1984, 26–47.
- Rybakov, A., *Дети Арбата*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1987.
- Rybakov, A., *Тяжелый песок*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1979.
- Shukshin, V., *Рассказы*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1984.
- Solzhenitsyn, Aleksandr, *Россия в обвале*, Русский путь, Moscow, 1998.
- Strugatsky, A. and Strugatsky, B., *Понедельник начинается в субботу*, Юнацтва, Minsk, 1986.
- Tendryakov, V., *Находка*, Советская Россия, Moscow, 1966.
- Tendryakov, V., *Поденка — век короткий* (and other works), Молодая гвардия, Moscow, 1969.
- Tokareva, V., *Повести и рассказы*, Советский писатель, Moscow, 1987.
- Trifonov, Yu., *Избранные произведения*, 2 vols, Художественная литература, Moscow, 1978.
- Trifonov, Yu., *Утоление жажды*, Профиздат, Moscow, 1979.
- Voinovich, Vladimir, *Портрет на фоне мифа*, Эксмо-Пресс, Moscow, 2002.
- Zalygin, S., *Южноамериканский вариант*, Московский рабочий, Moscow, 1987.

*Compilations*

- Lebedev, V. (compiler), *Стратегия освоения*, Молодая гвардия, Moscow, 1986.
- Pecheritsa, T. (compiler), *Дороги. Рассказы советских писателей*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1979 (Yu. Kazakov, Yu. Nagibin, K. Paustovsky, P. Proskurin, V. Shukshin etc.).
- Povolyaev, V. (compiler), *Московский рассказ*, Московский рабочий, Moscow, 1980 (Yu. Avdeenko, Yu. Kazakov, E. Khrutsky, A. Kuleshov, A. Makarov, Yu. Nagibin, V. Povolyaev, L. Sal'nikov, Yu. Trifonov, L. Uvarova, K. Vanshenkin, A. Yakhontov etc.).
- Smirnov, V. (compiler), *Белый конь*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1985 (F. Abramov, V. Astaf'ev, V. Belov, V. Lebedev, E. Nosov, V. Shcherbakov, V. Shukshin, V. Sobolev, P. Vasil'ev, S. Zalygin etc.).
- Zolotavkin, V. (compiler), *Проза 70-х годов*, Русский язык, Moscow, 1985 (F. Abramov, C. Aitmatov, V. Belov, D. Granin, Yu. Kazakov, Yu. Nagibin, V. Shukshin, K. Simonov, V. Soloukhin, V. Tokareva, S. Zalygin etc.).

**Websites**

---

<http://www.gov.ru>

Russian government website

<http://www.kremlin.ru>

Russian Presidential website

<http://www.izvestiya.ru>

Website for the daily newspaper *Izvestiia*

<http://www.interfax.ru>

Website for the Interfax news agency

<http://www.kommersant.ru>

Website for the daily newspaper *Kommersant*

<http://www.rian.ru>

Website for the RIA news agency

<http://www.itar-tass.com>

Website for the Itar-Tass news agency

*Note*

Some quotations in this book have been taken from standard grammars of the Russian language.



---

# Subject Index

---

*Note:* references are to *page* numbers. When English and Russian words appear together in a list, account is taken of the order of letters in both alphabets.

## Accusative case (*see also*

Declension of nouns):

after negated verbs 112–15

after verbs which also take the  
dat. 119

after verbs which also take the  
gen. 105–6, 115–18

as an object 105

denoting cost 105

denoting measure 105

denoting progress through  
space 105

denoting progress through  
time 105, 456

denoting repetition 105

denoting weight 105

in impersonal constructions  
105, 327–8

pl. after 4 214

## Acronyms: formation of

gender of 60–1

## Adjectival nouns:

categories 181–2

after collective numerals 222

after 2–4 215

## Adjectives:

indeclinable 177–8

long and short 168

post-positive 179

### *Long:*

hard declension 168–9

mixed declension 169–70

soft declension 170–1

adjs. with long forms only 183

attributive use of 178–9

derived from nouns 172–3

in -ивый, -мый, -атый,  
-астый, -истый, -чий  
173–4

in -н-, -ск- and -ов-/ев- 172–3

nouns from which more than  
one is derived 174

position in sentence 179, 527

possessive 174–6

predicative use of 179–80, 187,  
189–90

- separated by commas 21  
sing. and pl. usage 180–1  
taking the dat. 120  
taking the gen. 107  
taking the instr. 125  
with *кто-то* 161  
with mountain ranges 425  
with *нечто* 165  
with weeks/months/years 450–1  
with *что* 145  
with *что-то* 162  
*Short:*  
as adverb 202  
as introductory word 202  
as pl. predicate to subject containing a numeral 228  
as predicate to infins. and verbal nouns 192–3  
attributive usage of 201  
buffer vowel 184–5  
cf. long form 187–8  
comparative of cf. adverbs 413–14  
delimitation by oblique case, prepositional phrase, subordinate clause or infin. 190–3  
denoting dimension 189–90  
denoting temporary state 188  
formation from adjs. in *-енный* 186  
formation of 182–3  
in generalized statements 193  
n. form cf. adverb 395–6  
paired opposites 188–9  
position in sentence 193, 531  
special forms 185–6  
stress in 186–7  
*Adverbs:*  
introductory comments 395  
comparative 202, 413–14, 414  
denoting frequency 299  
derived from adjs. and parts. 395–7  
derived from gerunds 399  
derived from nouns 398–9  
derived from numerals 400  
derived from pronouns 400–1  
*долго*, *давно*,  
*недавно*/[в/за] *последнее время* 405–6  
*ещё* cf. *другой* 404  
*ещё* (*не/нет*) 404–5  
*ещё раз* cf. *снова*, *опять* 405  
*in не-* 412  
*in ни-* 411–12  
interrelating 407  
*in -то, -нибудь, -либо, кое-* 409–11  
of manner and extent 406–7  
of place 401–2, 407  
of time 298, 402–3, 407  
position of 522, 528–9, 532  
*раньше* 458  
separation by commas 21–2  
superlative 415  
*тоже/также* 407–9  
*только* 455  
*уже* (*не/нет*) 403–4  
used to distinguish aspect 271  
used to reinforce aspect 294, 298–9  
with *же* 513–14  
with particle *-то* 516  
Adverbial clauses: replaced by gerunds 390–2  
Adverbial expressions:  
denoting route, time, manner 122–3  
Age:  
giving someone's age 236–7, 453  
with dative of person 121

- Agent nouns: 36–42, 44, 46–8, 50–3, 57
- Agreement:
- adj. with noun 54–5, 58, 66–7, 178–9
  - adj. with numeral and noun 181
  - все 156
  - вы 138
  - comparative adj. with noun 194
  - compounds in пол- with adjs. 232
  - fractions/decimals with noun 231
  - in telling the time 234
  - котóрый 146
  - кто 144–5, 147
  - кто-то 162
  - long-form part. with noun (cf. котóрый) 380
  - мы 137
  - никто́ 157
  - numeral subject with predicate 226–8
  - oblique cases of cardinals with noun 216–19
  - oblique cases of indefinite numerals with noun 225
  - один 212–13
  - он, она́, оно́, онí 138–9
  - ordinal numerals with noun 230
  - past tense with noun 54
  - predicate with multiple subject 54, 486, 489
  - pronoun with noun 54
  - ряд, большинствó, мно́жество, часть 100–1
  - сам 155
  - superlative adj. with noun 203
  - time expressions with predicate 234
  - ты 137–8
  - ты/вы 137–8
  - ты́сяча 219
  - я 136–7
- Alphabet:
- Cyrillic 1–2
  - International Phonetic 2–4
- Alphabetisms:
- declension of 99
  - gender of 61–2
- Animals:
- in animate accusative 68, 70
  - pronoun что 145
- Animate accusative: 68–70
- of adjs. 178
  - of два/две, три, четы́ре, óба/óбе 217–18
  - of indefinite numerals 226
  - of m. nouns 74–5
  - of 'one' 212
- Apposition:
- absence of with как 104
  - in titles, names 97–8, 104, 127–8
  - of сам with other pronouns 155
  - use of commas to mark off words in 22
- Aspect (*see also* Imperfective/ Perfective Aspect):
- introductory comments 268–9, 293–5
- biaspectual verbs 270–1
- consonant mutation in
- secondary impfs. 278–9
- differentiation of by conjugation 281–2
- formation of 271–2, 275–6, 277–80
- functions of pf. prefixes 272–3
- impfs. from compounds of -ложíть 283
- in questions 309–10
- in the present tense 295–7
- mutations е/ё, о/а in
- secondary impfs. 277–8

of verbs governing partitives  
108, 110

pf. with particle *было* 511

reflexive in impf. only 282–3

secondary impfs. 276–8,  
279–80

semantic differentiation of 274

verbs with only one 269–70

with different roots 282

*in the future* 306–9

*in the infinitive*:

introductory comments 314–15

after *не хоч́у* 319

after *по́ра* 319

after verbs of beginning,  
continuing and concluding  
316–17

after verbs of motion 320

in denoting advisable or  
inadvisable actions 317–18

in denoting habitual actions  
315–16

in denoting repeated or  
continuous actions 315

in denoting single completed  
actions 314

in requests to perform/not to  
perform an action 318–19

*in the past*:

general 298–306

emphasis on identity of subject  
303–4

impf. denoting a forthcoming  
event 305

impf. denoting an action and its  
reverse 302–3

impf. denoting a ‘statement of  
fact’ 300–2

of a negated verb 305–6

Augmentative nouns:

gender of 56

plural of 87

suffixes 132–3

Buffer vowel:

in compound verbs of motion  
360

in conjugation 267–8

in f. gen. pl. 89–90

in n. gen. pl. 85, 87–8

in short-form adjs. 184–5

Capital and small letters:

*Бы* 138

in titles and names 16–18

Cardinal numerals:

list 207–8

declension of 208–11

declension of compounds 219

oblique cases of 216–18

agreement with sing./pl.  
predicate 226–8

as ‘labels’ 220

*два/две, три, четы́ре* 214–16

in arithmetic 238

in compound nouns/adjs. 238–9

in fractions and decimals 230–2

in giving someone’s age 236–7

in giving the date 235–6

in telling the time 232–5

*но́ль/ну́ль* 211–12

*о́ба/о́бе* 214–16

*оди́н, одна́* 212–14, 215

*полтора́/полторы́* 214

*пять* to 999 216

*раз* in counting 212

*ты́сяча* to *триллио́н* 218–19

with *де́ти* 223

with ‘plural only’ nouns 221–2

Causal expressions: in *а/я, у/ю*  
110–11

- Collective nouns:  
 followed by gen. 107  
 inanimacy of 69  
 used only in sing. 71
- Collective numerals:  
 agreement of with predicate 226–7  
 declension of 221  
 in idioms 224  
 with adjectival nouns 222  
 with animate m. nouns 222–3  
 with *дети* etc. 223  
 with gen. pl. 221  
 with pl.-only nouns 221–2
- Comparative adjs:  
 introductory comments 193–4
- attributive use of short forms 201  
 compounds with *более/мэнее* 194, 196, 198  
 constructions with 199–201, 467–9  
*дальнейший* 205  
 impersonal use of 202  
 in *-е* 197–9  
 in *-ее* 195–6, 197–8  
 in *-ей* 196  
 one-word long forms 194–5  
 predicative use of forms with *более* 196  
 predicative use of short forms 199  
 prefixed *ло-* 201  
 short forms as adverbs 202  
 short forms as introductory words 202  
 with *ещё* 405  
 with no short forms 196
- Comparative adverb:  
 cf. short-form comparative adj. 202  
*не позже* in telling the time 234
- Compound hyphenated nouns:  
 declension of 100  
 gender of 63–4
- Concessive constructions:  
 categories 340–1  
 with interrogative/relative pronouns 149–50
- Conditional mood:  
 introductory comments 333  
 expressed by *без* 334–5  
 expressed by imperative 334  
 formation of 333–4  
 used with *-нибудь* 163
- Conjugation of the verb:  
 endings of first and second conjugations 241  
 buffer vowel in 267–8  
 deficiencies in 256–7, 343  
 1st: consonant stems 244–50  
 1st: infinitive endings 241  
 1st: mobile stress 250–1  
 1st: vowel stems 242–4  
 2nd: consonant change 253–4  
 2nd: mobile stress 254–5  
 2nd: present-future endings 252–3  
 2nd: present-future stems 251
- Conjunctions:  
 introductory comments 484
- adversative 486–8  
*а также* 408  
 causal 492–3  
 cf. *и/а/но* 487–8  
 comparative 497–8  
 concessive 497  
 conditional 496–7  
 connective 485–6  
 co-ordinating 485–9  
 disjunctive 488–9  
 explanatory 489–91  
 of purpose 494–5  
 of result 495–6  
 replaced by pf. gerund 501

- subordinating 489–504
- temporal 498–504
- to in conditional constructions 334
- use of commas between clauses 23–4
- with impf. 293
- with pf. 295
- Consonant mutation:
  - in adjs. from nouns 172, 175
  - in augmentatives 132–3
  - in comparative adjs. 197–8
  - in diminutives 129–31
  - in first conjugation 246–8, 250
  - in impfs. formed by conjugation change 281–2
  - in лгать 245
  - in pf. passive parts. 373–5
  - in possessive adjs. 175
  - in secondary impfs. 277–9
  - in second conjugation 253–5
  - in suffixation 36–48, 50, 52–3
  - in superlative 204–5
  - in verbs in -чь 250
- Consonants: differentiation of meaning through hard and soft 9
- Countable nouns 73
- Date 235–6
- Dative (*see also* Declension of nouns):
  - after adjs. 120
  - after verbs/verbal nouns 119–20
  - as indirect object 118–19
  - as logical subject of infin. 121, 160–1, 412
  - in impersonal constructions 120–1, 327, 328–9
  - in indicating age 236–7
  - with примёр etc. 153
- Deaffixation: in f. soft-sign nouns 57
- Declension of nouns:
  - introduction 67–8
  - declension chart 73
  - 1st m. 74–6
  - 1st n. 84–8
  - 2nd 88–92
  - 3rd 92–4
  - of alphabetisms 99
  - of дѣти, люди 95
  - of дитя 95
  - of first names and patronymics 95–6
  - of hyphenated nouns 100
  - of nouns in -ия/-ие 94
  - of nouns in -мя 94
  - of place names 97
  - of путь 94–5
  - of surnames 96–7
  - of titles and names 97–8
- Demonstrative pronouns:
  - declension of 150–1
  - не тот 152
  - примёр тому 153
  - сей/экий 154
  - такой 153–4
  - такой же 154
  - тот 151–3
  - тот же (самый) 152, 156
  - with же 514
  - этот/это 151
- Desire:
  - бы and infm. 335, 508
  - бы and past tense 335–6
- Determinative pronouns:
  - declension of 154–5
  - весь in concessive constructions 472
  - весь/цѣлый, всякий/каждый/любой 156–7

- сам 155  
 сам себя́ 155  
 са́мый 155–6  
 тот (же) са́мый 152, 156
- Deverbal nouns:  
 in -ель 57  
 in -тель, -итель and  
 -арь 57
- Diminutive adjectives:  
 in -енький/-онький 176  
 in -оватый/-еватый 177
- Diminutive nouns:  
 f. 130–1  
 m. 128–30  
 n. 131  
 other suffixes 132
- meanings and functions 128  
 use in partitive gen. 109–10
- Division of words into syllables  
 18–19
- First names:  
 m./f. 95–6  
 m. in а/я (including familiar  
 forms) 55–6
- Fleeting vowels:  
 in first declension m. 75–6  
 in third declension 92–3
- Fractions:  
 agreement with predicate 228  
 and decimals 230–1  
 два с полови́ной 214
- Future tense:  
 after е́сли 333  
 expressing commands 314  
 expressing wishes or appeals  
 312  
 formation of 266–7  
 in concessive constructions 340  
 in reported speech 307–8
- logical future 307, 499  
 with -ка 514  
 with -нибу́дь 410  
 with ну́ 515
- Gender of nouns:  
 introductory comments 54–5
- common 55, 58, 59, 63, 88  
 differentiation by suffix 64–5  
 f. nouns 56–7  
 grammatical 54  
 in plural 55  
 m. nouns 55–6, 57  
 natural 54, 55, 56, 57, 59  
 n. nouns 58
- of acronyms 60–1  
 of alphabetisms 61–2  
 of animals 67  
 of diminutives and  
 augmentatives 56  
 of дитя́ 95  
 of hyphenated nouns 63–4  
 of indeclinable loan words  
 58–9  
 of indeclinable place names 60  
 of months 57, 450  
 of occupations and professions  
 64–7  
 of путь 94–5  
 of stump compounds 63  
 of titles etc. 60  
 of я 136–7
- Generic nouns:  
 in indeclinable place names 60  
 in titles 60
- Genitive case (*see also*  
 Declension of nouns):  
 after adjs. 107  
 after collective numerals 221–3  
 after comparative adjs. 199–200  
 after comparative adverbs 413

- after fractions and decimals 231  
after negated verbs 112–15  
after numerals: ноль/нуль  
211–12; 1½, 2–4, оба/обе  
214–16; above 4 103; 5–999  
216; 1000–триллион  
218–19; indefinite numerals  
224–6  
after примёр 153  
after quantitative nouns 237  
after the negative 111–12  
after verbs 105–6, 115–18, 329  
as numeral component of  
compounds 238–9  
buffer vowel in gen. pl. 85–6,  
88, 89–92  
denoting a descriptive attribute  
106  
denoting a dimension 125, 467  
denoting agent of an action 106  
denoting object of an action 106  
denoting object of regret 106  
denoting possession 106  
denoting quantity 106–7  
denoting relationship 106  
denoting whole in relation to  
part 106  
gen. pl. = nom. sing. 82  
in comparisons 106, 199–200,  
413  
in giving someone's age 236–7  
in giving the date 235–6  
in telling the time 232–5, 447–8  
in -y/-ю 109–10, 110–11  
Geographical names: 60, 97,  
424–5  
Gerund:  
introduction 385–6  
*impf.*:  
as other parts of speech  
393–4, 399, 422  
compensation for lack of 388  
formation of 386–7  
replacing когда + verb 502  
stress in 387  
verbs deficient in 387–8  
*pf.*:  
as other parts of speech 394,  
399, 422  
froms in -я/-а 389  
from verbs in -ти/-сть 389–90  
from verbs in -тъ/-сть  
(д-stems) 388–9  
from verbs in -чь/-зть 390  
reflexive 389  
with было 511  
*usage* (impf. and pf.):  
functions of 390–2  
in place of conjunctions 501, 502  
special features 392–3  
use of commas to mark off  
gerundial phrases 23  
Hyphenated nouns 100  
Imperative:  
commands arising naturally  
from context 312–13  
conditional meaning of 334  
давай as a particle 508  
exhorting and inviting 311–12  
formation of 259–61  
future pf./infin. with meaning of  
314  
impf. in general, frequentative  
and durative meanings  
310–11  
negative commands/warnings  
313–14  
ordering the completion of a  
single action 311  
repeated actions 310, 314  
stress 261  
verbs deficient in 261



- with же 514  
 with -ка 514–15  
 with -нибудь 163, 410
- Imperfective aspect (*see also*  
 Aspect/Perfective Aspect):  
 introductory comments 268–9,  
 293–5
- attempted action 269, 273, 295  
 in questions 309–10  
 submeanings 280–1  
 with partitives 108, 110
- future:*  
 action in progress 269  
 formation of 266–7  
 method of achievement 306  
 repeated actions 269, 273,  
 308–9
- imperative:*  
 commands arising naturally  
   from context 312–13  
 exhorting and inviting 311–12  
 expressing urgency 311  
 forbidding 311  
 frequentative 310  
 general injunctions 310  
 instruction to continue an action  
   311  
 negative commands/warnings  
   313–14
- infin.:*  
 after verbs denoting habit  
   315–16  
 after verbs of beginning,  
   continuing, concluding  
   316–17  
 inadvisable actions 317–18  
 repeated or continuous actions  
   315  
 request not to perform an action  
   318–19
- past:*  
 denoting a forthcoming event  
   305  
 denoting an action and its  
   reverse 302–3  
 denoting a repeated action  
   299–300  
 denoting a statement of fact  
   300–2  
 denoting endeavour 269, 293,  
   295, 298  
 denoting the negation of an  
   action 305–6  
 emphasis on identity of the  
   agent 303–4  
 expressing durative meaning  
   293–4, 298
- Imperfective in the present tense  
 295–7
- Impersonal constructions:  
 acc. case in 105, 327  
 avoidance of gerund in 392  
 dat. case in 120–1, 327  
 denoting chance, sufficiency  
   etc. 328–9  
 expressed by short-form  
   comparative 202  
 involving an external force  
   327–8  
 involving natural processes 326  
 involving second-person  
   sing. 329  
 involving third-person pl. 139,  
   329–30, 526  
 position of noun/pronoun in  
   530  
 rendering of ‘it is’ 257
- Indefinite numerals:  
 decl. of много/многое,  
   много́ие 225  
 decl. of не́сколько, ско́лько,  
   сто́лько 225  
 ма́ло/немно́го 106, 224  
 мно́го/мно́гие 224–5

- нѣсколько/нѣкоторые 166, 225  
sing./pl. predicate with 226–8  
with the gen. 106–7, 224–6  
with the partitive gen. 110
- Indefinite pronouns:  
in код- 165  
in -то, -нибудь, -либо 161–5  
нѣкий 166  
нѣкоторый 165–6  
нѣкто, нѣчто 165
- Infinitive:  
after не хочѹ 319  
after порá 319  
after verbs of motion 320  
after хочѹ 335  
as an imperative 314  
aspect of 314–15  
as subject 27, 126  
with adverbs in нѣ- 412–13  
with нѣкого, нѣчего 159–61  
with перед тем как 500  
with с цѣлью 472  
with чтòбы 337–8
- Instrumental case (*see also*  
Declension of nouns):  
adj. ending -ою 169  
denoting adj. predicate 179–80  
denoting agent 122, 331, 332, 380  
denoting dimension 125, 467  
denoting function 121–2  
denoting noun predicate to  
быть etc. 125–7  
denoting parts of the day 123, 449  
denoting quantification 200, 414  
denoting route, time, manner 122–3  
denoting similarity 124  
in multiplication 238  
of вòсемь 210  
of nouns after verbs/verbal nouns 124–5  
of один 213  
of personal pronouns 134  
of third-person pronoun in meaning ‘one’ 139  
of ты́сяча 218  
pl. -ьми 92, 94, 95  
with movements of the body 122
- Interrogative/relative pronouns:  
declension of 144  
  
as interrogatives 144–6  
as relatives 146–9, 152  
expressing exclamatory, concessive and quantitative meanings 149–50  
in concessive constructions 340–1  
что за in meaning какóй 476  
что with adjs. 145
- Irregular verbs: conjugation of 256
- Location: soft adj. denoting 171
- Manner: expressed through instr. 123
- Modals:  
obligation and necessity 341–3  
possibility or potential 343–5
- Months:  
adjs. from 173  
gender of 57, 450  
in dates 235–6
- Names of institutions and organizations 425–6
- Negative:  
или in negative contexts 488  
in asking questions 310  
и не 514  
in hypotheses 338–40  
не . . . , а . . . 486–7

- не with a single predicate 486  
 не with negative adverbs 411  
 не with negative pronouns 157–8  
 не with ни . . . ни 485–6  
 omission of же in 154  
 omission of же in negative comparisons 406  
 omission of не 158, 159  
 пока не 501–2  
 with gen. 111–12  
 with partitive gen. 110  
 with -то 516  
 Negative pronouns:  
   introductory comments 157
- никакóй, ничéй 159  
 никтó 157–8  
 ничтó 158  
 Nominative case (*see also*  
   Declension of nouns):  
   as subject 103  
   in apposition 104  
   in comparative constructions 104, 199–200  
   in constructions denoting possession 104  
   in definitions 104  
   in negative constructions 111  
   long adj. as predicate 179  
   noun as predicate 126  
   один ‘alone’ 213  
   pl. adj. after 2–4, óба/óбе 215  
 Nouns:  
   dash between subject/predicate 27  
   linked by с 481–2  
 Number (singular and plural):  
   все повернóули гóлову 102–3  
   in indeclinable nouns 59  
   каждые with numerals and pl. only nouns 156  
   nouns with no pl. 70–1, 93, 94  
   numerals with sing./pl. predicate 226–8  
   pl. adjs. with nouns in пол- 232  
   pl.-only nouns 72–3, 213  
   sing./pl. subject with reflexives 324  
   sing./pl. verb with nouns/ pronouns linked by с 482  
   some uses of sing./pl. adjs. 180–1  
 Numerals (*see also* Cardinal, Collective, Ordinal Numerals): adverbs from 400
- Object:  
   object clause with ждaть/любóть 403  
   position of 525–7  
   position of pronoun object 525  
 Occupations:  
   gender differentiation through suffixes 64–5  
   professions 65–7  
 Optative 312  
 Ordinal numerals:  
   abbreviation of 229  
   denoting order of dimension, priority 481  
   formation and declension of 228–30  
   functions of 230  
   in fractions and decimals 230–1  
   in giving the date 235–6  
   in indicating age 236–7  
   in telling the time 233–5  
   in time constructions 448–9, 450–1  
   stress in 229  
   use of roman numerals 230  
   with paz 459

## Palatalization:

- absence of in loan words 9–10
- double 9

## Particles:

- introductory comments 505

- aggregation of 517–20
- individual particles 510–17
- meanings of 506–8
- modal functions of 508–10
- не with negative adverbs 411
- position of in sentence 506
- position of ли 525

## Participles: types of 365

*Formation:**present active:*

- formation of 365–6
- stress in 366

*past active:*

- formation of 367
- stress in 368

*impf. passive:*

- formation of 368–9, 370
- stress in 369
- verbs deficient in 369–70

*pf. passive:*

- introductory comments 370

- formation of long form 371, 375, 377

## formation of short form

- [including stress] 370–1, 372–3, 374–7
- stress in short form of дать, and compounds 371

*Usage:*

- agreement of long form with noun 380–1
- as adjs./nouns 382–3
- cf. short-form adjs./parts. 384–5
- functions of long forms 378–80
- functions of short forms 377–8, 385
- participial adjs. 383–4
- pf. active with было 511
- position of 531
- synonymy of impf.
  - passive/reflexives 381–2
- use of commas to mark off participial phrases 22

## Partitive accusative 108

## Partitive genitive:

- partitives in -y/-ю, -a/-я 76–7, 109–10
- usage 107–8

## Passive meanings:

- introductory comments 330
- agent in instr. 122, 134
- avoidance of gerund in 392
- expressed by a reflexive 323, 331, 332, 377
- expressed by the third-person pl. 139, 331, 377
- expressed by word order 526

## Past tense:

- formation of 261–4
- stress in 264–6
- with -ТО 409

Perfective aspect (*see also*

- Aspect/Impf. aspect):
  - introductory comments, cf. impf. 268–9

## basic meanings of 294–5

## formation of 271–2

## future: repeated actions 308–9

## future: warnings 309

- future with -ка 514  
 future with ну 515  
 imperative: formal relationships 312  
 imperative: negative commands 313–14  
 imperative: repeated actions 314  
 imperative: single actions 311, 312, 313  
 infin.: advisability 318  
 infin.: completed action 314  
 infin.: frequentative contexts 316  
 infin.: impossibility 318  
 infin.: request/intention to perform an action 318  
 in questions 309–10  
 of multidirectional verbs of motion 356  
 of unidirectional verbs of motion 354–5  
 pure perfect 295  
 submeanings of 274–5  
 successful completion of an action 269, 273–4, 294–5, 298–9, 303, 307  
 with было 511  
 with emphasis on agent of action 304  
 with negated verbs 305–6  
 with partitive gen. 107–8, 110  
 Plural:  
   nouns deficient in 70–1  
   pl.-only nouns 72–3, 213  
   special m. pl. 79–82  
   special n. pl. 86  
 Plurality 433  
 Possessive adjs.: categorization 174–6  
 Possessive pronouns:  
   друг друга 167  
   его, её, их 142–3  
   мой, твой, наш, ваш 141  
   omission of 143–4  
   свой 142–4  
 Potential negative pronouns:  
   cf. есть 160  
   некого, нечего 159–61  
 Prefixes:  
   meanings of verbal 283–93  
   spelling rules 15–16  
   with nouns 32–4  
 Prepositional/locative case (*see also* Declension of nouns):  
   after скучать, стрелять по 139  
   in -ý/-ю 77–9, 84  
 Prepositions:  
   introductory comments 416  
   adverbial 421–2  
   buffer vowel 418–19  
   causal 462–5  
   cf. temporal conjunctions 498–9  
   concessive meanings 472  
   delimiting short-form adjs. 191–2  
   denoting extent 467–70  
   denoting the object of feelings 465–6  
   distributive meanings 473–4  
   from nouns and verbs 422  
   governing the accusative 474–7  
   governing the dative 479–81  
   governing the genitive 477–9  
   governing the instrumental 481–2  
   governing the prepositional 482–3  
   primaries 416–17  
   purposive 470–2  
   repetition of 418  
   скучать, стрелять по 139

- spatial 422–47
- stress in primaries 419–21
- temporal 447–62
- with compound negatives 157, 158, 159, 160–1
- with compound verbs of motion 358–9
- with *друг друга* 167
- with pronouns in *кто- 165*
- Present tense:
  - aspect in 268, 295–7
  - with *-то* 409
- Pronouns (*see also* Indefinite, Possessive Pronouns):
  - adverbs derived from 400–1
  - все мы/они* 156
  - вы* 138
  - case after verbs of shooting/yearning 139, 466
  - declension of personal pronouns 134–5
  - demonstratives with *же* 514
  - initial *н-* 135, 142
  - linked by *с* 136, 139, 141, 482
  - мы* 136, 137
  - nom. with *это* 136
  - omission of personal pronouns 136–7
  - он* cf. *тот* 152
  - он, она, оно, они* 138–9
  - other parts of speech as 166–7
  - personal/possessive 135–6, 141
  - position of 525, 532
  - самый* with *перед* 458
  - ты* 137–8, 329
  - что за* meaning *какой* 145, 476
  - я* 136–7
- Pronunciation:
  - differentiation of meaning by hard/soft consonants 9
  - effect of soft consonant on preceding vowel 10–11
  - of double consonants 13
  - of *ерó* 134, 142
  - of hard/soft consonants 7–9
  - of stressed vowels 4–5
  - of *-ся/-сь* 10
  - of unstressed *о* 5–6
  - of unstressed vowels 5–6
  - of voiced/unvoiced consonants 11–12
  - unpronounced consonants 13
  - чн-/что, чтобы* 13
- Punctuation:
  - introductory comments: 20
  - colon 25–6, 28
  - comma 21–5, 230–1, 378–80, 392–3
  - conjunctions with/without commas 484, 493
  - dash 27–8, 29
  - direct speech 28–9
  - exclamation mark 20–1
  - full stop 20
  - question mark 20–1
  - replacement of colon by dash 28
  - replacement of comma by dash 27–8
  - semicolon 26–7
  - suspension points (*многоточие*) 29
- Quantitative nouns 237
- Quantity: expressed by instr. 123
- Reciprocal pronoun: *друг друга* 167
- Reduction of vowels 5–6
- Reflexive possessive pronoun (*свой*) 142–4
- Reflexive pronoun (*себя*):
  - cf. *-ся/-сь* 140
  - declension and usage 139–41
  - with *сам* 155

- Reflexive verbs:  
   conjugation of 320  
   denoting intense/purposeful action 325  
   denoting joint action 280  
   denoting reciprocity 323–4  
   denoting thoroughness 325–6  
   expressing feeling/attitude 325  
   expressing impersonal meanings 120–1  
   expressing passive 323, 331, 377  
   expressing potential 326  
   impf. gerund 387  
   intransitives 322  
   passive reflexive cf. impf. passive part. 381–2  
   pf. gerund 389  
   present active part. of 366  
   reflexive in impf. only 282–3  
   semi-reflexives 321  
   true reflexives 321
- Relative clauses:  
   cf. adj. clauses 24  
   cf. long-form parts. 380  
   replaced by parts. 378  
   separated by commas 24
- Relative pronouns 146–9
- Reported speech:  
   position of *ли* 509  
   tense 297
- Route: expressed by instr. 123
- Secondary imperfectives:  
   based on monosyllabic verbs 279–80  
   from prefixed first-conjugation verbs 276–7  
   from second-conjugation verbs 277–8  
   gerunds from 388  
   in *-евать* 243  
   in frequentative constructions 299
- passive parts. from 370  
   replacing impfs. in *-нуть*, 263  
   vowel mutation in 277
- Singulatives 71
- Spatial expressions: *-y/-ю* 111
- Spelling rules:  
   basic 15–16  
   in adj. declension 169  
   in compound verbs of motion 360  
   in conjugation 241, 252  
   in declension of nouns 68  
   in f. nouns 88  
   in m. nouns 74  
   in nouns in *-це*, *-ще* 87  
   in prefixes 284  
   in soft-sign f. nouns 92
- Splitting a word at the end of a line 19–20
- Stress:  
   general 14–15  
   *большой/большый* 14, 195  
   *вы-* 285, 371  
   in augmentatives 132–3  
   in comparative adjs. in *-ее* 196  
   in conjugation 250–1, 254–5  
   in declension of cardinal numerals 208–10  
   in declension of nouns 68  
   in declension of *сам*, *самый* 154–5  
   in declension of soft-sign f. nouns 93–4  
   in diminutives 128–31  
   in first conjugation 246–8, 250–1  
   in first declension 74, 76, 77–9, 79–82, 83–6, 87–8  
   in forming aspect 268, 276, 277, 281  
   in imperatives 260  
   in impf. gerunds 387

- in impf. passive parts. 369  
in m. nouns after 2–4, 214–16  
in m. pl. nouns 79–81  
in n. adj. short form, cf. adverb 396  
in numerals 11–19, 50–80, 208  
in ordinals 229  
in participial adjs. 384  
in past active part. 368  
in pf. passive part. 370–1, 372–3, 375–7  
in prepositions 419–21  
in present active part. 366  
in second conjugation 254–5  
in second declension 88–9, 90–2  
in short-form adjs. 186–7  
кругом/кругом 398  
моему/по-моему 401  
некого, нечего 159–61  
пятью 238  
secondary stress 14  
Stump compounds 63  
Subject: position of 524–7, 531–2  
Subjunctive:  
  of desire 335–6  
  of hypothesis 338–40  
  of purposeful endeavour 337  
  purpose clauses 337–8  
  with -нибудь 163  
Suffixes: noun suffixes 34–53, 64–5  
Superlative:  
  высший/низший 204  
  in -ейший/-айший 204–5  
  in наи-, пре- 205–6  
  лучший/худший, старший/младший 195, 203  
  with наиболее 205  
  with самый 202–3  
Surnames:  
  declension of 96–7  
  with некий 166
- Syllables:  
  division of 18–19
- Tense:  
  logical future 499, 502, 504  
  with давно 405  
  with -то/-нибудь 161–4, 409
- Time:  
  parts of day, seasons 123  
  prepositions of 447–62  
  soft adjs. denoting 171  
  telling the time 232–5
- Titles:  
  animate acc. in 69, 70  
  prep. in -е 78  
‘To be’ 257–9
- Transliteration 1–2
- Transitive/intransitive verbs 322, 325
- Verbal nouns:  
  suffixed 35–9, 43–52  
  with при 462  
  with с целью 472
- Verbs:  
  dat. after 119–20  
  gen. after 115–18  
  instr. after 124–5  
  of perception with как 402–3  
  position of 524–7, 532
- Verbs of motion:
- Simple verbs:*  
  conjugation of 346  
  idiomatic uses of 357–8  
  идти, ходить/ехать, ездить 347–8  
  идти/ходить по 444–6  
  imperatives of 346–7  
  infinitive after 320  
  multidirectionals 350–2  
  не пошёл/не ходил 356



- of carrying, leading, conveying 353  
 past tense of 347  
 pfs. of multidirectionals 356  
 pfs. of unidirectionals 275, 354–5  
 present with future meaning 296  
 special meanings пойти 355–6  
 ‘to drive’ 354  
 unidirectional and multidirectional 345  
 unidirectionals 348–50
- Compound verbs:*  
 compounds 358–9  
 figurative uses of 362–3  
 omission of чтобы after 495  
 past denoting an action and its reverse 361–2  
 pfs. in за-, из-, на- 364–5  
 pfs. in с- 363–4  
 prefixes 358–9, 360–1  
 reflexives in раз- and с- 324  
 spelling rules 360  
 stems of 359–60
- Verb stems 240
- Vocative 104
- Vowel change:  
 e/ë and o/a in secondary impfs. 277  
 e/ë in conjugation 241  
 e/ë in f. pl. 91  
 e/ë in n. pl. 85  
 e/ë in pf. passive part. 371, 376
- Word formation (in nouns):  
 general 30–2  
 prefixation 32–4  
 suffixation 34–53
- Word order:  
 introductory comments 521
- Order:*  
 in expressive styles 531–2  
 in impersonal constructions 530  
 in participial constructions 380–1  
 of clauses linked by ‘a’ 486  
 of conditional/main clauses 333  
 of ‘new’ and ‘given’ information 521–3  
 of subject/verb 524–5  
 of subject/verb/object 525–7
- Position:*  
 of adjs. 177, 178–9, 193, 527–8, 531  
 of adverbs/adverbial phrases 528–9, 532  
 of бы 333–4  
 of ли 509, 525  
 of не 508  
 of numerals 208  
 of particles 506, 508, 531  
 of parts. 378, 380–1, 531  
 of prepositions with compound negatives 157–61  
 of prepositions with друг друга 167  
 of prepositions with pronouns in коё- 165  
 of pronouns 532  
 of сам 155  
 of short-form adjs. 193  
 of спустя 422  
 of только 508

---

# Word Index

---

The *Word Index* does not include every word that appears in the *Grammar*. It is intended to interact with the *Contents* and the *Subject Index* to facilitate access to all parts of the book. It contains all verbs with a difficult conjugation, all prepositions, conjunctions, particles, verbs and adjectives which take an oblique case, prefixes, many suffixes and other endings, and additional words and forms which illustrate significant grammatical points.

Words which appear in lists are not normally included. Thus, instead of enumerating nouns which have a locative in -ý, only the ending -ý appears in the *Word Index*, as a guide to relevant nouns. This principle is adhered to throughout the *Word Index*.

Many verb forms can be traced through their infinitives, and the forms of many nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals through their nominative case.

The *Word Index* contains references to stress patterns, except for stress in prepositions (for prepositional stress see pages 419–21).

All references are to page numbers.

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a [conjunction] 408, 486–7, 488, 497 | -a [nouns of common gender] 58, 88 |
| a [particle] 505, 510                | -a [place name] 97                 |
| -a [first name] 95                   | -a [pl.-only noun] 72              |
| -a [f. noun] 88–90, 114              | -a [surname] 97                    |
| -a [f. suffix] 64                    | -á [f. adj. short form] 196        |
| -a [gerund] 386, 389, 391, 394       | -á [m. pl. noun] 79–80, 83         |
| -a [m. noun] 55–6, 88, 178, 222      | -á [pl.-only noun] 72              |
|                                      | -á [surname] 96                    |

- авать 242  
 а вдруг 487  
 авеню 59  
 автобус 427  
 автомат-закусочная 63  
 автомобиль-иномарка 63  
 автомо̀токлѹб [stress] 14  
 -аго [surname] 96  
 агроно́м 66  
 -аем [part. ending] 377  
 -аемый [part. ending] 365, 368–9, 379, 381, 383  
 -айший 204–5  
 -ак [m. suffix] [stress] 83  
 сопрово́живать 119  
 алка́ть [stress] 247, 251  
 Алма́-Ата́ 97, 172  
 а́лчный 13  
 -ан [part. ending] 370–1 [stress], 378  
 А́нглийский банк 18  
 -ане [noun pl.] 81  
 а не то 489  
 -анин 81  
 а́нтичный 13  
 антра́кт 453  
 а́плодировать 119  
 арти́ст бале́та 65  
 -арь [m. suffix] 57  
 -астый 174  
 -ата [noun pl.] 81  
 -атенький 177  
 а то 489  
 -атый 174  
 -ать [first-conjugation infin.] 241, 242–8, 251 [stress] 276–83, 370–2  
 -ать [second-conjugation infin.] 251, 252, 254–5 [stress], 370  
 -ач [m. suffix] [stress] 83  
 -ашка [dim.] 132  
 бакте́рия 70  
 Балка́ны 424  
 Бангладéш 97  
 ба́рин 81  
 -бать [б: бл] [first-conjugation consonant stems] 247–8  
 ба́цилла 70  
 бе́гать 346, 350, 352, 360  
 -бегать 360  
 беда́ 483  
 бежа́ть 28, 256, 271, 346, 347, 352, 358, 387  
 -бежать 360  
 без 156, 234, 335, 416, 448  
 без- 15  
 бе́ременная 125  
 бе́речь 250, 264  
 бес- 15  
 беспоко́ить (ся) 325  
 беспо́лезно 317  
 биле́т 423  
 биллио́н 208, 211, 218  
 би́ть 244, 259, 282, 369, 376, 387  
 благода́рен 191  
 благода́рный 120  
 благодаря́ 135, 167, 394, 416, 422, 462–3  
 благодаря́ тому́ что 492  
 бли́же 197, 443  
 бли́жний 171  
 бли́з 416, 421, 443  
 бли́зкий 171  
 бли́зко к 443  
 бли́зко от 443  
 близне́ц 223  
 бюсто́и 249  
 боа́ 58–9  
 бога́т 191  
 бога́тый 125  
 бо́дрый 185  
 бой [stress] 84  
 болва́н 68  
 Болга́рин 81  
 бо́лее + adj. 194, 195, 196, 198

- бо́лее + adv. 202, 413, 414  
бо́лее йли ме́нее 414  
бо́лее то́го 414  
боле́знь 464  
бо́лен 188, 189  
боле́ть 124  
болóто 84–5  
больно́/бо́льно 396  
больно́й 125, 188, 189  
бо́льше 198, 202, 404  
[бо́льше не], 414  
бо́льший 14, 195, 203  
большинствó 100–1  
большóй 14, 170, 185, 189, 195  
бомж 60  
борóться 245, 471  
босóй 196  
бо́яться 105, 117, 251, 253, 316,  
325, 339–40, 475  
брат 80 [stress]  
бра́тский 196  
братъ 245, 282, 302, 313, 353,  
369, 387  
-бредать 360  
брéмя 94  
брестí 249, 346, 347  
-бresti 360  
брить 244, 369  
бродíть 346, 445  
бросáть/бро́сить 272, 281, 317,  
474  
брошóра 8, 15  
бры́згать 247  
бу́дет 160, 238  
бу́дни 449  
бу́дто 25, 491, 498, 510  
бу́дто бы 491, 493  
бу́ду 266–7, 306–9, 349  
бу́дучи 126, 386, 388  
бу́дущее 453  
бу́дущий 448, 450–1  
будь 180, 260  
бухгалтер 12  
бы 179, 333–5, 338, 340–1, 378,  
508  
бывáло 299, 308–9  
бывáть 259  
было 511  
бы́ло 160  
быть 125, 179–80, 226, 246,  
257–8, 260, 265, 378, 486  
быть в состоя́нии 257, 343, 388  
в + асс. 200, 232, 234–5, 237,  
283–4, 290, 358–9, 397, 416,  
422–3, 432, 447–8, 451–2,  
453–4, 456, 459, 470, 474–5  
в + прер. 232, 234–5, 236, 237,  
238, 358, 416, 422–3, 424–31,  
432–4, 436, 444, 447–8,  
450–1, 452, 453, 467–8, 482–3  
в- 272, 283–4, 358, 360  
-в [gerund] 388–9, 391, 393, 501  
-ва- [compound impf.] 279, 281  
ваго́н-рестора́н 100  
ва́жно 336  
валéт 69  
варíть [stress] 254  
ваш 141  
вблизí 167, 421  
в ви́де 422  
ввидú 422  
ввидú то́го что 484, 492  
вглубь 421, 446–7  
вдали́ от 421, 444  
вдо́ль 416, 421, 440–1, 445  
веб-страница 63  
ведóмый 369  
ведь 505, 506, 511–12  
везёт 328, 357  
везти́ 248, 346, 347, 348, 353,  
354  
-везти 360  
век 451–2 (age; century),  
453 (lifetime)  
вели́к 185, 190

Вели́кая Оте́чественная война́  
16

велосипе́д 427

ве́рить 119, 254 [stress], 474

верну́ться 320

ве́рный 120

верте́ть 252, 255 [stress]

ве́сить 105

весно́й 123

вести́ 249, 263, 346, 347, 349,

353, 354, 357

-вести 360

-вести́ себя́ 140

весь 154–5, 156, 401, 423, 472

ве́то 6, 59

ве́тхий 198

ве́чер 449, 456

ве́чера 233

вече́реет 326

ве́чером 123

ве́шать 282

вз- 15, 275, 284, 358, 360

в за́ви́симости от 422

вза́мен 421

взойти́ 358, 360

взя́ть 246, 282, 353, 376, 475

ви́ден [stress] 187

ви́деть 252, 261, 274, 301, 339,  
402

ви́дно 297

ви́дный 183

ви́ды ору́жия 71

ви́ды спо́рта 71

визави́ 59

виногра́д/-ина 71

в интере́сах 422, 472

ви́рус 70

висе́ть 252

ви́ски 58

ви́ть 244, 259, 376, 387

ВИЧ 61

в ка́честве 422

включа́я 422

включа́тельно 455

в кото́ром часу́? 145, 232, 234,  
447

владéлец 125

владéние 124

владéть 124, 243

влечь 250, 264

влюби́ться 474

вме́сте с 421

вме́сто 421

вме́сто того́ что́бы 495

в напра́влении 422, 442

вне́ 135, 421, 441

внеза́пно 295

вне́шний 196

внима́ние 212, 476

вну́ки 223

вну́три 14 [вну́три/вну́три]

135, 421, 441

вну́три 399

вну́три 421, 441

в обе́ стороны/сто́роны 216

во́все не 529

вода́ [stress] 91

во вре́мя 422, 452, 454

во вся́ком слúчае 156

во-второ́ых 24, 400

води́ть 346, 353, 354, 358

-води́ть 360, 362

воева́ть 243

воз- 15, 284

возвраща́ть 322

возвраща́ться 296, 322, 323,

389

во́здух 427

вози́ть 346, 352, 353, 354

-вози́ть 360

во́зле 14 [во́зле/во́зле], 421, 443

возмо́жно 345

возмо́жность 461

во́зраст 237, 453

война́ [stress] 91

войска́ 70

- войти́ 358  
вокза́л 426  
вокруг 14 [вокруг/вокруг],  
359, 421, 441  
во́лос 82 [stress]  
во́лчий 174–5, 183  
вон 507  
вонзе́н 374  
во-пе́рвых 24, 400  
вопреки́ 135, 167, 421, 472  
воробе́й 75  
вос- 15, 284  
восе́мнадцать 207–8, 210  
во́семь 207, 209–10, 216  
во́семьдесят 207–8, 210, 212  
восе́мьсо́т 207–8, 210  
восе́мью 210  
восьмью́ 210  
во ско́лько? 232, 234, 447  
воскресе́нье 448, 456  
восто́к 425  
восхища́ться 124  
восхо́д 449  
восьме́рка 223, 237  
во́сьмеро 221  
восьмиде́сятый 229  
вот 104, 258, 507, 510, 512  
в отли́чие от 422  
в отноше́нии 135, 466  
впе́реді 421, 437  
впечатле́ние 476  
вплóть до 421  
в по́льзу 416, 422  
в продол́жение 422  
вратъ 245, 387  
врач 65–7  
вре́дить 119  
вре́дно 317  
в резу́льтате 422, 465  
в резу́льтате че́го 495  
времена́ 452, 455  
вре́мя 58, 94, 182, 451–2, 454–5  
вро́де 421  
вря́д ли 510  
вс- 15, 272, 275, 284, 358, 360  
в са́мом де́ле 434  
в све́те 431  
в свя́зи с 422  
все 135, 147, 155, 156  
всё 148, 155, 156, 201  
всегда́ 299, 309, 310, 316  
всего́ [in superlative] 415  
всё же 487  
всех [in superlative] 415  
в си́лу 422  
в си́лу то́го что 492  
вслед за 421  
всле́дствие 422, 465  
всле́дствие то́го что 492  
всле́дствие че́го 495  
встава́ть 242, 302, 311, 386  
в сто́рону 422  
встре́тить 302, 306  
встреча́ть 296, 301, 306  
встреча́ться 301, 323  
всходи́ть 358  
вся́кий 154, 156–7, 181, 193, 471  
вся́ческий 154, 156  
в тече́ние 422, 452  
в то вре́мя как 153, 293, 402,  
501, 503  
вто́рник 448  
второ́й 228–9, 230, 234  
в-тре́тьих 400  
в хо́де 422, 452  
входи́ть 358, 362  
в це́лях 422, 472  
-вший [part.] 365, 367, 379, 382  
-вшись [gerund] 389  
вы 137–8  
вы- 272, 283, 285 [stress], 325–6,  
358, 362, 371 [stress], 423  
выбега́ть 361  
вы́брить 377  
вы́глядеть 127, 180, 285  
[stress]

вѣдумки 71  
 вѣйти 358  
 выключатель 57  
 вѣмя 94  
 вѣнужден 343  
 вѣпить 269, 310  
 выпь 57  
 выращивать 322  
 выскакивать/выскочить 279  
 высотá 427, 467  
 вѣстрелить 474  
 вѣсший 204  
 вѣтащить 361  
 выть 244  
 выходить 358  
 выходнóй 182, 449  
 вѣчесть 238  
 вычитáние 238  
 вѣше упомянутый 54  
 вязáть 247, 283, 369

гáснуть 263  
 -гáть [г : -ж] [first-conjugation  
 consonant stems] 247  
 гвоздь 84 [stress]  
 г./гг. 236  
 где 304, 340, 401, 407, 490, 525  
 гдѣ-нибудь 409–10  
 гдѣ-то 409  
 герóй 74–5  
 гѣбель 57  
 -гий [adj. ending] 169  
 глáвное 148, 179, 336  
 глáдить 253  
 глазá 428  
 глодáть 247  
 глúбже 198  
 глúбинá 427, 467  
 глух(óй) 183, 191  
 глушь 57, 93 [stress]  
 глядѣть 252  
 глядя [stress] 387  
 -глянуть [stress] 251

гнать 252, 255 [stress], 346, 354,  
 387  
 гнáться 436  
 гнить 244, 387  
 гнуть 245  
 -го [pronunciation] 169  
 говорѣть 240, 252, 268, 282,  
 301, 483  
 говоря 394  
 говорят 139, 329  
 год 74, 235–6, 450–1, 453  
 -гóй [adj. ending] 170  
 голóвка лúка/лúку 71  
 гóлоден 187 [stress], 189  
 голосовáть 243, 476  
 гонять 346, 354  
 -гонять 360  
 гоняться 351  
 гопáк 69  
 горá 428, 437–8  
 горáздо 201, 413  
 гордѣться 115, 124, 325  
 гóрдый 125, 185, 196, 198  
 горевáть 243  
 горѣть 252, 256  
 гóрод 79, 435  
 горóх/горóшина 71  
 гóрче 198  
 гóрький 198  
 Гóсподи 12  
 господѣн 82  
 гость 56–7, 433, 475  
 готóв 191, 476–7, 480  
 готóвиться 480  
 границá 399, 435  
 графѣть 253  
 грестѣ 248, 263, 279  
 греть 243  
 грозѣть 119, 124  
 грудь [stress] 93  
 грызть 249, 263  
 губá [stress] 91  
 гулять 242, 445

гусь 57, 67

ГЭС 99

да [conjunction] 238

да [particle] 22, 29, 505, 506,  
512–13

давай/-те 312, 505, 508

дава́ть 242, 259, 368, 386

давно́ 396, 405

да́лее 414

далеко́ от 444

да́льнейший 205

да́льний 171

да́льше 198, 414

да́нный 166

да́ть 256, 265 [stress], 371

-да́ть [д/ж] [first-conjugation  
consonant stems] 247

два/две 207, 209, 214–16, 217,  
218, 222, 237, 473

двадца́тый [stress] 229, 230

два́дцать 208, 210, 216, 220

два́жды 238

двена́дцать 207, 210

дверь 423

двёсти 207–8, 210, 473

двигать(ся) 122, 247, 323

дво́е 221–4

дво́йка 237

двор 428

дво́рник 69

двою- 239

дву- 239

де 509

-девать 243

де́верь 81 [stress]

девча́та 81

девяно́сто 207, 210, 215

девя́теро 221

девя́тка 237

девятна́дцать 207, 210

девя́тый [stress] 229

де́вять 207–8, 210, 223

де́вятьсо́т 207–8, 210

де́лать всё что́бы 337

деле́ние 238

деле́ться 124

де́ло 88 [stress], 472, 483

де́нь 222, 448–9

де́рево 86 [stress]

дерева́нный 196

де́ржать 252, 254, 255 [stress],  
256

де́ржаться 118

де́рзить 256

де́ска́ть 509

де́сятеро 221

де́сятка 237

де́сяток 237

де́сятый [stress] 229

де́сять 207–8, 210

де́ти 81, 95, 223

де́тство 453

де́ть 246

дива́н-крово́ять 63, 100

дирижи́ровать 124

ди́тя 95

дичи́ться 117

для 417, 470–1, 477–8

для то́го что́бы 494

днём 123

дни 449

дно 86

дня 233

до 283, 285, 358, 416–17, 419,  
447, 454–5, 457–9, 468,  
499–500

до- 272, 283, 285, 358

добива́ться/добы́ться 115, 298,  
325, 337, 494

до́брый 181, 191

до́верять(ся) 119

дово́лен 54, 136, 191

дово́льный 125

дово́льствоваться 124

догна́ть 361



- дожді́ 71  
 дождь 357, 437, 438, 524  
 дожидáться 105–6, 115  
 дойт́и 358  
 доказы́вать/доказáть 299  
 долг 71  
 до́лго 405  
 до́лжен [must] 341–2  
 должнó быть 25, 342  
 до́льше 198  
 до́ля 89, 231  
 дом 426  
 до́ма 398  
 доми́на/доми́ще 56  
 доми́шко 56  
 домо́й 398  
 доплы́ть 361  
 допу́стим 24  
 дорожи́ть 124  
 поса́ждать 119  
 до сих пор 154, 400, 455  
 доста́точно 107, 224, 317, 496–7  
 дости́гать 115  
 дости́гнуть 250  
 дости́чь 250, 264  
 досто́йный 107, 185  
 досьé 6  
 до тех пор 153, 400  
 до тех пор пока́ не 499  
 до тогó как 153, 295, 484, 499–500  
 доходи́ть 358  
 дочь 56, 92  
 доя́р 65  
 дра́ть 245, 387  
 дрема́ть 247  
 дрожа́ть 252  
 друг 80–1 [stress]  
 дру́г дру́га 167, 324  
 друго́й 170, 404, 449  
 дуб 83–4 [stress]  
 ду́мать 297  
 дуть 244  
 -дцать 208  
 ды́ня 89  
 дыша́ть 252, 255 [stress]  
 дя́дя 55, 88, 178  
 -e [adverb] 395–6  
 -e [comparative adj.] 197–202  
 -e [comparative adv.] 413–14  
 -e- [infix] 31–2  
 -e/-ë [n. nouns] 86–7  
 -e [place names] 60, 97  
 -e [surnames] 96  
 -e- [fleeting vowel] 76  
 -e- [in gen. pl.] 85, 88, 90, 91–2  
 -e- [in short adj.] 184–7  
 -ë- [fleeting vowel] 76  
 -ë- [in gen.pl.] 91  
 -ë- [in short adj.] 185  
 -ев [gen. pl.] 74, 87  
 -ёв [gen. pl.] 87  
 -ев/-ёв [surnames] 96  
 -ев- [adj. suffix] 173  
 -еваты́й 177  
 -евать 243  
 -ево [place names] 97  
 егó [possessive pronoun] 142, 143  
 едва́ 403, 503, 529  
 едва́ ли 510  
 едва́ не 113, 507  
 едини́ца 237  
 еди́нственный 147  
 еду́чи 386  
 -ее [comparative ending] 194, 195–6, 202, 413–14  
 её [possessive pronoun] 142, 143  
 -еж/-ёж [m. suffix] [stress] 83  
 э́зди! 347  
 э́здить 346, 347–8, 351, 354–5, 363  
 -езжа́ть 260, 359–60  
 -ей [comparative ending] 196

- ей [gen. pl.] 74–5, 81, 82, 83–4, 85, 86–7, 88, 89, 92, 93–4, 95  
-ёй [instr. sing.] 89  
-ейший 204–5  
-ек [dim.] 129  
-ёк [dim.] 129  
-ель [f. noun] 57  
-енен/-ен [short adj.] 186  
-ёнка [dim.] 132  
-енко [surname] 96  
-енный [adj.] 186  
-ен(ный)/-ён(ный) [part.] 372–5 [stress 372–4], 378, 380–1  
-ёнок 81  
-енька [dim.] 128, 132  
-енький 128, 176  
-ереть 246, 262, 369, 376–7, 388  
-еск- [adj. suffix] 172  
ёсли 333–4, 496  
ёсли бы 24, 179, 333–5, 496  
ёсли не 496  
-есса [f. suffix] 64  
есть [eat] 256, 257, 261, 299, 369, 370, 387, 388  
есть [is] 160, 257–8, 413  
-еть [first conjugation] 241, 243–4  
-еть [second conjugation] 251, 254–5 [stress], 281, 372–3  
ёхать 246, 346, 347–8, 349–50, 354, 386, 387  
-ехать 359–60  
-ец [dim.] 128  
-ец [m. suffix] 64  
ешь! 257, 261  
ещё [adverb and particle] 404–5, 499, 505, 513  
ещё бы 508  
ещё и 408, 493  
ещё не/нет 404  
ещё раз 405  
ёю 135  
-жа [noun ending] 89  
жаждать 115, 245, 387  
жалеть 6, 243  
жаловаться 476  
жаль + acc. 105  
жаль + dat. 121  
жаль + gen. 106  
жать [-м-] 246, 279, 369, 387  
жать [-н-] 246  
ждать 116, 244–5, 369, 387, 388, 403  
же 154, 406, 505, 506, 507, 513–14  
-же [comparative] 197  
жевать 243, 370  
желательно 336  
желать 115  
жёлудь [stress] 84  
жениться 271  
жénщина 88  
жёртовать 124  
жечь 250, 264, 279, 370, 388  
жив 187 [stress], 189  
живой 189  
жизнь 103, 461  
-жий [adj. ending] 170  
жиры 71  
жить 245  
жрать 245  
ЖЭК 62, 99  
жюри 8, 58  
за + acc. 158, 237, 283, 285, 358, 399, 417, 419–20, 434–5, 444, 452, 456, 457, 459, 460, 468, 471, 475–6  
за + instr. 399, 417, 419–20, 434–5, 436, 459, 465, 471, 481  
за- 272, 274–5, 283, 285–6, 326, 358, 362, 364–5

- забóтиться 337, 494  
 забы́ть 268, 295  
 заведóвать 124  
 завидóвать 119  
 зави́сеть 270, 490  
 за́вкафедрой 63  
 заво́д 74  
 за́дать [stress] 265  
 задóлго 458, 499  
 зайти́ 358, 365  
 за́каз 476  
 за́кат 449  
 залетéть 361  
 залива́ться сме́хом 275  
 замéтить 339  
 за́муж 399, 435  
 за́мужем 399, 435  
 занима́ться 124  
 заня́ть 265 [stress], 376  
 заня́ться [stress] 266  
 за́пад 425  
 заперéть 262, 265 [stress]  
 записыва́ться 127  
 запла́кать 274  
 запрещáть 119  
 зарóдыш 70  
 заря́ 449  
 заслу́живать/заслужи́ть 115  
 застревáть 243  
 застря́ть 246  
 за счёт 422  
 затева́ть/затéять 243, 277  
 затéм 400, 402  
 затми́ть 256  
 затó 487, 497  
 за то 336, 494  
 за тро́их 224  
 -зать [з:ж] [first-conjugation  
   consonant stems] 247–8, 387  
 захва́тывать/захвати́ть 278  
 заходи́ть 358, 365  
 заходи́ть [pf.] 364–5  
 захотéть 108, 257  
 зачём 317, 401  
 звать 127, 245, 330, 369, 387,  
   407  
 звони́ть 300–1  
 звуча́ть 252, 256  
 зда́ние 94  
 здесь 402  
 здоро́в 189  
 здоровéе [stress] 196  
 здоро́вый 189  
 земля́ [stress] 92  
 зима́ 451  
 зимóй 123, 451  
 зло 85  
 злой 188  
 злоупотреблéние 125  
 злоупотребля́ть 124  
 змей 69  
 -знавать 242, 259, 368, 386  
 знако́м 191  
 знако́мый 120  
 зна́мя 94  
 знато́к 75  
 знать 242, 297, 369  
 значи́ть 256  
 зре́ть 243  
 -зть 249, 263–4, 369, 374, 390  
 зы́бкий 198  
 зять 81 [stress]  
 и [conjunction and particle] 23,  
   406, 485, 487–8, 497, 514  
 -и [imper.] 259–60, 310–14, 334  
 -и [n. pl.] 85–6  
 -и [place names] 60, 97  
 -и [pl.-only nouns] 72–3  
 -и [surnames] 96  
 -и́ [prep. case] 93  
 -и- [in impf.] 279–80  
 йбо 493  
 -ив- [in impf.] 277, 280  
 -ивый 173  
 игра́ть 15, 474, 483

- игро́к 75  
идти́ 248, 296, 345, 346, 347–50, 354–5, 357, 358, 444–6, 471, 475, 476  
-ие [noun ending] 94  
из 110, 238, 283, 284, 358, 417, 419–20, 423, 432, 463, 478  
из- 15, 283, 286, 364–5  
избавля́ться 478  
избега́ть 117–18, 365  
избе́гать 365  
избежа́ть 365  
изве́стный 120, 125  
изда́ть [stress] 371  
из-за 417, 435, 462–3, 464  
из-за того́ что 484, 492  
-изировать 271  
изменён [stress] 373  
изменя́ть 119  
изоби́ловать 124  
из-под 417, 438–9, 443, 478  
изъезди́ть 364  
изю́м/-ина 71  
и . . . и 23, 485  
-ий [gen. pl.] 87, 89, 94  
-ик [dim.] 128  
-ик [m. suffix] 64, 83 [stress]  
-ико [dim.] 131  
йли 488  
йли . . . йли 23, 489  
-им [part.] 377  
и́менно 507  
и́мать 243  
-имый [part.] 368–9 [stress 369], 380, 383  
и́мя 58, 94  
-ин [place names] 97  
-ин [possessive adj.] 175–6  
-ин [surnames] 96  
-ина [augmentatives] 56, 132  
и́наче 489  
-ино [place names] 97  
иногда́ 299, 316  
-инский 172  
интересный́ 191  
интересова́ться 124  
Интерне́т 9, 480  
-иный 176  
ис- 15, 272, 284, 286  
иска́ть 116, 247, 369  
исключа́я 394  
иско́мый 369  
и́скренний 171, 185, 396  
испо́лниться 121, 227, 236  
иссле́довать 271  
истори́чка 66  
истреби́тель 69  
-истый 174  
и ток да́лее 414  
-итель 57  
-ить [first conjugation] 241, 244  
-ить [second conjugation] 251, 252–5, [254–5 stress], 277–9, 281–2, 372–4  
их [possessive pronoun] 142, 143  
-их [surname] 96  
-иха [f. suffix] 64–5, 67  
-ица [dim.] 130  
-ица [f. suffix] 64, 67  
-ич [m. suffix] [stress] 83  
-ически 397  
-ичка [dim.] 130  
-ишка [dim.] 132  
-ишко [dim.] 56, 128, 132  
-ища [augmentatives] 132–3  
-ище [augmentatives] 56, 87, 132–3  
-ищи [noun pl.] 87  
-ия [noun ending] 94  
-й [imper.] 259–60  
-й [noun ending] 74–5, 129  
-йти 354, 358–9, 362  
  
к 283, 289, 291, 359, 416, 417, 441–2, 455, 465, 477, 479–80  
-ка [dim.] 128, 130–1

- ка [f. suffix] 64  
 -ка [particle] 311, 506, 514–15  
 Кавка́з 424  
 ка́ждый 55, 154, 156, 181, 193, 215  
 ка́жется 25, 120  
 каза́ться 127, 180, 247  
 как 25, 104, 154, 186, 297, 339, 340, 402–3, 406–7, 490, 497, 499–502, 503–4  
 какаду́ 59  
 кака́о 6  
 как бу́дто 498, 510  
 как бы 510  
 как вдруг 403, 503–4  
 как мо́жно 201, 414  
 ка́к-нибудь 409  
 како́в 186  
 како́го числа́? 235  
 како́е число́? 235  
 како́й 144–5, 146–7, 149, 153, 235, 340, 476  
 како́й-либо 164  
 како́й-нибудь 161–4  
 како́й-то 161–2  
 как раз 500, 503, 507  
 как . . . так и 485  
 ка́к-то 409  
 как то́лько 295, 307, 504  
 капу́ста 71  
 ка́рий 170  
 ка́рта 88  
 карто́фель/карто́фелина 71  
 каса́ться 118  
 катáть 346  
 катáться 352, 358  
 катíть 346  
 -катить 360  
 -катывать 360  
 -кaть [к:ч] [first-conjugation consonant stem] 247–8  
 качáть 122  
 ка́шлять 242 [stress]
- квадра́т 238  
 кварта́ира 427  
 кивáть 122  
 -кий [adj. ending] 169  
 кипéть 252, 256  
 кишкá 90  
 -кладывать 283  
 класть 249, 282, 312  
 клева́ть 243  
 клеветáть 247  
 клу́бень карто́феля 71  
 клясть 249  
 -ко [dim.] 131  
 -ко [noun ending] 86  
 -ко́ [surnames] 96  
 кова́ть 243  
 когда́ 304, 307, 339, 402–3, 407, 490, 499, 502, 503, 525  
 когда́-либо 410  
 когда́-нибудь 409–10  
 когда́-то 409  
 ко́е- 165, 410–11  
 ко́е-где́ 410  
 ко́е-ка́к 410–11  
 ко́е-како́й 165  
 ко́е-когда́ 411  
 ко́е-кто́ 165  
 ко́е-куда́ 411  
 ко́е-что́ 165  
 -ко́й [adj. ending] 170  
 колеба́ть(ся) 247–8, 251 [stress]  
 коле́блемый 369  
 ко́лено 85–6  
 ко́ли 496  
 коли́бри 59  
 коли́чество 222, 225  
 коло́ть 245  
 колыхáть [stress] 247–8, 251  
 ко́ль/ко́ль ско́ро 496–7  
 командíр 125  
 кома́ndование 125  
 кома́ndовать 124  
 кома́нующий 125

- конёц 76, 423, 453, 455–6  
конёчно 13, 25  
конча́ть/ко́нчить 317  
конча́ться/ко́нчиться 322  
коню́шня 427  
корми́ть 253  
коро́ль 57, 69  
котёнок 81  
ко́торого [possessive] 146  
ко́торой [possessive] 146  
ко́торый 24, 144–5, 146–7, 152,  
213, 227, 338, 378, 380, 386  
ко́торый час? 145, 232  
ко́торых [possessive] 146  
ко́фе 58, 59  
коча́н капу́сты 71  
ко́шка 67  
краси́в [stress] 186  
красне́ть 243  
красть 249  
крича́ть 252  
кро́ме 417  
кро́ме того́ 408  
кру́гом/круго́м 398  
крыть 244  
к сожалéнию 6, 25, 480  
кто 144–5, 147–8, 149, 303–4,  
340, 513  
кто-кто́ 149  
кто . . . кто 149  
кто́-либо 161  
кто́-нибудь 161–4  
кто такой? 145  
кто́-то 161–2  
куда́ 340, 402, 407, 513, 525  
куда́ [much] 200–1, 413  
куда́-нибудь 409–10  
куда́-то 409  
ку́кла 70, 218  
кум 81 [stress]  
куми́р 68  
купи́ть 281, 479  
кури́ть [stress] 254  
куса́ть 282  
ку́хня 68, 427  
ку́щий 170  
ку́шай! 257  
ку́шать 257, 261  
Кызылку́м 15  
Кя́хта 15  
-лагать 283  
ла́зить 253, 346, 351  
лгать 245, 387  
ле́ди 59  
ле́жа [stress] 387  
лежа́ть 252  
-лезать 360  
лезть 249, 264, 346, 347, 357,  
387  
-лезть 360  
лека́рство 478  
лет 74  
лета́ть 346, 350–1  
-летать 360  
летéть 252, 346, 347, 350, 354,  
357  
-лететь 360  
ле́том 123  
лечь 250, 260, 264, 282  
ли 506, 509–10, 525  
-либо 161, 164–5, 410  
ли́бо . . . ли́бо 489  
-ливый 173  
ли́пкий 198  
лист 80  
лить 244, 259, 369, 376, 387  
лицо́ 216, 222  
лиша́ть(ся) 118, 140  
лише́нный 107  
лишь 24  
лишь бы 508  
лови́ть 282, 299  
ло́дка 427  
-ложить 283  
ложи́ться 282, 321

- ложь 71, 93  
 ло́паться/ло́пнуть 283  
 лоску́т 80  
 ло́шадь 6, 94  
 лук/лу́ковица 71  
 лу́чше 198, 336  
 лу́чший 194, 203  
 льсти́ть 119  
 люби́ть 253, 275, 315–16, 351, 403, 406, 502  
 любовáться 124, 325  
 любóвь 93  
 Любóвь 93  
 любóй 156–7, 193  
 людéй 82, 216, 218–19, 224–5  
 лю́ди 95, 222  
  
 -м- [in conjugation] 246, 376  
 мада́м 59  
 мал 185  
 ма́ленький 185, 195, 198  
 Маlí 60  
 ма́ло 106, 224–5, 226, 396  
 ма́ло 396 [stress]  
 ма́мин 175–6  
 марабу́ 59  
 марионéтка 70  
 Март 18  
 масс-ме́диа 59  
 ма́стер маши́нного доéния 65  
 масшта́б 467  
 матрёшка 70  
 ма́тч-турни́р 100  
 мать 55, 56, 92  
 -мать [м/мл] [first-conjugation consonant stems] 247  
 мафи́озо/и 59  
 маха́ть 247  
 маэ́стро 59  
 мгнове́ние 448  
 медици́нский брат 65  
 ме́жду 417, 439–40, 461  
 ме́нее 194, 413, 414  
  
 -менивать/-менять 282  
 ме́ньше 198, 414  
 ме́нший 195, 203  
 -менять/-менить 282  
 ме́ра 467  
 -мере́ть 246  
 ме́рзнуть 245  
 ме́ртв 185, 189  
 мертве́ц 69  
 ме́ртвый 185  
 ме́стí 249, 263  
 ме́стный 183  
 ме́сто 428–9  
 ме́сяц 450–1  
 ме́сячный 183  
 метро́ 427  
 мечта́ 89  
 меша́ть 119  
 миг 448  
 мига́ть 122  
 МИД 62  
 микро́б 70  
 миллиа́рд 208, 211, 218  
 миллио́н 207, 211, 218  
 мй́мо 14 [мй́мо/мй́мо], 359, 421, 439, 441  
 мй́нус 238  
 мину́та 154, 233–4, 447–8  
 мла́дше 197  
 мла́дший 195, 203  
 млеть 243  
 мно́гие 225  
 мно́го 106–7, 110, 201, 224–5, 226, 228  
 мно́гое 225  
 мно́жество 101  
 мно́ю 134  
 могу́щий [stress] 366  
 мо́да 476  
 мо́дистка 65  
 мо́жет быть 25, 493  
 мо́жно 344–5  
 мой 141

- мол 505, 509  
молодой 169, 195, 203  
мóлодость 453, 464  
молóже 106, 197  
молóть 245  
мóлча 394  
молчáть 252  
момéнт 448, 454–5  
мóре 68, 87, 429  
моркóвь/моркóвка 71  
морóзы 71  
мотоцикл 427  
мочь 250, 251 [stress], 257, 264,  
343–4, 388  
мстить 119, 253  
муж 81 [stress]  
мужчíна 55, 222  
музéй 74–5  
муравéй 75  
мурлы́кать 248  
мы 134, 137, 482  
-мый [adj. ending] 173  
-мый [part.] 365, 369 [stress],  
379–80, 381–2, 383  
мыть 244, 369  
мы́ться 320  
-мя 94  
мять 246, 387
- н- [pronominal] 135, 142  
-н- [part.] 332, 365, 370–5, 378,  
380–1, 383–5  
-н- [adj. suffix] 172  
-н- [in conjugation] 246, 376  
на + acc. 200, 238, 283, 286,  
292, 359, 414, 417, 419–20,  
421, 423, 432–3, 436, 448–9,  
450, 451, 454, 457, 459–60,  
466, 468–9, 471, 476–7  
на + prep. 398, 416–17, 420,  
422–3, 424–31, 432, 434,  
444, 448, 450, 452, 453,  
480, 483
- на- 108, 272, 283, 286, 325–6,  
359, 364–5  
навéрное 25  
навстрéчу 135, 167, 421, 442  
на вся́кий слúчай 156, 471  
над 417, 439  
над- 286–7  
надéяться 297, 476  
на́до 342–3  
надоеда́ть 119  
надо́сть 120, 315  
на́до же 514  
надóлго 460  
наéздить 365  
наéхать 359  
наза́д 458  
на зло 135  
назнача́ть 127  
назывáть 127  
назывáться 127  
наи- 205–6  
наибóлее 205, 415  
наимéнее 205, 415  
найти́ 359, 375  
наканúне 421, 456  
налетáть [pf.] 365  
намнóго 201, 413  
наперекóр 135, 421, 472  
написа́ть 267, 268–9, 272, 273,  
275, 301  
напомина́ть 119  
напримéр 25  
напрóтив 421, 440  
на протяжéнии 422, 452  
напря́чь 250, 264  
наро́д 69  
на са́мом де́ле 434  
НАСА 99  
наслажда́ться 124, 325  
насле́довать 119  
на слúчай 471, 496  
настаивáть 336, 494  
настоя́ть 336, 494



- настоящее 453  
 насчёт 416  
 научить 351  
 научиться 315, 479  
 находить 359  
 находиться 270, 322  
 начало 234, 448, 453  
 начать 246, 265 [stress], 316, 376  
 начинаться 266 [stress], 322, 478  
 начинать 296, 300, 316  
 начинаться 322  
 начиная с 422, 454  
 наш 141  
 не 111–15, 149–50, 157–9, 265, 305–6, 310, 311, 312, 313–14, 319, 338–40, 347, 356, 408, 411–12, 485–6, 495, 502, 503, 508–9  
 не- 159–61, 412–13  
 небо 85, 429–30  
 не будет 111  
 не бывает 111  
 не было 111  
 невзирая на 472  
 не видно 111–12  
 невозможно 345  
 негде 412  
 не говоря уже 394  
 недавно 405  
 недалекó 443  
 неделя 450–1  
 недо- 287  
 не должен 317–18  
 доставать 107, 329  
 недра 85  
 независимо от 421–2  
 не заметно 111  
 незачем 412  
 не за что 161  
 нездоровится 120, 327  
 не имётся 111  
 некий 166  
 некогда 412  
 некого 159–61  
 некому 161 [as subject]  
 некоторые 165–6, 225  
 некоторый 165  
 некто 159, 165  
 не кто иной, как 149  
 некуда 412  
 не курят 139  
 нельзя 157, 318, 344–5, 411, 486, 530  
 немало 106, 224  
 немного 224, 225  
 не надо 112, 317, 342–3  
 не нужно 112, 317, 342–3  
 не осталось 111  
 неоткуда 412  
 неподалёку 443  
 не позже 234  
 не попадалось 111  
 неправ 189  
 неправильный 152  
 не раз 412  
 несколько 106–7, 165–6, 226, 228, 237, 473  
 не следует 317  
 не следует ли 318  
 не слышно 111–12  
 несмотря на 422, 472, 487  
 не совсем 401  
 несомый 369  
 нести 249, 263, 346, 347, 348, 353, 357  
 -нести 360, 363  
 не стоит 317  
 не существует 111  
 несчастен 189  
 не считая 394, 422  
 нет [particle] 22, 508–9  
 нет [there is not] 110, 111, 157, 236–7, 319, 411  
 не так 406  
 нет желания 319

- не то чтòбы 339  
не тóлько . . . но и . . . 485  
не то . . . не то . . . 489  
не тот 152  
нет смýсла 317  
неужéли 509  
не успéть 503  
нехорошó 317  
не хотéться 319  
нéхотя 394  
не хочý 319  
нéхристь 56  
нéчего 159–61, 317  
нéчто 159, 165  
не что инóе, как 150  
ни 113, 340–1, 497, 508  
-нибудь 161–4, 409–10  
нигдé 411  
нйже 211  
нйзший 204  
-ний [adj. ending] 170–1, 183  
-ник [m. suffix] 64  
никак 411  
никакóй 157, 159  
никогдá 112–13, 157, 158, 299, 411  
никтó 147, 157–8  
никудá 411  
ни к чемý 158  
-нин [possessive adj.] 175  
ни . . . ни . . . 23, 485–6, 489  
ни рáзу 412  
нискóлько 411  
-ница [f. suffix] 64  
ничегó 157, 158, 159  
ничéй 157, 159  
ничтó 157, 158  
-нн- [in short adj.] 384–5  
-нный [part.] 365, 371, 374, 375, 380, 381, 384, 396  
но 23, 28, 418, 485, 487–8, 497  
-но [part.] 385  
новогóдний 171  
нóвый 169, 176, 178  
ноль 207, 208, 211–12, 231  
нóмер 220  
нос 437  
носйть 346, 353, 358, 387, 423  
-носйть 360, 363  
нóу-хáу 58  
нóчи 233–4  
ночь 92, 449  
нóчью 123  
нрáвиться 120, 325, 530  
ну 505, 506, 515, 518–19, 520  
-ну- 262–3, 275, 367, 388  
нýжен 530  
нýжно 342–3  
нуль 207, 208, 211–12  
-ный [part. adj.] 383–4  
ныть 244  
НЭП 62  
нйня 89  
-нйть 246, 251 [stress], 376  
  
о + acc. 399, 417, 419, 421, 477  
о + prep. 417, 472, 480–1, 483  
о- 287–8, 359  
-о [adv.] 395–6, 413  
-о [noun] 84–6  
-о [place names] 60, 97  
-о [prefixes] 16, 358–9  
-о [prep.] 418–19  
-о [surnames] 96  
-о- [fleeting vowel] 75–6, 92–3  
-о- [gen. pl.] 85, 89–90  
-о- [in conjugation] 267–8  
-о- [infix] 31–2  
-о- [in short adj.] 184–5  
-о- [-йти] 358–9  
óба/óбе 209, 214–16, 217  
обвинйть 482  
обез- 288  
обезлéсен 374  
обес- 288  
обещáть 297, 318

- облада́ть 124  
 о́блако 86  
 облива́ться слеза́ми 275  
 обману́ть [stress] 251  
 обме́ниваться 124  
 обме́нять 476  
 обойти́ 359  
 обра́щаться 466  
 обрести́ 249  
 обстоя́тельства 154, 462  
 обу́ть 244  
 обуча́ение 120  
 обходи́ть 359  
 обходи́ться 124  
 обяза́н 125, 343  
 обяза́нности 71  
 обяза́нный 125  
 -ов [gen. pl.] 74, 75–6, 82, 85–6, 87  
 -ов [place names] 97  
 -ов [possessive adj.] 175–6  
 -ов [surnames] 96  
 -ов- [infix/suffix] 39–40, 50, 53, 172–3  
 -оваты́й 177  
 -овать 242–3, 271, 368  
 -ово [place names] 97  
 ограни́чиваться 124  
 оде́ть 376  
 оди́н 54, 136, 166–7, 207, 208–9, 212–14, 215, 218–19  
 оди́ннадцать 207–8, 210  
 оди́ножды 238  
 одна́жды 123, 400  
 одна́ко 487, 497  
 одни́ 212–13  
 одни́ . . . други́е . . . тре́тьи 213  
 односторо́нный 171  
 ожида́ть 116–17, 388  
 означа́ть 256  
 -ой [surnames] 96  
 -ок [dim.] 129  
 оказа́ться 180  
 оказа́ываться 127  
 окно́ 85, 430  
 о́ко 86  
 о́коло 14 [о́коло/о́коло], 227, 233, 234, 421, 443, 448, 469  
 О́ктябрь, О́ктябрьский 18  
 ома́р 70  
 он 54, 134–5, 138–9  
 она́ 54, 134–5, 138–9, 152  
 они́ 134–5, 138–9, 482  
 -онка [dim.] 132  
 оно́ 54, 134–5, 138–9  
 -онок 81  
 -онька [dim.] 132  
 -онький 176  
 ОО́Н 20, 61, 99  
 опа́здывать 295  
 опа́саться 118, 325  
 опозда́ть 295  
 опя́ть 405  
 ора́ть 245  
 ору́жие 71  
 о́сень 451  
 о́сенью 123, 451  
 ослу́шиваться 118  
 остава́ться 127, 180, 227  
 оста́навливать(ся) 322  
 оста́ться 127, 180  
 остерега́ться 117–18  
 от 110, 283, 288, 359, 399, 417, 442, 460, 463, 478, 479  
 от- 271, 272, 283, 288, 359  
 отвеча́ть 313, 477  
 отвы́кнуть 315  
 отгова́ривать/отгово́рить 319  
 отка́заться 478  
 отку́да 402, 407  
 отлича́ться 124  
 относите́льно 421  
 относиться́ 465  
 отойти́ 359  
 отползти́ 361  
 о́трасли промы́шленности 71

- отсу́тствие 434  
отсю́да 402  
отто́го что 492  
отту́да 402  
отхо́дить 359  
-отъ [inf. ending] 241, 245, 251  
[stress], 369, 375  
охо́титься 436, 476  
-очек [dim.] 129  
о́чень 398  
-очка [dim.] 131  
очу́титься 256, 270  
ошибі́ться 246  
оші́бка 465  
-ою [f. adj. instr.] 169
- папара́цци 59  
па́ра 222  
пара́шю́т 8  
парохо́д 427  
пасти́ 249, 263  
пасть 249  
Па́сха 454  
-пать [п: пл] [first-conjugation  
consonant stems] 247–8  
па́хнуть 124  
-певать 243  
пе́рвое 148  
пе́рвый 147, 228–9, 448, 449,  
451  
пере- 272, 280, 283, 288–9, 359  
перед 417, 437, 458, 466, 499  
переда́ть 265 [stress], 371  
перед тем как 499, 500  
перейти́ 359  
перека́титься 361  
перекры́живать/перекрыча́ть 279  
переле́зть 361  
перене́сти 363  
перепі́счик на маши́нке 65  
переры́в 453  
переса́живаться/пересе́сть 282,  
321
- переставáть/перестáть 317, 391  
-переть 246  
перехо́дить 359  
пери́од 452, 453  
пе́стрый 185  
петь 244, 369, 387, 388  
печь 250, 264  
писа́ть 247, 251 [stress], 267,  
268, 272, 301, 369, 387, 479  
пить 244, 259, 269, 369, 370,  
376, 387, 388, 476  
пла́вать 346  
пла́кать 247, 463  
пла́мя 94  
плати́ть 253, 273, 313, 370, 475  
пла́щ-пала́тка 100  
плева́ть 243  
плéмя 94  
плести́ 249  
плéчики 86, 131  
плечо́ 86  
плох 189  
плохо́й 189, 195  
-плывать 360  
плыть 245, 346, 348, 387  
-плыть 360  
плюс 238  
по + acc. 215, 417, 421, 447, 455,  
473–4  
по + dat. 139, 227, 230, 359, 398,  
417, 421, 444–6, 449, 464–5,  
466, 472, 473–4, 480–1  
по + prep. 139, 417, 459, 466  
по- [comparative adv.] 414  
по- [inception] 275  
по- [intermittent] 280–1  
по- [limited duration] 275  
по- [multidirectional pf.] 356  
по- [pf. prefix] 272  
по- [unidirectional pf.] 275, 354–5  
победи́ть 256  
побежа́ть 355  
повезло́ 328, 357–8

- повёрх 439  
 повесить 282  
 повинováться 119, 270  
 по́вод 80, 464  
 погóда 454  
 под + асс. 283, 289, 417, 419, 421, 437–8, 439, 443, 456, 472, 477  
 под + instr. 417, 419, 421, 437–8, 443  
 под- 273, 283, 289–90, 359, 362  
 подáльше от 444  
 под́ле 421, 443  
 подмасте́рье 56  
 подóбно 135, 421  
 подóбный 120  
 подозре́ние 482  
 подойти́ 359  
 под предло́гом что 493  
 подража́ние 120  
 подража́ть 119  
 подходи́ть 359  
 подье́зжать 360  
 пое́здить 356  
 по́ездом 123  
 поезжа́й! 8, 347  
 пое́хать 347, 354–5, 356  
 пожа́луй 509  
 пожа́луйста 25  
 поже́ниться 271  
 пожима́ть 122  
 позади́ 421, 435  
 позво́лить 276  
 позволя́ть 119, 276  
 позвони́ть 301, 314  
 позднее́ 198  
 по́здно 396  
 по́зже 8, 198–9  
 по истече́нии 458  
 пойма́ть 282, 299  
 пойти́ 275, 320, 354–5  
 пока́ 293, 501  
 пока́ . . . не 499, 501–2  
 поко́йник 69  
 покрови́тельствова́ть 119  
 покупа́ть 281  
 по́л- 228, 231–2, 233, 447–8  
 по́лдень 233, 447  
 по́ле 86–7, 430  
 полета́ть 356  
 полете́ть 354  
 по́лзать 346, 351  
 -полза́ть 360  
 ползти́ 249, 263, 346, 358  
 -ползти 360  
 поли́тика 71  
 политиче́ские напра́вления 71  
 полк 69  
 по́лночь 233, 447  
 по́лный 107, 181, 191  
 полови́на 214, 231, 233, 235  
 положи́ть 282  
 по́лон 191  
 поло́ть 245  
 полтора́/полторы́ 209, 214, 216–7, 237  
 полтора́ста 214  
 полу- 232  
 по́лчасá 232  
 по́льзоваться 124  
 полюби́ть 275  
 по ме́ре то́го как 293, 504  
 по́мнить 260–1, 339  
 помога́ть 115, 119  
 по-мо́ему 25  
 по́мощь 120  
 по напра́влению к 422, 442  
 понеде́льник 448  
 понести́ 355  
 понима́ть 240, 438  
 понра́виться 275, 325  
 поня́ть 246  
 по отноше́нию к 422, 466  
 попере́к 421, 444, 446  
 поплы́ть 355  
 попроси́ть 108, 318, 479

- пора́ 319, 452  
поража́ться 119  
поро́ть 245  
порт [stress] 84  
портфе́ль 75  
поря́дка 422, 469–70  
посади́ть 282  
по се́й де́нь 455  
поско́льку 492  
по́сле 14 [по́сле/после], 421, 458, 499  
после́днее вре́мя 405–6  
последние́ 215  
последни́й 170–1, 448, 449, 451  
по́сле того́ как 153, 295, 484, 499, 500–1  
послу́шный 120  
посмотре́ть 306  
посоветова́ть 318  
по сравне́нию с 422  
посреди́ 421, 439–40  
посре́дством 422  
посте́ль 423  
потоло́к 437  
потом 400, 402  
потому́ что 24, 492–3  
потре́бовать 336  
по́ уши 447  
походи́ть 356  
похо́ж 191  
по че́м? 474  
почему́ 318, 401, 525  
почему́-нибудь 409  
почему́-то 409  
почи́ть 244  
по́чта 426, 480  
почти́ 158, 411, 507  
почти́ нигде́ 411  
почти́ никогда́ 411  
почти́ никто́ 158  
почти́ ниче́го/ниче́то 158  
по — бы [adv.] 397  
по́тому 400  
прав 188, 189  
пра́вить 124  
пра́во 476  
пра́вый 189  
пра́здник 449, 454, 456  
пре- [superlative] 206  
пре- [verb prefix] 290  
пред- 290  
предпочита́ть 315, 351  
представля́ть собо́й 140  
предупреди́ть 336  
предше́ствовать 119  
пре́жде чем 499, 500  
прекрати́ть 254, 317  
прекраща́ть 317  
пренебрега́ть 124  
пренебре́чь 250  
прэ́ния 73  
преодоле́ть 243  
препятство́вать 119  
при 417, 421, 443–4, 452, 461–2, 472, 483  
при- 273, 283–4, 290–1, 359  
приба́вить 238  
привезти́ 361  
привести́ 361  
приве́тствовать 271  
приводи́ть 362  
привы́кнуть 295, 315  
привы́чка 315  
приде́рживаться 118  
признава́ться 325  
призна́ться 325, 483  
прийти́ 359  
прийти́сь 343, 530  
прика́зывать/приказа́ть 491  
приме́р 153  
принадлежа́ть 119, 270  
принимáться/приня́ться 316, 325  
приноси́ть 387  
приня́ть 246, 251 [stress]  
припева́ючи 386

- приса́живаться/присе́сть 282  
 прису́тствие 434  
 прису́щий 120  
 притво́ряться 180  
 при усло́вии что 496  
 приходи́ть 359, 361  
 приходи́ться 120  
 причи́на 153, 464, 483  
 про 417, 483  
 про- 271, 291, 359  
 прогла́тывать/проглоты́ть  
     278–9  
 продаве́ц/продавщи́ца 66  
 продолжа́ть 317  
 продолжа́ться 322  
 продо́лжить 317  
 прожы́ть 377  
 произойти́ 329, 367  
 пройти́ 359  
 прокля́сть 376  
 промышле́нность 71  
 пронзе́н 374  
 проси́живать 299  
 проси́ть 108, 117, 253, 491  
 просла́вляться 124  
 про́сят 330, 526  
 прот́ив 336, 421, 439–40, 494  
 противоре́чить 119, 270  
 проходи́ть 312, 359  
 прочита́ть 267, 271, 273, 302,  
     305  
 про́шлое 453  
 про́шлый 448, 450–1  
 пря́мо 510  
 прятáть 248, 251 [stress], 369  
 пугáться 118, 325  
 пуска́й 497  
 пусть 261, 497, 505, 506  
 путём 422  
 путь 57, 94–5, 434  
 пылесóсить 256  
 пы́таться 325  
 пятёрка 237  
 пята́ро 221–4  
 пятидеся́тый 229  
 пятна́дцать 207, 208, 210, 216  
 пята́ница 448  
 пята́ок 237  
 пять 207–8, 209–11, 214, 216,  
     218, 219, 221, 237  
 пятьдеся́т 207–8, 210, 215, 219  
 пята́сot 207–8, 210, 219  
 пята́ью 238  
 рабо́та 116, 432–3  
 рабо́тать 127, 439, 476  
 равня́ться 119  
 рад 120, 185, 475  
 ра́ди 417  
 ра́дио 6, 58, 480  
 ра́доваться 119, 325  
 ра́достный 185  
 раз 212, 299, 314, 457, 459, 467  
 раз ['since'] 496  
 раз- 15, 16, 273, 275, 284, 292,  
     324, 359, 360, 362–3  
 разбреда́ться 361  
 ра́зве 509  
 развёдка 430  
 развёдчик 69  
 ра́звитый/разви́тый/развито́й  
     377  
 разда́ть 371 [stress]  
 раздева́ться 312  
 разделить 238  
 разду́мывать/разду́мать 319  
 разли́чия 71  
 разма́хивать 122  
 разме́р 230  
 ра́зница 71  
 разо́йтись 359  
 разрешáть 119  
 разу́ть 244  
 разу́читься 315  
 ра́но 396  
 ра́ньше 198, 458

- рас- 15, 275, 284, 292, 359, 360  
располагать 124  
распоряжаться 124  
распять 246, 376  
рассвёт 449  
рассказывать 301  
расставаться 127  
расстояние 433  
расти 249, 263, 322  
расходиться 359  
рвать 245, 369, 387, 388  
реакция 477  
ребёнок 81, 95, 223  
ребята 81, 223  
ребятишки 223  
ревёт 246  
резать 387  
репёй 75  
рецепт 476  
решать/решить 299, 305  
рисковать 124  
робот 69  
ровно 507  
родиться 127  
Рождество 454  
рожь 93  
ронó 61  
рубль [stress] 83  
рука́/ру́ки 91, 430, 432, 477  
руководитель 125  
руководить 124  
руководство 125  
ру́сский 169  
ручёй 75  
ру́шиться/ру́хнуть 283  
рыть 244  
ряд 100–1, 214 [stress], 216  
рядом с 422, 443
- с + acc. 417, 470  
с + gen. 110–11, 283, 359, 398,  
417, 423, 432, 433, 450, 454–5,  
463–4, 478–9, 499
- с + instr. 121, 136, 139, 140, 220,  
283, 324, 329, 359, 417, 466  
с- 271, 273, 283, 292, 359,  
362–3, 363–4  
сидиться 282, 312, 321  
сажать 282  
сая́ми 59  
сам 155  
са́мбо 63  
самолёт 427  
самолётом 123, 427  
сам себя́ 141, 155  
са́мый [determinative] 154–6,  
443, 458  
са́мый [superlative] 202–3, 205  
санита́р 65  
-сать, [с : ш] [first-conjugation  
consonant stems] 247–8, 387  
сбе́гать [pf.] 363–4  
сбра́сывать/сбро́сить 279  
све́дения 73  
свеж 187 [stress]  
свекро́вь 92  
сверх 421  
свет 431, 461  
свеча́ 89  
свидете́льство 153  
свисте́ть 253  
свобо́да 434  
свой 142–4  
сво́йственный 120  
свы́ше 421  
святее́ 198  
свяще́нна 193  
сдава́ть/сда́ть 299  
себя́ 139–41, 142, 153, 155  
се́вер 425  
сезо́н 452  
сей 150–1, 154, 400–1  
сейча́с 400–1  
секретáрь 64, 66  
село́ 431  
семёрка 237



- се́меро 221, 223  
 се́мидеся́тый 229  
 се́мна́дцать 207–8, 210  
 се́мь 207, 209, 216, 218, 219  
 се́мьдесят 207–8, 210, 216, 219  
 се́мьсо́т 207–8, 210  
 се́мья́ [stress] 92  
 се́мя 94  
 се́рдит 191, 466  
 се́редина́ 431, 453  
 се́сть 249, 282, 312, 321  
 се́ть [stress] 93  
 се́чь 250, 264, 279  
 се́ять 242 [stress]  
 сжа́ть 376  
 сза́ди 421, 435  
 си́деть 252, 299  
 си́дя [stress] 387  
 си́льный 192  
 си́ний 171, 183, 185  
 си́рота́ 55, 58, 222  
 си́ротё́ть 243  
 -ск- [adj. suffix] 172–3, 183  
 ска́жем 25  
 сказа́ть 240, 268, 282, 297, 301, 339  
 -ска́ть [ск : щ] [first-conjugation consonant stems] 247–8  
 СКВ 61  
 скве́р 425  
 скво́зь 421, 444, 446  
 -ски 396–7  
 -ский [surname] 96  
 скло́нен 192, 373  
 ско́лько 106–7, 224–5, 226, 236–7, 340  
 ско́лько вре́мени? 145, 232  
 ско́пить 107  
 ско́рость 220, 482  
 скот 69  
 скре́стї́ 249, 263  
 ску́чать 139, 466  
 сла́ть 241, 246, 387, 388  
 сла́ще 198  
 сле́дить 337, 481  
 сле́довать 119, 436  
 сле́дует 343  
 сле́дующий 449, 450–1  
 сле́п 192  
 слета́ть [pf.] 364  
 сли́шком 190  
 слова́рь-ми́нимум 100  
 сло́вно 498, 510  
 сложе́ние 238  
 сложи́ть 238  
 слон 67, 69  
 служе́ние 120  
 служи́ть 119, 127  
 слу́чай 153, 338–9, 403, 471, 496, 503  
 случи́ться 329  
 слу́шать 403  
 слу́шаться 105–6, 118  
 слы́ть 245  
 слы́хать 257  
 слы́шать 252, 257, 261, 297, 339, 402  
 слы́шно 297  
 сме́рть 462  
 сме́ть 243  
 сме́шно 317  
 сме́яться 119, 242, 325, 439  
 смотре́ть 252, 254 [stress], 337, 402, 474–5, 476  
 смотре́! 313–14, 337  
 смочь 257, 343  
 смя́ть 376  
 СНГ 61  
 снег 357  
 снега́ 71  
 снима́ть 312  
 сно́ва 405  
 снова́ть 243  
 сня́ть 246, 312  
 собира́ться 323, 511  
 собра́ть [stress] 265

- собраться [stress] 265  
совать 243  
советовать 119, 318  
со времени 454–5  
совсем не 401  
согласен 192, 482  
согласно 135, 421  
содействие 120  
содействовать 119  
со дня 454–5  
создатель 57  
сойти 359, 364  
сойтись 359  
солёный 185  
соловёй 75  
солóма/солóмина 71  
сомневаться 325, 483  
соображение 464  
сóрок 208, 210, 212, 215, 216, 218  
сосать 245  
сосед 82  
со стороны 442  
состоять 127, 478  
сóтня 237  
Сóчи 60  
сочувствие 120  
сочувствовать 119, 270  
СП 61  
спать 252  
-спевать 243  
спеть [to ripen] 243  
спорт 71  
способный 192  
способствовать 119  
спрашивать 330  
спрос 476  
спросить 297, 479  
спустя 394, 422, 459  
сразу 295  
среда 448  
среди 421, 439–40, 461  
средний 171  
-ставать 242, 259, 386  
ста́вить 253  
стадион 426  
ста́дия 434  
станови́ться 127, 282, 321  
ста́нция 94, 426  
стараться 318, 325  
старина 452  
ста́рость 453, 456, 464  
ста́рше 198  
ста́рший 195, 203  
ста́рый 195, 198  
стать 127, 246, 282, 316  
-ство 85  
с тем что́бы 494  
сте́пень 467–8  
стеречь 264  
стесняться 118  
с тех пор 153, 400, 454  
с тех пор как 484, 499, 502  
стлать 241, 245, 251 [stress]  
сто 207–8, 210, 215, 216, 218, 219  
сто́ит 343  
сто́ить 105, 118, 251, 270  
стол 83 [stress], 435  
столе́тие 451  
сто́лько 106, 224–5  
стонать 245, 251 [stress], 387  
сторонá 25, 423, 442  
сторони́ться 118  
сто́я [stress] 387  
стоять 252, 531  
страда́ть 124  
стреля́ть 139, 481  
стреми́ться 325, 337, 494  
стре́мя 94  
стричь 250, 264  
стро́ить 251  
студе́нт 74  
сту́дия 431  
стул [stress] 80  
стуча́ть 252, 474, 481

- стуча́ться 325  
 стыди́ться 117–18  
 сты́дно 317  
 стыть 246  
 -сть [infin.] 241, 249, 369, 375, 389  
 суббо́та 448  
 суд 431, 439  
 су́дно 85  
 судья́ 222  
 су́дя по 394, 422  
 сук 80  
 су́мерки 449  
 суро́в 183  
 су́тки 222, 448  
 существо́ 218  
 существова́ть 226  
 сходи́ть 359, 364  
 сходи́ть [pf.] 363–4  
 сходи́ться 359, 362  
 с це́лью 422, 472  
 сча́слив 187 [stress], 189  
 сча́сливый 187 [stress]  
 с че́м-то 162  
 счита́ть 127, 140  
 счита́ться 127, 140  
 съеда́ть 299, 370, 388  
 съе́ден 375  
 съезди́ть 363–4  
 сыгра́ть 15  
 сын 81 [stress]  
 сыт 189  
 сюда́ 402  
 -ся/-сь 10, 140, 320–6, 331, 332, 366, 367, 377, 381–2, 387, 389  
 -т- [part.] 370, 375–7, 378, 384, 385  
 тайм 453  
 так 153, 186, 395, 406, 407, 505, 506, 510  
 та́кже 12, 407–9  
 так же как 497  
 так как 493  
 тако́в 186  
 тако́й 150, 153–4, 193  
 тако́й же 154, 514  
 такси́ 427  
 так что 495–6  
 тали́бы 72  
 там 395, 401, 407  
 таска́ть 346  
 -таскивать 360  
 ТАСС (ИТА́Р-ТАСС) 62  
 тата́рин 81  
 -тать [т : ч] [first-conjugation consonant stems] 247–8  
 -тать [т : щ] [first-conjugation consonant stems] 247–8  
 тащи́ть 346  
 -тащи́ть 360  
 твой 12, 141, 142  
 те 147  
 -те [imper.] 259  
 теа́тр 426  
 телеви́дение 426, 480  
 телеви́зор 480  
 -тель [noun suffix] 57  
 тем лу́чше 200  
 температу́ра 462  
 те́мя 94  
 те́ннис 10  
 тепе́рь 400–1  
 тера́кт 63  
 тере́ть 246, 370, 388  
 терпе́ть 252, 255 [stress]  
 тесть 57, 75  
 тетра́дь 92  
 те́тя 89  
 те́хник 66  
 техни́чка 66  
 течё́ние 452  
 течь 250, 256, 264  
 -ти 241, 248–9, 263, 266 [stress], 367, 369, 374–5, 389–90  
 тип 68

- ткать 245, 369, 387  
тлеть 243  
то [with *если*] 334  
то 148–9, 152–3, 505  
-то [particle] 506, 507, 515–16  
-то [with indef. pronouns and  
adv.] 161–2, 409  
тобóю 134  
тогда́ 395, 402–3, 407  
тогда́ как 501  
то́же 407–8, 510  
то ли . . . то ли 489  
то́лько 24, 455, 493, 505, 508  
тому́ наза́д 458  
тону́ть [stress] 251  
то́ньше 198  
то́пать 122  
топи́ть 253  
торгова́ть 124  
торго́вля 125  
торна́до 59  
тоскова́ть 139  
тот 147–8, 150, 151–2, 202, 400,  
449, 451  
тот же (са́мый) 152, 156, 514  
то-то 510  
то . . . то 23–4, 308, 489  
тот са́мый 54, 156  
то́чно 498  
то́чно так же как 497  
то, что 148–9, 152–3, 490  
трамва́й 427  
тра́тить 476  
тре- 239  
тре́бовать 117, 243 [stress], 336  
трепа́к 69  
тре́тий 175, 229  
треть 231  
три 207–8, 209, 214–15, 218,  
222, 473  
три́дцатый [stress] 229  
три́дцать 208, 210, 219  
три́жды 238  
триллио́н 208, 211, 218  
трина́дцать 207–8, 210  
три́ста 207–8, 210, 216, 219, 473  
тро́е 221–4, 227  
тро́йка 237  
трудо́ться 325  
труп 69  
туда́ 402, 407  
туз 69  
тур 453  
тут 402  
ты 134, 137–8, 329  
-тый [part.] 377, 384  
ты́сяча 207–8, 211, 218–19  
ты́сячелéтие 451  
ТЯО 61  
тяну́ть [stress] 251  
Тянь-Ша́нь 424  
  
у 104, 417, 441–2, 479  
у- 273, 292–3, 359, 361–2  
-у [partitive gen.] 76–7, 109–10  
-у [place names] 60, 97  
-у [surnames] 96  
-у́ [prep. case] 77–9, 84  
убеди́ть 256, 318  
убежда́ть 298, 318  
уве́рен 483  
увиде́н 373  
увиде́ть 274  
увиде́ться 323  
увлека́ться 124  
увлече́ние 125  
уговáривать/уговори́ть 269,  
299, 318  
уго́л 435  
уда́рить 282  
ударя́ть 139  
удиви́ться 325  
удивля́ться 119, 325  
угожда́ть 119  
угро́за 120  
уда́ться 121, 266 [stress], 328

- уезжа́ть 296, 361  
 -уе́мый [part.] 368, 369 [stress]  
 уж 505, 507, 516  
 уже́ 403–4, 505  
 узнава́ть 242  
 узна́ть 479  
 уйти́ 359  
 Украи́на 424  
 укуси́ть 282  
 у́лей 75  
 у́лица 425  
 улыба́ться 119, 325  
 улыбу́ться 325  
 у меня́ 104, 111  
 умере́ть 262, 265 [stress], 295, 463  
 уме́рший [stress] 368  
 умерщвлён 373  
 уме́ть 243, 315, 343, 351  
 умно́жение 238  
 -ун 83 [stress]  
 управдо́м 63  
 управля́ть 124  
 упрека́ть 483  
 Ура́л 424  
 урду́ 59, 177  
 уро́к 75  
 уса́живаться/усе́сться 321  
 услы́шать 275  
 успе́ть 403, 503  
 уста́ть 464  
 утвержда́ть 270  
 утра́ 233, 449  
 у́тро 449, 456  
 у́тром 123, 449  
 -у́ть/-(н)у́ть 241, 244, 245, 262–3, 376  
 -уха [f. suffix] 64  
 у́хо 86, 431  
 уходи́ть 359  
 учи́тель 57, 64–5, 66  
 учи́тельница 64–5  
 учи́ть 119, 273  
 учи́ться 351, 354, 471  
 ушиби́ть 264  
 -ушка [dim.] 132  
 фа́брика 426  
 факс 480  
 ферзь 57, 69  
 флами́нго 59  
 фло́ппи 59  
 ха́ос 6  
 характе́рен 192  
 -хать [x : ш] [first-conjugation  
 consonant stems] 247–8  
 хва́статься 124  
 хвата́ть/хвата́ть 107, 329  
 -хий [adj. ending] 169  
 хинди́ 59, 177  
 хиру́рг 66  
 хло́пать 122  
 хло́пья 80  
 ход 448  
 ходи́ть 345, 346, 347–8, 349, 350–1, 354, 356, 357, 358, 363, 387, 445  
 -ходить 359, 362  
 хозяи́н 82  
 -хой [adj. ending] 170  
 хо́лодно 530, 532  
 хоро́ш 187 [stress], 189  
 хоро́ший 170, 189, 194  
 хоро́ш собо́й 140, 189  
 хоте́л бы 335  
 хоте́ть 108, 117, 256, 257, 335–6, 387, 388, 511  
 хоте́ть сказа́ть 256  
 хоте́ться 121, 327  
 хоть 497, 505, 516–17  
 хотя́ 24, 497  
 храпе́ть 253  
 хро́м [short adj.] 192  
 худее́ 197  
 худе́ть 243

хۇдший 194–5, 203  
хۇже 198

цвесті́ 249  
-це [dim.] 131  
цѣ́лый 156, 181, 231  
це́рковь 93  
цеце́ 59  
-чки 396  
-цо [dim.] 131  
цуна́ми 59  
цыга́н 81

-ч- [infix] 37  
-ча [noun ending] 89  
час 214 [stress], 232–5, 447–8,  
449, 456  
ча́сто 299  
часть 101, 231  
часы́ 357  
ча́ще всего́ 299  
чей 144, 146, 147  
че́й-либо 164  
че́й-нибудь 161  
че́й-то 161–2  
челове́к 82, 216, 218, 224–5  
чем 25, 104, 199–200, 413  
чемпио́н 65  
чем . . . тем . . . 200, 293,  
413–14  
червь 57  
через 283, 288, 359, 416, 417,  
444–6, 458–9, 479  
че́рт 82  
честь [verb] 250, 279  
четве́рг 448  
четве́рка 237  
че́тверо 221–4  
четверо- 239  
четве́ртый 229  
че́тверть 231, 233–4  
четы́ре 207–8, 209, 214–15, 217,  
219, 220, 221–3

четы́режды 238  
четы́реста 207–8, 217, 473  
четы́рнадцать 207–8, 210  
-чивы́й 173  
-чий [adj. ending] 170, 174  
-чик [dim.] 128–30  
-чик [m. suffix] 64  
число́ 235  
чита́ть 267, 271, 300–1, 305  
-чн- 13  
чт́ить 256  
что́ [pronoun, conjunction,  
particle] 13, 24, 144, 145, 146,  
148–50, 192, 339, 340–1, 401,  
489–90, 517  
что́бы 13, 24, 179, 192, 336–40,  
471, 490–1, 494–5  
что́ за 145, 476, 506  
что́-либо 161, 164  
что́-нибудь 161, 163–4  
что́ тако́е? 145  
что́-то 161–2  
что-что́ 150  
чу́вствовать себя́ 127, 140, 180  
чу́дить 256  
чу́до 85  
чу́ждаться 117–18  
чу́ждый 107  
чу́ть не 113, 295, 507  
-чь 250, 264, 266 [stress], 369,  
374–5, 387, 390  
  
-ша [f. suffix] 64  
-ша [noun ending] 89  
шаг 214 [stress]  
шап 69, 214 [stress]  
ша́хта 431–2  
швея́-моторы́стка 65  
-ше [comparative adj.] 197–8  
шепта́ть 247  
шесте́рка 237  
ше́стеро 221–2, 224  
шестидеся́тый 229

- шестна́дцать 207–8, 210  
 ше́сть 207–8, 209–10, 211, 219, 222  
 ше́стьдеся́т 207–8, 210  
 ше́стьсо́т 207–8, 210, 219  
 ше́стью 238  
 -ши [gerund] 389, 390, 392  
 -шиби́ть 246, 251, 264  
 -ший [adj. ending] 170  
 -ший [part.] 367, 368 [stress], 381, 382  
 шимпанзе́ 59  
 ши́ре 198  
 ши́ро́к 187, 190  
 -шись [gerund] 389  
 шить 244, 259, 369, 376, 387  
 шко́ла-интерна́т 63  
 шокола́д/-ка 71  
 шоссе́ 6, 10  
 шта́б-кварты́ра 63  
 шту́ка 222  
 шуме́ть 253  
 -ще [comparative adj.] 197–8  
 щеголя́ть 124  
 щёлка́ть 122  
 щено́к 81, 223  
 -щий [adj. ending] 170  
 -щий [part.] 365, 366 [stress], 379, 380, 381–2, 386, 396  
 -щик/-щица [m./f. suffixes] 64  
 -ъ- 360  
 -ы [pl.-only nouns] 72  
 -ы- [in impf.] 279–80  
 -ыв- [in impf.] 276, 277, 278–9, 280–1  
 -ыва- [in impf.] 280–1  
 -ын [place names] 97  
 -ын [surnames] 96  
 -ыть 241, 242, 244, 376  
 -ых [surnames] 96  
 -ышек/-ышко [dim.] 132  
 -ь [imper.] 259–60  
 -ь [f. soft-sign nouns] 56–7, 92–4  
 -ь [m. soft-sign nouns] 57, 75, 129  
 -ье/-ье́ [n. noun] 87  
 -ьев [gen. pl.] 87  
 -ьми [instr. pl.] 94, 95  
 -ья [f. noun] 89  
 -ья [nom. pl.] 80, 86  
 -ья́ [f. noun] 89  
 -ья́ [nom. pl.] 80–1, 84  
 э́кий 150–1, 154  
 экскурсово́д 66  
 экстрасе́нс 10  
 элэ́ктрик 66  
 электры́чка 66  
 эпо́ха 451–2  
 э́такий 154  
 э́ти 11, 227  
 э́то 4, 11, 103, 113, 136, 151, 153  
 э́тот 54, 150, 151, 202, 400, 448, 449, 450–1  
 -ю [partitive gen.] 76–7, 109–10  
 -ю́ [prep./loc. case] 77, 79  
 юг 425  
 ю́ноша 55, 222  
 -юшка [dim.] 132  
 я 134, 136–7  
 -я [f. noun] 88–90  
 -я [first name] 95  
 -я [gerund] 386–7, 388, 389, 390–3, 394, 399, 502  
 -я [m. nouns] 55–6, 88, 178  
 -я [nouns of common gender] 58, 88  
 -я [surname] 97  
 -я́ [m. pl.] 80, 84  
 -я́ [surname] 96

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| явля́ться 126, 258    | -янии 81   |
| -яго [surname] 96     | -ята [pl.] 81                                    |
| яйцо́ 85, 88 [stress] | ять 57   |
| -як [noun suffix] 83  | -ять [first conjugation] 241, 242,<br>281–2, 370 |
| якобы́ 491            | -ять [second conjugation] 252–3                  |
| -ян- [part.] 370      | яхт-клуб 100                                     |
| январский 173         |  |

*Note*

**ГАИ** [гай] (Госуда́рственная автомоби́льная инспе́кция) ‘State Vehicle Inspectorate’ (see pp. 61 and 99) has now been replaced by **ГИБДД** [ги-бэ-дэ-дэ] (Госуда́рственная инспе́кция безопа́сности доро́жного движе́ния) ‘State Road Traffic Safety Inspectorate’.